ARM®v7-M Architecture Reference Manual

ARM®

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
ARM DDI 0403D (ID021310)

ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.

Release Information

The following changes have been made to this document.

Change history

Date	Issue	Confidentiality	Change
June 2006	A	Non-confidential	Initial release
July 2007	B	Non-confidential	Second release, errata and changes documented separately
September 2008	C	Non-confidential, Restricted Access	Options for additional watchpoint based trace in the DWT, plus errata updates and clarifications.
12 February 2010	D	Non-confidential	Fourth release, adds DSP and Floating-point extensions, and extensive clarifications and reorganization.

Proprietary Notice

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual is protected by copyright and the practice or implementation of the information herein may be protected by one or more patents or pending applications. No part of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual may be reproduced in any form by any means without the express prior written permission of ARM. **No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise to any intellectual property rights is granted by this ARM Architecture Reference Manual**.

Your access to the information in this ARM Architecture Reference Manual is conditional upon your acceptance that you will not use or permit others to use the information for the purposes of determining whether implementations of the ARM architecture infringe any third party patents.

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual is provided “as is”. ARM makes no representations or warranties, either express or implied, included but not limited to, warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, or non-infringement, that the content of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual is suitable for any particular purpose or that any practice or implementation of the contents of the ARM Architecture Reference Manual will not infringe any third party patents, copyrights, trade secrets, or other rights.

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual may include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors.

To the extent not prohibited by law, in no event will ARM be liable for any damages, including without limitation any direct loss, lost revenue, lost profits or data, special, indirect, consequential, incidental or punitive damages, however caused and regardless of the theory of liability, arising out of or related to any furnishing, practicing, modifying or any use of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual, even if ARM has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Words and logos marked with ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of ARM Limited, except as otherwise stated below in this proprietary notice. Other brands and names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited

110 Fulbourn Road Cambridge, England CB1 9NJ

Restricted Rights Legend: Use, duplication or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in DFARS 252.227-7013 (c)(1)(ii) and FAR 52.227-19.

This document is Non-Confidential but any disclosure by you is subject to you providing notice to and the acceptance by the recipient of, the conditions set out above.

In this document, where the term ARM is used to refer to the company it means “ARM or any of its subsidiaries as appropriate”.

Note

The term ARM is also used to refer to versions of the ARM architecture, for example ARMv6 refers to version 6 of the ARM architecture. The context makes it clear when the term is used in this way.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Contents
ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual

Preface
About this manual xxii
Using this manual xxiii
Conventions xxvi
Further reading xxvii
Feedback xxviii

Part A Application Level Architecture

Chapter 1 Introduction
A1.1 About the ARMv7 architecture, and architecture profiles A1-32
A1.2 The ARMv7-M architecture profile A1-33
A1.3 Architecture extensions A1-35

Chapter 2 Application Level Programmers' Model
A2.1 About the application level programmers' model A2-38
A2.2 ARM processor data types and arithmetic A2-39
A2.3 Registers and execution state A2-46
A2.4 Exceptions, faults and interrupts A2-50
A2.5 Coprocessor support A2-52
A2.6 The optional Floating-point extension A2-53

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter 3 ARM Architecture Memory Model
A3.1 Address space A3-82
A3.2 Alignment support A3-83
A3.3 Endian support A3-85
A3.4 Synchronization and semaphores A3-89
A3.5 Memory types and attributes and the memory order model A3-99
A3.6 Access rights A3-109
A3.7 Memory access order A3-111
A3.8 Caches and memory hierarchy A3-120

Chapter 4 The ARMv7-M Instruction Set
A4.1 About the instruction set A4-124
A4.2 Unified Assembler Language A4-126
A4.3 Branch instructions A4-129
A4.4 Data-processing instructions A4-130
A4.5 Status register access instructions A4-140
A4.6 Load and store instructions A4-141
A4.7 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions A4-144
A4.8 Miscellaneous instructions A4-145
A4.9 Exception-generating instructions A4-146
A4.10 Coprocessor instructions A4-147
A4.11 Floating-point load and store instructions A4-148
A4.12 Floating-point register transfer instructions A4-149
A4.13 Floating-point data-processing instructions A4-150

Chapter 5 The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding
A5.1 Thumb instruction set encoding A5-152
A5.2 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding A5-156
A5.3 32-bit Thumb instruction encoding A5-164

Chapter 6 The Floating-Point Instruction Set Encoding
A6.1 Overview A6-190
A6.2 Floating-point instruction syntax A6-191
A6.3 Register encoding A6-194
A6.4 Floating-point data-processing instructions A6-195
A6.5 Extension register load or store instructions A6-197
A6.6 32-bit transfer between ARM core and extension registers A6-198
A6.7 64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers A6-199

Chapter 7 Instruction Details
A7.1 Format of instruction descriptions A7-202
A7.2 Standard assembler syntax fields A7-207
A7.3 Conditional execution A7-208
A7.4 Shifts applied to a register A7-212
A7.5 Memory accesses A7-214
A7.6 Hint Instructions A7-215

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7 Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions A7-216

Part B System Level Architecture

Chapter 1 System Level Programmers' Model

B1.1 Introduction to the system level B1-616
B1.2 About the ARMv7-M memory mapped architecture B1-617
B1.3 Overview of system level terminology and operation B1-618
B1.4 Registers B1-623
B1.5 ARMv7-M exception model B1-631
B1.6 Floating-point support B1-685

Chapter 2 System Memory Model

B2.1 About the system memory model B2-692
B2.2 Pseudocode details of general memory system operations B2-693

Chapter 3 System Address Map

B3.1 The system address map B3-704
B3.2 System Control Space (SCS) B3-708
B3.3 The system timer, SysTick B3-744
B3.4 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC B3-750
B3.5 Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7 ..... B3-761

Chapter 4 The CPUID Scheme

B4.1 About the CPUID scheme B4-778
B4.2 Processor Feature ID Registers B4-780
B4.3 Debug Feature ID register B4-781
B4.4 Auxiliary Feature ID register B4-782
B4.5 Memory Model Feature Registers B4-783
B4.6 Instruction Set Attribute Registers B4-785
B4.7 Floating-point feature identification registers B4-794

Chapter 5 System Instruction Details

B5.1 About the ARMv7-M system instructions B5-798
B5.2 ARMv7-M system instruction descriptions B5-800

Part C Debug Architecture

Chapter 1 ARMv7-M Debug

C1.1 Introduction to ARMv7-M debug C1-810
C1.2 The Debug Access Port C1-815
C1.3 Overview of the ARMv7-M debug features C1-819
C1.4 Debug and reset C1-822
C1.5 Debug event behavior C1-823

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.6 Debug register support in the SCS C1-828
C1.7 The Instrumentation Trace Macrocell C1-843
C1.8 The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit C1-856
C1.9 Embedded Trace Macrocell support C1-896
C1.10 Trace Port Interface Unit C1-897
C1.11 Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit C1-904

Appendix A ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs
A.1 CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv7-M implementation AppxA-914

Appendix B Legacy Instruction Mnemonics
B.1 Thumb instruction mnemonics AppxB-918
B.2 Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP AppxB-922
B.3 Pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics AppxB-923

Appendix C Deprecated Features in ARMv7-M
C.1 Deprecated features of the ARMv7-M architecture AppxC-928

Appendix D Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol
D.1 About the ITM and DWT packets AppxD-932
D.2 Packet descriptions AppxD-934
D.3 DWT use of Hardware source packets AppxD-944

Appendix E ARMv7-R Differences
E.1 About the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R architecture profiles AppxE-952
E.2 Endian support AppxE-953
E.3 Application level support AppxE-954
E.4 System level support AppxE-955
E.5 Debug support AppxE-956

Appendix F Pseudocode Definition
F.1 Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode AppxF-958
F.2 Limitations of pseudocode AppxF-960
F.3 Data types AppxF-961
F.4 Expressions AppxF-965
F.5 Operators and built-in functions AppxF-967
F.6 Statements and program structure AppxF-973
F.7 Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions AppxF-978

Appendix G Pseudocode Index
G.1 Pseudocode operators and keywords AppxG-984
G.2 Pseudocode functions and procedures AppxG-988

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix H Register Index
H.1 ARM core registers AppxH-1002
H.2 Floating-point extension registers AppxH-1003
H.3 Memory mapped system registers AppxH-1004
H.4 Memory-mapped debug registers AppxH-1007

Glossary

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

List of Tables
ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual

	Change history	ii
Table A2-1	FPSCR bit assignments	A2-56
Table A2-2	Default NaN encoding	A2-64
Table A2-3	Floating-point exception default results	A2-65
Table A2-4	FP comparison flag values	A2-73
Table A3-1	Load-store and element size association	A3-87
Table A3-2	Effect of Exclusive instructions and write operations on local monitor	A3-91
Table A3-3	Effect of load/store operations on global monitor for processor(n)	A3-95
Table A3-4	Memory attribute summary	A3-100
Table A4-1	Branch instructions	A4-129
Table A4-2	Standard data-processing instructions	A4-131
Table A4-3	Shift instructions	A4-132
Table A4-4	General multiply instructions	A4-133
Table A4-5	Signed multiply instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture	A4-133
Table A4-6	Signed multiply instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-133
Table A4-7	Unsigned multiply instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture	A4-134
Table A4-8	Unsigned multiply instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-134
Table A4-9	Saturating instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture	A4-135
Table A4-10	Halfword saturating instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-135
Table A4-11	Saturating addition and subtraction instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-135
Table A4-12	Packing and unpacking instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture	A4-136
Table A4-13	Packing and unpacking instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-136

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A4-14	Parallel addition and subtraction instructions	A4-138
Table A4-15	Miscellaneous data-processing instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture	A4-138
Table A4-16	Miscellaneous data-processing instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension	A4-139
Table A4-17	Load and store instructions	A4-141
Table A4-18	Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions	A4-144
Table A4-19	Miscellaneous instructions	A4-145
Table A4-20	FP extension register load and store instructions	A4-148
Table A4-21	FP extension register transfer instructions	A4-149
Table A4-22	Floating-point data-processing instructions	A4-150
Table A5-1	16-bit Thumb instruction encoding	A5-156
Table A5-2	16-bit shift (immediate), add, subtract, move and compare encoding	A5-157
Table A5-3	16-bit data processing instructions	A5-158
Table A5-4	Special data instructions and branch and exchange	A5-159
Table A5-5	16-bit Load/store instructions	A5-160
Table A5-6	Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions	A5-161
Table A5-7	If-Then and hint instructions	A5-162
Table A5-8	Branch and supervisor call instructions	A5-163
Table A5-9	32-bit Thumb encoding	A5-164
Table A5-10	32-bit modified immediate data processing instructions	A5-165
Table A5-11	Encoding of modified immediates in Thumb data-processing instructions	A5-166
Table A5-12	32-bit unmodified immediate data processing instructions	A5-168
Table A5-13	Branches and miscellaneous control instructions	A5-169
Table A5-14	Change Processor State, and hint instructions	A5-170
Table A5-15	Miscellaneous control instructions	A5-170
Table A5-16	Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions	A5-171
Table A5-17	Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch	A5-172
Table A5-18	Load word	A5-173
Table A5-19	Load halfword, memory hints	A5-174
Table A5-20	Load byte, memory hints	A5-176
Table A5-21	Store single data item	A5-178
Table A5-22	Data-processing (shifted register)	A5-179
Table A5-23	Move register and immediate shifts	A5-180
Table A5-24	Data processing (register)	A5-181
Table A5-25	Signed parallel addition and subtraction instructions	A5-182
Table A5-26	Unsigned parallel addition and subtraction instructions	A5-183
Table A5-27	Miscellaneous operations	A5-185
Table A5-28	Multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference operations	A5-186
Table A5-29	Long multiply, long multiply accumulate, and divide operations	A5-187
Table A5-30	Coprocessor instructions	A5-188
Table A6-1	Data type specification flexibility	A6-192
Table A6-2	Floating-point register specifier formats	A6-192
Table A6-3	Example register lists	A6-193
Table A6-4	Encoding of register numbers	A6-194
Table A6-5	Three-register floating-point data-processing instructions	A6-195
Table A6-6	Floating-point modified immediate constants	A6-196
Table A6-7	FP extension register load and store instructions	A6-197
Table A6-8	Instructions for 32-bit data transfers to or from FP extension registers	A6-198

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A6-9	64-bit data transfer instructions	A6-199
Table A7-1	Condition codes	A7-208
Table A7-2	Effect of IT execution state bits	A7-211
Table A7-3	Determination of mask field	A7-278
Table A7-4	MOV (shift, register shift) equivalences)	A7-351
Table B1-1	Mode, privilege and stack relationship	B1-618
Table B1-2	ICI/IT bit allocation in the EPSR	B1-626
Table B1-3	Mnemonics for combinations of xPSR registers	B1-626
Table B1-4	Exception numbers	B1-633
Table B1-5	Vector table format	B1-634
Table B1-6	Relation between number of priority bits and maximum priority value	B1-636
Table B1-7	Priority grouping	B1-636
Table B1-8	EXC_RETURN definition of exception return behavior, no FP extension	B1-653
Table B1-9	EXC_RETURN definition of exception return behavior, with FP extension	B1-653
Table B1-10	FP common register block	B1-686
Table B3-1	ARMv7-M address map	B3-705
Table B3-2	Subdivision of the System region of the ARMv7-M address map	B3-706
Table B3-3	SCS address space regions	B3-708
Table B3-4	Summary of SCB registers	B3-710
Table B3-5	Summary of additional SCB registers for the FP extension	B3-711
Table B3-6	Summary of system control and ID register not in the SCB	B3-712
Table B3-7	CPUID Base Register bit assignments	B3-713
Table B3-8	ICSR bit assignments	B3-714
Table B3-9	VTOR bit assignments	B3-716
Table B3-10	AIRCR bit assignments	B3-717
Table B3-11	SCR bit assignments	B3-719
Table B3-12	CCR bit assignments	B3-720
Table B3-13	SHPR1 Register bit assignments	B3-723
Table B3-14	SHPR2 Register bit assignments	B3-724
Table B3-15	SHPR3 Register bit assignments	B3-725
Table B3-16	SHCSR bit assignments	B3-726
Table B3-17	CFSR bit assignments	B3-728
Table B3-18	MMFSR bit assignments	B3-729
Table B3-19	BFSR bit assignments	B3-730
Table B3-20	UFSR bit assignments	B3-732
Table B3-21	HFSR bit assignments	B3-733
Table B3-22	MMFAR bit assignments	B3-734
Table B3-23	BFAR bit assignments	B3-735
Table B3-24	CPACR bit assignments	B3-736
Table B3-25	FPCCR bit assignments	B3-738
Table B3-26	FPCAR bit assignments	B3-740
Table B3-27	FPDSCR bit assignments	B3-741
Table B3-28	ICTR bit assignments	B3-742
Table B3-29	STIR bit assignments	B3-743
Table B3-30	SysTick register summary	B3-745
Table B3-31	SYST_CSR bit assignments	B3-746
Table B3-32	SYST_RVR bit assignments	B3-748

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-33 SYST_CVR bit assignments B3-748
Table B3-34 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments B3-749
Table B3-35 NVIC register summary B3-753
Table B3-36 Implemented NVIC registers, except NVIC_IPRs B3-754
Table B3-37 Implemented NVIC_IPRs B3-754
Table B3-38 NVIC_ISERn Register bit assignments B3-756
Table B3-39 NVIC_ICERn Register bit assignments B3-757
Table B3-40 NVIC_ISPRn Register bit assignments B3-758
Table B3-41 NVIC_ICPRn Register bit assignments B3-759
Table B3-42 NVIC_IABRx Register bit assignments B3-760
Table B3-43 NVIC_IPRx Register bit assignments B3-760
Table B3-44 MPU register summary B3-765
Table B3-45 MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments B3-766
Table B3-46 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments B3-767
Table B3-47 Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions B3-769
Table B3-48 MPU_RNR bit assignments B3-770
Table B3-49 MPU_RBAR bit assignments B3-771
Table B3-50 MPU_RASR bit assignments B3-772
Table B3-51 TEX, C, B, and S Encoding B3-773
Table B3-52 Cache policy encoding B3-774
Table B3-53 Access permissions field encoding B3-775
Table B3-54 Execute Never encoding B3-775
Table B4-1 Processor Feature ID register support in the SCS B4-778
Table B4-2 Supported Synchronization Primitives B4-793
Table B5-1 Special register field encoding B5-798
Table B5-2 <bits> encoding on MSR APSR writes B5-799
Table C1-1 PPB debug related regions C1-811
Table C1-2 Determining the debug support in an ARMv7-M implementation C1-813
Table C1-3 ROM table entry format C1-816
Table C1-4 ARMv7-M DAP accessible ROM table C1-817
Table C1-5 ARMv7 debug authentication signals C1-820
Table C1-6 Debug events C1-824
Table C1-7 Debug stepping control using the DHCSR C1-825
Table C1-8 Debug register summary C1-828
Table C1-9 DFSR bit assignments C1-829
Table C1-10 DHCSR bit assignments C1-830
Table C1-11 DCRSR bit assignments C1-834
Table C1-12 DCRDR bit assignments C1-837
Table C1-13 DEMCR bit assignments C1-839
Table C1-14 Register summary C1-849
Table C1-15 ITM_STIMx register bit assignments C1-850
Table C1-16 ITM_TERx bit assignments C1-851
Table C1-17 Mapping between ITM_TERs, stimulus ports, and ITM_STIMs C1-851
Table C1-18 ITM_TPR bit assignments C1-852
Table C1-19 ITM_TCR bit assignments C1-853
Table C1-20 DWT_FUNCTION register comparison type definition C1-858
Table C1-21 DWT address comparison functions C1-860

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-22 DWT cycle count comparison functions C1-863
Table C1-23 DWT data value comparison functions C1-865
Table C1-24 CYCCNT tap bit for POSTCNT timer C1-872
Table C1-25 Effect of a CYCCNT tap bit transition when POSTCNT is zero C1-873
Table C1-26 CYCCNT tap bit for synchronization packet timer C1-874
Table C1-27 DWT_CTRL profile counter overflow event enable bits C1-876
Table C1-28 DWT register summary C1-878
Table C1-29 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments C1-880
Table C1-30 DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments C1-884
Table C1-31 DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments C1-885
Table C1-32 DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments C1-886
Table C1-33 DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments C1-887
Table C1-34 DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments C1-888
Table C1-35 DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments C1-889
Table C1-36 DWT_PCSR bit assignments C1-890
Table C1-37 DWT_COMPn register bit assignments C1-891
Table C1-38 DWT_MASKn register bit assignments C1-892
Table C1-39 DWT_FUNCTIONn register bit assignments C1-894
Table C1-40 Required TPIU registers C1-898
Table C1-41 TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments C1-899
Table C1-42 TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments C1-900
Table C1-43 TPIU_ACPR bit assignments C1-901
Table C1-44 TPIU_SPPR bit assignments C1-902
Table C1-45 TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments C1-903
Table C1-46 Flash Patch and Breakpoint register summary C1-906
Table C1-47 FP_CTRL register bit assignments C1-907
Table C1-48 FP_REMAP register bit assignments C1-908
Table C1-49 FP_COMPn register bit assignments C1-910
Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats AppxA-914
Table A-2 ARMv7-M and CoreSight management registers AppxA-915
Table B-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax AppxB-918
Table B-2 UAL equivalents of pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics AppxB-923
Table D-1 ITM and DWT protocol packet categories AppxD-932
Table D-2 ITM and DWT protocol packet formats AppxD-935
Table D-3 ITM and DWT Instrumentation and Hardware source packet formats . AppxD-941
Table D-4 SS value and payload size AppxD-942
Table D-5 Event counter packet payload bit assignments AppxD-945
Table D-6 Exception trace packet payload bit assignments AppxD-946
Table D-7 Discriminator IDs for Data trace packets AppxD-949
Table F-1 Conventions for bitstrings with and without do not care bits AppxF-967
Table G-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords AppxG-984
Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures AppxG-988
Table H-1 ARM core register index AppxH-1002
Table H-2 Memory-mapped system register index AppxH-1004
Table H-3 Memory-mapped debug register index AppxH-1007

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

List of Figures
ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual

Figure A2-1	Alternative views of the FP extension register bank	A2-54
Figure A2-2	FPSCR bit assignments	A2-56
Figure A3-1	Little-endian byte format	A3-85
Figure A3-2	Big-endian byte format	A3-85
Figure A3-3	Little-endian memory system	A3-86
Figure A3-4	Big-endian memory system	A3-86
Figure A3-5	Instruction byte order in memory	A3-87
Figure A3-6	Local monitor state machine diagram	A3-91
Figure A3-7	Global monitor state machine diagram for a processor in a multiprocessor system	A3-94
Figure A3-8	Memory ordering restrictions	A3-115
Figure B1-1	The PSR register layout	B1-624
Figure B1-2	The special-purpose mask registers	B1-627
Figure B1-3	Alignment options when stacking the basic frame	B1-648
Figure B1-4	Alignment options when stacking the Extended frame	B1-651
Figure B3-1	CPUID Base Register bit assignments	B3-713
Figure B3-2	ICSR bit assignments	B3-714
Figure B3-3	VTOR bit assignments	B3-716
Figure B3-4	AIRCR bit assignments	B3-717
Figure B3-5	SCR bit assignments	B3-719
Figure B3-6	CCR bit assignments	B3-720
Figure B3-7	SHPR1 Register bit assignments	B3-723
Figure B3-8	SHPR2 Register bit assignments	B3-724

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure B3-9 SHPR3 Register bit assignments B3-724
Figure B3-10 SHCSR bit assignments B3-726
Figure B3-11 CFSR bit assignments B3-728
Figure B3-12 MMFSR bit assignments B3-729
Figure B3-13 BFSR bit assignments B3-730
Figure B3-14 UFSR bit assignments B3-731
Figure B3-15 HFSR bit assignments B3-733
Figure B3-16 MMFAR bit assignments B3-734
Figure B3-17 BFAR bit assignments B3-734
Figure B3-18 CPACR bit assignments B3-735
Figure B3-19 FPCCR bit assignments B3-737
Figure B3-20 FPCAR bit assignments B3-740
Figure B3-21 FPDSCR bit assignments B3-740
Figure B3-22 ICTR bit assignments B3-741
Figure B3-23 STIR bit assignments B3-742
Figure B3-24 SYST_CSR bit assignments B3-746
Figure B3-25 SYST_RVR bit assignments B3-747
Figure B3-26 SYST_CVR bit assignments B3-748
Figure B3-27 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments B3-749
Figure B3-28 NVIC_ISERn Register bit assignments B3-755
Figure B3-29 NVIC_ICERn Register bit assignments B3-756
Figure B3-30 NVIC_ISPRn Register bit assignments B3-757
Figure B3-31 NVIC_ICPRn Register bit assignments B3-758
Figure B3-32 NVIC_IABRn Register bit assignments B3-759
Figure B3-33 NVIC_IPRn Register bit assignments B3-760
Figure B3-34 MPU_TYPE register bit assignments B3-766
Figure B3-35 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments B3-767
Figure B3-36 MPU_RNR bit assignments B3-769
Figure B3-37 MPU_RBAR bit assignments B3-770
Figure B3-38 MPU_RASR bit assignments B3-772
Figure C1-1 Handshake between DBGRESTART and DBGRESTARTED C1-821
Figure C1-2 DFSR bit assignments C1-829
Figure C1-3 DHCSR bit assignments C1-830
Figure C1-4 DCRSR bit assignments C1-834
Figure C1-5 DCRDR bit assignments C1-837
Figure C1-6 DEMCR bit assignments C1-839
Figure C1-7 Relationship between ITM and other debug components C1-848
Figure C1-8 ITM_STIMx register bit assignments C1-850
Figure C1-9 ITM_TERx bit assignments C1-851
Figure C1-10 ITM_TPR bit assignments C1-852
Figure C1-11 ITM_TCR bit assignments C1-853
Figure C1-12 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments C1-880
Figure C1-13 DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments C1-884
Figure C1-14 DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments C1-885
Figure C1-15 DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments C1-886
Figure C1-16 DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments C1-887
Figure C1-17 DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments C1-888

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure C1-18 DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments C1-889
Figure C1-19 DWT_PCSR bit assignments C1-890
Figure C1-20 DWT_COMPn register bit assignments C1-891
Figure C1-21 DWT_MASKn register bit assignments C1-892
Figure C1-22 DWT_FUNCTIONn register bit assignments C1-893
Figure C1-23 TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments C1-899
Figure C1-24 TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments C1-899
Figure C1-25 TPIU_ACPR bit assignments C1-900
Figure C1-26 TPIU_SPPR bit assignments C1-901
Figure C1-27 TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments C1-902
Figure C1-28 FP_CTRL register bit assignments C1-906
Figure C1-29 FP_REMAP register bit assignments C1-908
Figure C1-30 FP_COMPn register bit assignments C1-909
Figure D-1 Convention for packet descriptions AppxD-933
Figure D-2 Minimum Synchronization packet format AppxD-934
Figure D-3 Overflow packet format AppxD-936
Figure D-4 Local timestamp packet format 1 ..... AppxD-936
Figure D-5 Local timestamp packet for a Local timestamp value of 0b11001001 . AppxD-938
Figure D-6 Local timestamp packet format 2 ..... AppxD-938
Figure D-7 GTS1 Global timestamp packet format AppxD-939
Figure D-8 GTS2 Global timestamp packet format AppxD-940
Figure D-9 Extension packet format AppxD-940
Figure D-10 Extension packet format for stimulus port page number AppxD-941
Figure D-11 Instrumentation packet format AppxD-942
Figure D-12 Instrumentation packet for a halfword write of 0x03A1 ..... AppxD-942
Figure D-13 Hardware source packet format AppxD-943
Figure D-14 Event packet format AppxD-944
Figure D-15 Exception trace packet format AppxD-945
Figure D-16 Periodic PC sample packet format AppxD-946
Figure D-17 Periodic PC sleep packet format AppxD-947
Figure D-18 Data trace packet header format AppxD-948
Figure D-19 Data trace PC value packet format, IDs 8, 10, 12, or 14 ..... AppxD-949
Figure D-20 Data trace address offset packet format, IDs 9, 11, 13, or 15 ..... AppxD-949
Figure D-21 Data trace data value packet format, IDs 16-23 ..... AppxD-950

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Preface

This preface describes the contents of this manual, then lists the conventions and terminology it uses.

- *About this manual* on page xxii
- *Using this manual* on page xxiii
- *Conventions* on page xxvi
- *Further reading* on page xxvii
- *Feedback* on page xxviii.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

About this manual

This manual documents the Microcontroller profile of version 7 of the ARM® Architecture, the ARMv7-M architecture profile. For short definitions of all the ARMv7 profiles see *About the ARMv7 architecture, and architecture profiles* on page A1-32.

The manual has the following parts:

Part A The application level programming model and memory model information along with the instruction set as visible to the application programmer.

This is the information required to program applications or to develop the toolchain components (compiler, linker, assembler and disassembler) excluding the debugger. For ARMv7-M, this is almost entirely a subset of material common to the other two profiles. Instruction set details that differ between profiles are clearly stated.

Note

All ARMv7 profiles support a common procedure calling standard, the *ARM Architecture Procedure Calling Standard* (AAPCS).

Part B The system level programming model and system level support instructions required for system correctness. The system level supports the ARMv7-M exception model. It also provides features for configuration and control of processor resources and management of memory access rights.

This is the information in addition to Part A required for an operating system (OS) and/or system support software. It includes details of register banking, the exception model, memory protection (management of access rights) and cache support.

Part B is profile specific. ARMv7-M introduces a new programmers' model and as such has some fundamental differences at the system level from the other profiles. As ARMv7-M is a memory-mapped architecture, the system memory map is documented here.

Part C The debug features to support the ARMv7-M debug architecture and the programming interface to the debug environment.

This is the information required in addition to Parts A and B to write a debugger. Part C covers details of the different types of debug:

- halting debug and the related Debug state
- exception-based monitor debug
- non-invasive support for event generation and signalling of the events to an external agent.

This part is profile specific and includes several debug features that are supported only in the ARMv7-M architecture profile.

Appendices The appendices give information that relates to, but is not part of, the ARMv7-M architecture profile specification.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Using this manual

The information in this manual is organized into four parts as described below.

Part A, Application level architecture

Part A describes the application level view of the architecture. It contains the following chapters:

Chapter A1 ***Introduction***

Introduces the ARMv7 architecture, the architecture profiles it defines, and the ARMv7-M profile defined by this manual.

Chapter A2 ***Application Level Programmers' Model***

Gives an application-level view of the ARMv7-M programmers' model, including a summary of the exception model.

Chapter A3 ***ARM Architecture Memory Model***

Gives an application-level view of the ARMv7-M memory model, including the ARM memory attributes and memory ordering model.

Chapter A4 ***The ARMv7-M Instruction Set***

Describes the ARMv7-M Thumb® instruction set.

Chapter A5 ***The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding***

Describes the encoding of the Thumb instruction set.

Chapter A6 ***The Floating-Point Instruction Set Encoding***

Describes the encoding of the floating-point instruction set extension of the Thumb instruction set. The optional *floating point* (FP) architecture extension provides these additional instructions.

Chapter A7 ***Instruction Details***

Provides detailed reference material on each Thumb instruction, arranged alphabetically by instruction mnemonic, including summary information for system-level instructions.

Part B, System level architecture

Part B describes the system level view of the architecture. It contains the following chapters:

Chapter B1 ***System Level Programmers' Model***

Gives a system-level view of the ARMv7-M programmers' model, including the exception model.

Chapter B2 ***System Memory Model***

Provides a pseudocode description of the ARMv7-M memory model.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter B3 *System Address Map*

Describes the ARMv7-M system address map, including the memory-mapped registers and the optional *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA).

Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*

Describes the CPUID scheme. This provides registers that identify the architecture version and many features of the processor implementation.

Chapter B5 *System Instruction Details*

Provides detailed reference material on the system-level instructions.

Part C, Debug architecture

Part C describes the debug architecture. It contains the following chapter:

Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug*

Describes the ARMv7-M debug architecture.

Part D, Appendices

This manual contains a glossary and the following appendices:

Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs*

Summarizes the ARM CoreSight™ compatible ID registers used for ARM architecture infrastructure identification.

Appendix B *Legacy Instruction Mnemonics*

Describes the legacy mnemonics and their *Unified Assembler Language* (UAL) equivalents.

Appendix C *Deprecated Features in ARMv7-M*

Lists the deprecated architectural features, with references to their descriptions in parts A to C of the manual where appropriate.

Appendix D *Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol*

Describes the debug trace packet protocol used to export ITM and DWT sourced information.

Appendix E *ARMv7-R Differences*

Summarizes the differences between the ARMv7-R and ARMv7-M profiles.

Appendix F *Pseudocode Definition*

Provides the formal definition of the pseudocode used in this manual.

Appendix G *Pseudocode Index*

An index to definitions of pseudocode operators, keywords, functions, and procedures.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix H *Register Index*

An index to register descriptions in the manual.

Glossary

Glossary of terms used in this manual. The glossary does not include terms associated with the pseudocode.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Conventions

This manual employs typographic and other conventions intended to improve its ease of use.

General typographic conventions

`monospaced`	Used for assembler syntax descriptions, pseudocode, and source code examples. Also used in the main text for instruction mnemonics and for references to other items appearing in assembler syntax descriptions, pseudocode, and source code examples.
italic	Highlights important notes, introduces special terminology, and denotes internal cross-references and citations.
bold	Denotes signal names and is used for terms in descriptive lists, where appropriate.
SMALL CAPITALS	Used for a few terms that have specific technical meanings, that are included in the Glossary.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Further reading

This section lists publications that provide additional information on the ARM architecture and ARM family of processors. This manual provides architecture information, the contract between hardware and software for development of ARM compliant processors, compiler and debug tools development and software to run on the ARM targets. A *Technical Reference Manual* (TRM) describes the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED features of a processor that implements this architecture. See the device specification published by the ARM silicon partner for additional system details.

ARM periodically provides updates and corrections to its documentation. For the latest information and errata, some materials are published at `http://www.arm.com`. Alternatively, contact your distributor, or silicon partner who will have access to the latest published ARM information, as well as information specific to the device of interest. Your local ARM office has access to the latest published ARM information.

ARM publications

This document defines the ARMv7-M architecture profile. Other publications relating to this profile, and to the ARM debug architecture are:

- *Cortex-M3 Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0337)
- *Procedure Call Standard for the ARM Architecture* (ARM GENC 003534)
- *Run-time ABI for the ARM Architecture* (ARM IHI 0043)
- *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0031)
- *CoreSight Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0029)
- *CoreSight Components Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0314)
- *Embedded Trace Macrocell Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0014)
- *CoreSight Program Flow Trace Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0035).

For information about the ARMv6-M architecture profile see the *ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0419).

For information about the ARMv7-A and -R profiles see the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition* (ARM DDI 0406).

External publications

The following books are referred to in this manual:

- ANSI/IEEE Std 754-1985 and ANSI/IEEE Std 754-2008, *IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic*. Unless otherwise indicated, references to IEEE 754 refer to either issue of the standard.

  Note

  This document does not adopt the terminology defined in the 2008 issue of the standard.

- JEP106, *Standard Manufacturers Identification Code*, JEDEC Solid State Technology Association.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Feedback

ARM welcomes feedback on its documentation.

Feedback on this book

If you have comments on the content of this manual, send e-mail to `errata@arm.com`. Give:

- the title
- the number, ARM DDI 0403D
- the page numbers to which your comments apply
- a concise explanation of your comments.

ARM also welcomes general suggestions for additions and improvements.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Part A

Application Level Architecture

Chapter A1
Introduction

This chapter introduces the ARMv7 architecture, the architecture profiles it defines, and the ARMv7-M profile defined by this manual. It contains the following sections:

- *About the ARMv7 architecture, and architecture profiles* on page A1-32
- *The ARMv7-M architecture profile* on page A1-33
- *Architecture extensions* on page A1-35.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A1.1 About the ARMv7 architecture, and architecture profiles

ARMv7 is documented as a set of architecture profiles. The profiles are defined as follows:

ARMv7-A The application profile for systems supporting the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and requiring virtual address support in the memory management model.

ARMv7-R The realtime profile for systems supporting the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and requiring physical address only support in the memory management model

ARMv7-M The microcontroller profile for systems supporting only the Thumb instruction set, and where overall size and deterministic operation for an implementation are more important than absolute performance.

While profiles were formally introduced with the ARMv7 development, the A-profile and R-profile have implicitly existed in earlier versions, associated with the Virtual Memory System Architecture (VMSA) and Protected Memory System Architecture (PMSA) respectively.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A1.2 The ARMv7-M architecture profile

The ARM architecture has evolved through several major revisions to a point where it supports implementations across a wide spectrum of performance points, with over a billion parts per annum being produced. The latest version, ARMv7, formally recognizes this diversity by defining a set of architecture profiles that tailor the architecture to different market requirements. A key factor is that the application level is consistent across all profiles, and the bulk of the variation is at the system level.

The introduction of Thumb-2 technology in ARMv6T2 provided a balance to the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and the opportunity for the ARM architecture to be extended into new markets, in particular the microcontroller marketplace. To take maximum advantage of this opportunity, ARM has introduced the ARMv7-M architecture profile for microcontroller implementations, complementing its strengths in the high performance and real-time embedded markets. ARMv7-M is a Thumb-only profile with a new system level programmers' model.

Key criteria for ARMv7-M implementations are as follows:

- Enable implementations with industry leading power, performance and area constraints:
  - provides opportunities for simple pipeline designs offering leading edge system performance levels in a broad range of markets and applications.
- Highly deterministic operation:
  - single or low cycle count execution
  - minimal interrupt latency, with short pipelines
  - cacheless operation.
- Excellent C/C++ target. This aligns with the ARM programming standards in this area:
  - exception handlers are standard C/C++ functions, entered using standard calling conventions.
- Designed for deeply embedded systems:
  - low pincount devices
  - enables new entry level opportunities for the ARM architecture.
- Provides debug and software profiling support for event driven systems.

This manual is specific to the ARMv7-M profile.

A1.2.1 The ARMv7-M instruction set

ARMv7-M only supports execution of Thumb instructions. The Floating-point (FP) extension adds single-precision floating-point instructions to the Thumb instruction set. For more information see Chapter A4 *The ARMv7-M Instruction Set*

For details of the instruction encodings see:

- Chapter A5 *The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding*
- Chapter A6 *The Floating-Point Instruction Set Encoding*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

For descriptions of the instructions supported, see:

- Chapter A7 *Instruction Details*
- Chapter B5 *System Instruction Details*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A1.3 Architecture extensions

This manual describes the following extensions to the ARMv7-M architecture profile:

DSP extension This optional extension adds the ARM *Digital Signal Processing* (DSP) instructions to the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set. These instructions include saturating and unsigned Single Instruction Multiple Data (SIMD) instructions.

An ARMv7-M implementation that includes the DSP extension is called an ARMv7E-M implementation, and Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* identifies the added instructions as ARMv7E-M instructions.

Floating-point extension

This optional extension adds single-precision floating point instructions to the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set. This is a single-precision implementation of the VFPv4-D16 extension defined for the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles.

Note

In the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, the optional floating-point extensions are called VFP extensions. This name is historic, and the abbreviation of the corresponding ARMv7-M profile extension is FP extension. The instructions introduced in the ARMv7-M FP extension are identical to the equivalent single-precision floating-point instructions in the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R profiles, and use the same instruction mnemonics. These mnemonics start with `V`.

The Floating-point extension is called the FPv4-SP extension. and Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* identifies the added instructions as FPv4-SP instructions.

Based on the VFP implementation options defined for the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, a full characterization of the ARMv7-M Floating-point extension is FPv4-SP-D16-M. Some software tools might require this characterization.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A2
Application Level Programmers' Model

This chapter gives an application-level view of the ARMv7-M programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *About the application level programmers' model* on page A2-38
- *ARM processor data types and arithmetic* on page A2-39
- *Registers and execution state* on page A2-46
- *Exceptions, faults and interrupts* on page A2-50
- *Coprocessor support* on page A2-52
- *The optional Floating-point extension* on page A2-53.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.1 About the application level programmers' model

This chapter contains the programmers' model information required for application development.

The information in this chapter is distinct from the system information required to service and support application execution under an operating system. That information is given in Chapter B1 *System Level Programmers' Model*. System level support requires access to all features and facilities of the architecture, a level of access generally referred to as privileged operation. System code determines whether an application runs in a privileged or unprivileged manner. An operating system supports both privileged and unprivileged operation, but an application usually runs unprivileged.

An application running unprivileged:

- means the operating system can allocate system resources to the application, as either private or shared resources
- provides a degree of protection from other processes and tasks, and so helps protect the operating system from malfunctioning applications.

Running unprivileged means the processor is in Thread mode, see *Interaction with the system level architecture*.

A2.1.1 Interaction with the system level architecture

Thread mode is the fundamental mode for application execution in ARMv7-M and is selected on reset. Thread mode execution can be unprivileged or privileged. Thread mode can raise a supervisor call using the `SVC` instruction, generating a Supervisor Call (SVCall) exception that the processor takes in Handler mode. Alternatively, Thread mode can handle system access and control directly.

All exceptions execute in Handler mode. SVCall handlers manage resources, such as interaction with peripherals, memory allocation and management of software stacks, on behalf of the application.

This chapter only provides system level information that is needed to understand operation at application level. Where appropriate it:

- gives an overview of the system level information
- gives references to the system level descriptions in Chapter B1 *System Level Programmers' Model* and elsewhere.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.2 ARM processor data types and arithmetic

ARMv7-M processors support the following data types in memory:

Byte 8 bits
Halfword 16 bits
Word 32 bits

Processor registers are 32 bits in size. The instruction set contains instructions supporting the following data types held in registers:

- 32-bit pointers
- unsigned or signed 32-bit integers
- unsigned 16-bit or 8-bit integers, held in zero-extended form
- signed 16-bit or 8-bit integers, held in sign-extended form
- unsigned or signed 64-bit integers held in two registers.

Load and store operations can transfer bytes, halfwords, or words to and from memory. Loads of bytes or halfwords zero-extend or sign-extend the data as it is loaded, as specified in the appropriate load instruction.

The instruction sets include load and store operations that transfer two or more words to and from memory. You can load and store 64-bit integers using these instructions.

When any of the data types is described as *unsigned*, the N-bit data value represents a non-negative integer in the range 0 to 2^N-1, using normal binary format.

When any of these types is described as *signed*, the N-bit data value represents an integer in the range -2^{N-1} to $+2^{N-1}$-1, using two's complement format.

Direct instruction support for 64-bit integers is limited, and most 64-bit operations require sequences of two or more instructions to synthesize them.

A2.2.1 Integer arithmetic

The instruction set provides operations on the values in registers, including bitwise logical operations, shifts, additions, subtractions, and multiplications. This manual describes these operations using pseudocode, usually in one of the following ways:

- Direct use of the pseudocode operators and built-in functions defined in *Operators and built-in functions* on page AppxF-967.
- Using pseudocode helper functions defined in the main text.
- Using a sequence of the form:
  1. Use of the `SInt()`, `UInt()`, and `Int()` built-in functions to convert the bitstring contents of the instruction operands to the unbounded integers that they represent as two's complement or unsigned integers. *Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxF-970 defines these functions.
  2. Use of mathematical operators, built-in functions and helper functions on those unbounded integers to calculate other two's complement or unsigned integers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

3. Use of one of the following to convert an unbounded integer result into a bitstring result that can be written to a register:
   - the bitstring extraction operator defined in *Bitstring extraction* on page AppxF-968
   - the saturation helper functions described in *Pseudocode details of saturation* on page A2-44.

Appendix F *Pseudocode Definition* gives a general description of the ARM pseudocode.

Shift and rotate operations

The following types of shift and rotate operations are used in instructions:

Logical Shift Left

(`LSL`) moves each bit of a bitstring left by a specified number of bits. Zeros are shifted in at the right end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the left end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Logical Shift Right

(`LSR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Zeros are shifted in at the left end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the right end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Arithmetic Shift Right

(`ASR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Copies of the leftmost bit are shifted in at the left end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the right end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Rotate Right (`ROR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Each bit that is shifted off the right end of the bitstring is re-introduced at the left end. The last bit shifted off the the right end of the bitstring can be produced as a carry output.

Rotate Right with Extend

(`RRX`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by one bit. The carry input is shifted in at the left end of the bitstring. The bit shifted off the right end of the bitstring can be produced as a carry output.

Pseudocode details of shift and rotate operations

These shift and rotate operations are supported in pseudocode by the following functions:

```
// LSL_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) LSL_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = x : Zeros(shift);
    result = extended_x<N-1:0>;
    carry_out = extended_x<N>;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    return (result, carry_out);

// LSL()
// =====

bits(N) LSL(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = LSL_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// LSR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) LSR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = ZeroExtend(x, shift+N);
    result = extended_x<shift+N-1:shift>;
    carry_out = extended_x<shift-1>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// LSR()
// =====

bits(N) LSR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = LSR_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// ASR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) ASR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = SignExtend(x, shift+N);
    result = extended_x<shift+N-1:shift>;
    carry_out = extended_x<shift-1>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// ASR()
// =====

bits(N) ASR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = ASR_C(x, shift);
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// ROR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) ROR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift != 0;
    m = shift MOD N;
    result = LSR(x,m) OR LSL(x,N-m);
    carry_out = result<N-1>;
    return (result, carry_out);


// ROR()
// =====

bits(N) ROR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    if n == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = ROR_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// RRX_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) RRX_C(bits(N) x, bit carry_in)
    result = carry_in : x<N-1:1>;
    carry_out = x<0>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// RRX()
// =====

bits(N) RRX(bits(N) x, bit carry_in)
    (result, -) = RRX_C(x, carry_in);
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Pseudocode details of addition and subtraction

In pseudocode, addition and subtraction can be performed on any combination of unbounded integers and bitstrings, provided that if they are performed on two bitstrings, the bitstrings must be identical in length. The result is another unbounded integer if both operands are unbounded integers, and a bitstring of the same length as the bitstring operand(s) otherwise. For the precise definition of these operations, see *Addition and subtraction* on page AppxF-971.

The main addition and subtraction instructions can produce status information about both unsigned carry and signed overflow conditions. This status information can be used to synthesize multi-word additions and subtractions. In pseudocode the `AddWithCarry()` function provides an addition with a carry input and carry and overflow outputs:

```
// AddWithCarry()
// ==============

(bits(N), bit, bit) AddWithCarry(bits(N) x, bits(N) y, bit carry_in)
    unsigned_sum = UInt(x) + UInt(y) + UInt(carry_in);
    signed_sum   = SInt(x) + SInt(y) + UInt(carry_in);
    result       = unsigned_sum<N-1:0>;  // same value as signed_sum<N-1:0>
    carry_out    = if UInt(result) == unsigned_sum then '0' else '1';
    overflow     = if SInt(result) == signed_sum then '0' else '1';
    return (result, carry_out, overflow);
```

An important property of the `AddWithCarry()` function is that if:

```
(result, carry_out, overflow) = AddWithCarry(x, NOT(y), carry_in)
```

then:

- If `carry_in == '1'`, then `result == x-y` with `overflow == '1'` if signed overflow occurred during the subtraction and `carry_out == '1'` if unsigned borrow did not occur during the subtraction (that is, if `x >= y`).
- If `carry_in == '0'`, then `result == x-y-1` with `overflow == '1'` if signed overflow occurred during the subtraction and `carry_out == '1'` if unsigned borrow did not occur during the subtraction (that is, if `x > y`).

Together, these mean that the `carry_in` and `carry_out` bits in `AddWithCarry()` calls can act as *NOT borrow* flags for subtractions as well as *carry* flags for additions.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Pseudocode details of saturation

Some instructions perform *saturating arithmetic*, that is, if the result of the arithmetic overflows the destination signed or unsigned N-bit integer range, the result produced is the largest or smallest value in that range, rather than wrapping around modulo 2^N. This is supported in pseudocode by the `SignedSatQ()` and `UnsignedSatQ()` functions when a boolean result is wanted saying whether saturation occurred, and by the `SignedSat()` and `UnsignedSat()` functions when only the saturated result is wanted:

```
// SignedSatQ()
// ============

(bits(N), boolean) SignedSatQ(integer i, integer N)
    if i > 2^(N-1) - 1 then
        result = 2^(N-1) - 1;  saturated = TRUE;
    elsif i < -(2^(N-1)) then
        result = -(2^(N-1));  saturated = TRUE;
    else
        result = i;  saturated = FALSE;
    return (result<N-1:0>, saturated);

// UnsignedSatQ()
// ==============

(bits(N), boolean) UnsignedSatQ(integer i, integer N)
    if i > 2^N - 1 then
        result = 2^N - 1;  saturated = TRUE;
    elsif i < 0 then
        result = 0;  saturated = TRUE;
    else
        result = i;  saturated = FALSE;
    return (result<N-1:0>, saturated);

// SignedSat()
// ===========

bits(N) SignedSat(integer i, integer N)
    (result, -) = SignedSatQ(i, N);
    return result;

// UnsignedSat()
// =============

bits(N) UnsignedSat(integer i, integer N)
    (result, -) = UnsignedSatQ(i, N);
    return result;
```

`SatQ(i, N, unsigned)` returns either `UnsignedSatQ(i, N)` or `SignedSatQ(i, N)` depending on the value of its third argument, and `Sat(i, N, unsigned)` returns either `UnsignedSat(i, N)` or `SignedSat(i, N)` depending on the value of its third argument:

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// SatQ()
// ======

(bits(N), boolean) SatQ(integer i, integer N, boolean unsigned)
    (result, sat) = if unsigned then UnsignedSatQ(i, N) else SignedSatQ(i, N);
    return (result, sat);

// Sat()
// =====

bits(N) Sat(integer i, integer N, boolean unsigned)
    result = if unsigned then UnsignedSat(i, N) else SignedSat(i, N);
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.3 Registers and execution state

The application level programmers' model provides details of the general-purpose and special-purpose registers visible to the application programmer, the ARM memory model, and the instruction set used to load registers from memory, store registers to memory, or manipulate data (data operations) within the registers.

Applications often interact with external events. A summary of the types of events recognized in the architecture, along with the mechanisms provided in the architecture to interact with events, is included in *Exceptions, faults and interrupts* on page A2-50). How events are handled is a system level topic described in *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631.

A2.3.1 ARM core registers

There are thirteen general-purpose 32-bit registers, R0-R12, and an additional three 32-bit registers that have special names and usage models.

SP Stack pointer, used as a pointer to the active stack. For usage restrictions see *Use of 0b1101 as a register specifier* on page A5-154. This is preset to the top of the Main stack on reset. See *The SP registers* on page B1-623 for more information. SP is sometimes referred to as R13.

LR Link Register, used to store the Return Link. This is a value that relates to the return address from a subroutine that is entered using a Branch with Link instruction. A reset sets this register to `0xFFFFFFFF`. The reset value causes a fault condition if the processor uses it when attempting a subroutine return. The LR is also updated on exception entry, see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643. LR is sometimes referred to as R14.

Note

LR can be used for other purposes when it is not required to support a return from a subroutine.

PC Program Counter. For details on the usage model of the PC see *Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier* on page A5-153. The PC is loaded with the reset handler start address on reset. PC is sometimes referred to as R15.

Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations

In pseudocode, the `R[]` function is used to:

- Read or write R0-R12, SP, and LR, using n == 0-12, 13, and 14 respectively.
- Read the PC, using n == 15.

This function has prototypes:

```
bits(32) R[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 15;

R[integer n] = bits(32) value
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 14;
```

For more information about the R[] function, see *Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-629. Writing an address to the PC causes either a simple branch to that address or an *interworking* branch that, in ARMv7-M, must select the Thumb instruction set to execute after the branch.

Note

The following pseudocode defines behavior in ARMv7-M. It is much simpler than the equivalent pseudocode function definitions that apply to older ARM architecture variants and other ARMv7 profiles.

The BranchWritePC() function performs a simple branch:

```
// BranchWritePC()
// ===============

BranchWritePC(bits(32) address)
    BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');
```

The BXWritePC() and BLXWritePC() functions each perform an interworking branch:

```
// BXWritePC()
// ===========

BXWritePC(bits(32) address)
    if CurrentMode == Mode_Handler && address<31:28> == '1111' then
        ExceptionReturn(address<27:0>);
    else
        EPSR.T = address<0>;  // if EPSR.T == 0, a UsageFault('Invalid State')
                              // is taken on the next instruction
        BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');

// BLXWritePC()
// ============

BLXWritePC(bits(32) address)
    EPSR.T = address<0>;  // if EPSR.T == 0, a UsageFault('Invalid State')
                          // is taken on the next instruction
    BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');
```

The LoadWritePC() and ALUWritePC() functions are used for two cases where the behavior was systematically modified between architecture versions. The functions simplify to aliases of the branch functions in the M-profile architecture variants:

```
// LoadWritePC()
// =============

LoadWritePC(bits(32) address)
    BXWritePC(address);


// ALUWritePC()
```

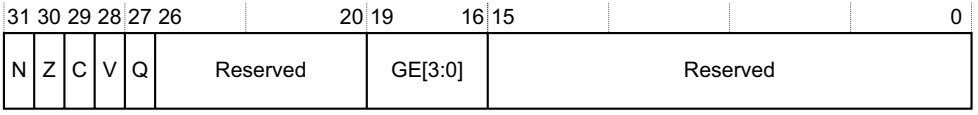

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// ============

ALUWritePC(bits(32) address)
    BranchWritePC(address);
```

A2.3.2 The Application Program Status Register (APSR)

Program status is reported in the 32-bit *Application Program Status Register* (APSR). The APSR bit assignments are:



APSR bit fields are in the following categories:

- Reserved bits are allocated to system features or are available for future expansion. Further information on currently allocated reserved bits is available in *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624. Application level software must ignore values read from reserved bits, and preserve their value on a write. The bits are defined as UNK/SBZP.
- Flags that can be updated by many instructions:

  N, bit [31] Negative condition code flag. Set to bit [31] of the result of the instruction. If the result is regarded as a two's complement signed integer, then N == 1 if the result is negative and N == 0 if it is positive or zero.

  Z, bit [30] Zero condition code flag. Set to 1 if the result of the instruction is zero, and to 0 otherwise. A result of zero often indicates an equal result from a comparison.

  C, bit [29] Carry condition code flag. Set to 1 if the instruction results in a carry condition, for example an unsigned overflow on an addition.

  V, bit [28] Overflow condition code flag. Set to 1 if the instruction results in an overflow condition, for example a signed overflow on an addition.

  Q, bit [27] Set to 1 if a `SSAT` or `USAT` instruction changes the input value for the signed or unsigned range of the result. In a processor that implements the DSP extension, the processor sets this bit to 1 to indicate an overflow on some multiplies. Setting this bit to 1 is called saturation.

  GE[3:0], bits[19:16], DSP extension only

  Greater than or Equal flags. SIMD instructions update these flags to indicate the results from individual bytes or halfwords of the operation. Software can use these flags to control a later `SEL` instruction. For more information, see *SEL* on page A7-425.

  In a processor that does not implement the DSP extension these bits are reserved.

A2.3.3 Execution state support

ARMv7-M only executes Thumb instructions, and therefore always executes instructions in Thumb state. See Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* for a list of the instructions supported.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In addition to normal program execution, the processor can operate in Debug state, described in Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug*.

A2.3.4 Privileged execution

Good system design practice requires the application developer to have a degree of knowledge of the underlying system architecture and the services it offers. System support requires a level of access generally referred to as privileged operation. The system support code determines whether applications run in a privileged or unprivileged manner. Where both privileged and unprivileged support is provided by an operating system, applications usually run unprivileged, allowing the operating system to allocate system resources for private or shared use by the application, and to provide a degree of protection with respect to other processes and tasks.

Thread mode is the fundamental mode for application execution in ARMv7-M. Thread mode is selected on reset, and can execute in a privileged or unprivileged manner depending on the system environment. Privileged execution is required to manage system resources in many cases. When code is executing unprivileged, Thread mode can execute an `SVC` instruction to generate a supervisor call exception. Privileged execution in Thread mode can raise a supervisor call using `SVC` or handle system access and control directly.

All exceptions execute as privileged code in Handler mode. See *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631 for details. Supervisor call handlers manage resources on behalf of the application such as interaction with peripherals, memory allocation and management of software stacks.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.4 Exceptions, faults and interrupts

An exception can be caused by the execution of an exception generating instruction or triggered as a response to a system behavior such as an interrupt, memory management protection violation, alignment or bus fault, or a debug event. Synchronous and asynchronous exceptions can occur within the architecture.

How events are handled is a system level topic described in *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631.

A2.4.1 System-related events

The following types of exception are system-related. Where there is direct correlation with an instruction, reference to the associated instruction is made.

Supervisor calls are used by application code to request a service from the underlying operating system. Using the SVC instruction, the application can instigate a supervisor call for a service requiring privileged access to the system.

Several forms of Fault can occur:

- Instruction execution related errors
- Data memory access errors can occur on any load or store
- Usage faults from a variety of execution state related errors. Attempting to execute an undefined instruction is an example cause of a UsageFault exception.
- Debug events can generate a DebugMonitor exception.

Faults in general are synchronous with respect to the associated executing instruction. Some system errors can cause an imprecise exception where it is reported at a time bearing no fixed relationship to the instruction that caused it.

The processor always treats interrupts as asynchronous to the program flow.

An ARMv7-M implementation includes:

- A system timer, SysTick, and associated interrupt, see *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-744.
- A deferred Supervisor call, PendSV. A handler uses this when it requires service from a Supervisor, typically an underlying operating system. The PendSV handler executes when the processor takes the associated exception. PendSV is supported by the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713. For more information see *Use of SVCall and PendSV to avoid critical code regions* on page B1-641.

  Note

  — The name of this exception, PendSV, indicates that the processor must set the ICSR.PENDSVSET bit to 1 to make the associated exception pending. The exception priority model then determines when the processor takes the exception. This is the only way a processor can enter the PendSV exception handler.

  — For the definition of a Pending exception, see *Exceptions* on page B1-619.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— An application uses the SVC instruction if it requires a Supervisor call that executes synchronously with the program execution.

- A controller for external interrupts, see *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-750.
- A BKPT instruction, that generates a debug event, see *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823.

For power or performance reasons, software might want to notify the system that an action is complete, or provide a hint to the system that it can suspend operation of the current task. The ARMv7-M architecture provides instruction support for the following:

- Send Event and Wait for Event instructions, see *SEV* on page A7-426 and *WFE* on page A7-610
- a Wait For Interrupt instruction,. see *WFI* on page A7-611.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.5 Coprocessor support

An ARMv7-M implementation can optionally support coprocessors. If it does not support them, it treats all coprocessors as non-existent. Possible coprocessors number from 0 to 15, and are called CP0-CP15. ARM reserves CP8 to CP15, and CP0 to CP7 are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, subject to the constraints of the coprocessor instructions.

Coprocessors 10 and 11 support the ARMv7-M *Floating-point* (FP) extension, that provides single-precision floating point operations. On an ARMv7-M implementation that includes the FP extension, software must enable access to both CP10 and CP11 before it can use any features of the extension. For more information see *The optional Floating-point extension* on page A2-53.

If software issues a coprocessor instruction to a non-existent or disabled coprocessor, the processor generates a NOCP UsageFault, see *Fault behavior* on page B1-669.

If software issues an unknown instruction to an enabled coprocessor, the processor generates an UNDEFINSTR UsageFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.6 The optional Floating-point extension

The *Floating-point* (FP) extension is an optional extension to ARMv7-M, described as FPv4-SP. It defines a *Floating Point Unit* (FPU) that provides single-precision floating-point instructions. It supports:

- FP extension registers that software can view as either 32 single-precision or 16 doubleword registers
- single-precision floating-point arithmetic
- conversions between integer, single-precision floating-point, and half-precision floating point formats
- data transfers of single-precision and doubleword registers.

Note

- FPv4-SP is a single-precision only variant of the VFPv4-D16 extension of the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, see the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition*.
- In the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, floating point instructions are called VFP instructions and have mnemonics starting with `V`. Because ARM assembler is highly consistent across architecture versions and profiles, ARMv7-M retains these mnemonics, but normally describes the instructions as floating point instructions, or FP instructions.
- Much of the pseudocode describing floating-point operation is common with the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, and therefore uses VFP to refer to floating-point operations.

The extension supports untrapped handling of *floating-point exceptions*, such as overflow or division by zero. When handled in this way, the floating-point exception sets a cumulative status register bit to 1, and the FP operation returns a defined result. Where appropriate, for example with the inexact and underflow exceptions, the defined result is a valid result with reduced precision.

For system-level information about the FP extension see:

- *FP extension system register* on page B1-685
- *Floating-point support* on page B1-685.

A2.6.1 The FP extension registers

Software can access the FP extension register bank as:

- thirty-two 32-bit single-precision registers, `S0-S31`
- sixteen 64-bit doubleword registers, `D0-D15`.

The extension can use the two views simultaneously. Figure A2-1 on page A2-54 shows the relationship between the two views.

After a reset, the values of the FP extension registers are UNKNOWN.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

After a save of FP context, the values of registers S0-S15 are unknown, see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650. Saving the FP context does not save the values of registers S16-S31, and does not affect the values of those registers.

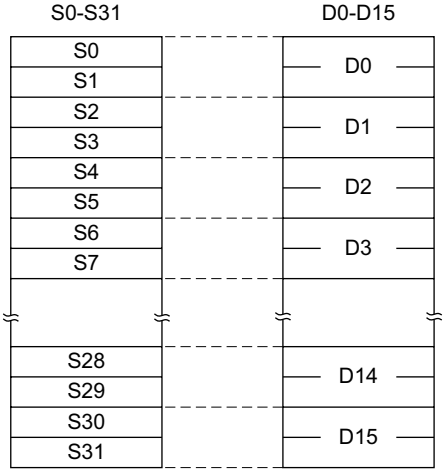


Figure A2-1 Alternative views of the FP extension register bank

The FP extension provides single-precision floating point data-processing instructions, that operate on registers S0-S31. Therefore, this manual describes these registers as the floating point registers. It also provides data transfer instructions that operate on registers S0-S31, or on registers D0-D15.

Note

- Registers S0-S31 are sometimes described as the single-word registers.
- Registers D0-D15 are sometimes described as the double-precision registers.

Other ARM floating point implementations can support 32 double-precision registers, D0-D31. In the ARMv7-M FP extension, and other implementations that support only D0-D15, any instruction that attempts to access any register in the range D16-D31 is UNDEFINED.

Note

Some of the FP pseudocode functions are common to all ARMv7 implementations. Therefore, they can include cases that cannot occur in the ARMv7-M FP extension.

Pseudocode details of the FP extension registers

The pseudocode function VFPSmallRegisterBank() returns TRUE if an FP implementation provides access only to doubleword registers D0-D15. In an ARMv7-M implementation this function always returns TRUE.

The following functions provide the S0-S31 and D0-D15 views of the registers:

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// The 32-bit extension register bank for the FP extension.

array bits(32) _D[0..15];

// S[] - non-assignment form
// =========================

bits(32) S[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 31;
    if (n MOD 2) == 0 then
        result = D[n DIV 2]<31:0>;
    else
        result = D[n DIV 2]<63:32>;
    return result;

// S[] - assignment form
// =====================

S[integer n] = bits(32) value
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 31;
    if (n MOD 2) == 0 then
        D[n DIV 2]<31:0> = value;
    else
        D[n DIV 2]<63:32> = value;
    return;

// D[] - non-assignment form
// =========================

bits(64) D[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 31;
    if n >= 16 && VFPSmallRegisterBank() then UNDEFINED;
    return _D[n];

// D[] - assignment form
// =====================

D[integer n] = bits(64) value
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 31;
    if n >= 16 && VFPSmallRegisterBank() then UNDEFINED;
    _D[n] = value;
    return;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A2.6.2 Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR

The FPSCR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides application-level control of the floating-point system.

Usage constraints Accessible only when software has enabled access to CP10 and CP11, see *Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735.

Creating a new floating-point context sets the AHP, DN, FZ, and RMode fields of the FPSCR to the values specified in the FPDSCR, see *Floating-Point Default Status Control Register, FPDSCR* on page B3-740. For more information, see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650.

Configurations Implemented only when an implementation includes the FP extension.

Attributes A 32-bit read/write register, accessible by unprivileged and privileged software. The FPSCR reset value is UNKNOWN.

Figure A2-2 shows the FPSCR bit assignments.

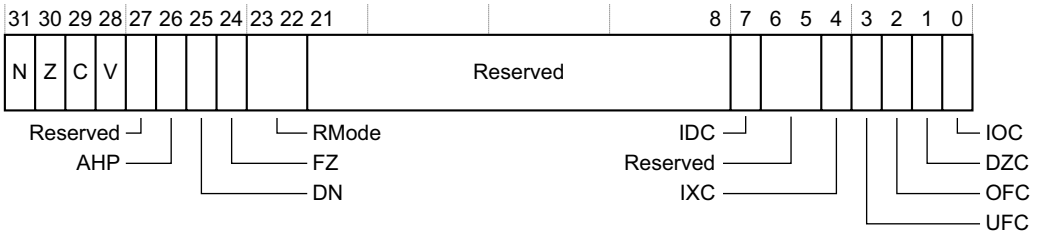


Figure A2-2 FPSCR bit assignments

Table A2-1 shows the FPSCR bit assignments.

Table A2-1 FPSCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function	
[31]	N	Condition code flags. Floating-point comparison operations update these flags.	
[30]	Z	**N**	Negative condition code flag.
		Z	Zero condition code flag.
[29]	C	**C**	Carry condition code flag.
[28]	V	**V**	Overflow condition code flag.
[27]	-	Reserved.	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A2-1 FPSCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[26]	AHP	Alternative half-precision control bit: **0** IEEE 754-2008 half-precision format selected. **1** Alternative half-precision format selected. For more information see *Floating-point half-precision formats* on page A2-60.
[25]	DN	Default NaN mode control bit: **0** NaN operands propagate through to the output of a floating-point operation. **1** Any operation involving one or more NaNs returns the Default NaN. For more information, see *NaN handling and the Default NaN* on page A2-63.
[24]	FZ	Flush-to-zero mode control bit: **0** Flush-to-zero mode disabled. Behavior of the floating-point system is fully compliant with the IEEE 754 standard. **1** Flush-to-zero mode enabled. For more information, see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.
[23:22]	RMode	Rounding Mode control field. The encoding of this field is: **0b00** *Round to Nearest* (RN) mode **0b01** *Round towards Plus Infinity* (RP) mode **0b10** *Round towards Minus Infinity* (RM) mode **0b11** *Round towards Zero* (RZ) mode. The specified rounding mode is used by almost all floating-point instructions.
[21:8]	-	Reserved.
[7]	IDC	Input Denormal cumulative exception bit, see bits [4:0].
[6:5]	-	Reserved.
[4]	IXC	Cumulative exception bits for floating-point exceptions, see also bit [7]. Each of these bits is set to 1 to indicate that the corresponding exception has occurred since 0 was last written to it. For more information about the exceptions indicated by these bits see *Floating-point exceptions* on page A2-64. **IDC, bit[7]** Input Denormal cumulative exception bit. **IXC** Inexact cumulative exception bit. **UFC** Underflow cumulative exception bit. **OFC** Overflow cumulative exception bit. **DZC** Division by Zero cumulative exception bit. **IOC** Invalid Operation cumulative exception bit.
[3]	UFC	
[2]	OFC	
[1]	DZC	
[0]	IOC	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Writes to the FPSCR can have side-effects on various aspects of processor operation. All of these side-effects are synchronous to the FPSCR write. This means they are guaranteed not to be visible to earlier instructions in the execution stream, and they are guaranteed to be visible to later instructions in the execution stream.

Accessing the FPSCR

You read or write the FPSCR, or transfer the FPSCR flags to the corresponding APSR flags, using the `VMRS` and `VMSR` instructions. For more information, see *VMRS* on page A7-592 and *VMSR* on page A7-593. For example:

```
VMRS <Rt>, FPSCR     ; Read  Floating-point System Control Register
VMSR FPSCR, <Rt>     ; Write Floating-point System Control Register
```

A2.6.3 Floating-point data types and arithmetic

The FP extension supports single-precision (32-bit) floating-point data types and arithmetic as defined by the IEEE 754 floating-point standard. It also supports the *ARM standard modifications* to that arithmetic described in *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62 and *NaN handling and the Default NaN* on page A2-63.

ARM standard floating-point arithmetic means IEEE 754 floating-point arithmetic with the ARM standard modifications and the Round to Nearest rounding mode selected.

ARM standard floating-point input and output values

ARM standard floating-point arithmetic supports the following input formats defined by the IEEE 754 floating-point standard:

- Zeros.
- Normalized numbers.
- Denormalized numbers are flushed to 0 before floating-point operations. For more information see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.
- NaNs.
- Infinities.

ARM standard floating-point arithmetic supports the Round to Nearest rounding mode defined by the IEEE 754 standard.

ARM standard floating-point arithmetic supports the following output result formats defined by the IEEE 754 standard:

- Zeros.
- Normalized numbers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- Results that are less than the minimum normalized number are flushed to zero, see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.
- NaNs produced in floating-point operations are always the default NaN, see *NaN handling and the Default NaN* on page A2-63.
- Infinities.

Floating-point single-precision format

The single-precision floating-point format used by the FP extension is as defined by the IEEE 754 standard.

This description includes ARM-specific details that are left open by the standard. It is only intended as an introduction to the formats and to the values they can contain. For full details, especially of the handling of infinities, NaNs and signed zeros, see the IEEE 754 standard.

A single-precision value is a 32-bit word, and must be word-aligned when held in memory. It has the format:



The interpretation of the format depends on the value of the exponent field, bits[30:23]:

0 < exponent < `0xFF`

The value is a *normalized number* and is equal to:

$-1^{S} \times 2^{(\text{exponent} - 127)} \times (1.\text{fraction})$

The minimum positive normalized number is 2^{-126}, or approximately 1.175×10^{-38}.

The maximum positive normalized number is $(2 - 2^{-23}) \times 2^{127}$, or approximately 3.403×10^{38}.

exponent == 0

The value is either a zero or a *denormalized number*, depending on the fraction bits:

fraction == 0

The value is a zero. There are two distinct zeros:

+0 when S==0

–0 when S==1.

These usually behave identically. In particular, the result is *equal* if +0 and –0 are compared as floating-point numbers. However, they yield different results in some circumstances. For example, the sign of the infinity produced as the result of dividing by zero depends on the sign of the zero. The two zeros can be distinguished from each other by performing an integer comparison of the two words.

fraction != 0

The value is a denormalized number and is equal to:

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

$-1^S \times 2^{-126} \times (0.\text{fraction})$

The minimum positive denormalized number is 2^{-149}, or approximately 1.401×10^{-45}.

Denormalized numbers are optionally flushed to zero in the FP extension. For details see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.

exponent == `0xFF`

The value is either an *infinity* or a *Not a Number* (NaN), depending on the fraction bits:

fraction == 0

The value is an infinity. There are two distinct infinities:

+∞ When S==0. This represents all positive numbers that are too big to be represented accurately as a normalized number.

-∞ When S==1. This represents all negative numbers with an absolute value that is too big to be represented accurately as a normalized number.

fraction != 0

The value is a NaN, and is either a *quiet NaN* or a *signaling NaN*.

In the FP architecture, the two types of NaN are distinguished on the basis of their most significant fraction bit, bit[22]:

bit[22] == 0

The NaN is a signaling NaN. The sign bit can take any value, and the remaining fraction bits can take any value except all zeros.

bit[22] == 1

The NaN is a quiet NaN. The sign bit and remaining fraction bits can take any value.

For details of the *default NaN* see *NaN handling and the Default NaN* on page A2-63.

Note

NaNs with different sign or fraction bits are distinct NaNs, but this does not mean you can use floating-point comparison instructions to distinguish them. This is because the IEEE 754 standard specifies that a NaN compares as *unordered* with everything, including itself. However, you can use integer comparisons to distinguish different NaNs.

Floating-point half-precision formats

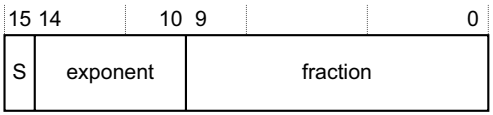
The ARM half-precision floating-point implementation uses two half-precision floating-point formats:

- IEEE half-precision, as described in the IEEE 754-2008 standard
- Alternative half-precision.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The description of IEEE half-precision includes ARM-specific details that are left open by the standard, and is only an introduction to the formats and to the values they can contain. For more information, especially on the handling of infinities, NaNs and signed zeros, see the IEEE 754-2008 standard.

For both half-precision floating-point formats, the layout of the 16-bit number is the same. The format is:



The interpretation of the format depends on the value of the exponent field, bits[14:10] and on which half-precision format is being used.

0 < exponent < `0x1F`

The value is a normalized number and is equal to:

$-1^{S} \times 2^{((exponent-15)} \times (1.fraction)$

The minimum positive normalized number is 2^{-14}, or approximately 6.104×10^{-5}.

The maximum positive normalized number is $(2 - 2^{-10}) \times 2^{15}$, or 65504.

Larger normalized numbers can be expressed using the alternative format when the exponent == `0x1F`.

exponent == 0

The value is either a zero or a denormalized number, depending on the fraction bits:

fraction == 0

The value is a zero. There are two distinct zeros:

+0 when S==0

–0 when S==1.

fraction != 0

The value is a denormalized number and is equal to:

$-1^{S} \times 2^{-14} \times (0.fraction)$

The minimum positive denormalized number is 2^{-24}, or approximately 5.960×10^{-8}.

exponent == `0x1F`

The value depends on which half-precision format is being used:

IEEE Half-precision

The value is either an infinity or a Not a Number (NaN), depending on the fraction bits:

fraction == 0

The value is an infinity. There are two distinct infinities:

+infinity When S==0. This represents all positive numbers that are too big to be represented accurately as a normalized number.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

-infinity When S==1. This represents all negative numbers with an absolute value that is too big to be represented accurately as a normalized number.

fraction != 0

The value is a NaN, and is either a quiet NaN or a signaling NaN. The two types of NaN are distinguished by their most significant fraction bit, bit[9]:

bit[9] == 0 The NaN is a signaling NaN. The sign bit can take any value, and the remaining fraction bits can take any value except all zeros.

bit[9] == 1 The NaN is a quiet NaN. The sign bit and remaining fraction bits can take any value.

Alternative Half-precision

The value is a normalized number and is equal to:

$-1^S \times 2^{16} \times (1.\text{fraction})$

The maximum positive normalized number is $(2-2^{-10}) \times 2^{16}$ or 131008.

Flush-to-zero

Behavior in Flush-to-zero mode differs from normal IEEE 754 arithmetic in the following ways:

- All inputs to floating-point operations that are single-precision de-normalized numbers are treated as though they were zero. This causes an Input Denormal exception, but does not cause an Inexact exception. The Input Denormal exception occurs only in Flush-to-zero mode.

  The FPSCR contains a cumulative exception bit FPSCR.IDC corresponding to the Input Denormal exception. For more information see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56.

  The occurrence of all exceptions except Input Denormal is determined using the input values after flush-to-zero processing has occurred.

- The result of a floating-point operation is flushed to zero if the result of the operation before rounding satisfies the condition:

  $0 < \texttt{Abs(result)} <$ MinNorm, where MinNorm is 2^{-126} for single-precision arithmetic.

  This causes the FPSCR.UFC bit to be set to 1, and prevents any Inexact exception from occurring for the operation.

  Underflow exceptions occur only when a result is flushed to zero.

- An Inexact exception does not occur if the result is flushed to zero, even though the final result of zero is not equivalent to the value that would be produced if the operation were performed with unbounded precision and exponent range.

For information on the FPSCR bits see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

When an input or a result is flushed to zero the value of the sign bit of the zero is preserved. That is, the sign bit of the zero matches the sign bit of the input or result that is being flushed to zero.

Flush-to-zero mode has no effect on half-precision numbers that are inputs to floating-point operations, or results from floating-point operations.

Note

Flush-to-zero mode is incompatible with the IEEE 754 standard, and must not be used when IEEE 754 compatibility is a requirement. Flush-to-zero mode must be treated with care. Although it can lead to a major performance increase on many algorithms, there are significant limitations on its use. These are application dependent:

- On many algorithms, it has no noticeable effect, because the algorithm does not normally use denormalized numbers.
- On other algorithms, it can cause exceptions to occur or seriously reduce the accuracy of the results of the algorithm.

NaN handling and the Default NaN

The IEEE 754 standard specifies that:

- an operation that produces an Invalid Operation floating-point exception generates a quiet NaN as its result
- an operation involving a quiet NaN operand, but not a signaling NaN operand, returns an input NaN as its result.

The FP behavior when Default NaN mode is disabled adheres to this with the following extra details, where the *first operand* means the first argument to the pseudocode function call that describes the operation:

- If an Invalid Operation floating-point exception is produced because one of the operands is a signaling NaN, the quiet NaN result is equal to the signaling NaN with its most significant fraction bit changed to 1. If both operands are signaling NaNs, the result is produced in this way from the first operand.
- If an Invalid Operation floating-point exception is produced for other reasons, the quiet NaN result is the Default NaN.
- If both operands are quiet NaNs, the result is the first operand.

The FP behavior when Default NaN mode is enabled is that the Default NaN is the result of all floating-point operations that:

- generate Invalid Operation floating-point exceptions
- have one or more quiet NaN inputs.

Table A2-2 on page A2-64 shows the format of the default NaN for ARM floating-point processors.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Default NaN mode is selected for FP by setting the FPSCR.DN bit to 1, see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56.

The Invalid Operation exception causes the FPSCR.IOC bit be set to 1. This is not affected by Default NaN mode.

Table A2-2 Default NaN encoding

	Half-precision, IEEE Format	Single-precision
Sign bit	0	0
Exponent	`0x1F`	`0xFF`
Fraction	Bit[9] == 1, bits[8:0] == 0	bit[22] == 1, bits[21:0] == 0

Floating-point exceptions

The FP extension records the following floating-point exceptions in the FPSCR cumulative bits, see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56:

IOC Invalid Operation. The bit is set to 1 if the result of an operation has no mathematical value or cannot be represented. Cases include infinity * 0, +infinity + (–infinity), for example. These tests are made after flush-to-zero processing. For example, if flush-to-zero mode is selected, multiplying a denormalized number and an infinity is treated as 0 * infinity and causes an Invalid Operation floating-point exception.

IOC is also set on any floating-point operation with one or more signaling NaNs as operands, except for negation and absolute value, as described in *FP negation and absolute value* on page A2-68.

DZC Division by Zero. The bit is set to 1 if a divide operation has a zero divisor and a dividend that is not zero, an infinity or a NaN. These tests are made after flush-to-zero processing, so if flush-to-zero processing is selected, a denormalized dividend is treated as zero and prevents Division by Zero from occurring, and a denormalized divisor is treated as zero and causes Division by Zero to occur if the dividend is a normalized number.

For the reciprocal and reciprocal square root estimate functions the dividend is assumed to be +1.0. This means that a zero or denormalized operand to these functions sets the DZC bit.

OFC Overflow. The bit is set to 1 if the absolute value of the result of an operation, produced after rounding, is greater than the maximum positive normalized number for the destination precision.

UFC Underflow. The bit is set to 1 if the absolute value of the result of an operation, produced before rounding, is less than the minimum positive normalized number for the destination precision, and the rounded result is inexact.

The criteria for the Underflow exception to occur are different in Flush-to-zero mode. For details, see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

IXC Inexact. The bit is set to 1 if the result of an operation is not equivalent to the value that would be produced if the operation were performed with unbounded precision and exponent range.

The criteria for the Inexact exception to occur are different in Flush-to-zero mode. For details, see *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.

IDC Input Denormal. The bit is set to 1 if a denormalized input operand is replaced in the computation by a zero, as described in *Flush-to-zero* on page A2-62.

Table A2-3 shows the default results of the floating-point exceptions:

Table A2-3 Floating-point exception default results

Exception type	Default result for positive sign	Default result for negative sign
IOC, Invalid Operation	Quiet NaN	Quiet NaN
DZC, Division by Zero	+∞ (plus infinity)	−∞ (minus infinity)
OFC, Overflow	RN, RP: +∞ (plus infinity) RM, RZ: +MaxNorm	RN, RM: −∞ (minus infinity) RP, RZ: –MaxNorm
UFC, Underflow	Normal rounded result	Normal rounded result
IXC, Inexact	Normal rounded result	Normal rounded result
IDC, Input Denormal	Normal rounded result	Normal rounded result

In Table A2-3:

MaxNorm The maximum normalized number of the destination precision

RM Round towards Minus Infinity mode, as defined in the IEEE 754 standard

RN Round to Nearest mode, as defined in the IEEE 754 standard

RP Round towards Plus Infinity mode, as defined in the IEEE 754 standard

RZ Round towards Zero mode, as defined in the IEEE 754 standard

- For Invalid Operation exceptions, for details of which quiet NaN is produced as the default result see *NaN handling and the Default NaN* on page A2-63.
- For Division by Zero exceptions, the sign bit of the default result is determined normally for a division. This means it is the exclusive OR of the sign bits of the two operands.
- For Overflow exceptions, the sign bit of the default result is determined normally for the overflowing operation.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Combinations of exceptions

The following pseudocode functions perform *floating-point operations*:

```
FixedToFP()
FPAbs()
FPAdd()
FPCompare()
FPDiv()
FPHalfToSingle()
FPMul()
FPMulAdd()
FPNeg()
FPSingleToHalf()
FPSqrt()
FPSub()
FPToFixed()
```

All of these operations except `FPAbs()` and `FPNeg()` can generate floating-point exceptions.

More than one exception can occur on the same operation. The only combinations of exceptions that can occur are:

- Overflow with Inexact
- Underflow with Inexact
- Input Denormal with other exceptions.

Any exception that occurs causes the associated cumulative bit in the FPSCR to be set.

Some floating-point instructions specify more than one floating-point operation, as indicated by the pseudocode descriptions of the instruction. In such cases, an exception on one operation is treated as higher priority than an exception on another operation if the occurrence of the second exception depends on the result of the first operation. Otherwise, it is UNPREDICTABLE which exception is treated as higher priority.

For example, a `VMLA` instruction specifies a floating-point multiplication followed by a floating-point addition. The addition can generate Overflow, Underflow and Inexact exceptions, all of which depend on both operands to the addition and so are treated as lower priority than any exception on the multiplication. The same applies to Invalid Operation exceptions on the addition caused by adding opposite-signed infinities.

The addition can also generate an Input Denormal exception, caused by the addend being a denormalized number while in Flush-to-zero mode. It is UNPREDICTABLE which of an Input Denormal exception on the addition and an exception on the multiplication is treated as higher priority, because the occurrence of the Input Denormal exception does not depend on the result of the multiplication. The same applies to an Invalid Operation exception on the addition caused by the addend being a signaling NaN.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Pseudocode details of floating-point operations

This section contains pseudocode definitions of the floating-point operations used by the FP extension.

Generation of specific floating-point values

The following functions generate specific floating-point values. The `sign` argument of `FPZero()`, `FPMaxNormal()`, and `FPInfinity()` is `'0'` for the positive version and `'1'` for the negative version.

```
// FPZero()
// ========

bits(N) FPZero(bit sign, integer N)
    assert N IN {16,32};
    if N == 16 then
        return sign : '00000 0000000000';
    else
        return sign : '00000000 00000000000000000000000';

// FPInfinity()
// ============

bits(N) FPInfinity(bit sign, integer N)
    assert N IN {16,32};
    if N == 16 then
        return sign : '11111 0000000000';
    else
        return sign : '11111111 00000000000000000000000';

// FPMaxNormal()
// =============

bits(N) FPMaxNormal(bit sign, integer N)
    assert N IN {16,32};
    if N == 16 then
        return sign : '11110 1111111111';
    else
        return sign : '11111110 11111111111111111111111';

// FPDefaultNaN()
// ==============

bits(N) FPDefaultNaN(integer N)
    assert N IN {16,32};
    if N == 16 then
        return '0 11111 1000000000';
    else
        return '0 11111111 10000000000000000000000';
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

FP negation and absolute value

The floating-point negation and absolute value operations only affect the sign bit. They do not apply any special treatment:

- to NaN operands
- when flush-to-zero is selected, to denormalized number operands.

```
// FPNeg()
// =======

bits(N) FPNeg(bits(N) operand)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    return NOT(operand<N-1>) : operand<N-2:0>;

// FPAbs()
// =======

bits(N) FPAbs(bits(N) operand)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    return '0' : operand<N-2:0>;
```

FP value unpacking

The `FPUnpack()` function determines the type and numerical value of a floating-point number. It also does flush-to-zero processing on input operands.

```
enumeration FPType {FPType_Nonzero, FPType_Zero, FPType_Infinity, FPType_QNaN, FPType_SNaN};

// FPUnpack()
// ==========
//
// Unpack a floating-point number into its type, sign bit and the real number
// that it represents. The real number result has the correct sign for numbers
// and infinities, is very large in magnitude for infinities, and is 0.0 for
// NaNs. (These values are chosen to simplify the description of comparisons
// and conversions.)
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

(FPType, bit, real) FPUnpack(bits(N) fpval, bits(32) fpscr_val)
    assert N IN {16,32};

    if N == 16 then
        sign = fpval<15>;
        exp = fpval<14:10>;
        frac = fpval<9:0>;
        if IsZero(exp) then
            // Produce zero if value is zero
            if IsZero(frac) then
                type = FPType_Zero;  value = 0.0;
            else
                type = FPType_Nonzero;  value = 2^-14 * (UInt(frac) * 2^-10);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        elsif IsOnes(exp) && fpscr_val<26> == '0' then  // Infinity or NaN in IEEE format
            if IsZero(frac) then
                type = FPType_Infinity;  value = 2^1000000;
            else
                type = if frac<9> == '1' then FPType_QNaN else FPType_SNaN;
                value = 0.0;
        else
            type = FPType_Nonzero;  value = 2^(UInt(exp)-15) * (1.0 + UInt(frac) * 2^-10));

    else  // N == 32

        sign = fpval<31>;
        exp  = fpval<30:23>;
        frac = fpval<22:0>;
        if IsZero(exp) then
            // Produce zero if value is zero or flush-to-zero is selected.
            if IsZero(frac) || fpscr_val<24> == '1' then
                type = FPType_Zero;  value = 0.0;
                if !IsZero(frac) then  // Denormalized input flushed to zero
                    FPProcessException(FPExc_InputDenorm, fpscr_val);
            else
                type = FPType_Nonzero;  value = 2^-126 * (UInt(frac) * 2^-23);
        elsif IsOnes(exp) then
            if IsZero(frac) then
                type = FPType_Infinity;  value = 2^1000000;
            else
                type = if frac<22> == '1' then FPType_QNaN else FPType_SNaN;
                value = 0.0;
        else
            type = FPType_Nonzero;  value = 2^(UInt(exp)-127) * (1.0 + UInt(frac) * 2^-23));

    if sign == '1' then value = -value;
    return (type, sign, value);
```

FP exception and NaN handling

The `FPProcessException()` procedure checks whether a floating-point exception is trapped, and handles it accordingly:

```
enumeration FPType {FPType_Nonzero, FPType_Zero, FPType_Infinity, FPType_QNaN, FPType_SNaN};

// FPProcessException()
// ====================
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

FPProcessException(FPExc exception, bits(32) fpscr_val)
    // Get appropriate FPSCR bit numbers
    case exception of
        when FPExc_InvalidOp     enable = 8;   cumul = 0;
        when FPExc_DivideByZero  enable = 9;   cumul = 1;
        when FPExc_Overflow      enable = 10;  cumul = 2;
        when FPExc_Underflow     enable = 11;  cumul = 3;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        when FPExc_Inexact       enable = 12;  cumul = 4;
        when FPExc_InputDenorm   enable = 15;  cumul = 7;
    if fpscr_val<enable> then
        IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED floating-point trap handling;
    else
        FPSCR<cumul> = '1';
    return;
```

The FPProcessNaN() function processes a NaN operand, producing the correct result value and generating an Invalid Operation exception if necessary:

```
// FPProcessNaN()
// ==============
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

bits(N) FPProcessNaN(FPType type, bits(N) operand, bits(32) fpscr_val)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    topfrac = if N == 32 then 22 else 51;
    result = operand;
    if type = FPType_SNaN then
        result<topfrac> = '1';
        FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    if fpscr_val<25> == '1' then  // DefaultNaN requested
        result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
    return result;
```

The FPProcessNaNs() function performs the standard NaN processing for a two-operand operation:

```
// FPProcessNaNs()
// ===============
//
// The boolean part of the return value says whether a NaN has been found and
// processed. The bits(N) part is only relevant if it has and supplies the
// result of the operation.
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

(boolean, bits(N)) FPProcessNaNs(FPType type1, FPType type2,
                                 bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2,
                                 bits(32) fpscr_val)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    if type1 == FPType_SNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type1, op1, fpscr_val);
    elsif type2 == FPType_SNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type2, op2, fpscr_val);
    elsif type1 == FPType_QNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type1, op1, fpscr_val);
    elsif type2 == FPType_QNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type2, op2, fpscr_val);
    else
        done = FALSE;  result = Zeros(N);  // 'Don't care' result
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    return (done, result);
```

The FPProcessNaNs3() function performs the standard NaN processing for a three-operand operation:

```
// FPProcessNaNs3()
// ================
//
// The boolean part of the return value says whether a NaN has been found and
// processed. The bits(N) part is only relevant if it has and supplies the
// result of the operation.
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

(boolean, bits(N)) FPProcessNaNs3(FPType type1, FPType type2, FPType type3,
                                  bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, bits(N) op3,
                                  bits(32) fpscr_val)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    if type1 == FPType_SNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type1, op1, fpscr_val);
    elsif type2 == FPType_SNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type2, op2, fpscr_val);
    elsif type3 == FPType_SNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type3, op3, fpscr_val);
    elsif type1 == FPType_QNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type1, op1, fpscr_val);
    elsif type2 == FPType_QNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type2, op2, fpscr_val);
    elsif type3 == FPType_QNaN then
        done = TRUE;  result = FPProcessNaN(type3, op3, fpscr_val);
    else
        done = FALSE;  result = Zeros(N);  // 'Don't care' result
    return (done, result);
```

FP rounding

The FPRound() function rounds and encodes a floating-point result value to a specified destination format. This includes processing Overflow, Underflow and Inexact floating-point exceptions and performing flush-to-zero processing on result values.

```
// FPRound()
// =========
//
// The 'fpscr_val' argument supplies FPSCR control bits. Status information is
// updated directly in the FPSCR where appropriate.

bits(N) FPRound(real result, integer N, bits(32) fpscr_val)
    assert N IN {16,32};
    assert result != 0.0;

    // Obtain format parameters - minimum exponent, numbers of exponent and fraction bits.
    if N == 16 then
        minimum_exp = -14;  E = 5;  F = 10;
    else  // N == 32
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    minimum_exp = -126;  E = 8;  F = 23;

// Split value into sign, unrounded mantissa and exponent.
if result < 0.0 then
    sign = '1';  mantissa = -result;
else
    sign = '0';  mantissa = result;
exponent = 0;
while mantissa < 1.0 do
    mantissa = mantissa * 2.0;  exponent = exponent - 1;
while mantissa >= 2.0 do
    mantissa = mantissa / 2.0;  exponent = exponent + 1;

// Deal with flush-to-zero.
if fpscr_val<24> == '1' && N != 16 && exponent < minimum_exp then
    result = FPZero(sign, N);
    FPSCR.UFC = '1';  // Flush-to-zero never generates a trapped exception
else

    // Start creating the exponent value for the result. Start by biasing the actual exponent
    // so that the minimum exponent becomes 1, lower values 0 (indicating possible underflow).
    biased_exp = Max(exponent - minimum_exp + 1, 0);
    if biased_exp == 0 then mantissa = mantissa / 2^(minimum_exp - exponent);

    // Get the unrounded mantissa as an integer, and the "units in last place" rounding error.
    int_mant = RoundDown(mantissa * 2^F);  // < 2^F if biased_exp == 0, >= 2^F if not
    error = mantissa * 2^F - int_mant;

    // Underflow occurs if exponent is too small before rounding, and result is inexact or
    // the Underflow exception is trapped.
    if biased_exp == 0 && (error != 0.0 || fpscr_val<11> == '1') then
        FPProcessException(FPExc_Underflow, fpscr_val);

    // Round result according to rounding mode.
    case fpscr_val<23:22> of
        when '00'  // Round to Nearest (rounding to even if exactly halfway)
            round_up = (error > 0.5 || (error == 0.5 && int_mant<0> == '1'));
            overflow_to_inf = TRUE;
        when '01'  // Round towards Plus Infinity
            round_up = (error != 0.0 && sign == '0');
            overflow_to_inf = (sign == '0');
        when '10'  // Round towards Minus Infinity
            round_up = (error != 0.0 && sign == '1');
            overflow_to_inf = (sign == '1');
        when '11'  // Round towards Zero
            round_up = FALSE;
            overflow_to_inf = FALSE;
    if round_up then
        int_mant = int_mant + 1;
        if int_mant == 2^F then      // Rounded up from denormalized to normalized
            biased_exp = 1;
        if int_mant == 2^(F+1) then  // Rounded up to next exponent
            biased_exp = biased_exp + 1;  int_mant = int_mant DIV 2;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        // Deal with overflow and generate result.
        if N != 16 || fpscr_val<26> == '0' then  // Single, double or IEEE half precision
            if biased_exp >= 2^E - 1 then
                result = if overflow_to_inf then FPInfinity(sign, N) else FPMaxNormal(sign, N);
                FPProcessException(FPExc_Overflow, fpscr_val);
                error = 1.0;  // Ensure that an Inexact exception occurs
            else
                result = sign : biased_exp<E-1:0> : int_mant<F-1:0>;
        else                                    // Alternative half precision
            if biased_exp >= 2^E then
                result = sign : Ones(15);
                FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
                error = 0.0;  // Ensure that an Inexact exception does not occur
            else
                result = sign : biased_exp<E-1:0> : int_mant<F-1:0>;

        // Deal with Inexact exception.
        if error != 0.0 then
            FPProcessException(FPExc_Inexact, fpscr_val);

    return result;
```

Selection of ARM standard floating-point arithmetic

The function `StandardFPSCRValue()` returns an FPSCR value that selects ARM standard floating-point arithmetic. Most FP arithmetic functions have a boolean argument `fpscr_controlled` that selects between using the real FPSCR value and this value.

```
// StandardFPSCRValue()
// ====================

bits(32) StandardFPSCRValue()
    return '00000' : FPSCR<26> : '11000000000000000000000000';
```

FP comparisons

The `FPCompare()` function compares two floating-point numbers, producing an (N,Z,C,V) flags result as Table A2-4 shows:

Table A2-4 FP comparison flag values

Comparison result	N	Z	C	V
Equal	0	1	1	0
Less than	1	0	0	0
Greater than	0	0	1	0
Unordered	0	0	1	1

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In the FP extension, this result defines the VCMP instruction. The VCMP instruction writes these flag values in the FPSCR. Software can use a VMRS instruction to transfer them to the APSR, and they then control conditional execution as Table A7-1 on page A7-208 shows.

```
// FPCompare()
// ===========

(bit, bit, bit, bit) FPCompare(bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, boolean quiet_nan_exc,
                               boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    if type1==FPType_SNaN || type1==FPType_QNaN || type2==FPType_SNaN || type2==FPType_QNaN then
        result = ('0','0','1','1');
        if type1==FPType_SNaN || type2==FPType_SNaN || quiet_nan_exc then
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    else
        // All non-NaN cases can be evaluated on the values produced by FPUnpack()
        if value1 == value2 then
            result = ('0','1','1','0');
        elsif value1 < value2 then
            result = ('1','0','0','0');
        else  // value1 > value2
            result = ('0','0','1','0');
    return result;
```

FP addition and subtraction

The following functions perform floating-point addition and subtraction.

```
// FPAdd()
// =======

bits(N) FPAdd(bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    (done,result) = FPProcessNaNs(type1, type2, op1, op2, fpscr_val);
    if !done then
        inf1 = (type1 == FPType_Infinity);  inf2 = (type2 == FPType_Infinity);
        zero1 = (type1 == FPType_Zero);     zero2 = (type2 == FPType_Zero);
        if inf1 && inf2 && sign1 == NOT(sign2) then
            result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
        elsif (inf1 && sign1 == '0') || (inf2 && sign2 == '0') then
            result = FPInfinity('0', N);
        elsif (inf1 && sign1 == '1') || (inf2 && sign2 == '1') then
            result = FPInfinity('1', N);
        elsif zero1 && zero2 && sign1 == sign2 then
            result = FPZero(sign1, N);
        else
            result_value = value1 + value2;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
            if result_value == 0.0 then  // Sign of exact zero result depends on rounding mode
                result_sign = if fpscr_val<23:22> == '10' then '1' else '0';
                result = FPZero(result_sign, N);
            else
                result = FPRound(result_value, N, fpscr_val);
    return result;

// FPSub()
// =======

bits(N) FPSub(bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    (done,result) = FPProcessNaNs(type1, type2, op1, op2, fpscr_val);
    if !done then
        inf1 = (type1 == FPType_Infinity);  inf2 = (type2 == FPType_Infinity);
        zero1 = (type1 == FPType_Zero);     zero2 = (type2 == FPType_Zero);
        if inf1 && inf2 && sign1 == sign2 then
            result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
        elsif (inf1 && sign1 == '0') || (inf2 && sign2 == '1') then
            result = FPInfinity('0', N);
        elsif (inf1 && sign1 == '1') || (inf2 && sign2 == '0') then
            result = FPInfinity('1', N);
        elsif zero1 && zero2 && sign1 == NOT(sign2) then
            result = FPZero(sign1, N);
        else
            result_value = value1 - value2;
            if result_value == 0.0 then  // Sign of exact zero result depends on rounding mode
                result_sign = if fpscr_val<23:22> == '10' then '1' else '0';
                result = FPZero(result_sign, N);
            else
                result = FPRound(result_value, N, fpscr_val);
    return result;
```

FP multiplication and division

The following functions perform floating-point multiplication and division.

```
// FPMul()
// =======

bits(N) FPMul(bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    (done,result) = FPProcessNaNs(type1, type2, op1, op2, fpscr_val);
    if !done then
        inf1 = (type1 == FPType_Infinity);  inf2 = (type2 == FPType_Infinity);
        zero1 = (type1 == FPType_Zero);     zero2 = (type2 == FPType_Zero);
        if (inf1 && zero2) || (zero1 && inf2) then
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
            result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
        elsif inf1 || inf2 then
            result_sign = if sign1 == sign2 then '0' else '1';
            result = FPInfinity(result_sign, N);
        elsif zero1 || zero2 then
            result_sign = if sign1 == sign2 then '0' else '1';
            result = FPZero(result_sign, N);
        else
            result = FPRound(value1*value2, N, fpscr_val);
    return result;

// FPDiv()
// =======

bits(N) FPDiv(bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    (done,result) = FPProcessNaNs(type1, type2, op1, op2, fpscr_val);
    if !done then
        inf1 = (type1 == FPType_Infinity);  inf2 = (type2 == FPType_Infinity);
        zero1 = (type1 == FPType_Zero);     zero2 = (type2 == FPType_Zero);
        if (inf1 && inf2) || (zero1 && zero2) then
            result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
        elsif inf1 || zero2 then
            result_sign = if sign1 == sign2 then '0' else '1';
            result = FPInfinity(result_sign, N);
            if !inf1 then FPProcessException(FPExc_DivideByZero);
        elsif zero1 || inf2 then
            result_sign = if sign1 == sign2 then '0' else '1';
            result = FPZero(result_sign, N);
        else
            result = FPRound(value1/value2, N, fpscr_val);
    return result;
```

FP multiply accumulate

The `FPMulAdd()` function performs the calculation A*B+C with only a single rounding step, and so provides greater accuracy than performing the multiplication followed by an add:

```
// FPMulAdd()
// ==========
//
// Calculates addend + op1*op2 with a single rounding.

bits(N) FPMulAdd(bits(N) addend, bits(N) op1, bits(N) op2,
                 boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (typeA,signA,valueA) = FPUnpack(addend, fpscr_val);
    (type1,sign1,value1) = FPUnpack(op1, fpscr_val);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    (type2,sign2,value2) = FPUnpack(op2, fpscr_val);
    inf1 = (type1 == FPType_Infinity); zero1 = (type1 == FPType_Zero);
    inf2 = (type2 == FPType_Infinity); zero2 = (type2 == FPType_Zero);
    (done,result) = FPProcessNaNs3(typeA, type1, type2, opA, op1, op2, fpscr_val);

    if typeA == FPType_QNaN && ((inf1 && zero2) || (zero1 && inf2)) then
        result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
        FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);

    if !done then
        infA = (typeA == FPType_Infinity);  zeroA = (typeA == FPType_Zero);

        // Determine sign and type product will have if it does not cause an Invalid
        // Operation.
        signP = if sign1 == sign2 then '0' else '1';
        infP  = inf1 || inf2;
        zeroP = zero1 || zero2;

        // Non SNaN-generated Invalid Operation cases are multiplies of zero by infinity and
        // additions of opposite-signed infinities.
        if (inf1 && zero2) || (zero1 && inf2) || (infA && infP && signA == NOT(signP)) then
            result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);

        // Other cases involving infinities produce an infinity of the same sign.
        elsif (infA && signA == '0') || (infP && signP == '0') then
            result = FPInfinity('0', N);
        elsif (infA && signA == '1') || (infP && signP == '1') then
            result = FPInfinity('1', N);

        // Cases where the result is exactly zero and its sign is not determined by the
        // rounding mode are additions of same-signed zeros.
        elsif zeroA && zeroP && signA == signP then
            result = FPZero(signA, N);

        // Otherwise calculate numerical result and round it.
        else
            if result_value == 0.0 then  // Sign of exact zero result depends on rounding
                                         // mode
                result_sign = if fpscr_val<23:22> == '10' then '1' else '0';
                result = FPZero(result_sign, N);
            else
                result = FPRound(result_value, N, fpscr_val);

    return result;
```

FP square root

The `FPSqrt()` function performs a floating-point square root calculation:

```
// FPSqrt()
// ========

bits(N) FPSqrt(bits(N) operand, boolean fpscr_controlled)
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type,sign,value) = FPUnpack(operand, fpscr_val);
    if type == FPType_SNaN || type == FPType_QNaN then
        result = FPProcessNaN(type, operand, fpscr_val);
    elsif type == FPType_Zero || (type = FPType_Infinity && sign == '0') then
        result = operand;
    elsif sign == '1' then
        result = FPDefaultNaN(N);
        FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    else
        result = FPRound(Sqrt(value), N, fpscr_val);
    return result;
```

FP conversions

The following functions perform conversions between half-precision and single-precision floating-point numbers.

```
// FPHalfToSingle()
// ================

bits(32) FPHalfToSingle(bits(16) operand, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type,sign,value) = FPUnpack(operand, fpscr_val);
    if type == FPType_SNaN || type == FPType_QNaN then
        if fpscr_val<25> == '1' then // DN bit set
            result = FPDefaultNaN(32);
        else
            result = sign : '11111111 1' : operand<8:0> : Zeros(13);
        if type == FPType_SNaN then
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    elsif type = FPType_Infinity then
        result = FPInfinity(sign, 32);
    elsif type = FPType_Zero then
        result = FPZero(sign, 32);
    else
        result = FPRound(value, 32, fpscr_val); // Rounding will be exact
    return result;

// FPSingleToHalf()
// ================

bits(16) FPSingleToHalf(bits(32) operand, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    (type,sign,value) = FPUnpack(operand, fpscr_val);
    if type == FPType_SNaN || type == FPType_QNaN then
        if fpscr_val<26> == '1' then     // AH bit set
            result = FPZero(sign, 16);
        elsif fpscr_val<25> == '1' then  // DN bit set
            result = FPDefaultNaN(16);
        else
            result = sign : '11111 1' : operand<21:13>;
        if type == FPType_SNaN || fpscr_val<26> == '1' then
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    elsif type = FPType_Infinity then
        if fpscr_val<26> == '1' then // AH bit set
            result = sign : Ones(15);
            FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
        else
            result = FPInfinity(sign, 16);
    elsif type = FPType_Zero then
        result = FPZero(sign, 16);
    else
        result = FPRound(value, 16, fpscr_val);
    return result;
```

The following functions perform conversions between floating-point numbers and integers or fixed-point numbers:

```
// FPToFixed()
// ===========

bits(M) FPToFixed(bits(N) operand, integer M, integer fraction_bits, boolean unsigned,
                  boolean round_towards_zero, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    if round_towards_zero then fpscr_val<23:22> = '11';
    (type,sign,value) = FPUnpack(operand, fpscr_val);

    // For NaNs and infinities, FPUnpack() has produced a value that will round to the
    // required result of the conversion. Also, the value produced for infinities will
    // cause the conversion to overflow and signal an Invalid Operation floating-point
    // exception as required. NaNs must also generate such a floating-point exception.
    if type == FPType_SNaN || type == FPType_QNaN then
        FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);

    // Scale value by specified number of fraction bits, then start rounding to an integer
    // and determine the rounding error.
    value = value * 2^fraction_bits;
    int_result = RoundDown(value);
    error = value - int_result;

    // Apply the specified rounding mode.
    case fpscr_val<23:22> of
        when '00'  // Round to Nearest (rounding to even if exactly halfway)
            round_up = (error > 0.5 || (error == 0.5 && int_result<0> == '1'));
        when '01'  // Round towards Plus Infinity
            round_up = (error != 0.0);
        when '10'  // Round towards Minus Infinity
            round_up = FALSE;
        when '11'  // Round towards Zero
            round_up = (error != 0.0 && int_result < 0);
    if round_up then int_result = int_result + 1;

    // Bitstring result is the integer result saturated to the destination size, with
    // saturation indicating overflow of the conversion (signaled as an Invalid
    // Operation floating-point exception).
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    (result, overflow) = SatQ(int_result, M, unsigned);
    if overflow then
        FPProcessException(FPExc_InvalidOp, fpscr_val);
    elsif error != 0 then
        FPProcessException(FPExc_Inexact, fpscr_val);

    return result;

// FixedToFP()
// ===========

bits(N) FixedToFP(bits(M) operand, integer N, integer fraction_bits, boolean unsigned,
                  boolean round_to_nearest, boolean fpscr_controlled)
    assert N IN {32,64};
    fpscr_val = if fpscr_controlled then FPSCR else StandardFPSCRValue();
    if round_to_nearest then fpscr_val<23:22> = '00';
    int_operand = if unsigned then UInt(operand) else SInt(operand);
    real_operand = int_operand / 2^fraction_bits;
    if real_operand == 0.0 then
        result = FPZero('0', N);
    else
        result = FPRound(real_operand, N, fpscr_val);
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A3
ARM Architecture Memory Model

This chapter gives an application-level view of the ARMv7-M memory model. It contains the following sections:

- *Address space* on page A3-82
- *Alignment support* on page A3-83
- *Endian support* on page A3-85
- *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-89
- *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-99
- *Access rights* on page A3-109
- *Memory access order* on page A3-111
- *Caches and memory hierarchy* on page A3-120

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.1 Address space

ARMv7-M is a memory-mapped architecture. *The system address map* on page B3-704 describes the ARMv7-M address map.

The ARMv7-M architecture uses a single, flat address space of 2^{32} 8-bit bytes. Byte addresses are treated as unsigned numbers, running from 0 to 2^{32} - 1.

This address space is regarded as consisting of 2^{30} 32-bit words, each of whose addresses is word-aligned, meaning that the address is divisible by 4. The word whose word-aligned address is A consists of the four bytes with addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3. The address space can also be considered as consisting of 2^{31} 16-bit halfwords, each of whose addresses is halfword-aligned, meaning that the address is divisible by 2. The halfword whose halfword-aligned address is A consists of the two bytes with addresses A and A+1.

While instruction fetches are always halfword-aligned, some load and store instructions support unaligned addresses. This affects the access address A, such that A[1:0] in the case of a word access and A[0] in the case of a halfword access can have non-zero values.

Address calculations are normally performed using ordinary integer instructions. This means that they normally wrap around if they overflow or underflow the address space. Another way of describing this is that any address calculation is reduced modulo 2^{32}.

Normal sequential execution of instructions effectively calculates:

```
(address_of_current_instruction) + (2 or 4)   /*16- and 32-bit instr mix*/
```

after each instruction to determine which instruction to execute next. If this calculation overflows the top of the address space, the result is UNPREDICTABLE. In ARMv7-M this condition cannot occur because the top of memory is defined to always have the Execute Never (XN) memory attribute associated with it. See *The system address map* on page B3-704 for more details. An access violation will be reported if this scenario occurs.

The above only applies to instructions that are executed, including those that fail their condition code check. Most ARM implementations prefetch instructions ahead of the currently-executing instruction.

`LDC`, `LDM`, `LDRD`, `POP`, `PUSH`, `STC`, `STRD`, `STM`, `VLDM`, `VPOP`, `VPUSH`, `VSTM`, `VLDR.64`, and `VSTR.64` instructions access a sequence of words at increasing memory addresses, effectively incrementing a memory address by 4 for each register load or store. If this calculation overflows the top of the address space, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Any unaligned load or store whose calculated address is such that it would access the byte at `0xFFFFFFFF` and the byte at address `0x00000000` as part of the instruction is UNPREDICTABLE.

All memory addresses used in ARMv7-M are *physical addresses* (PAs). ARMv7-M has no concept of *virtual addresses* (VAs).

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.2 Alignment support

The system architecture provides two policies for alignment checking in ARMv7-M:

- support the unaligned accesses
- generate a fault when an unaligned access occurs.

The policy varies with the type of access. An implementation can be configured to force alignment faults for all unaligned accesses.

Writes to the PC are restricted according to the rules outlined in *Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier* on page A5-153.

A3.2.1 Alignment behavior

Address alignment affects data accesses and updates to the PC.

Alignment and data access

The following data accesses always generate an alignment fault:

- Non halfword-aligned `LDREXH` and `STREXH`
- Non word-aligned `LDREX` and `STREX`
- Non word-aligned `LDRD`, `LDMIA`, `LDMDB`, `POP`, `LDC`, `VLDR`, `VLDM`, and `VPOP`
- Non word-aligned `STRD`, `STMIA`, `STMDB`, `PUSH`, `STC`, `VSTR`, `VSTM`, and `VPUSH`.

The following data accesses support unaligned addressing, and only generate alignment faults when the CCR.UNALIGN_TRP bit is set to 1, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720:

- Non halfword-aligned `LDR{S}H{T}` and `STRH{T}`
- Non halfword-aligned `TBH`
- Non word-aligned `LDR{T}` and `STR{T}`

Note

- `LDREXD` and `STREXD` are not supported in ARMv7-M.
- Accesses to Strongly Ordered and Device memory types must always be naturally aligned, see *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107.

The ARMv7-M alignment behavior is described in the following pseudocode:

For register definitions see Appendix H *Register Index*.
For `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.
The other functions are local and descriptive only. For the actual memory access functionality, see MemU[] and MemA[] that are used in the instruction definitions (see Chapter A7 *Instruction Details*), and defined in *Pseudocode details of general memory system operations* on page B2-693.

```
if IsUnaligned(Address) then          // the data access is to an unaligned address

    if AlignedAccessInstr() then      // the instruction does not support unaligned accesses
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
    else
        if CCR.UNALIGN_TRP then       // trap on all unaligned accesses
            UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
            ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
        else
            UnalignedAccess(Address); // perform an unaligned access
else
    AlignedAccess(Address);           // perform an aligned access
```

Alignment and updates to the PC

All instruction fetches must be halfword-aligned. Any exception return irregularities are captured as an INVSTATE or INVPC UsageFault by the exception return mechanism. See *Fault behavior* on page B1-669.

For exception entry and return:

- exception entry using a vector with bit [0] clear causes an INVSTATE UsageFault
- a reserved EXC_RETURN value causes an INVPC UsageFault
- loading an unaligned value from the stack into the PC on an exception return is UNPREDICTABLE.

For all other cases where the PC is updated:

- Bit [0] of the value is ignored when loading the PC using an `ADD` or `MOV` instruction.

  Note

  This applies only to the 16-bit form of the `ADD` (register) and `MOV` (register) instructions otherwise loading the PC is UNPREDICTABLE.

- The following instructions cause an INVSTATE UsageFault if bit [0] of the value loaded to the PC is zero:
  - a `BLX` or `BX`
  - an `LDR` to the PC
  - a `POP` or `LDM` that includes the PC
- Loading the PC with a value from a memory location whose address is not word aligned is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.3 Endian support

The address space rules (*Address space* on page A3-82) require that for an address A:

- the word at address A consists of the bytes at addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3
- the halfword at address A consists of the bytes at addresses A and A+1
- the halfword at address A+2 consists of the bytes at addresses A+2 and A+3
- the word at address A therefore consists of the halfwords at addresses A and A+2.

However, this does not fully specify the mappings between words, halfwords and bytes. A memory system uses one of the following mapping schemes. This choice is known as the endianness of the memory system.

In a *little-endian* memory system the mapping between bytes from memory and the interpreted value in an ARM register is illustrated in Figure A3-1.

- a byte or halfword at address A is the least significant byte or halfword within the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword address A is the least significant byte within the halfword at that address.

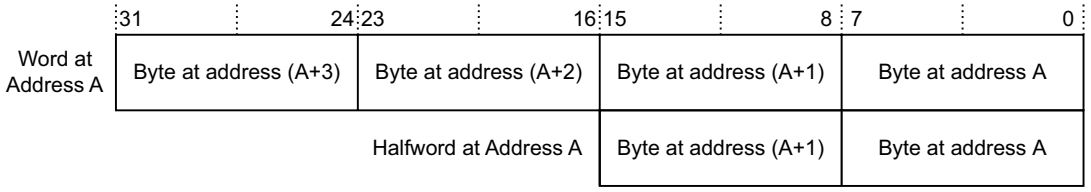


Figure A3-1 Little-endian byte format

In a *big-endian* memory system the mapping between bytes from memory and the interpreted value in an ARM register is illustrated in Figure A3-2.

- a byte or halfword at address A is the most significant byte or halfword within the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword address A is the most significant byte within the halfword at that address.

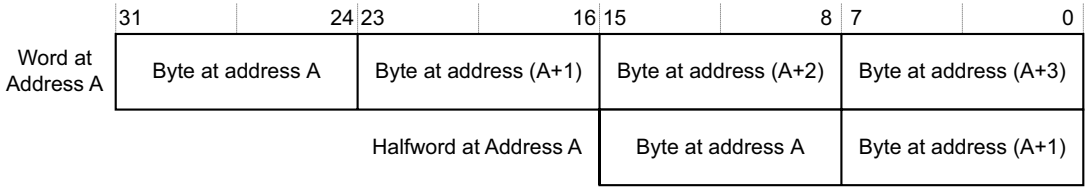


Figure A3-2 Big-endian byte format

For a word address A, Figure A3-3 on page A3-86 and Figure A3-4 on page A3-86 show how the word at address A, the halfwords at address A and A+2, and the bytes at addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3 map onto each other for each endianness.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

<table>
<tr><th>MSByte</th><th>MSByte-1</th><th>LSByte+1</th><th>LSByte</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Word at address A</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Halfword at address (A+2)</td><td colspan="2">Halfword at address A</td></tr>
<tr><td>Byte at address (A+3)</td><td>Byte at address (A+2)</td><td>Byte at address (A+1)</td><td>Byte at address A</td></tr>
</table>

Figure A3-3 Little-endian memory system

<table>
<tr><th>MSByte</th><th>MSByte-1</th><th>LSByte+1</th><th>LSByte</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Word at address A</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Halfword at address A</td><td colspan="2">Halfword at address (A+2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Byte at address A</td><td>Byte at address (A+1)</td><td>Byte at address (A+2)</td><td>Byte at address (A+3)</td></tr>
</table>

Figure A3-4 Big-endian memory system

The big-endian and little-endian mapping schemes determine the order in which the bytes of a word or half-word are interpreted.

As an example, a load of a word (4 bytes) from address `0x1000` will result in an access of the bytes contained at memory locations `0x1000`, `0x1001`, `0x1002` and `0x1003`, regardless of the mapping scheme used. The mapping scheme determines the significance of those bytes.

A3.3.1 Control of endianness in ARMv7-M

ARMv7-M supports a selectable endian model in which, on a reset, a control input determines whether the endianness is *big endian* (BE) or *little endian* (LE). This endian mapping has the following restrictions:

- The endianness setting only applies to data accesses. Instruction fetches are always little endian.
- All accesses to the SCS are little endian, see *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708.

The AIRCR.ENDIANNESS bit indicates the endianness, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717.

If an implementation requires support for big endian instruction fetches, it can implement this in the bus fabric. See *Endian support* on page AppxE-953 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Instruction alignment and byte ordering

Thumb instruction execution enforces 16-bit alignment on all instructions. This means that 32-bit instructions are treated as two halfwords, hw1 and hw2, with hw1 at the lower address.

In instruction encoding diagrams, hw1 is shown to the left of hw2. This results in the encoding diagrams reading more naturally. The byte order of a 32-bit Thumb instruction is shown in Figure A3-5.

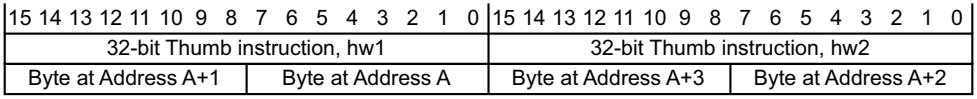


Figure A3-5 Instruction byte order in memory

Pseudocode details of endianness

The `BigEndian()` pseudocode function tests whether data accesses are big-endian or little-endian:

```
// BigEndian()

// ===========


boolean BigEndian()

    return (AIRCR.ENDIANNESS == '1');
```

A3.3.2 Element size and endianness

The effect of the endianness mapping on data applies to the size of the element(s) being transferred in the load and store instructions. Table A3-1 shows the element size of each of the load and store instructions:.

Table A3-1 Load-store and element size association

Instruction class	Instructions	Element size
Load or store byte	`LDR{S}B{T}`, `STRB{T}`, `LDREXB`, `STREXB`	Byte
Load or store halfword	`LDR{S}H{T}`, `STRH{T}`, `TBH`, `LDREXH`, `STREXH`	Halfword
Load or store word	`LDR{T}`, `STR{T}`, `LDREX`, `STREX`, `VLDR.F32`, `VSTR.F32`	Word
Load or store two words	`LDRD`, `STRD`, `VLDR.F64`, `VSTR.F64`	Word
Load or store multiple words	`LDM{IA,DB}`, `STM{IA,DB}`, `PUSH`, `POP`, `LDC`, `STC`, `VLDM`, `VSTM`, `VPUSH`, `VPOP`	Word

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.3.3 Instructions to reverse bytes in a general-purpose register

When an application or device driver has to interface to memory-mapped peripheral registers or shared memory structures that are not the same endianness as that of the internal data structures, or the endianness of the Operating System, an efficient way of being able to explicitly transform the endianness of the data is required.

ARMv7-M supports instructions for the following byte transformations:

`REV` Reverse word (four bytes) register, for transforming 32-bit representations.

`REVSH` Reverse halfword and sign extend, for transforming signed 16-bit representations.

`REV16` Reverse packed halfwords in a register for transforming unsigned 16-bit representations.

For more information see the instruction definitions in Chapter A7 *Instruction Details*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.4 Synchronization and semaphores

Exclusive access instructions support non-blocking shared memory synchronization primitives that allow calculation to be performed on the semaphore between the read and write phases, and scale for multiprocessor system designs.

In ARMv7-M, the synchronization primitives provided are:

- Load-Exclusives:
  - LDREX, see *LDREX* on page A7-305
  - LDREXB, see *LDREXB* on page A7-306
  - LDREXH, see *LDREXH* on page A7-307
- Store-Exclusives:
  - STREX, see *STREX* on page A7-485
  - STREXB, see *STREXB* on page A7-486
  - STREXH, see *STREXH* on page A7-487
  - Clear-Exclusive, CLREX, see *CLREX* on page A7-255.

Note

This section describes the operation of a Load-Exclusive/Store-Exclusive pair of synchronization primitives using, as examples, the LDREX and STREX instructions. The same description applies to any other pair of synchronization primitives:

- LDREXB used with STREXB
- LDREXH used with STREXH.

Each Load-Exclusive instruction must be used only with the corresponding Store-Exclusive instruction.

STREXD and LDREXD are not supported in ARMv7-M.

The model for the use of a Load-Exclusive/Store-Exclusive instruction pair, accessing memory address x is:

- The Load-Exclusive instruction always successfully reads a value from memory address x
- The corresponding Store-Exclusive instruction succeeds in writing back to memory address x only if no other processor or process has performed a more recent store of address x. The Store-Exclusive operation returns a status bit that indicates whether the memory write succeeded.

A Load-Exclusive instruction tags a small block of memory for exclusive access. The size of the tagged block is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, see *Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block* on page A3-96. A Store-Exclusive instruction to the same address clears the tag.

A3.4.1 Exclusive access instructions and Non-shareable memory regions

For memory regions that do not have the *Shareable* attribute, the exclusive access instructions rely on a *local monitor* that tags any address from which the processor executes a Load-Exclusive. Any non-aborted attempt by the same processor to use a Store-Exclusive to modify any address is guaranteed to clear the tag.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A Load-Exclusive performs a load from memory, and:

- the executing processor tags the physical memory address for exclusive access
- the local monitor of the executing processor transitions to its Exclusive Access state.

A Store-Exclusive performs a conditional store to memory, that depends on the state of the local monitor:

If the local monitor is in its Exclusive Access state

- If the address of the Store-Exclusive is the same as the address that has been tagged in the monitor by an earlier Load-Exclusive, then the store takes place, otherwise it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the store takes place.
- A status value is returned to a register:
  - if the store took place the status value is 0
  - otherwise, the status value is 1.
- The local monitor of the executing processor transitions to its Open Access state.

If the local monitor is in its Open Access state

- no store takes place
- a status value of 1 is returned to a register.
- the local monitor remains in its Open Access state.

The Store-Exclusive instruction defines the register to which the status value is returned.

When a processor writes using any instruction other than a Store-Exclusive:

- if the write is to a physical address that is not covered by its local monitor the write does not affect the state of the local monitor
- if the write is to a physical address that is covered by its local monitor it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the write affects the state of the local monitor.

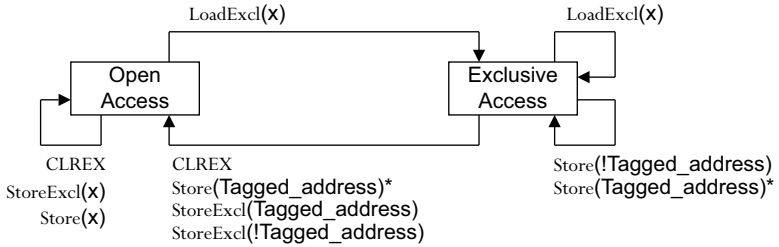
If the local monitor is in its Exclusive Access state and a processor performs a Store-Exclusive to any address other than the last one from which it has performed a Load-Exclusive, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the store succeeds, but in all cases the local monitor is reset to its Open Access state. In ARMv7-M, the store must be treated as a software programming error.

Note

It is UNPREDICTABLE whether a store to a tagged physical address causes a tag in the local monitor to be cleared if that store is by an observer other than the one that caused the physical address to be tagged.

Figure A3-6 on page A3-91 shows the state machine for the local monitor. Table A3-2 on page A3-91 shows the effect of each of the operations shown in the figure.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access



Operations marked * are possible alternative IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED options.

In the diagram: LoadExcl represents any Load-Exclusive instruction
StoreExcl represents any Store-Exclusive instruction
Store represents any other store instruction.

Any LoadExcl operation updates the tagged address to the most significant bits of the address x used for the operation. For more information see the section *Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block*.

Figure A3-6 Local monitor state machine diagram

Note

- The IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED options for the local monitor are consistent with the local monitor being constructed so that it does not hold any physical address, but instead treats any access as matching the address of the previous LDREX. In such an implementation, the Exclusives reservation granule defined in *Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block* on page A3-96 is the entire memory address range.
- A local monitor implementation can be unaware of Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive operations from other processors.
- It is UNPREDICTABLE whether the transition from Exclusive Access to Open Access state occurs when the STR or STREX is from another observer.

Table A3-2 shows the effect of the operations shown in Figure A3-6.

Table A3-2 Effect of Exclusive instructions and write operations on local monitor

Initial state	Operation[a]	Effect	Final state
Open Access	CLREX	No effect	Open Access
	StoreExcl(x)	Does not update memory, returns status 1	Open Access
	LoadExcl(x)	Loads value from memory, tags address x	Exclusive Access
	Store(x)	Updates memory, no effect on monitor	Open Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A3-2 Effect of Exclusive instructions and write operations on local monitor (continued)

Initial state	Operation[a]	Effect	Final state
Exclusive Access	CLREX	Clears tagged address	Open Access
	StoreExcl(t)	Updates memory, returns status 0	Open Access
	StoreExcl(!t)	Updates memory, returns status 0[b]	Open Access
		Does not update memory, returns status 1[b]	
	LoadExcl(x)	Loads value from memory, changes tag to address to x	Exclusive Access
	Store(!t)	Updates memory, no effect on monitor	Exclusive Access
	Store(t)	Updates memory	Exclusive Access[b]
			Open Access[b]

a. In the table:
   LoadExcl represents any Load-Exclusive instruction
   StoreExcl represents any Store-Exclusive instruction
   Store represents any store operation other than a Store-Exclusive operation.
   t is the tagged address, bits [31:a] of the address of the last Load-Exclusive instruction. For more information see *Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block* on page A3-96.
b. IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED alternative actions.

A3.4.2 Exclusive access instructions and Shareable memory regions

For memory regions that have the *Shareable* attribute, exclusive access instructions rely on:

- A *local monitor* for each processor in the system, that tags any address from which the processor executes a Load-Exclusive. The local monitor operates as described in *Exclusive access instructions and Non-shareable memory regions* on page A3-89, except that for Shareable memory, any Store-Exclusive described in that section as updating memory and/or returning the status value 0 is then subject to checking by the global monitor. The local monitor can ignore exclusive accesses from other processors in the system.
- A *global monitor* that tags a physical address as exclusive access for a particular processor. This tag is used later to determine whether a Store-Exclusive to the tagged address, that has not been failed by the local monitor, can occur. Any successful write to the tagged address by any other observer in the shareability domain of the memory location is guaranteed to clear the tag.

  For each processor in the system, the global monitor:
  — holds a single tagged address
  — maintains a state machine.

The global monitor can either reside in a processor block or exist as a secondary monitor at the memory interfaces.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

An implementation can combine the functionality of the global and local monitors into a single unit.

Operation of the global monitor

Load-Exclusive from *Shareable* memory performs a load from memory, and causes the physical address of the access to be tagged as exclusive access for the requesting processor. This access also causes the exclusive access tag to be removed from any other physical address that has been tagged by the requesting processor. The global monitor only supports a single outstanding exclusive access to Shareable memory per processor.

Store-Exclusive performs a conditional store to memory:

- The store is guaranteed to succeed only if the physical address accessed is tagged as exclusive access for the requesting processor and both the local monitor and the global monitor state machines for the requesting processor are in the Exclusive Access state. In this case:
  - a status value of 0 is returned to a register to acknowledge the successful store
  - the final state of the global monitor state machine for the requesting processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
  - if the address accessed is tagged for exclusive access in the global monitor state machine for any other processor then that state machine transitions to Open Access state.
- If no address is tagged as exclusive access for the requesting processor, the store does not succeed:
  - a status value of 1 is returned to a register to indicate that the store failed
  - the global monitor is not affected and remains in Open Access state for the requesting processor.
- If a different physical address is tagged as exclusive access for the requesting processor, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the store succeeds or not:
  - if the store succeeds a status value of 0 is returned to a register, otherwise a value of 1 is returned
  - if the global monitor state machine for the processor was in the Exclusive Access state before the Store-Exclusive it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether that state machine transitions to the Open Access state.

The Store-Exclusive instruction defines the register to which the status value is returned.

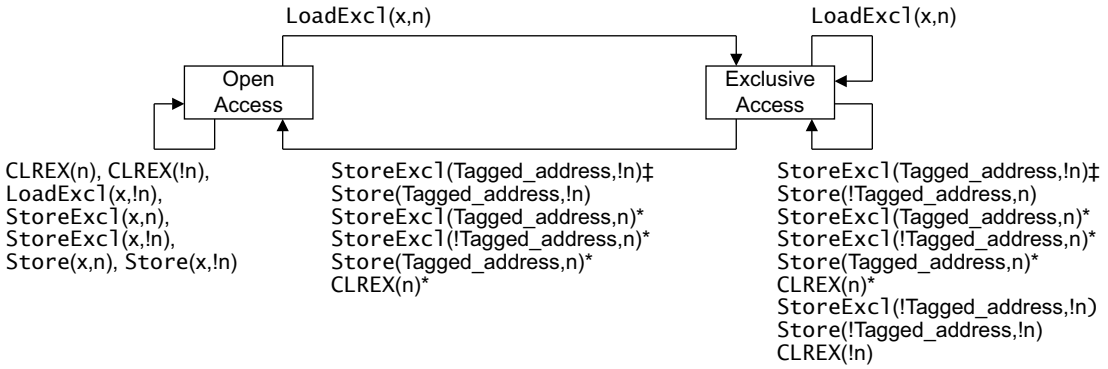
In a shared memory system, the global monitor implements a separate state machine for each processor in the system. The state machine for accesses to Shareable memory by processor (n) can respond to all the Shareable memory accesses visible to it. This means it responds to:

- accesses generated by the associated processor (n)
- accesses generated by the other observers in the shared memory system (!n).

In a shared memory system, the global monitor implements a separate state machine for each observer that can generate a Load-Exclusive or a Store-Exclusive in the system.

Figure A3-7 on page A3-94 shows the state machine for processor(n) in a global monitor. Table A3-3 on page A3-95 shows the effect of each of the operations shown in the figure.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access



‡StoreExcl(Tagged_Address,!n) clears the monitor only if the StoreExcl updates memory

Operations marked * are possible alternative IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED options.

In the diagram: LoadExcl represents any Load-Exclusive instruction

StoreExcl represents any Store-Exclusive instruction

Store represents any other store instruction.

Any LoadExcl operation updates the tagged address to the most significant bits of the address x used for the operation. For more information see the section *Size of the tagged memory block*.

Figure A3-7 Global monitor state machine diagram for a processor in a multiprocessor system

Note

- Whether a Store-Exclusive successfully updates memory or not depends on whether the address accessed matches the tagged Shareable memory address for the processor issuing the Store-Exclusive instruction. For this reason, Figure A3-7 and Table A3-3 on page A3-95 only show how the (!n) entries cause state transitions of the state machine for processor(n).
- A Load-Exclusive can only update the tagged Shareable memory address for the processor issuing the Load-Exclusive instruction.
- The effect of the CLREX instruction on the global monitor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a modification to a non-shareable memory location can cause a global monitor Exclusive Access to Open Access transition.
- It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether an LDREX to a non-shareable memory location can cause a global monitor Open Access to Exclusive Access transition.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A3-3 shows the effect of the operations shown in Figure A3-7 on page A3-94.

Table A3-3 Effect of load/store operations on global monitor for processor(n)

Initial state[a]	Operation[b]	Effect	Final state[a]
Open	`CLREX(n)`, `CLREX(!n)`	None	Open
Open	`StoreExcl(x,n)`	Does not update memory, returns status 1	Open
Open	`LoadExcl(x,!n)`	Loads value from memory, no effect on tag address for processor(n)	Open
Open	`StoreExcl(x,!n)`	Depends on state machine and tag address for processor issuing `STREX`[c]	Open
Open	`STR(x,n)`, `STR(x,!n)`	Updates memory, no effect on monitor	Open
Open	`LoadExcl(x,n)`	Loads value from memory, tags address x	Exclusive
Exclusive	`LoadExcl(x,n)`	Loads value from memory, tags address x	Exclusive
Exclusive	`CLREX(n)`	None. Effect on the final state is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.	Exclusive[e]
			Open[e]
Exclusive	`CLREX(!n)`	None	Exclusive
Exclusive	`StoreExcl(t,!n)`	Updates memory, returns status 0[c]	Open
		Does not update memory, returns status 1[c]	Exclusive
Exclusive	`StoreExcl(t,n)`	Updates memory, returns status 0[d]	Open
			Exclusive
Exclusive	`StoreExcl(!t,n)`	Updates memory, returns status 0[e]	Open
			Exclusive
		Does not update memory, returns status 1[e]	Open
			Exclusive
Exclusive	`StoreExcl(!t,!n)`	Depends on state machine and tag address for processor issuing `STREX`	Exclusive

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A3-3 Effect of load/store operations on global monitor for processor(n) (continued)

Initial state[a]	Operation[b]	Effect	Final state[a]
Exclusive	`Store(t,n)`	Updates memory	Exclusive[e]
			Open[e]
Exclusive	`Store(t,!n)`	Updates memory	Open
Exclusive	`Store(!t,n)`, `Store(!t,!n)`	Updates memory, no effect on monitor	Exclusive

a. Open = Open Access state, Exclusive = Exclusive Access state.
b. In the table:
   `LoadExcl` represents any Load-Exclusive instruction
   `StoreExcl` represents any Store-Exclusive instruction
   `Store` represents any store operation other than a Store-Exclusive operation.
   t is the tagged address for processor(n), bits [31:a] of the address of the last Load-Exclusive instruction issued by processor(n), see *Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block*.
c. The result of a `STREX(x,!n)` or a `STREX(t,!n)` operation depends on the state machine and tagged address for the processor issuing the `STREX` instruction. This table shows how each possible outcome affects the state machine for processor(n).
d. After a successful `STREX` to the tagged address, the state of the state machine is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. However, this state has no effect on the subsequent operation of the global monitor.
e. Effect is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. The table shows all permitted implementations.

A3.4.3 Tagging and the size of the tagged memory block

As shown in Figure A3-6 on page A3-91 and Figure A3-7 on page A3-94, when a `LDREX` instruction is executed, the resulting tag address ignores the least significant bits of the memory address:

```
Tagged_address == Memory_address[31:a]
```

The value of a in this assignment is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, between a minimum value of 2 and a maximum value of 11. For example, in an implementation where a = 4, a successful `LDREX` of address `0x000341B4` gives a tag value of bits [31:4] of the address, giving 0x000341B. This means that the four words of memory from `0x000341B0` to `0x000341BF` are tagged for exclusive access. Subsequently, a valid `STREX` to any address in this block will remove the tag.

The size of the tagged memory block is called the *Exclusives reservation granule*. The Exclusives reservation granule is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED between:

- one word, in an implementation with a == 2
- 512 words, in an implementation with a == 11.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

For the local monitor, one of the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED options is for the monitor to treat any access as matching the address of the previous Load-Exclusive access. In such an implementation, the Exclusives reservation granule is the entire memory address range.

A3.4.4 Context switch support

It is necessary to ensure that the local monitor is in the Open Access state after a context switch. In ARMv7-M, the local monitor is changed to Open Access automatically as part of an exception entry or exit sequence. The local monitor can also be forced to the Open Access state by a `CLREX` instruction.

Note

Context switching is not an application level operation. However, this information is included here to complete the description of the exclusive operations.

A context switch might cause a subsequent Store-Exclusive to fail, requiring a load … store sequence to be replayed. To minimize the possibility of this happening, ARM recommends that the Store-Exclusive instruction is kept as close as possible to the associated Load-Exclusive instruction, see *Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive usage restrictions*.

A3.4.5 Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive usage restrictions

The Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive instructions are designed to work together, as a pair, for example a `LDREX`/`STREX` pair or a `LDREXB`/`STREXB` pair. As mentioned in *Context switch support*, ARM recommends that the Store-Exclusive instruction always follows within a few instructions of its associated Load-Exclusive instructions. In order to support different implementations of these functions, software must follow the notes and restrictions given here.

These notes describe use of a `LDREX`/`STREX` pair, but apply equally to any other Load-Exclusive/Store-Exclusive pair:

- The exclusives support a single outstanding exclusive access for each processor thread that is executed. The architecture makes use of this by not requiring an address or size check as part of the `IsExclusiveLocal()` function. If the target address of an `STREX` is different from the preceding `LDREX` in the same execution thread, behavior can be UNPREDICTABLE. As a result, an `LDREX`/`STREX` pair can only be relied upon to eventually succeed if they are executed with the same address.
- An explicit store to memory can cause the clearing of exclusive monitors associated with other processors, therefore, performing a store between the `LDREX` and the `STREX` can result in a livelock situation. As a result, code must avoid placing an explicit store between an `LDREX` and an `STREX` in a single code sequence.
- If two `STREX` instructions are executed without an intervening `LDREX` the second `STREX` returns a status value of 1. This means that:
  - every `STREX` must have a preceding `LDREX` associated with it in a given thread of execution

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— it is not necessary for every LDREX to have a subsequent STREX.

- An implementation of the Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive instructions can require that, in any thread of execution, the transaction size of a Store-Exclusive is the same as the transaction size of the preceding Load-Exclusive that was executed in that thread. If the transaction size of a Store-Exclusive is different from the preceding Load-Exclusive in the same execution thread, behavior can be UNPREDICTABLE. As a result, software can rely on a Load-Exclusive/Store-Exclusive pair to eventually succeed only if they are executed with the same address.
- An implementation might clear an exclusive monitor between the LDREX and the STREX, without any application-related cause. For example, this might happen because of cache evictions. Code written for such an implementation must avoid having any explicit memory accesses or cache maintenance operations between the LDREX and STREX instructions.
- Implementations can benefit from keeping the LDREX and STREX operations close together in a single code sequence. This minimizes the likelihood of the exclusive monitor state being cleared between the LDREX instruction and the STREX instruction. Therefore, ARM recommends strongly a limit of 128 bytes between LDREX and STREX instructions in a single code sequence, for best performance.
- Implementations that implement coherent protocols, or have only a single master, might combine the local and global monitors for a given processor. The IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED and UNPREDICTABLE parts of the definitions in *Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698 are provided to cover this behavior.
- The architecture sets an upper limit of 2048 bytes on the size of a region that can be marked as exclusive. Therefore, for performance reasons, ARM recommends that software separates objects that will be accessed by exclusive accesses by at least 2048 bytes. This is a performance guideline rather than a functional requirement.
- LDREX and STREX operations must be performed only on memory with the Normal memory attribute.
- If the memory attributes for the memory being accessed by an LDREX/STREX pair are changed between the LDREX and the STREX, behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.

A3.4.6 Synchronization primitives and the memory order model

The synchronization primitives follow the memory ordering model of the memory type accessed by the instructions. For this reason:

- Portable code for claiming a spinlock must include a DMB instruction between claiming the spinlock and making any access that makes use of the spinlock.
- Portable code for releasing a spinlock must include a DMB instruction before writing to clear the spinlock.

This requirement applies to code using the Load-Exclusive/Store-Exclusive instruction pairs, for example LDREX/STREX.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.5 Memory types and attributes and the memory order model

ARMv7 defines a set of memory attributes with the characteristics required to support the memory and devices in the system memory map.

The ordering of accesses for regions of memory, referred to as the memory order model, is defined by the memory attributes. This model is described in the following sections:

- *Memory types*
- *Summary of ARMv7 memory attributes* on page A3-100
- *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-101
- *Normal memory* on page A3-102
- *Device memory* on page A3-105
- *Strongly-ordered memory* on page A3-106
- *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107

A3.5.1 Memory types

For each memory region, the most significant memory attribute specifies the memory type. There are three mutually exclusive memory types:

- Normal
- Device
- Strongly-ordered.

Normal and Device memory regions have additional attributes.

Usually, memory used for program code and for data storage is Normal memory. Examples of Normal memory technologies are:

- programmed Flash ROM

  Note

  During programming, Flash memory can be ordered more strictly than Normal memory.

- ROM
- SRAM
- DRAM and DDR memory.

System peripherals (I/O) generally conform to different access rules to Normal memory. Examples of I/O accesses are:

- FIFOs where consecutive accesses
  - add queued values on write accesses
  - remove queued values on read accesses.
- interrupt controller registers where an access can be used as an interrupt acknowledge, changing the state of the controller itself

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- memory controller configuration registers that are used to set up the timing and correctness of areas of Normal memory
- memory-mapped peripherals, where accessing a memory location can cause side effects in the system.

In ARMv7, regions of the memory map for these accesses are defined as Device or Strongly-ordered memory. To ensure system correctness, access rules for Device and Strongly-ordered memory are more restrictive than those for Normal memory:

- both read and write accesses can have side effects
- accesses must not be repeated, for example, on return from an exception
- the number, order and sizes of the accesses must be maintained.

In addition, for Strongly-ordered memory, all memory accesses are strictly ordered to correspond to the program order of the memory access instructions.

A3.5.2 Summary of ARMv7 memory attributes

Table A3-4 summarizes the memory attributes. For more information about theses attributes see:

- *Normal memory* on page A3-102 and *Shareable attribute for Device memory regions* on page A3-106, for the *shareability* attribute
- *Write-through cacheable, Write-back cacheable and Non-cacheable Normal memory* on page A3-104, for the *cacheability* attribute.

Table A3-4 Memory attribute summary

Memory type attribute	Shareability	Other attributes	Description
Strongly-ordered	Shareable	-	All memory accesses to Strongly-ordered memory occur in program order. All Strongly-ordered regions are Shareable.
Device	Shareable	-	Intended to handle memory-mapped peripherals that are shared by several processors.
	Non-shareable	-	Intended to handle memory-mapped peripherals that are used only by a single processor.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A3-4 Memory attribute summary (continued)

Memory type attribute	Shareability	Other attributes	Description
Normal	Shareable	Cacheability, one of: [a] Non-cacheable Write-Through cacheable Write-Back Write-Allocate cacheable Write-Back no Write-Allocate cacheable	Intended to handle Normal memory that is shared between several processors.
	Non-shareable	Cacheability, one of: [a] Non-cacheable Write-Through cacheable Write-Back Write-Allocate cacheable Write-Back no Write-Allocate cacheable	Intended to handle Normal memory that is used by only a single processor.

a. The cacheability attribute is defined independently for inner and outer cache regions.

A3.5.3 Atomicity in the ARM architecture

Atomicity is a feature of memory accesses, described as *atomic* accesses. The ARM architecture description refers to two types of atomicity, defined in:

- *Single-copy atomicity*
- *Multi-copy atomicity* on page A3-102.

Single-copy atomicity

A read or write operation is *single-copy atomic* if the following conditions are both true:

- After any number of write operations to an operand, the value of the operand is the value written by one of the write operations. It is impossible for part of the value of the operand to come from one write operation and another part of the value to come from a different write operation.
- When a read operation and a write operation are made to the same operand, the value obtained by the read operation is one of:
  - the value of the operand before the write operation
  - the value of the operand after the write operation.

  It is never the case that the value of the read operation is partly the value of the operand before the write operation and partly the value of the operand after the write operation.

In ARMv7-M, the single-copy atomic processor accesses are:

- all byte accesses
- all halfword accesses to halfword-aligned locations
- all word accesses to word-aligned locations

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

LDM, LDC, LDC2, LDRD, STM, STC, STC2, STRD, PUSH, POP, VLDR, VSTR, VLDM, VSTM, VPUSH, and VPOP instructions are executed as a sequence of word-aligned word accesses. Each 32-bit word access is guaranteed to be single-copy atomic. A subsequence of two or more word accesses from the sequence might not exhibit single-copy atomicity.

When an access is not single-copy atomic, it is executed as a sequence of smaller accesses, each of which is single-copy atomic, at least at the byte level.

If an instruction is executed as a sequence of accesses according to these rules, some exceptions can be taken in the sequence and cause execution of the instruction to be abandoned.

On exception return, the instruction that generated the sequence of accesses is re-executed and so any accesses that had already been performed before the exception was taken might be repeated, see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658.

Note

The exception behavior for these multiple access instructions means they are not suitable for use for writes to memory for the purpose of software synchronization.

For implicit accesses:

- Cache linefills and evictions have no effect on the single-copy atomicity of explicit transactions or instruction fetches.
- Instruction fetches are single-copy atomic at 16-bit granularity.

Multi-copy atomicity

In a multiprocessing system, writes to a memory location are *multi-copy atomic* if the following conditions are both true:

- All writes to the same location are *serialized*, meaning they are observed in the same order by all observers, although some observers might not observe all of the writes.
- A read of a location does not return the value of a write until all observers observe that write.

Writes to Normal memory are not multi-copy atomic.

All writes to Device and Strongly-Ordered memory that are single-copy atomic are also multi-copy atomic.

All write accesses to the same location are serialized. Write accesses to Normal memory can be repeated up to the point that another write to the same address is observed.

For Normal memory, serialization of writes does not prohibit the merging of writes.

A3.5.4 Normal memory

Normal memory is idempotent, meaning that it exhibits the following properties:

- read accesses can be repeated with no side effects

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- repeated read accesses return the last value written to the resource being read
- read accesses can prefetch additional memory locations with no side effects
- write accesses can be repeated with no side effects, provided that the contents of the location are unchanged between the repeated writes
- unaligned accesses can be supported
- accesses can be merged before accessing the target memory system.

Normal memory can be read/write or read-only, and a Normal memory region is defined as being either Shareable or Non-shareable.

The Normal memory type attribute applies to most memory used in a system.

Accesses to Normal memory have a weakly consistent model of memory ordering. See a standard text describing memory ordering issues for a description of weakly consistent memory models, for example chapter 2 of *Memory Consistency Models for Shared Memory-Multiprocessors*, Kourosh Gharachorloo, Stanford University Technical Report CSL-TR-95-685. In general, for Normal memory, barrier operations are required where the order of memory accesses observed by other observers must be controlled. This requirement applies regardless of the cacheability and shareability attributes of the Normal memory region.

The ordering requirements of accesses described in *Ordering requirements for memory accesses* on page A3-114 apply to all explicit accesses.

An instruction that generates a sequence of accesses as described in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-101 might be abandoned as a result of an exception being taken during the sequence of accesses. On return from the exception the instruction is restarted, and therefore one or more of the memory locations might be accessed multiple times. This can result in repeated write accesses to a location that has been changed between the write accesses.

Note

For ARMv7-M, the `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH`, `POP`, `VLDM`, `VSTM`, `VPUSH` and `VPOP` instructions can restart or continue on exception return, see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658.

Non-shareable Normal memory

For a Normal memory region, the Non-shareable attribute identifies Normal memory that is likely to be accessed only by a single processor.

A region of memory marked as Non-shareable Normal does not have any requirement to make the effect of a cache transparent for data or instruction accesses. If other observers share the memory system, software must use cache maintenance operations if the presence of caches might lead to coherency issues when communicating between the observers. This cache maintenance requirement is in addition to the barrier operations that are required to ensure memory ordering.

For Non-shareable Normal memory, the Load Exclusive and Store Exclusive synchronization primitives do not take account of the possibility of accesses by more than one observer.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Shareable Normal memory

For Normal memory, the Shareable memory attribute describes Normal memory that is expected to be accessed by multiple processors or other system masters.

A region of Normal memory with the Sharable attribute is one for which the effect of interposing a cache, or caches, on the memory system is entirely transparent to data accesses in the same shareability domain. Explicit software management is needed to ensure the coherency of instruction caches.

Implementations can use a variety of mechanisms to support this management requirement, from simply not caching accesses in Shareable regions to more complex hardware schemes for cache coherency for those regions.

For Shareable Normal memory, the Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive synchronization primitives take account of the possibility of accesses by more than one observer in the same Shareability domain.

Note

The Shareable concept enables system designers to specify the locations in Normal memory that must have coherency requirements. However, to facilitate porting of software, software developers must not assume that specifying a memory region as Non-shareable permits software to make assumptions about the incoherency of memory locations between different processors in a shared memory system. Such assumptions are not portable between different multiprocessing implementations that make use of the Shareable concept. Any multiprocessing implementation might implement caches that, inherently, are shared between different processing elements.

Write-through cacheable, Write-back cacheable and Non-cacheable Normal memory

In addition to being Shareable or Non-shareable, each region of Normal memory can be marked as being one of:

- Write-through cacheable
- Write-back cacheable, with an additional qualifier that marks it as one of:
  - Write-back, write-allocate
  - Write-back, no write-allocate
- Non-cacheable.

The cacheability attributes for a region are independent of the shareability attributes for the region. The cacheability attributes indicate the required handling of the data region if it is used for purposes other than the handling of shared data. This independence means that, for example, a region of memory that is marked as being cacheable and Shareable might not be held in the cache in an implementation where Shareable regions do not cache their data.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.5.5 Device memory

The Device memory type attribute defines memory locations where an access to the location can cause side effects, or where the value returned for a load can vary depending on the number of loads performed. memory-mapped peripherals and I/O locations are examples of memory regions that normally are marked as being Device.

For explicit accesses from the processor to memory marked as Device:

- all accesses occur at their program size
- the number of accesses is the number specified by the program.

An implementation must not repeat an access to a Device memory location if the program has only one access to that location. In other words, accesses to Device memory locations are not restartable.

The architecture does not permit speculative accesses to memory marked as Device.

Address locations marked as Device are Non-cacheable. While writes to Device memory can be buffered, writes can be merged only where the merge maintains:

- the number of accesses
- the order of the accesses
- the size of each access.

Multiple accesses to the same address must not change the number of accesses to that address. Coalescing of accesses is not permitted for accesses to Device memory.

When a Device memory operation has side effects that apply to Normal memory regions, software must use a Memory Barrier to ensure correct execution. An example is programming the configuration registers of a memory controller with respect to the memory accesses it controls.

All explicit accesses to Device memory must comply with the ordering requirements of accesses described in *Ordering requirements for memory accesses* on page A3-114.

An instruction that generates a sequence of accesses as described in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-101 might be abandoned as a result of an exception being taken during the sequence of accesses. On return from the exception the instruction is restarted, and therefore one or more of the memory locations might be accessed multiple times. This can result in repeated write accesses to a location that has been changed between the write accesses.

Note

Do not use an instruction that generates a sequence of accesses to access Device memory if the instruction might restart after an exception and repeat any write accesses, see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658 for more information.

Any unaligned access that is not faulted by the alignment restrictions and accesses Device memory has UNPREDICTABLE behavior.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Shareable attribute for Device memory regions

Device memory regions can be given the Shareable attribute. This means that a region of Device memory can be described as either:

- Shareable Device memory
- Non-shareable Device memory.

Non-shareable Device memory is defined as only accessible by a single processor. An example of a system supporting Shareable and Non-shareable Device memory is an implementation that supports both:

- a local bus for its private peripherals
- system peripherals implemented on the main shared system bus.

Such a system might have more predictable access times for local peripherals such as watchdog timers or interrupt controllers. In particular, a specific address in a Non-shareable Device memory region might access a different physical peripheral for each processor.

A3.5.6 Strongly-ordered memory

The Strongly-ordered memory type attribute defines memory locations where an access to the location can cause side effects, or where the value returned for a load can vary depending on the number of loads performed. Examples of memory regions normally marked as being Strongly-ordered are memory-mapped peripherals and I/O locations.

For explicit accesses from the processor to memory marked as Strongly-ordered:

- all accesses occur at their program size
- the number of accesses is the number specified by the program.

An implementation must not perform more accesses to a Strongly-ordered memory location than are specified by a simple sequential execution of the program, except as a result of an exception. This section describes this permitted effect of an exception.

The architecture does not permit speculative data accesses to memory marked as Strongly-ordered.

Address locations in Strongly-ordered memory are not held in a cache, and are always treated as Shareable memory locations.

All explicit accesses to Strongly-ordered memory must correspond to the ordering requirements of accesses described in *Ordering requirements for memory accesses* on page A3-114.

An instruction that generates a sequence of accesses as described in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-101 might be abandoned as a result of an exception being taken during the sequence of accesses. On return from the exception the instruction is restarted, and therefore one or more of the memory locations might be accessed multiple times. This can result in repeated write accesses to a location that has been changed between the write accesses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

Do not use an instruction that generates a sequence of accesses to access Strongly-ordered memory if the instruction might restart after an exception and repeat any write accesses, see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658 for more information.

Any unaligned access that is not faulted by the alignment restrictions and accesses Strongly-ordered memory has UNPREDICTABLE behavior.

A3.5.7 Memory access restrictions

The following restrictions apply to memory accesses:

- For any access X, the bytes accessed by X must all have the same memory type attribute, otherwise the behavior of the access is UNPREDICTABLE. That is, an unaligned access that spans a boundary between different memory types is UNPREDICTABLE.
- For any two memory accesses X and Y that are generated by the same instruction, the bytes accessed by X and Y must all have the same memory type attribute, otherwise the results are UNPREDICTABLE. For example, an `LDC`, `LDM`, `LDRD`, `STC`, `STM`, `STRD`, `VSTM`, `VLDM`, `VPUSH`, `VPOP`, `VLDR`, or `VSTR` that spans a boundary between Normal and Device memory is UNPREDICTABLE.
- An instruction that generates an unaligned memory access to Device or Strongly-ordered memory is UNPREDICTABLE.
- For instructions that generate accesses to Device or Strongly-ordered memory, implementations must not change the sequence of accesses specified by the pseudocode of the instruction. This includes not changing:
  - how many accesses there are
  - the time order of the accesses at any particular memory-mapped peripheral
  - the data sizes and other properties of each access.

  In addition, processor implementations expect any attached memory system to be able to identify the memory type of an accesses, and to obey similar restrictions with regard to the number, time order, data sizes and other properties of the accesses.

  Exceptions to this rule are:

  - A processor implementation can break this rule, provided that the information it supplies to the memory system enables the original number, time order, and other details of the accesses to be reconstructed. In addition, the implementation must place a requirement on attached memory systems to do this reconstruction when the accesses are to Device or Strongly-ordered memory.

    For example, an implementation with a 64-bit bus might pair the word loads generated by an `LDM` into 64-bit accesses. This is because the instruction semantics ensure that the 64-bit access is always a word load from the lower address followed by a word load from the higher address. However the implementation must permit the memory systems to unpack the two word loads when the access is to Device or Strongly-ordered memory.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— Any implementation technique that produces results that cannot be observed to be different from those described above is legitimate.

- `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH`, `POP`, `VLDM` and `VSTM` instructions that are used with the `IT` instruction are restartable if interrupted during execution. Restarting a load or store instruction is incompatible with the Device and Strongly Ordered memory access rules. For details of the architecture constraints associated with these instructions in the exception model see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658.
- Any multi-access instruction that loads or stores the PC must access only Normal memory. If the instruction accesses Device or Strongly-ordered memory the result is UNPREDICTABLE.
- Any instruction fetch must access only Normal memory. If it accesses Device or Strongly-ordered memory, the result is UNPREDICTABLE. For example, instruction fetches must not be performed to an area of memory that contains read-sensitive devices, because there is no ordering requirement between instruction fetches and explicit accesses.

To ensure correctness, read-sensitive locations must be marked as non-executable (see *Privilege level access controls for instruction accesses* on page A3-109).

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.6 Access rights

ARMv7 includes additional attributes for memory regions, that enable:

- Data accesses to be restricted, based on the privilege of the access. See *Privilege level access controls for data accesses*.
- Instruction fetches to be restricted, based on the privilege of the process or thread making the fetch. See *Privilege level access controls for instruction accesses*.

A3.6.1 Privilege level access controls for data accesses

The memory attributes can define that a memory region is:

- not accessible to any accesses
- accessible only to Privileged accesses
- accessible to Privileged and Unprivileged accesses.

The access privilege level is defined separately for explicit read and explicit write accesses. However, a system that defines the memory attributes is not required to support all combinations of memory attributes for read and write accesses.

A Privileged access is an access made during privileged execution, as a result of a load or store operation other than `LDRT`, `STRT`, `LDRBT`, `STRBT`, `LDRHT`, `STRHT`, `LDRSHT`, or `LDRSBT`.

An Unprivileged access is an access made as a result of load or store operation performed in one of these cases:

- when the current execution mode is configured for Unprivileged access only
- when the processor is in any mode and the access is made as a result of a `LDRT`, `STRT`, `LDRBT`, `STRBT`, `LDRHT`, `STRHT`, `LDRSHT`, or `LDRSBT` instruction.

An exception occurs if the processor attempts a data access that the access rights do not permit. For example, a MemManage exception occurs if the processor mode is Unprivileged and the processor attempts to access a memory region that is marked as only accessible to Privileged accesses.

Note

Data access control is only supported when a *Memory Protection Unit* is implemented and enabled, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761.

A3.6.2 Privilege level access controls for instruction accesses

Memory attributes can define that a memory region is:

- not accessible for execution
- accessible for execution by Privileged processes only
- accessible for execution by Privileged and Unprivileged processes.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

To define the instruction access rights to a memory region, the memory attributes describe, separately, for the region:

- its read access rights
- whether it is *suitable for execution*.

For example, a region that is accessible for execution by Privileged processes has the memory attributes:

- accessible only to Privileged read accesses
- suitable for execution.

This means there is some linkage between the memory attributes that define the accessibility of a region to explicit memory accesses, and those that define that a region can be executed.

A MemManage exception occurs if a processor attempts to execute code from a memory location with attributes that do not permit code execution.

Note

Instruction access control is fully supported when a *Memory Protection Unit* is implemented and enabled, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761.

Instruction execution access control is also supported in the default address map, see *The system address map* on page B3-704.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.7 Memory access order

ARMv7 provides a set of three memory types, Normal, Device, and Strongly-ordered, with well-defined memory access properties.

The ARMv7 application-level view of the memory attributes is described in:

- *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-99
- *Access rights* on page A3-109.

When considering memory access ordering, an important feature is the *Shareable* memory attribute that indicates whether a region of memory can be shared between multiple processors, and therefore requires an appearance of cache transparency in the ordering model.

The key issues with the memory order model depend on the target audience:

- For software programmers, considering the model at the application level, the key factor is that for accesses to Normal memory, barriers are required in some situations where the order of accesses observed by other observers must be controlled.
- For silicon implementers, considering the model at the system level, the Strongly-ordered and Device memory attributes place certain restrictions on the system designer in terms of what can be built and when to indicate completion of an access.

  Note

  Implementations remain free to choose the mechanisms required to implement the functionality of the memory model.

More information about the memory order model is given in the following subsections:

- *Reads and writes*
- *Ordering requirements for memory accesses* on page A3-114
- *Memory barriers* on page A3-116.

Additional attributes and behaviors relate to the memory system architecture. These features are defined in the system level section of this manual, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761.

A3.7.1 Reads and writes

Each memory access is either a read or a write. *Explicit* memory accesses are the memory accesses required by the function of an instruction. The following can cause memory accesses that are not explicit:

- instruction fetches
- cache loads and write-backs

Except where otherwise stated, the memory ordering requirements only apply to explicit memory accesses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Reads

Reads are defined as memory operations that have the semantics of a load.

The memory accesses of the following instructions are reads:

- LDR, LDRB, LDRH, LDRSB, and LDRSH
- LDRT, LDRBT, LDRHT, LDRSBT, and LDRSHT
- LDREX, LDREXB, and LDREXH
- LDM{IA,DB}, LDRD, POP, VLDM, VLDR, and VPOP
- LDC and LDC2
- the return of status values by STREX, STREXB, and STREXH
- TBB and TBH.

Writes

Writes are defined as memory operations that have the semantics of a store.

The memory accesses of the following instructions are Writes:

- STR, STRB, and STRH
- STRT, STRBT, and STRHT
- STREX, STREXB, and STREXH
- STM{IA,DB}, STRD, PUSH, VSTR, VSTM, and VPUSH
- STC and STC2

Synchronization primitives

Synchronization primitives must ensure correct operation of system semaphores in the memory order model. The synchronization primitive instructions are defined as those instructions that are used to ensure memory synchronization:

- LDREX, STREX, LDREXB, STREXB, LDREXH, STREXH.

For details of the Load-Exclusive, Store-Exclusive and Clear-Exclusive instructions see *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-89.

The Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive instructions are supported to Shareable and Non-shareable memory. Non-shareable memory can be used to synchronize processes that are running on the same processor. Shareable memory must be used to synchronize processes that might be running on different processors.

Observability and completion

The set of observers that can observe a memory access is defined by the system.

For all memory:

- a write to a location in memory is said to be observed by an observer when a subsequent read of the location by the same observer will return the value written by the write

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- a write to a location in memory is said to be globally observed for a shareability domain when a subsequent read of the location by any observer within that shareability domain that is capable of observing the write will return the value written by the write
- a read of a location in memory is said to be observed by an observer when a subsequent write to the location by the same observer will have no effect on the value returned by the read
- a read of a location in memory is said to be globally observed for a shareability domain when a subsequent write to the location by any observer within that shareability domain that is capable of observing the write will have no effect on the value returned by the read.

Additionally, for Strongly-ordered memory:

- A read or write of a memory-mapped location in a peripheral that exhibits side-effects is said to be observed, and globally observed, only when the read or write:
  - meets the general conditions listed
  - can begin to affect the state of the memory-mapped peripheral
  - can trigger all associated side effects, whether they affect other peripheral devices, processors, or memory.

For all memory, the ARMv7-M completion rules are defined as:

- A read or write is complete for a shareability domain when all of the following are true:
  - the read or write is globally observed for that shareability domain
  - any instruction fetches by observers within the shareability domain have observed the read or write.
- A cache or branch predictor maintenance operation is complete for a shareability domain when the effects of operation are globally observed for that shareability domain.

Side effect completion in Strongly-ordered and Device memory

The completion of a memory access in Strongly-ordered or Device memory is not guaranteed to be sufficient to determine that the side effects of the memory access are visible to all observers. The mechanism that ensures the visibility of side-effects of a memory access is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, for example provision of a status register that can be polled.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.7.2 Ordering requirements for memory accesses

ARMv7-M defines access restrictions in the permitted ordering of memory accesses. These restrictions depend on the memory attributes of the accesses involved.

Two terms used in describing the memory access ordering requirements are:

Address dependency

An address dependency exists when the value returned by a read access is used to compute the address of a subsequent read or write access. An address dependency exists even if the value read by the first read access does not change the address of the second read or write access. This might be the case if the value returned is masked off before it is used, or if it has no effect on the predicted address value for the second access.

Control dependency

A control dependency exists when the data value returned by a read access is used to determine the condition code flags, and the values of the flags are used for condition code evaluation to determine the address of a subsequent read access. This address determination might be through conditional execution, or through the evaluation of a branch

Figure A3-8 on page A3-115 shows the memory ordering between two explicit accesses A1 and A2, where A1 occurs before A2 in program order. The symbols used in the figure are as follows:

`<` Accesses must be globally observed in program order, that is, A1 must be globally observed strictly before A2.

`-` Accesses can be globally observed in any order, provided that the requirements of uniprocessor semantics, for example respecting dependencies between instructions in a single processor, are maintained.

The following additional restrictions apply to the ordering of memory accesses that have this symbol:

- If there is an address dependency then the two memory accesses are observed in program order.

  This ordering restriction does not apply if there is only a control dependency between the two read accesses.

  If there is both an address dependency and a control dependency between two read accesses the ordering requirements of the address dependency apply.
- If the value returned by a read access is used as data written by a subsequent write access, then the two memory accesses are observed in program order.
- It is impossible for an observer to observe a write access to a memory location if that location would not be written to in a sequential execution of a program
- It is impossible for an observer to observe a write value to a memory location if that value would not be written in a sequential execution of a program.

In Figure A3-8 on page A3-115, an access refers to a read or a write access to the specified memory type. For example, *Device access, Non-shareable* refers to a read or write access to Non-shareable Device memory.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A1 \ A2	Normal access	Device access		Strongly-ordered access
		Non-shareable	Shareable	
Normal access	-	-	-	-
Device access, Non-shareable	-	<	-	<
Device access, Shareable	-	-	<	<
Strongly-ordered access	-	<	<	<

Figure A3-8 Memory ordering restrictions

There are no ordering requirements for implicit accesses to any type of memory.

Program order for instruction execution

The program order of instruction execution is the order of the instructions in the control flow trace.

Explicit memory accesses in an execution can be either:

Strictly Ordered
: Denoted by <. Must occur strictly in order.

Ordered
: Denoted by <=. Can occur either in order or simultaneously.

Multiple load and store instructions, `LDC`, `LDC2`, `LDMDB`, `LDMIA`, `LDRD`, `POP`, `PUSH`, `STC`, `STC2`, `STMDB`, `STMIA`, `STRD`, `VLDR.F64`, `VSTR.F64`, `VLDM`, `VPUSH`, `VSTM`, and `VPOP`, generate multiple word accesses, each of which is a separate access for the purpose of determining ordering.

The rules for determining program order for two accesses A1 and A2 are:

If A1 and A2 are generated by two different instructions:

- A1 < A2 if the instruction that generates A1 occurs before the instruction that generates A2 in program order
- A2 < A1 if the instruction that generates A2 occurs before the instruction that generates A1 in program order.

If A1 and A2 are generated by the same instruction:

- If A1 and A2 are two word loads generated by an `LDC`, `LDC2`, `LDMDB`, `LDMIA` or `POP` instruction, or two word stores generated by a `PUSH`, `STC`, `STC2`, `STMDB`, or `STMIA` instruction, excluding `LDMDB`, `LDMIA` or `POP` instructions with a register list that includes the PC:
  - A1 <= A2 if the address of A1 is less than the address of A2
  - A2 <= A1 if the address of A2 is less than the address of A1.
- If A1 and A2 are two word loads generated by an `LDMDB`, `LDMIA` or `POP` instruction with a register list that includes the PC, the program order of the memory accesses is not defined.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- If A1 and A2 are two word loads generated by an LDRD instruction or two word stores generated by an STRD instruction, the program order of the memory accesses is not defined.
- For any instruction or operation not explicitly mentioned in this section, if the single-copy atomicity rules described in *Single-copy atomicity* on page A3-101 mean the operation becomes a sequence of accesses, then the time-ordering of those accesses is not defined.

A3.7.3 Memory barriers

Memory barrier is the general term applied to an instruction, or sequence of instructions, used to force synchronization events by a processor with respect to retiring load and store instructions in a processor. A memory barrier is used to guarantee both:

- completion of preceding load and store instructions to the programmers' model
- flushing of any prefetched instructions before the memory barrier event.

ARMv7-M requires three explicit memory barriers to support the memory order model described in this chapter. The three memory barriers are:

- Data Memory Barrier, see *Data Memory Barrier (DMB)*
- Data Synchronization Barrier, see *Data Synchronization Barrier (DSB)* on page A3-117
- Instruction Synchronization Barrier, see *Instruction Synchronization Barrier (ISB)* on page A3-118.

The DMB and DSB memory barriers affect reads and writes to the memory system generated by load and store instructions. Instruction fetches are not explicit accesses and are not affected.

Note

In ARMv7-M, memory barrier operations might be required in conjunction with data or unified cache and branch predictor maintenance operations.

Data Memory Barrier (DMB)

The DMB instruction is a data memory barrier. The processor that executes the DMB instruction is referred to as the *executing processor*, Pe. The DMB instruction takes the *required shareability domain* and *required access types* as arguments.

Note

ARMv7-M only supports system-wide barriers with no shareability domain or access type limitations.

A DMB creates two groups of memory accesses, *Group A* and *Group B*:

Group A Contains:

- all explicit memory accesses of the required access types from observers within the same shareability domain as Pe that are observed by Pe before the DMB instruction. This includes any accesses of the required access types and required shareability domain performed by Pe.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- all loads of required access types from observers within the same shareability domain as Pe that have been observed by any given observer Py within the same required shareability domain as Pe before Py has performed a memory access that is a member of Group A.

Group B Contains:

- all explicit memory accesses of the required access types by Pe that occur in program order after the DMB instruction
- all explicit memory accesses of the required access types by any given observer Px within the same required shareability domain as Pe that can only occur after Px has observed a store that is a member of Group B.

Any observer with the same required shareability domain as Pe observes all members of Group A before it observes any member of Group B. Where members of Group A and Group B access the same memory-mapped peripheral, all members of Group A will be visible at the memory-mapped peripheral before any members of Group B are visible at that peripheral.

Note

- A memory access might be in neither Group A nor Group B. The DMB does not affect the order of observation of such a memory access.
- The second part of the definition of Group A is recursive. Ultimately, membership of Group A derives from the observation by Py of a load before Py performs an access that is a member of Group A as a result of the first part of the definition of Group A.
- The second part of the definition of Group B is recursive. Ultimately, membership of Group B derives from the observation by any observer of an access by Pe that is a member of Group B as a result of the first part of the definition of Group B.

DMB only affects memory accesses. It has no effect on the ordering of any other instructions executing on the processor.

For details of the DMB instruction see *DMB* on page A7-267.

Data Synchronization Barrier (DSB)

The DSB instruction is a special memory barrier, that synchronizes the execution stream with memory accesses. The DSB instruction takes the *required shareability domain* and *required access types* as arguments. A DSB behaves as a DMB with the same arguments, and also has the additional properties defined here.

Note

ARMv7-M only supports system-wide barriers with no shareability domain or access type limitations.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A DSB completes when both:

- all explicit memory accesses that are observed by Pe before the DSB is executed, are of the required access types, and are from observers in the same required shareability domain as Pe, are complete for the set of observers within the required shareability domain
- all explicit accesses to the system control space (SCS) that result in a context altering operation issued by Pe before the DSB are complete.

In addition, no instruction that appears in program order after the DSB instruction can execute until the DSB completes.

For details of the DSB instruction see *DSB* on page A7-269.

Instruction Synchronization Barrier (ISB)

An ISB instruction flushes the pipeline in the processor, so that all instructions that come after the ISB instruction in program order are fetched from cache or memory only after the ISB instruction has completed. Using an ISB ensures that the effects of context altering operations executed before the ISB are visible to the instructions fetched after the ISB instruction. Examples of context altering operations that might require the insertion of an ISB instruction to ensure the operations are complete are:

- ensuring a system control update has occurred
- re-prioritizing the exceptions that have configurable priority.

In addition, any branches that appear in program order after the ISB instruction are written into the branch prediction logic with the context that is visible after the ISB instruction. This is needed to ensure correct execution of the instruction stream.

Any context altering operations appearing in program order after the ISB instruction only take effect after the ISB has been executed.

An ARMv7-M implementation must choose how far ahead of the current point of execution it prefetches instructions. This can be either a fixed or a dynamically varying number of instructions. As well as choosing how many instructions to prefetch, an implementation can choose which possible future execution path to prefetch along. For example, after a branch instruction, it can prefetch either the instruction appearing in program order after the branch or the instruction at the branch target. This is known as branch prediction.

A potential problem with all forms of instruction prefetching is that the instruction in memory might be changed after it was prefetched but before it is executed. If this happens, the modification to the instruction in memory does not normally prevent the already prefetched copy of the instruction from executing to completion. The memory barrier instructions, ISB, DMB or DSB as appropriate, are used to force execution ordering where necessary.

For details of the ISB instruction see *ISB* on page A7-275.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Synchronization requirements for System Control Space updates

The architecture defines the SCS as Strongly-ordered memory. In addition to the rules for the behavior of Strongly-ordered memory, the architecture requires that the side-effects of any access to the SCS that performs a context-altering operation take effect when the access completes. Software can issue a `DSB` instruction to guarantee completion of a previous SCS access.

The architecture guarantees the visibility of the effects of a context-altering operation only for instructions fetched after the completion of the SCS access that performed the context-altering operation. Executing an `ISB` instruction, or performing an exception entry or exception return, guarantees the refetching of any instructions that have been fetched but not executed.

To guarantee that the side effects of a previous SCS access are visible, software can execute a a `DSB` instruction followed by an `ISB` instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A3.8 Caches and memory hierarchy

Support for caches in ARMv7-M is limited to memory attributes. These can be exported on a supporting bus protocol such as AMBA (AHB or AXI protocols) to support system caches.

In situations where a breakdown in coherency can occur, software must manage the caches using cache maintenance operations that are memory mapped and IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

A3.8.1 Introduction to caches

A cache is a block of high-speed memory locations containing both address information (commonly known as a TAG) and the associated data. The purpose is to increase the average speed of a memory access. Caches operate on two principles of locality:

Spatial locality an access to one location is likely to be followed by accesses from adjacent locations, for example, sequential instruction execution or usage of a data structure

Temporal locality an access to an area of memory is likely to be repeated within a short time period, for example, execution of a code loop

To minimize the quantity of control information stored, the spatial locality property is used to group several locations together under the same TAG. This logical block is commonly known as a cache line. When data is loaded into a cache, access times for subsequent loads and stores are reduced, resulting in overall performance benefits. An access to information already in a cache is known as a cache hit, and other accesses are called cache misses.

Normally, caches are self-managing, with the updates occurring automatically. Whenever the processor wants to access a cacheable location, the cache is checked. If the access is a cache hit, the access occurs immediately, otherwise a location is allocated and the cache line loaded from memory. Different cache topologies and access policies are possible, however they must comply with the memory coherency model of the underlying architecture.

Caches introduce a number of potential problems, mainly because of:

- memory accesses occurring at times other than when the programmer would normally expect them
- the existence of multiple physical locations where a data item can be held.

A3.8.2 Implication of caches to the application programmer

Caches are largely invisible to the application programmer, but can become visible due to a breakdown in coherency. Such a breakdown can occur when:

- memory locations are updated by other agents in the systems
- memory updates made from the application code must be made visible to other agents in the system.

For example:

In systems with a DMA that reads memory locations that are held in the data cache of a processor, a breakdown of coherency occurs when the processor has written new data in the data cache, but the DMA reads the old data held in memory.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In a Harvard architecture of caches, a breakdown of coherency occurs when new instruction data has been written into the data cache and/or to memory, but the instruction cache still contains the old instruction data.

A3.8.3 Preloading caches

The ARM architecture provides memory system hints PLD (Preload Data) and PLI (Preload instruction) to permit software to communicate the expected use of memory locations to the hardware. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses if and when they do occur. The effect of these memory system hints is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Typically, implementations will use this information to bring the data or instruction locations into caches that have faster access times than Normal memory.

The Preload instructions are hints, and so implementations can treat them as NOPs without affecting the functional behavior of the device. The instructions do not generate exceptions, but the memory system operations might generate an imprecise fault (asynchronous exception) due to the memory access.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A4
The ARMv7-M Instruction Set

This chapter describes the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set, including the additional instructions added by the Floating-point extension. It contains the following sections:

- *About the instruction set* on page A4-124
- *Unified Assembler Language* on page A4-126
- *Branch instructions* on page A4-129
- *Data-processing instructions* on page A4-130
- *Status register access instructions* on page A4-140
- *Load and store instructions* on page A4-141
- *Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions* on page A4-144
- *Miscellaneous instructions* on page A4-145
- *Exception-generating instructions* on page A4-146
- *Coprocessor instructions* on page A4-147
- *Floating-point load and store instructions* on page A4-148
- *Floating-point register transfer instructions* on page A4-149
- *Floating-point data-processing instructions* on page A4-150.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.1 About the instruction set

ARMv7-M supports a large number of 32-bit instructions that Thumb-2 technology introduced into the Thumb instruction set. Much of the functionality available is identical to the ARM instruction set supported alongside the Thumb instruction set in ARMv6T2 and other ARMv7 profiles. This chapter describes the functionality available in the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set, and the *Unified Assembler Language* (UAL) that can be assembled to either the Thumb or ARM instruction sets.

Thumb instructions are either 16-bit or 32-bit, and are aligned on a two-byte boundary. 16-bit and 32-bit instructions can be intermixed freely. Many common operations are most efficiently executed using 16-bit instructions. However:

- Most 16-bit instructions can only access eight of the general purpose registers, R0-R7. These are known as the low registers. A small number of 16-bit instructions can access the high registers, R8-R15.
- Many operations that would require two or more 16-bit instructions can be more efficiently executed with a single 32-bit instruction.

The ARM and Thumb instruction sets are designed to *interwork* freely. Because ARMv7-M only supports Thumb instructions, interworking instructions in ARMv7-M must only reference Thumb state execution, see *ARMv7-M and interworking support* for more details.

In addition, see:

- Chapter A5 *The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding* for encoding details of the Thumb instruction set
- Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* for detailed descriptions of the instructions.

A4.1.1 ARMv7-M and interworking support

Thumb interworking is held as bit [0] of an *interworking address*. Interworking addresses are used in the following instructions:

- `BX` or `BLX`
- an `LDR` or `LDM` that loads the PC.

ARMv7-M only supports the Thumb instruction execution state, therefore the value of address bit [0] must be 1 in interworking instructions, otherwise a fault occurs. All instructions ignore bit [0] and write bits [31:1]:'0' when updating the PC.

16-bit instructions that update the PC behave as follows:

- `ADD` (register) and `MOV` (register) branch without interworking

  Note

  ARM deprecates the use of Rd as the PC in the `ADD` (SP plus register) 16-bit instruction.

- `B` branches without interworking
- `CBZ` and `CBNZ` branch without interworking.
- `BLX` and `BX` interwork on the value in Rm

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- POP interworks on the value loaded to the PC
- BKPT and SVC cause exceptions and are not considered to be interworking instructions.

32-bit instructions that update the PC behave as follows:

- B branches without interworking
- BL branches without interworking
- LDM and LDR support interworking using the value written to the PC
- TBB and TBH branch without interworking.

For more details, see the description of the BXWritePC() function in *Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46.

A4.1.2 Conditional execution

Conditionally executed means that the instruction only has its normal effect on the programmers' model operation, memory and coprocessors if the N, Z, C and V flags in the APSR satisfy a condition specified in the instruction. If the flags do not satisfy this condition, the instruction acts as a NOP, that is, execution advances to the next instruction as normal, including any relevant checks for exceptions being taken, but has no other effect.

Most Thumb instructions are unconditional. Conditional execution in Thumb code can be achieved using any of the following instructions:

- A 16-bit conditional branch instruction, with a branch range of –256 to +254 bytes. See *B* on page A7-239 for details. Before the additional instruction support in ARMv6T2, this was the only mechanism for conditional execution in Thumb code.
- A 32-bit conditional branch instruction, with a branch range of approximately ± 1MB. See *B* on page A7-239 for details.
- 16-bit Compare and Branch on Zero and Compare and Branch on Nonzero instructions, with a branch range of +4 to +130 bytes. See *CBNZ, CBZ* on page A7-251 for details.
- A 16-bit If-Then instruction that makes up to four following instructions conditional. See *IT* on page A7-277 for details. The instructions that are made conditional by an IT instruction are called its *IT block*. Instructions in an IT block must either all have the same condition, or some can have one condition, and others can have the inverse condition.

See *Conditional execution* on page A7-208 for more information about conditional execution.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.2 Unified Assembler Language

This document uses the ARM *Unified Assembler Language* (UAL). This assembly language syntax provides a canonical form for all ARM and Thumb instructions.

UAL describes the syntax for the mnemonic and the operands of each instruction. In addition, it assumes that instructions and data items can be given labels. It does not specify the syntax to be used for labels, nor what assembler directives and options are available. See your assembler documentation for these details.

Earlier ARM assembly language mnemonics are still supported as synonyms, as described in the instruction details.

Note

Most earlier Thumb assembly language mnemonics are *not* supported. See Appendix B *Legacy Instruction Mnemonics* for details.

UAL includes *instruction selection* rules that specify which instruction encoding is selected when more than one can provide the required functionality. For example, both 16-bit and 32-bit encodings exist for an `ADD R0,R1,R2` instruction. The most common instruction selection rule is that when both a 16-bit encoding and a 32-bit encoding are available, the 16-bit encoding is selected, to optimize code density.

Syntax options exist to override the normal instruction selection rules and ensure that a particular encoding is selected. These are useful when disassembling code, to ensure that subsequent assembly produces the original code, and in some other situations.

A4.2.1 Conditional instructions

For maximum portability of UAL assembly language between the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, ARM recommends that:

- `IT` instructions are written before conditional instructions in the correct way for the Thumb instruction set.
- When assembling to the ARM instruction set, assemblers check that any `IT` instructions are correct, but do not generate any code for them.

Although other Thumb instructions are unconditional, all instructions that are made conditional by an `IT` instruction must be written with a condition. These conditions must match the conditions imposed by the `IT` instruction. For example, an `ITTEE EQ` instruction imposes the `EQ` condition on the first two following instructions, and the `NE` condition on the next two. Those four instructions must be written with `EQ`, `EQ`, `NE` and `NE` conditions respectively.

Some instructions cannot be made conditional by an `IT` instruction. Some instructions can be conditional if they are the last instruction in the IT block, but not otherwise.

The branch instruction encodings that include a condition field cannot be made conditional by an `IT` instruction. If the assembler syntax indicates a conditional branch that correctly matches a preceding `IT` instruction, it is assembled using a branch instruction encoding that does not include a condition field.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.2.2 Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax

The UAL syntax for some instructions includes the label of an instruction or a literal data item that is at a fixed offset from the instruction being specified. The assembler must:

1. Calculate the PC or Align(PC,4) value of the instruction. The PC value of an instruction is its address plus 4 for a Thumb instruction. The Align(PC,4) value of an instruction is its PC value ANDed with 0xFFFFFFFC to force it to be word-aligned.

2. Calculate the offset from the PC or Align(PC,4) value of the instruction to the address of the labelled instruction or literal data item.

3. Assemble a *PC-relative* encoding of the instruction, that is, one that reads its PC or Align(PC,4) value and adds the calculated offset to form the required address.

   Note

   For instructions that encode a subtraction operation, if the instruction cannot encode the calculated offset, but can encode minus the calculated offset, the instruction encoding specifies a subtraction of minus the calculated offset.

The syntax of the following instructions includes a label:

- B, BL, and BLX (immediate). The assembler syntax for these instructions always specifies the label of the instruction that they branch to. Their encodings specify a sign-extended immediate offset that is added to the PC value of the instruction to form the target address of the branch.

- CBNZ and CBZ. The assembler syntax for these instructions always specifies the label of the instruction that they branch to. Their encodings specify a zero-extended immediate offset that is added to the PC value of the instruction to form the target address of the branch. They do not support backward branches.

- LDC, LDC2, LDR, LDRB, LDRD, LDRH, LDRSB, LDRSH, PLD, PLI, VLDR, and VSTR. The normal assembler syntax of these load instructions can specify the label of a literal data item that is to be loaded. The encodings of these instructions specify a zero-extended immediate offset that is either added to or subtracted from the Align(PC,4) value of the instruction to form the address of the data item. A few such encodings perform a fixed addition or a fixed subtraction and must only be used when that operation is required, but most contain a bit that specifies whether the offset is to be added or subtracted.

  When the assembler calculates an offset of 0 for the normal syntax of these instructions, it must assemble an encoding that adds 0 to the Align(PC,4) value of the instruction. Encodings that subtract 0 from the Align(PC,4) value cannot be specified by the normal syntax.

  There is an alternative syntax for these instructions that specifies the addition or subtraction and the immediate offset explicitly. In this syntax, the label is replaced by [PC, #+/-<imm>], where:

  +/- Is + or omitted to specify that the immediate offset is to be added to the Align(PC,4) value, or - if it is to be subtracted.

  <imm> Is the immediate offset.

  This alternative syntax makes it possible to assemble the encodings that subtract 0 from the Align(PC,4) value, and to disassemble them to a syntax that can be re-assembled correctly.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- ADR. The normal assembler syntax for this instruction can specify the label of an instruction or literal data item whose address is to be calculated. Its encoding specifies a zero-extended immediate offset that is either added to or subtracted from the Align(PC,4) value of the instruction to form the address of the data item, and some opcode bits that determine whether it is an addition or subtraction.

  When the assembler calculates an offset of 0 for the normal syntax of this instruction, it must assemble the encoding that adds 0 to the Align(PC,4) value of the instruction. The encoding that subtracts 0 from the Align(PC,4) value cannot be specified by the normal syntax.

  There is an alternative syntax for this instruction that specifies the addition or subtraction and the immediate value explicitly, by writing them as additions ADD <Rd>,PC,#<imm> or subtractions SUB <Rd>,PC,#<imm>. This alternative syntax makes it possible to assemble the encoding that subtracts 0 from the Align(PC,4) value, and to disassemble it to a syntax that can be re-assembled correctly.

Note

ARM recommends that where possible, you avoid using:

- the alternative syntax for the ADR, LDC, LDC2, LDR, LDRB, LDRD, LDRH, LDRSB, LDRSH, PLD, PLI, VLDR, and VSTR instructions
- the encodings of these instructions that subtract 0 from the Align(PC,4) value.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.3 Branch instructions

Table A4-1 summarizes the branch instructions in the Thumb instruction set. In addition to providing for changes in the flow of execution, some branch instructions can change instruction set.

Table A4-1 Branch instructions

Instruction	Usage	Range
B on page A7-239	Branch to target address	+/–1 MB
CBNZ, CBZ on page A7-251	Compare and Branch on Nonzero, Compare and Branch on Zero	0-126 B
BL on page A7-248	Call a subroutine	+/–16 MB
BLX (register) on page A7-249	Call a subroutine, optionally change instruction set	Any
BX on page A7-250	Branch to target address, change instruction set	Any
TBB, TBH on page A7-517	`TBB`: Table Branch, byte offsets	0-510 B
	`TBH`: Table Branch, halfword offsets	0-131070 B

`LDR`, `LDM`, and `POP` instructions can also cause a branch. See *Load and store instructions* on page A4-141 and *Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions* on page A4-144 for details.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.4 Data-processing instructions

Data-processing instructions belong to one of the following groups:

- *Standard data-processing instructions*.

  This group perform basic data-processing operations, and share a common format with some variations.
- *Shift instructions* on page A4-132.
- *Multiply instructions* on page A4-133.
- *Saturating instructions* on page A4-135.
- *Packing and unpacking instructions* on page A4-136.
- *Divide instructions* on page A4-137.
- *Parallel addition and subtraction instructions, DSP extension* on page A4-137.
- *Miscellaneous data-processing instructions* on page A4-138.

See also *Floating-point data-processing instructions* on page A4-150.

A4.4.1 Standard data-processing instructions

These instructions generally have a destination register Rd, a first operand register Rn, and a second operand. The second operand can be either another register Rm, or a modified immediate constant.

If the second operand is a modified immediate constant, it is encoded in 12 bits of the instruction. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for details.

If the second operand is another register, it can optionally be shifted in any of the following ways:

`LSL` Logical Shift Left by 1-31 bits.

`LSR` Logical Shift Right by 1-32 bits.

`ASR` Arithmetic Shift Right by 1-32 bits.

`ROR` Rotate Right by 1-31 bits.

`RRX` Rotate Right with Extend. See *Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40 for details.

In Thumb code, the amount to shift the second operand by is always a constant encoded in the instruction.The Thumb instruction set provides register-based shifts as explicit instructions, see *Shift instructions* on page A4-132.

In addition to placing a result in the destination register, these instructions can optionally set the condition code flags according to the result of the operation. If an instruction does not set a flag, the existing value of that flag, from a previous instruction, is preserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A4-2 summarizes the main data-processing instructions in the Thumb instruction set. Generally, each of these instructions is described in two sections in Chapter A7 *Instruction Details*, one section for each of the following:

- `INSTRUCTION` (immediate) where the second operand is a modified immediate constant.
- `INSTRUCTION` (register) where the second operand is a register, or a register shifted by a constant.

Table A4-2 Standard data-processing instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Notes
`ADC`	Add with Carry	-
`ADD`	Add	Thumb permits use of a modified immediate constant or a zero-extended 12-bit immediate constant.
`ADR`	Form PC-relative Address	First operand is the PC. Second operand is an immediate constant. Thumb supports a zero-extended 12-bit immediate constant. Operation is an addition or a subtraction.
`AND`	Bitwise AND	-
`BIC`	Bitwise Bit Clear	-
`CMN`	Compare Negative	Sets flags. Like `ADD` but with no destination register.
`CMP`	Compare	Sets flags. Like `SUB` but with no destination register.
`EOR`	Bitwise Exclusive OR	-
`MOV`	Copies operand to destination	Has only one operand, with the same options as the second operand in most of these instructions. If the operand is a shifted register, the instruction is an `LSL`, `LSR`, `ASR`, or `ROR` instruction instead. See *Shift instructions* on page A4-132 for details. Thumb permits use of a modified immediate constant or a zero-extended 16-bit immediate constant.
`MVN`	Bitwise NOT	Has only one operand, with the same options as the second operand in most of these instructions.
`ORN`	Bitwise OR NOT	-
`ORR`	Bitwise OR	-
`RSB`	Reverse Subtract	Subtracts first operand from second operand. This permits subtraction from constants and shifted registers.
`SBC`	Subtract with Carry	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A4-2 Standard data-processing instructions (continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Notes
SUB	Subtract	Thumb permits use of a modified immediate constant or a zero-extended 12-bit immediate constant.
TEQ	Test Equivalence	Sets flags. Like EOR but with no destination register.
TST	Test	Sets flags. Like AND but with no destination register.

A4.4.2 Shift instructions

Table A4-3 lists the shift instructions in the Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-3 Shift instructions

Instruction	See
Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (immediate)* on page A7-235
Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (register)* on page A7-237
Logical Shift Left	*LSL (immediate)* on page A7-333
Logical Shift Left	*LSL (register)* on page A7-335
Logical Shift Right	*LSR (immediate)* on page A7-337
Logical Shift Right	*LSR (register)* on page A7-339
Rotate Right	*ROR (immediate)* on page A7-405
Rotate Right	*ROR (register)* on page A7-407
Rotate Right with Extend	*RRX* on page A7-409

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.4.3 Multiply instructions

These instructions can operate on signed or unsigned quantities. In some types of operation, the results are same whether the operands are signed or unsigned.

- Table A4-4 lists the multiply instructions where there is no distinction between signed and unsigned quantities.

  The least significant 32 bits of the result are used. More significant bits are discarded.
- Table A4-5 lists the signed multiply instructions in the ARMv7-M base architecture.
- Table A4-6 lists the signed multiply instructions that the DSP extension adds to the ARMv7-M instruction set.
- Table A4-7 on page A4-134 lists the unsigned multiply instructions in the ARMv7-M base architecture.
- Table A4-8 on page A4-134 lists the unsigned multiply instructions that the DSP extension adds to the ARMv7-M instruction set.

Table A4-4 General multiply instructions

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Multiply Accumulate	*MLA* on page A7-345	32 = 32 + 32 x 32
Multiply and Subtract	*MLS* on page A7-346	32 = 32 – 32 x 32
Multiply	*MUL* on page A7-359	32 = 32 x 32

Table A4-5 Signed multiply instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Signed Multiply Accumulate Long	*SMLAL* on page A7-437	64 = 64 + 32 x 32
Signed Multiply Long	*SMULL* on page A7-457	64 = 32 x 32

Table A4-6 Signed multiply instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Signed Multiply Accumulate, halfwords	*SMLABB, SMLABT, SMLATB, SMLATT* on page A7-433	32 = 32 + 16 x 16
Signed Multiply Accumulate Dual	*SMLAD, SMLADX* on page A7-435	32 = 32 + 16 x 16 + 16 x 16
Signed Multiply Accumulate Long, halfwords	*SMLALBB, SMLALBT, SMLALTB, SMLALTT* on page A7-439	64 = 64 + 16 x 16

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A4-6 Signed multiply instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension (continued)

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Signed Multiply Accumulate Long Dual	*SMLALD, SMLALDX* on page A7-441	64 = 64 + 16 x 16 + 16 x 16
Signed Multiply Accumulate, word by halfword	*SMLAWB, SMLAWT* on page A7-443	32 = 32 + 32 x 16[a]
Signed Multiply Subtract Dual	*SMLSD, SMLSDX* on page A7-445	32 = 32 + 16 x 16 – 16 x 16
Signed Multiply Subtract Long Dual	*SMLSLD, SMLSLDX* on page A7-447	64 = 64 + 16 x 16 – 16 x 16
Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Accumulate	*SMMLA, SMMLAR* on page A7-449	32 = 32 + 32 x 32[b]
Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Subtract	*SMMLS, SMMLSR* on page A7-450	32 = 32 – 32 x 32[b]
Signed Most Significant Word Multiply	*SMMUL, SMMULR* on page A7-451	32 = 32 x 32[b]
Signed Dual Multiply Add	*SMUAD, SMUADX* on page A7-453	32 = 16 x 16 + 16 x 16
Signed Multiply, halfwords	*SMULBB, SMULBT, SMULTB, SMULTT* on page A7-455	32 = 16 x 16
Signed Multiply, word by halfword	*SMULWB, SMULWT* on page A7-458	32 = 32 x 16[a]
Signed Dual Multiply Subtract	*SMUSD, SMUSDX* on page A7-459	32 = 16 x 16 – 16 x 16

a. Uses the most significant 32 bits of the 48-bit product. Discards the less significant bits.
b. Uses the most significant 32 bits of the 64-bit product. Discards the less significant bits.

Table A4-7 Unsigned multiply instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Long	*UMLAL* on page A7-537	64 = 64 + 32 x 32
Unsigned Multiply Long	*UMULL* on page A7-538	64 = 32 x 32

Table A4-8 Unsigned multiply instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See	Operation (number of bits)
Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Accumulate Long	*UMAAL* on page A7-536	64 = 32 + 32 + 32 x 32

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.4.4 Saturating instructions

Table A4-9 lists the saturating instructions in the ARMv7-M base architecture. For more information see *Pseudocode details of saturation* on page A2-44.

Table A4-9 Saturating instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture

Instruction	See	Operation
Signed Saturate	*SSAT* on page A7-461	Saturates optionally shifted 32-bit value to selected range
Unsigned Saturate	*USAT* on page A7-547	Saturates optionally shifted 32-bit value to selected range

Additional saturating instructions, DSP extension

The DSP extension adds:

- two saturating instructions that operate on parallel halfwords, as Table A4-10 shows
- saturating addition and subtraction instructions, as Table A4-11 shows.

Table A4-10 Halfword saturating instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See	Operation
Signed Saturate 16	*SSAT16* on page A7-463	Saturates two 16-bit values to selected range
Unsigned Saturate 16	*USAT16* on page A7-549	Saturates two 16-bit values to selected range

Table A4-11 Saturating addition and subtraction instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See	Operation
Saturating Add	*QADD* on page A7-391	Add, saturating result to the 32-bit signed integer range
Saturating Subtract	*QSUB* on page A7-398	Subtract, saturating result to the 32-bit signed integer range
Saturating Double and Add	*QDADD* on page A7-395	Doubles one value and adds a second value, saturating the doubling and the addition to the 32-bit signed integer range
Saturating Double and Subtract	*QDSUB* on page A7-396	Doubles one value and subtracts the result from a second value, saturating the doubling and the subtraction to the 32-bit signed integer range

See also *Parallel addition and subtraction instructions, DSP extension* on page A4-137.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.4.5 Packing and unpacking instructions

Table A4-12 lists the packing and upacking instructions in the ARMv7-M base architecture.

Table A4-12 Packing and unpacking instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture

Instruction	See	Operation
Signed Extend Byte	*SXTB* on page A7-511	Extend 8 bits to 32
Signed Extend Halfword	*SXTH* on page A7-515	Extend 16 bits to 32
Unsigned Extend Byte	*UXTB* on page A7-559	Extend 8 bits to 32
Unsigned Extend Halfword	*UXTH* on page A7-563	Extend 16 bits to 32

Table A4-13 lists the packing and upacking instructions that the DSP extension adds to the ARMv7-M instruction set.

Table A4-13 Packing and unpacking instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See	Operation
Pack Halfword	*PKHBT, PKHTB* on page A7-375	Combine halfwords
Signed Extend and Add Byte	*SXTAB* on page A7-505	Extend 8 bits to 32 and add
Signed Extend and Add Byte 16	*SXTAB16* on page A7-507	Dual extend 8 bits to 16 and add
Signed Extend and Add Halfword	*SXTAH* on page A7-509	Extend 16 bits to 32 and add
Signed Extend Byte 16	*SXTB16* on page A7-513	Dual extend 8 bits to 16
Unsigned Extend and Add Byte	*UXTAB* on page A7-553	Extend 8 bits to 32 and add
Unsigned Extend and Add Byte 16	*UXTAB16* on page A7-555	Dual extend 8 bits to 16 and add
Unsigned Extend and Add Halfword	*UXTAH* on page A7-557	Extend 16 bits to 32 and add
Unsigned Extend Byte 16	*UXTB16* on page A7-561	Dual extend 8 bits to 16

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.4.6 Divide instructions

In the ARMv7-M profile, the Thumb instruction set includes signed and unsigned integer divide instructions that are implemented in hardware. For details of the instructions see:

- *SDIV* on page A7-423
- *UDIV* on page A7-529.

In the ARMv7-M profile, the CCR.DIV_0_TRP bit enables divide by zero fault detection:

DZ == 0 Divide-by-zero returns a zero result.

DZ == 1 `SDIV` and `UDIV` generate an Undefined Instruction exception on a divide-by-zero.

A reset clears the CCR.DIV_0_TRP bit to zero.

A4.4.7 Parallel addition and subtraction instructions, DSP extension

The DSP extension adds instructions that perform additions and subtractions on the values of two registers and write the result to a destination register, treating the register values as sets of two halfwords or four bytes.

These instructions consist of a prefix followed by a main instruction mnemonic. The prefixes are as follows:

`S` Signed arithmetic modulo 2^8 or 2^{16}.

`Q` Signed saturating arithmetic.

`SH` Signed arithmetic, halving the results.

`U` Unsigned arithmetic modulo 2^8 or 2^{16}.

`UQ` Unsigned saturating arithmetic.

`UH` Unsigned arithmetic, halving the results.

The main instruction mnemonics are as follows:

`ADD16` Adds the top halfwords of two operands to form the top halfword of the result, and the bottom halfwords of the same two operands to form the bottom halfword of the result.

`ASX` Exchanges halfwords of the second operand, and then adds top halfwords and subtracts bottom halfwords.

`SAX` Exchanges halfwords of the second operand, and then subtracts top halfwords and adds bottom halfwords.

`SUB16` Subtracts each halfword of the second operand from the corresponding halfword of the first operand to form the corresponding halfword of the result.

`ADD8` Adds each byte of the second operand to the corresponding byte of the first operand to form the corresponding byte of the result.

`SUB8` Subtracts each byte of the second operand from the corresponding byte of the first operand to form the corresponding byte of the result.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The instruction set permits all 36 combinations of prefix and main instruction operand, as Table A4-14 shows.

Table A4-14 Parallel addition and subtraction instructions

Main instruction	Signed	Saturating	Signed halving	Unsigned	Unsigned saturating	Unsigned halving
ADD16, add, two halfwords	SADD16	QADD16	SHADD16	UADD16	UQADD16	UHADD16
ASX, add and subtract with exchange	SASX	QASX	SHASX	UASX	UQASX	UHASX
SAX, subtract and add with exchange	SSAX	QSAX	SHSAX	USAX	UQSAX	UHSAX
SUB16, subtract, two halfwords	SSUB16	QSUB16	SHSUB16	USUB16	UQSUB16	UHSUB16
ADD8, add, four words	SADD8	QADD8	SHADD8	UADD8	UQADD8	UHADD8
SUB8, subtract, four words	SSUB8	QSUB8	SHSUB8	USUB8	UQSUB8	UHSUB8

A4.4.8 Miscellaneous data-processing instructions

Table A4-15 lists the miscellaneous data-processing instructions in the Thumb instruction set in the ARMv7-M base architecture. Immediate values in these instructions are simple binary numbers.

Table A4-15 Miscellaneous data-processing instructions, ARMv7-M base architecture

Instruction	See	Notes
Bit Field Clear	*BFC* on page A7-241	-
Bit Field Insert	*BFI* on page A7-242	-
Count Leading Zeros	*CLZ* on page A7-256	-
Move Top	*MOVT* on page A7-352	Moves 16-bit immediate value to top halfword. Bottom halfword unaltered.
Reverse Bits	*RBIT* on page A7-401	-
Byte-Reverse Word	*REV* on page A7-402	-
Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword	*REV16* on page A7-403	-
Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword	*REVSH* on page A7-404	-
Signed Bit Field Extract	*SBFX* on page A7-421	-
Unsigned Bit Field Extract	*UBFX* on page A7-528	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A4-15 on page A4-138 lists the miscellaneous data-processing instructions that the DSP extension adds to the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-16 Miscellaneous data-processing instructions, ARMv7-M DSP extension

Instruction	See
Select Bytes using GE flags	*SEL* on page A7-425
Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences	*USAD8* on page A7-545
Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences and Accumulate	*USADA8* on page A7-546

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.5 Status register access instructions

The MRS and MSR instructions move the contents of the *Application Program Status Register* (APSR) to or from a general-purpose register.

The APSR is described in *The Application Program Status Register (APSR)* on page A2-48.

The condition flags in the APSR are normally set by executing data-processing instructions, and are normally used to control the execution of conditional instructions. However, you can set the flags explicitly using the MSR instruction, and you can read the current state of the flags explicitly using the MRS instruction.

For details of the system level use of status register access instructions CPS, MRS and MSR, see Chapter B5 *System Instruction Details*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.6 Load and store instructions

Table A4-17 summarizes the general-purpose register load and store instructions in the Thumb instruction set. See also

- *Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions* on page A4-144
- *Floating-point load and store instructions* on page A4-148

Load and store instructions have several options for addressing memory. See *Addressing modes* on page A4-143 for more information.

Table A4-17 Load and store instructions

Data type	Load	Store	Load unprivileged	Store unprivileged	Load exclusive	Store exclusive
32-bit word	LDR	STR	LDRT	STRT	LDREX	STREX
16-bit halfword	-	STRH	-	STRHT	-	STREXH
16-bit unsigned halfword	LDRH	-	LDRHT	-	LDREXH	-
16-bit signed halfword	LDRSH	-	LDRSHT	-	-	-
8-bit byte	-	STRB	-	STRBT	-	STREXB
8-bit unsigned byte	LDRB	-	LDRBT	-	LDREXB	-
8-bit signed byte	LDRSB	-	LDRSBT	-	-	-
Two 32-bit words	LDRD	STRD	-	-	-	-

A4.6.1 Loads to the PC

The LDR instruction can be used to load a value into the PC. The value loaded is treated as an interworking address, as described by the LoadWritePC() pseudocode function in *Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46.

A4.6.2 Halfword and byte loads and stores

Halfword and byte stores store the least significant halfword or byte from the register, to 16 or 8 bits of memory respectively. There is no distinction between signed and unsigned stores.

Halfword and byte loads load 16 or 8 bits from memory into the least significant halfword or byte of a register. Unsigned loads zero-extend the loaded value to 32 bits, and signed loads sign-extend the value to 32 bits.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.6.3 Unprivileged loads and stores

In an unprivileged mode, unprivileged loads and stores operate in exactly the same way as the corresponding ordinary operations. In a privileged mode, unprivileged loads and stores are treated as though they were executed in an unprivileged mode. See *Privilege level access controls for data accesses* on page A3-109 for more information.

A4.6.4 Exclusive loads and stores

Exclusive loads and stores provide for shared memory synchronization. See *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-89 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.6.5 Addressing modes

The address for a load or store is formed from two parts:

- a value from a base register
- an offset.

The base register can be any one of the general-purpose registers.

For loads, the base register can be the PC. This permits PC-relative addressing for position-independent code. Instructions marked (literal) in their title in Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* are PC-relative loads.

The offset takes one of three formats:

Immediate The offset is an unsigned number that can be added to or subtracted from the base register value. Immediate offset addressing is useful for accessing data elements that are a fixed distance from the start of the data object, such as structure fields, stack offsets and input/output registers.

Register The offset is a value from a general-purpose register. This register cannot be the PC. The value can be added to, or subtracted from, the base register value. Register offsets are useful for accessing arrays or blocks of data.

Scaled register The offset is a general-purpose register, other than the PC, shifted by an immediate value, then added to or subtracted from the base register. This means an array index can be scaled by the size of each array element.

The offset and base register can be used in three different ways to form the memory address. The addressing modes are described as follows:

Offset The offset is added to or subtracted from the base register to form the memory address.

Pre-indexed The offset is added to or subtracted from the base register to form the memory address. The base register is then updated with this new address, to permit automatic indexing through an array or memory block.

Post-indexed The value of the base register alone is used as the memory address. The offset is then added to or subtracted from the base register. and this value is stored back in the base register, to permit automatic indexing through an array or memory block.

Note

Not every variant is available for every instruction, and the range of permitted immediate values and the options for scaled registers vary from instruction to instruction. See Chapter A7 *Instruction Details* for full details for each instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.7 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

Load Multiple instructions load a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers from memory.

Store Multiple instructions store a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers to memory.

The memory locations are consecutive word-aligned words. The addresses used are obtained from a base register, and can be either above or below the value in the base register. The base register can optionally be updated by the total size of the data transferred.

Table A4-18 summarizes the Thumb Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions.

Table A4-18 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

Instruction	Description
Load Multiple, Increment After or Full Descending	*LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A7-283
Load Multiple, Decrement Before or Empty Ascending	*LDMDB, LDMEA* on page A7-285
Pop multiple registers off the stack [a]	*POP* on page A7-387
Push multiple registers onto the stack [b]	*PUSH* on page A7-389
Store Multiple, Increment After or Empty Ascending	*STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A7-469
Store Multiple, Decrement Before or Full Descending	*STMDB, STMFD* on page A7-471

a. This instruction is equivalent to an `LDM` instruction with the SP as base register, and base register updating.
b. This instruction is equivalent to an `STMDB` instruction with the SP as base register, and base register updating.

A4.7.1 Loads to the PC

The `LDM`, `LDMDB`, and `POP` instructions can be used to load a value into the PC. The value loaded is treated as an interworking address, as described by the `LoadWritePC()` pseudocode function in *Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.8 Miscellaneous instructions

Table A4-19 summarizes the miscellaneous instructions in the Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-19 Miscellaneous instructions

Instruction	See
Clear Exclusive	*CLREX* on page A7-255
Debug hint	*DBG* on page A7-266
Data Memory Barrier	*DMB* on page A7-267
Data Synchronization Barrier	*DSB* on page A7-269
Instruction Synchronization Barrier	*ISB* on page A7-275
If Then	*IT* on page A7-277
No Operation	*NOP* on page A7-366
Preload Data	*PLD (immediate)* on page A7-377
	PLD (literal) on page A7-379
	PLD (register) on page A7-381
Preload Instruction	*PLI (immediate, literal)* on page A7-383
	PLI (register) on page A7-385
Send Event	*SEV* on page A7-426
Supervisor Call	*SVC* on page A7-503
Wait for Event	*WFE* on page A7-610
Wait for Interrupt	*WFI* on page A7-611
Yield	*YIELD* on page A7-612

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.9 Exception-generating instructions

The following instructions are intended specifically to cause a processor exception to occur:

- The Supervisor Call instruction, SVC, causes an SVCall exception to occur. This is the main mechanism for unprivileged code to make calls to privileged Operating System code. See *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631 for details.

  Note

  Older ARM documentation often describes unprivileged code as User code.This description is not appropriate to the M profile architecture.

- The Breakpoint (BKPT) instruction provides for software breakpoints. It can generate a debug monitor exception or cause a running system to halt depending on the debug configuration. See *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823 for more details.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.10 Coprocessor instructions

There are three types of instruction for communicating with coprocessors. These permit the processor to:

- Initiate a coprocessor data-processing operation, see *CDP, CDP2* on page A7-253.
- Transfer general-purpose registers to and from coprocessor registers, see:
  - *MCR, MCR2* on page A7-341
  - *MCRR, MCRR2* on page A7-343
  - *MRC, MRC2* on page A7-353
  - *MRRC, MRRC2* on page A7-355.
- Generate addresses for the coprocessor load/store instructions, see:
  - *LDC, LDC2 (immediate)* on page A7-279
  - *LDC, LDC2 (literal)* on page A7-281
  - *STC, STC2* on page A7-467.

The instruction set distinguishes up to 16 coprocessors with a 4-bit field in each coprocessor instruction, so each coprocessor is assigned a particular number.

Note

One coprocessor can use more than one of the 16 numbers if it requires a large coprocessor instruction set.

If an ARMv7-M implementation includes the optional FP extension, it uses coprocessors 10 and 11, together, to provide the *floating-point* (FP) functionality. The extension provides different instructions for accessing these coprocessors. These instructions are of similar types to the instructions for other coprocessors. This means they can:

- initiate a coprocessor data-processing operation, see *Floating-point data-processing instructions* on page A6-195
- transfer general-purpose registers to and from coprocessor registers, see *32-bit transfer between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-198 and *64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199
- Load or store the values of coprocessor registers, see *Extension register load or store instructions* on page A6-197.

Coprocessors execute the same instruction stream as the processor, ignoring non-coprocessor instructions and coprocessor instructions for other coprocessors. Coprocessor instructions that cannot be executed by any coprocessor hardware cause a UsageFault exception and indicate the reason as follows:

- If the Coprocessor Access Register denies access to a coprocessor, the processor sets the UFSR.NOCP flag to 1 to indicate that the coprocessor does not exist.
- If the coprocessor access is permitted but the instruction is unknown, the processor sets the UFSR.UNDEFINSTR flag to 1 to indicate that the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.11 Floating-point load and store instructions

Table A4-20 summarizes the extension register load/store instructions in the Floating-point instruction set.

Table A4-20 FP extension register load and store instructions

Instruction	See	Operation
FP Load Multiple	*VLDM* on page A7-579	Load 1-16 consecutive 32-bit or 64-bit registers.
FP Load Register	*VLDR* on page A7-581	Load one 32-bit or 64-bit register.
FP Pop	*VPOP* on page A7-599	Pop 1-16 consecutive 32-bit or 64-bit registers from the stack.
FP Push	*VPUSH* on page A7-601	Push 1-16 consecutive 32-bit or 64-bit registers onto the stack.
FP Store Multiple	*VSTM* on page A7-605	Store 1-16 consecutive 32-bit or 64-bit registers.
FP Store Register	*VSTR* on page A7-607	Store one 32-bit or 64-bit register.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.12 Floating-point register transfer instructions

Table A4-21 summarizes the floating-point register transfer instructions in the Floating-point instruction set. These instructions transfer data from ARM core registers to FP extension registers, or from FP extension registers to ARM core registers.

Single-precision and doubleword FP extension registers are different views of the same FP register set, see *The FP extension registers* on page A2-53.

Table A4-21 FP extension register transfer instructions

Instruction	See
Copy byte, halfword, or word from ARM core register to extension register	*VMOV (ARM core register to scalar)* on page A7-587
Copy byte, halfword, or word from extension register to ARM core register	*VMOV (scalar to ARM core register)* on page A7-588
Copy from single-precision extension register to ARM core register, or from ARM core register to single-precision extension register	*VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)* on page A7-589
Copy two words from ARM core registers to consecutive single-precision extension registers, or from consecutive single-precision extension registers to ARM core registers	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers)* on page A7-590
Copy two words from ARM core registers to doubleword extension register, or from doubleword extension register to ARM core registers	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register)* on page A7-591
Copy from FP extension System Register to ARM core register	*VMRS* on page A7-592
Copy from ARM core register to FP extension System Register	*VMSR* on page A7-593

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A4.13 Floating-point data-processing instructions

Table A4-22 summarizes the data-processing instructions in the Floating-point instruction set.

For details of the floating-point arithmetic used by the FP instructions, see *Floating-point data types and arithmetic* on page A2-58.

Table A4-22 Floating-point data-processing instructions

Instruction	See
Absolute value	*VABS* on page A7-565
Add	*VADD* on page A7-566
Compare (optionally with exceptions enabled)	*VCMP, VCMPE* on page A7-567
Convert between floating-point and integer	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
Convert between floating-point and fixed-point	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
Convert between half-precision and single-precision	*VCVTB, VCVTT* on page A7-573
Divide	*VDIV* on page A7-575
Fused Multiply Accumulate, Fused Multiply Subtract	*VFMA, VFMS* on page A7-576
Fused Negate Multiply Accumulate, Fused Negate Multiply Subtract	*VFNMA, VFNMS* on page A7-577
Multiply Accumulate, Multiply Subtract	*VMLA, VMLS* on page A7-583
Move immediate value to extension register	*VMOV (immediate)* on page A7-585
Copy from one extension register to another	*VMOV (register)* on page A7-586
Multiply	*VMUL* on page A7-594
Negate (invert the sign bit)	*VNEG* on page A7-595
Multiply Accumulate and Negate, Multiply Subtract and Negate, Multiply and Negate	*VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL* on page A7-597
Square Root	*VSQRT* on page A7-603
Subtract	*VSUB* on page A7-609

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A5
The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding

This chapter introduces the Thumb instruction set and describes how it uses the ARM programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *Thumb instruction set encoding* on page A5-152
- *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-156
- *32-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-164.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.1 Thumb instruction set encoding

The Thumb instruction stream is a sequence of halfword-aligned halfwords. Each Thumb instruction is either a single 16-bit halfword in that stream, or a 32-bit instruction consisting of two consecutive halfwords in that stream.

If bits [15:11] of the halfword being decoded take any of the following values, the halfword is the first halfword of a 32-bit instruction:

- 0b11101
- 0b11110
- 0b11111.

Otherwise, the halfword is a 16-bit instruction.

See *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-156 for details of the encoding of 16-bit Thumb instructions.

See *32-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-164 for details of the encoding of 32-bit Thumb instructions.

A5.1.1 UNDEFINED and UNPREDICTABLE instruction set space

An attempt to execute an unallocated instruction results in either:

- Unpredictable behavior. The instruction is described as UNPREDICTABLE.
- An Undefined Instruction exception. The instruction is described as UNDEFINED.

An instruction is UNDEFINED if it is declared as UNDEFINED in an instruction description, or in this chapter

An instruction is UNPREDICTABLE if:

- a bit marked (0) or (1) in the encoding diagram of an instruction is not 0 or 1 respectively, and the pseudocode for that encoding does not indicate that a different special case applies
- it is declared as UNPREDICTABLE in an instruction description or in this chapter.

Unless otherwise specified:

- Thumb instructions introduced in an architecture variant are either UNPREDICTABLE or UNDEFINED in earlier architecture variants.
- A Thumb instruction that is provided by one or more of the architecture extensions is either UNPREDICTABLE or UNDEFINED in an implementation that does not include those extensions.

In both cases, the instruction is UNPREDICTABLE if it is a 32-bit instruction in an architecture variant before ARMv6T2, and UNDEFINED otherwise.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.1.2 Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier

The use of 0b1111 as a register specifier is not normally permitted in Thumb instructions. When a value of 0b1111 is permitted, a variety of meanings is possible. For register reads, these meanings are:

- Read the PC value, that is, the address of the current instruction + 4. The base register of the table branch instructions TBB and TBH can be the PC. This enables branch tables to be placed in memory immediately after the instruction. (Some instructions read the PC value implicitly, without the use of a register specifier, for example the conditional branch instruction B<cond>.)

  Note

  Use of the PC as the base register in the STC instruction is deprecated in ARMv7.

- Read the word-aligned PC value, that is, the address of the current instruction + 4, with bits [1:0] forced to zero. The base register of LDC, LDR, LDRB, LDRD (pre-indexed, no write-back), LDRH, LDRSB, and LDRSH instructions can be the word-aligned PC. This enables PC-relative data addressing. In addition, some encodings of the ADD and SUB instructions permit their source registers to be 0b1111 for the same purpose.

- Read zero. This is done in some cases when one instruction is a special case of another, more general instruction, but with one operand zero. In these cases, the instructions are listed on separate pages, with a special case in the pseudocode for the more general instruction cross-referencing the other page.

For register writes, these meanings are:

- The PC can be specified as the destination register of an LDR instruction. This is done by encoding Rt as 0b1111. The loaded value is treated as an address, and the effect of execution is a branch to that address. bit [0] of the loaded value selects the execution state after the branch and must have the value 1.

  Some other instructions write the PC in similar ways, either:

  — implicitly, for example, B<cond>

  — by using a register mask rather than a register specifier, for example LDM.

  The address to branch to can be:

  — a loaded value, for example LDM

  — a register value, for example BX

  — the result of a calculation, for example TBB or TBH.

- Discard the result of a calculation. This is done in some cases when one instruction is a special case of another, more general instruction, but with the result discarded. In these cases, the instructions are listed on separate pages, with a special case in the pseudocode for the more general instruction cross-referencing the other page.

- If the destination register specifier of an LDRB, LDRH, LDRSB, or LDRSH instruction is 0b1111, the instruction is a memory hint instead of a load operation.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- If the destination register specifier of an MRC instruction is 0b1111, bits [31:28] of the value transferred from the coprocessor are written to the N, Z, C, and V flags in the APSR, and bits [27:0] are discarded.

A5.1.3 Use of 0b1101 as a register specifier

R13 is defined in the Thumb instruction set so that its use is primarily as a stack pointer, and R13 is normally identified as SP in Thumb instructions. In 32-bit Thumb instructions, if you use SP as a general purpose register beyond the architecturally defined constraints described in this section, the results are UNPREDICTABLE.

The following subsections describe the restrictions that apply to using SP:

- *SP[1:0] definition*
- *32-bit Thumb instruction support for SP*.

See also *16-bit Thumb instruction support for SP* on page A5-155.

SP[1:0] definition

Bits [1:0] of SP must be treated as *SBZP* (Should Be Zero or Preserved). Writing a non-zero value to bits [1:0] results in UNPREDICTABLE behavior. Reading bits [1:0] returns zero.

32-bit Thumb instruction support for SP

32-bit Thumb instruction support for SP is restricted to the following:

- SP as the source or destination register of a MOV instruction. Only register to register transfers without shifts are supported, with no flag setting:

```
MOV     SP,Rm
MOV     Rn,SP
```

- Adjusting SP up or down by a multiple of its alignment:

```
ADD{W}  SP,SP,#N            ; For N a multiple of 4
SUB{W}  SP,SP,#N            ; For N a multiple of 4
ADD     SP,SP,Rm,LSL #shft  ; For shft=0,1,2,3
SUB     SP,SP,Rm,LSL #shft  ; For shft=0,1,2,3
```

- SP as a base register, Rn, of any load or store instruction. This supports SP-based addressing for load, store, or memory hint instructions, with positive or negative offsets, with and without write-back.
- SP as the first operand, Rn, in any ADD{S}, CMN, CMP, or SUB{S} instruction. The add and subtract instructions support SP-based address generation, with the address going into a general-purpose register. CMN and CMP are useful for stack checking in some circumstances.
- SP as the transferred register, Rt, in any LDR or STR instruction.
- SP as the address in a POP or PUSH instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

16-bit Thumb instruction support for SP

For 16-bit data processing instructions that affect high registers, SP can only be used as described in *32-bit Thumb instruction support for SP* on page A5-154. ARM deprecates any other use. This affects the high register forms of `CMP` and `ADD`, where ARM deprecates the use of SP as Rm.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding

The encoding of 16-bit Thumb instructions is:

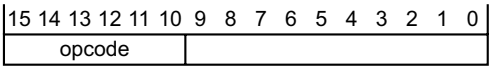


Table A5-1 shows the allocation of 16-bit instruction encodings.

Table A5-1 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding

opcode	Instruction or instruction class
00xxxx	*Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare* on page A5-157
010000	*Data processing* on page A5-158
010001	*Special data instructions and branch and exchange* on page A5-159
01001x	Load from Literal Pool, see *LDR (literal)* on page A7-289
0101xx 011xxx 100xxx	*Load/store single data item* on page A5-160
10100x	Generate PC-relative address, see *ADR* on page A7-229
10101x	Generate SP-relative address, see *ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A7-225
1011xx	*Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions* on page A5-161
11000x	Store multiple registers, see *STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A7-469
11001x	Load multiple registers, see *LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A7-283
1101xx	*Conditional branch, and supervisor call* on page A5-163
11100x	Unconditional Branch, see *B* on page A7-239

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.1 Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare

The encoding of Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare instructions is:

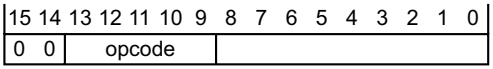


Table A5-2 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-2 16-bit shift (immediate), add, subtract, move and compare encoding

opcode	Instruction	See
000xx	Logical Shift Left	*LSL (immediate)* on page A7-333
001xx	Logical Shift Right	*LSR (immediate)* on page A7-337
010xx	Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (immediate)* on page A7-235
01100	Add register	*ADD (register)* on page A7-223
01101	Subtract register	*SUB (register)* on page A7-497
01110	Add 3-bit immediate	*ADD (immediate)* on page A7-221
01111	Subtract 3-bit immediate	*SUB (immediate)* on page A7-495
100xx	Move	*MOV (immediate)* on page A7-347
101xx	Compare	*CMP (immediate)* on page A7-261
110xx	Add 8-bit immediate	*ADD (immediate)* on page A7-221
111xx	Subtract 8-bit immediate	*SUB (immediate)* on page A7-495

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.2 Data processing

The encoding of data processing instructions is:

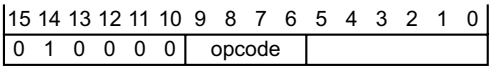


Table A5-3 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-3 16-bit data processing instructions

opcode	Instruction	See
0000	Bitwise AND	*AND (register)* on page A7-233
0001	Exclusive OR	*EOR (register)* on page A7-273
0010	Logical Shift Left	*LSL (register)* on page A7-335
0011	Logical Shift Right	*LSR (register)* on page A7-339
0100	Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (register)* on page A7-237
0101	Add with Carry	*ADC (register)* on page A7-219
0110	Subtract with Carry	*SBC (register)* on page A7-419
0111	Rotate Right	*ROR (register)* on page A7-407
1000	Set flags on bitwise AND	*TST (register)* on page A7-523
1001	Reverse Subtract from 0	*RSB (immediate)* on page A7-411
1010	Compare Registers	*CMP (register)* on page A7-263
1011	Compare Negative	*CMN (register)* on page A7-259
1100	Logical OR	*ORR (register)* on page A7-373
1101	Multiply Two Registers	*MUL* on page A7-359
1110	Bit Clear	*BIC (register)* on page A7-245
1111	Bitwise NOT	*MVN (register)* on page A7-363

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.3 Special data instructions and branch and exchange

The encoding of special data instructions, and branch and exchange instructions, is:

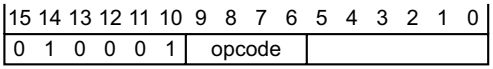


Table A5-4 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

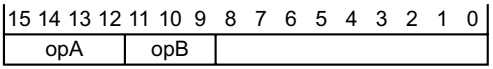
Table A5-4 Special data instructions and branch and exchange

opcode	Instruction	See
00xx	Add Registers	*ADD (register)* on page A7-223
0100	UNPREDICTABLE	-
0101	Compare Registers	*CMP (register)* on page A7-263
011x		
10xx	Move Registers	*MOV (register)* on page A7-349
110x	Branch and Exchange	*BX* on page A7-250
111x	Branch with Link and Exchange	*BLX (register)* on page A7-249

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.4 Load/store single data item

The encoding of Load/store single data item instructions is:



These instructions have one of the following values in opA:

- 0b0101
- 0b011x
- 0b100x.

Table A5-5 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-5 16-bit Load/store instructions

opA	opB	Instruction	See
0101	000	Store Register	*STR (register)* on page A7-475
0101	001	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (register)* on page A7-491
0101	010	Store Register Byte	*STRB (register)* on page A7-479
0101	011	Load Register Signed Byte	*LDRSB (register)* on page A7-321
0101	100	Load Register	*LDR (register)* on page A7-291
0101	101	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (register)* on page A7-313
0101	110	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (register)* on page A7-297
0101	111	Load Register Signed Halfword	*LDRSH (register)* on page A7-329
0110	0xx	Store Register	*STR (immediate)* on page A7-473
0110	1xx	Load Register	*LDR (immediate)* on page A7-287
0111	0xx	Store Register Byte	*STRB (immediate)* on page A7-477
0111	1xx	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (immediate)* on page A7-293
1000	0xx	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (immediate)* on page A7-489
1000	1xx	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (immediate)* on page A7-309
1001	0xx	Store Register SP relative	*STR (immediate)* on page A7-473
1001	1xx	Load Register SP relative	*LDR (immediate)* on page A7-287

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.5 Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions

The encoding of miscellaneous 16-bit instructions is:

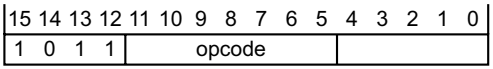


Table A5-6 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-6 Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions

opcode	Instruction	See
0110011	Change Processor State	*CPS* on page B5-801
00000xx	Add Immediate to SP	*ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A7-225
00001xx	Subtract Immediate from SP	*SUB (SP minus immediate)* on page A7-499
0001xxx	Compare and Branch on Zero	*CBNZ, CBZ* on page A7-251
001000x	Signed Extend Halfword	*SXTH* on page A7-515
001001x	Signed Extend Byte	*SXTB* on page A7-511
001010x	Unsigned Extend Halfword	*UXTH* on page A7-563
001011x	Unsigned Extend Byte	*UXTB* on page A7-559
0011xxx	Compare and Branch on Zero	*CBNZ, CBZ* on page A7-251
010xxxx	Push Multiple Registers	*PUSH* on page A7-389
1001xxx	Compare and Branch on Nonzero	*CBNZ, CBZ* on page A7-251
101000x	Byte-Reverse Word	*REV* on page A7-402
101001x	Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword	*REV16* on page A7-403
101011x	Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword	*REVSH* on page A7-404
1011xxx	Compare and Branch on Nonzero	*CBNZ, CBZ* on page A7-251
110xxxx	Pop Multiple Registers	*POP* on page A7-387
1110xxx	Breakpoint	*BKPT* on page A7-247
1111xxx	If-Then, and hints	*If-Then, and hints* on page A5-162

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If-Then, and hints

The encoding of if-then instructions, and hints, is:

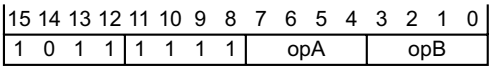


Table A5-7 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Other encodings in this space are unallocated hints. They execute as NOPs, but software must not use them.

Table A5-7 If-Then and hint instructions

opA	opB	Instruction	See
xxxx	not 0000	If-Then	*IT* on page A7-277
0000	0000	No Operation hint	*NOP* on page A7-366
0001	0000	Yield hint	*YIELD* on page A7-612
0010	0000	Wait for Event hint	*WFE* on page A7-610
0011	0000	Wait for Interrupt hint	*WFI* on page A7-611
0100	0000	Send Event hint	*SEV* on page A7-426

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.2.6 Conditional branch, and supervisor call

The encoding of conditional branch and supervisor call instructions is:

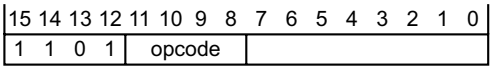


Table A5-8 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

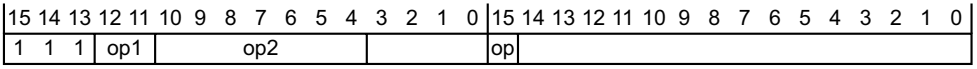
Table A5-8 Branch and supervisor call instructions

opcode	Instruction	See
not 111x	Conditional branch	*B* on page A7-239
1110	Permanently UNDEFINED	-
1111	Supervisor call	*SVC* on page A7-503

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3 32-bit Thumb instruction encoding

The encoding of 32-bit Thumb instructions is:



op1 != 0b00. If op1 == 0b00, a 16-bit instruction is encoded, see *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-156.

Table A5-9 shows the allocation of ARMv7-M Thumb encodings in this space.

Table A5-9 32-bit Thumb encoding

op1	op2	op	Instruction class
01	00xx0xx	x	*Load Multiple and Store Multiple* on page A5-171
01	00xx1xx	x	*Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch* on page A5-172
01	01xxxxx	x	*Data processing (shifted register)* on page A5-179
01	1xxxxxx	x	*Coprocessor instructions* on page A5-188
10	x0xxxxx	0	*Data processing (modified immediate)* on page A5-165
10	x1xxxxx	0	*Data processing (plain binary immediate)* on page A5-168
10	xxxxxxx	1	*Branches and miscellaneous control* on page A5-169
11	000xxx0	x	*Store single data item* on page A5-178
11	00xx001	x	*Load byte, memory hints* on page A5-176
11	00xx011	x	*Load halfword, memory hints* on page A5-174
11	00xx101	x	*Load word* on page A5-173
11	00xx111	x	UNDEFINED
11	010xxxx	x	*Data processing (register)* on page A5-181
11	0110xxx	x	*Multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference* on page A5-186
11	0111xxx	x	*Long multiply, long multiply accumulate, and divide* on page A5-187
11	1xxxxxx	x	*Coprocessor instructions* on page A5-188

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.1 Data processing (modified immediate)

The encoding of data processing (modified immediate) instructions is:

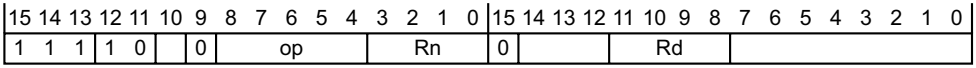


Table A5-10 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-10 32-bit modified immediate data processing instructions

op	Rn	Rd	Instruction	See
0000x		not 1111	Bitwise AND	*AND (immediate)* on page A7-231
		1111	Test	*TST (immediate)* on page A7-521
0001x			Bitwise Clear	*BIC (immediate)* on page A7-243
0010x	not 1111		Bitwise Inclusive OR	*ORR (immediate)* on page A7-371
	1111		Move	*MOV (immediate)* on page A7-347
0011x	not 1111		Bitwise OR NOT	*ORN (immediate)* on page A7-367
	1111		Bitwise NOT	*MVN (immediate)* on page A7-361
0100x		not 1111	Bitwise Exclusive OR	*EOR (immediate)* on page A7-271
		1111	Test Equivalence	*TEQ (immediate)* on page A7-519
1000x		not 1111	Add	*ADD (immediate)* on page A7-221
		1111	Compare Negative	*CMN (immediate)* on page A7-257
1010x			Add with Carry	*ADC (immediate)* on page A7-217
1011x			Subtract with Carry	*SBC (immediate)* on page A7-418
1101x		not 1111	Subtract	*SUB (immediate)* on page A7-495
		1111	Compare	*CMP (immediate)* on page A7-261
1110x			Reverse Subtract	*RSB (immediate)* on page A7-411

These instructions all have modified immediate constants, rather than a simple 12-bit binary number. This provides a more useful range of values. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for details.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.2 Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions

The encoding of modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions is:

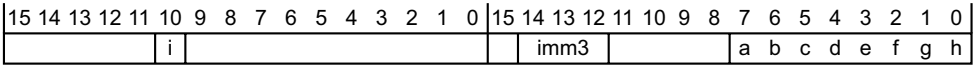


Table A5-11 shows the range of modified immediate constants available in Thumb data processing instructions, and how they are encoded in the a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, and imm3 fields in the instruction.

Table A5-11 Encoding of modified immediates in Thumb data-processing instructions

i:imm3:a	<const> [a]
0000x	`00000000 00000000 00000000 abcdefgh`
0001x	`00000000 abcdefgh 00000000 abcdefgh` [b]
0010x	`abcdefgh 00000000 abcdefgh 00000000` [b]
0011x	`abcdefgh abcdefgh abcdefgh abcdefgh` [b]
01000	`1bcdefgh 00000000 00000000 00000000`
01001	`01bcdefg h0000000 00000000 00000000`
01010	`001bcdef gh000000 00000000 00000000`
01011	`0001bcde fgh00000 00000000 00000000`
.	.
.	. 8-bit values shifted to other positions
.	.
11101	`00000000 00000000 000001bc defgh000`
11110	`00000000 00000000 0000001b cdefgh00`
11111	`00000000 00000000 00000001 bcdefgh0`

a. In this table, the immediate constant value is shown in binary form, to relate `abcdefgh` to the encoding diagram. In assembly syntax, the immediate value is specified in the usual way (a decimal number by default).
b. UNPREDICTABLE if abcdefgh == 00000000.

Carry out

A logical operation with `i:imm3:a` of the form `00xxx` does not affect the carry flag. Otherwise, a logical operation that sets the flags sets the Carry flag to the value of bit [31] of the modified immediate constant.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Operation of modified immediate constants

```
// ThumbExpandImm()
// ================

bits(32) ThumbExpandImm(bits(12) imm12)

    // APSR.C argument to following function call does not affect the imm32 result.
    (imm32, -) = ThumbExpandImm_C(imm12, APSR.C);

    return imm32;

// ThumbExpandImm_C()
// ==================

(bits(32), bit) ThumbExpandImm_C(bits(12) imm12, bit carry_in)

    if imm12<11:10> == '00' then

        case imm12<9:8> of
            when '00'
                imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12<7:0>, 32);
            when '01'
                if imm12<7:0> == '00000000' then UNPREDICTABLE;
                imm32 = '00000000' : imm12<7:0> : '00000000' : imm12<7:0>;
            when '10'
                if imm12<7:0> == '00000000' then UNPREDICTABLE;
                imm32 = imm12<7:0> : '00000000' : imm12<7:0> : '00000000';
            when '11'
                if imm12<7:0> == '00000000' then UNPREDICTABLE;
                imm32 = imm12<7:0> : imm12<7:0> : imm12<7:0> : imm12<7:0>;
        carry_out = carry_in;

    else

        unrotated_value = ZeroExtend('1':imm12<6:0>, 32);
        (imm32, carry_out) = ROR_C(unrotated_value, UInt(imm12<11:7>));

    return (imm32, carry_out);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.3 Data processing (plain binary immediate)

The encoding of data processing (plain binary immediate) instructions is:

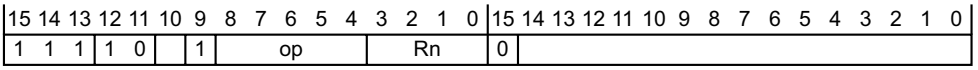


Table A5-10 on page A5-165 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-12 32-bit unmodified immediate data processing instructions

op	Rn	Instruction	See	Variant
00000	not 1111	Add Wide, 12-bit	*ADD (immediate)* on page A7-221	All
	1111	Form PC-relative Address	*ADR* on page A7-229	All
00100	-	Move Wide, 16-bit	*MOV (immediate)* on page A7-347	All
01010	not 1111	Subtract Wide, 12-bit	*SUB (immediate)* on page A7-495	All
	1111	Form PC-relative Address	*ADR* on page A7-229	All
01100	-	Move Top, 16-bit	*MOVT* on page A7-352	All
10000 10010[a]	-	Signed Saturate	*SSAT* on page A7-461	All
10010[b]	-	Signed Saturate, two 16-bit	*SSAT16* on page A7-463	v7E-M
10100	-	Signed Bit Field Extract	*SBFX* on page A7-421	All
10110	not 1111	Bit Field Insert	*BFI* on page A7-242	All
	1111	Bit Field Clear	*BFC* on page A7-241	All
11000 11010[a]	-	Unsigned Saturate	*USAT* on page A7-547	All
11010[b]	-	Unsigned Saturate 16	*USAT16* on page A7-549	v7E-M
11100	-	Unsigned Bit Field Extract	*UBFX* on page A7-528	All

a. In the second halfword of the instruction, bits[14:12.7:6] != 0b00000.
b. In the second halfword of the instruction, bits[14:12.7:6] == 0b00000.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.4 Branches and miscellaneous control

The behavior of branches and miscellaneous control instructions is:

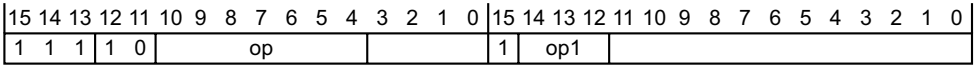


Table A5-13 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-13 Branches and miscellaneous control instructions

op1	op	Instruction	See
0x0	not x111xxx	Conditional branch	*B* on page A7-239
0x0	011100x	Move to Special Register	*MSR* on page A7-358
0x0	0111010	-	*Hint instructions* on page A5-170
0x0	0111011	-	*Miscellaneous control instructions* on page A5-170
0x0	011111x	Move from Special Register	*MRS* on page A7-357
010	1111111	Permanently UNDEFINED	-
0x1	xxxxxxx	Branch	*B* on page A7-239
1x1	xxxxxxx	Branch with Link	*BL* on page A7-248

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Hint instructions

The encoding of 32-bit hint instructions is:

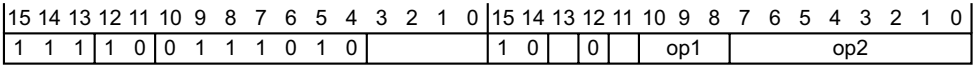


Table A5-14 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are unallocated hints that execute as NOPs. These unallocated hint encodings are reserved and software must not use them.

Table A5-14 Change Processor State, and hint instructions

op1	op2	Instruction	See
not 000	xxxxxxxx	UNDEFINED[a]	-
000	00000000	No Operation hint	*NOP* on page A7-366
000	00000001	Yield hint	*YIELD* on page A7-612
000	00000010	Wait For Event hint	*WFE* on page A7-610
000	00000011	Wait For Interrupt hint	*WFI* on page A7-611
000	00000100	Send Event hint	*SEV* on page A7-426
000	1111xxxx	Debug hint	*DBG* on page A7-266

a. These encodings provide a 32-bit form of the CPS instruction in the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles.

Miscellaneous control instructions

The encoding of miscellaneous control instructions is:

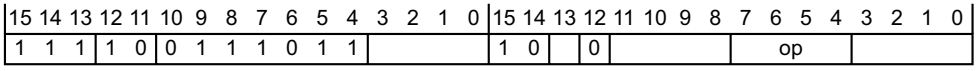


Table A5-15 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED in ARMv7-M.

Table A5-15 Miscellaneous control instructions

op	Instruction	See
0010	Clear Exclusive	*CLREX* on page A7-255
0100	Data Synchronization Barrier	*DSB* on page A7-269
0101	Data Memory Barrier	*DMB* on page A7-267
0110	Instruction Synchronization Barrier	*ISB* on page A7-275

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.5 Load Multiple and Store Multiple

The encoding of a Load Multiple or Store Multiple instructions is:

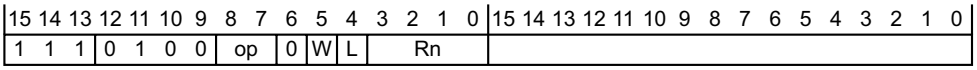


Table A5-16 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-16 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

op	L	W:Rn	Instruction	See
01	0		Store Multiple (Increment After, Empty Ascending)	*STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A7-469
01	1	not 11101	Load Multiple (Increment After, Full Descending)	*LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A7-283
01	1	11101	Pop Multiple Registers from the stack	*POP* on page A7-387
10	0	not 11101	Store Multiple (Decrement Before, Full Descending)	*STMDB, STMFD* on page A7-471
10	0	11101	Push Multiple Registers to the stack.	*PUSH* on page A7-389
10	1		Load Multiple (Decrement Before, Empty Ascending)	*LDMDB, LDMEA* on page A7-285

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.6 Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch

The encoding of Load/store dual or exclusive instructions, and table branch instructions, is:

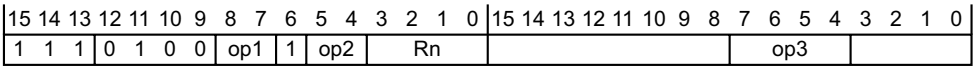


Table A5-17 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-17 Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch

op1	op2	op3	Instruction	See
00	00	xxxx	Store Register Exclusive	*STREX* on page A7-485
00	01	xxxx	Load Register Exclusive	*LDREX* on page A7-305
0x	10	xxxx	Store Register Dual	*STRD (immediate)* on page A7-483
1x	x0	xxxx		
0x	11	xxxx	Load Register Dual	*LDRD (immediate)* on page A7-301, *LDRD (literal)* on page A7-303
1x	x1	xxxx		
01	00	0100	Store Register Exclusive Byte	*STREXB* on page A7-486
01	00	0101	Store Register Exclusive Halfword	*STREXH* on page A7-487
01	01	0000	Table Branch Byte	*TBB, TBH* on page A7-517
01	01	0001	Table Branch Halfword	*TBB, TBH* on page A7-517
01	01	0100	Load Register Exclusive Byte	*LDREXB* on page A7-306
01	01	0101	Load Register Exclusive Halfword	*LDREXH* on page A7-307

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.7 Load word

The encoding of load word instructions is:

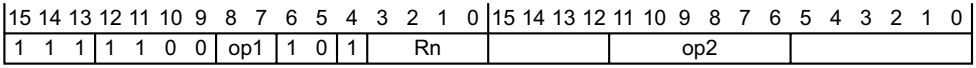


Table A5-18 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-18 Load word

op1	op2	Rn	Instruction	See
01	xxxxxx	not 1111	Load Register	*LDR (immediate)* on page A7-287
00	1xx1xx	not 1111		
00	1100xx	not 1111		
00	1110xx	not 1111	Load Register Unprivileged	*LDRT* on page A7-332
00	000000	not 1111	Load Register	*LDR (register)* on page A7-291
0x	xxxxxx	1111	Load Register	*LDR (literal)* on page A7-289

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.8 Load halfword, memory hints

The encoding of load halfword instructions, and unallocated memory hints, is:

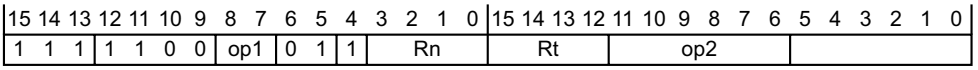


Table A5-19 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-19 Load halfword, memory hints

op1	op2	Rn	Rt	Instruction	See
0x	xxxxxx	1111	not 1111	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (literal)* on page A7-311
00	1xx1xx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (immediate)* on page A7-309
00	1100xx	not 1111	not 1111		
01	xxxxxx	not 1111	not 1111		
00	000000	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (register)* on page A7-313
00	1110xx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Halfword Unprivileged	*LDRHT* on page A7-315
00	000000	not 1111	1111	Unallocated memory hint, treat as NOP[a]	-
00	1100xx	not 1111	1111		
01	xxxxxx	not 1111	1111		
00	1xx1xx	not 1111	1111	UNPREDICTABLE	-
00	1110xx	not 1111	1111		
0x	xxxxxx	1111	1111		
10	1xx1xx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Halfword	*LDRSH (immediate)* on page A7-325
10	1100xx	not 1111	not 1111		
11	xxxxxx	not 1111	not 1111		
1x	xxxxxx	1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Halfword	*LDRSH (literal)* on page A7-327
10	000000	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Halfword	*LDRSH (register)* on page A7-329
10	1110xx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Halfword Unprivileged	*LDRSHT* on page A7-331

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-19 Load halfword, memory hints (continued)

op1	op2	Rn	Rt	Instruction	See
10	000000	not 1111	1111	Unallocated memory hint, treat as NOP[a]	-
10	1100xx	not 1111	1111		
1x	xxxxxx	1111	1111		
10	1xx1xx	not 1111	1111	UNPREDICTABLE	-
10	1110xx	not 1111	1111		
11	xxxxxx	not 1111	1111	Unallocated memory hint, treat as NOP[a]	-

a. Software must not use these encodings.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.9 Load byte, memory hints

The encoding of load byte instructions, and memory hits, is

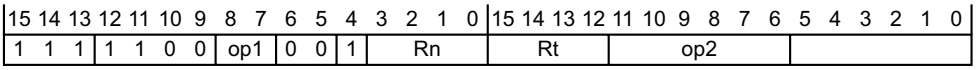


Table A5-20 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-20 Load byte, memory hints

op1	op2	Rn	Rt	Instruction	See
0x	xxxxxx	1111	not 1111	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (literal)* on page A7-295
01	xxxxxx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (immediate)* on page A7-293
00	1xx1xx	not 1111	-		
00	1100xx	not 1111	not 1111		
00	1110xx	not 1111	-	Load Register Byte Unprivileged	*LDRBT* on page A7-299
00	000000	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (register)* on page A7-297
1x	xxxxxx	1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Byte	*LDRSB (literal)* on page A7-319
11	xxxxxx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Byte	*LDRSB (immediate)* on page A7-317
10	1xx1xx	not 1111	not 1111		
10	1100xx	not 1111	not 1111		
10	1110xx	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Byte Unprivileged	*LDRSBT* on page A7-323
10	000000	not 1111	not 1111	Load Register Signed Byte	*LDRSB (register)* on page A7-321
0x	xxxxxx	1111	1111	Preload Data	*PLD (literal)* on page A7-379
00	1100xx	not 1111	1111	Preload Data	*PLD (immediate)* on page A7-377
01	xxxxxx	not 1111	1111		
00	000000	not 1111	1111	Preload Data	*PLD (register)* on page A7-381
00	1xx1xx	not 1111	1111	UNPREDICTABLE	-
00	1110xx	not 1111	1111		

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-20 Load byte, memory hints (continued)

op1	op2	Rn	Rt	Instruction	See
1x	xxxxxx	1111	1111	Preload Instruction	*PLI (immediate, literal)* on page A7-383
11	xxxxxx	not 1111	1111		
10	1100xx	not 1111	1111		
10	000000	not 1111	1111	Preload Instruction	*PLI (register)* on page A7-385
10	1xx1xx	not 1111	1111	UNPREDICTABLE	-
10	1110xx	not 1111	1111		

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.10 Store single data item

The encoding of store single data item instructions is:

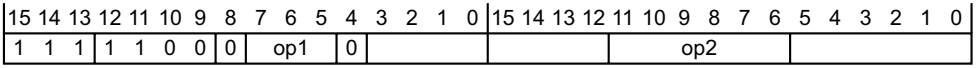


Table A5-21 show the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-21 Store single data item

op1	op2	Instruction	See
100	xxxxxx	Store Register Byte	*STRB (immediate)* on page A7-477
000	1xxxxx		
000	0xxxxx	Store Register Byte	*STRB (register)* on page A7-479
101	xxxxxx	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (immediate)* on page A7-489
001	1xxxxx		
001	0xxxxx	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (register)* on page A7-491
110	xxxxxx	Store Register	*STR (immediate)* on page A7-473
010	1xxxxx		
010	0xxxxx	Store Register	*STR (register)* on page A7-475

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.11 Data processing (shifted register)

The encoding of data processing (shifted register) instructions is:

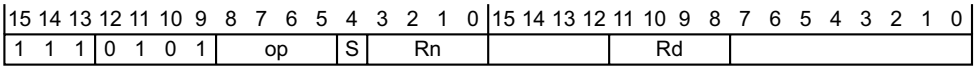


Table A5-22 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-22 Data-processing (shifted register)

op	Rn	Rd	S	Instruction	See	Variant
0000	-	not 1111	x	Bitwise AND	*AND (register)* on page A7-233	All
		1111	0	UNPREDICTABLE	-	-
			1	Test	*TST (register)* on page A7-523	All
0001	-	-	-	Bitwise Bit Clear	*BIC (register)* on page A7-245	All
0010	not 1111	-	-	Bitwise OR	*ORR (register)* on page A7-373	All
	1111	-	-	-	*Move register and immediate shifts* on page A5-180	-
0011	not 1111	-	-	Bitwise OR NOT	*ORN (register)* on page A7-369	All
	1111	-	-	Bitwise NOT	*MVN (register)* on page A7-363	All
0100	-	not 1111	-	Bitwise Exclusive OR	*EOR (register)* on page A7-273	All
		1111	0	UNPREDICTABLE	-	-
			1	Test Equivalence	*TEQ (register)* on page A7-520	All
0110	-	-	-	Pack Halfword	*PKHBT, PKHTB* on page A7-375	v7E-M
1000	-	not 1111	-	Add	*ADD (register)* on page A7-223	All
		1111	0	UNPREDICTABLE	-	-
			1	Compare Negative	*CMN (register)* on page A7-259	All
1010	-	-	-	Add with Carry	*ADC (register)* on page A7-219	All
1011	-	-	-	Subtract with Carry	*SBC (register)* on page A7-419	All

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-22 Data-processing (shifted register) (continued)

op	Rn	Rd	S	Instruction	See	Variant
1101	-	not 1111	-	Subtract	*SUB (register)* on page A7-497	All
		1111	0	UNPREDICTABLE	-	-
			1	Compare	*CMP (register)* on page A7-263	All
1110	-	-	-	Reverse Subtract	*RSB (register)* on page A7-413	All

Move register and immediate shifts

The encoding of move register and immediate shift instructions is:

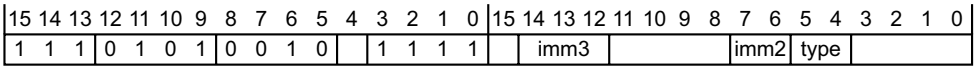


Table A5-23 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

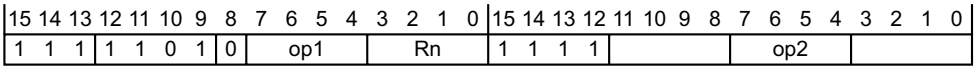
Table A5-23 Move register and immediate shifts

type	imm3:imm2	Instruction	See
00	00000	Move	*MOV (register)* on page A7-349
	not 00000	Logical Shift Left	*LSL (immediate)* on page A7-333
01	-	Logical Shift Right	*LSR (immediate)* on page A7-337
10	-	Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (immediate)* on page A7-235
11	00000	Rotate Right with Extend	*RRX* on page A7-409
	not 00000	Rotate Right	*ROR (immediate)* on page A7-405

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.12 Data processing (register)

The encoding of data processing (register) instructions is:



If, in the second halfword of the instruction, bits [15:12] != 0b1111, the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Table A5-24 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-24 Data processing (register)

op1	op2	Rn	Instruction	See	Variant
000x	0000		Logical Shift Left	*LSL (register)* on page A7-335	All
001x	0000		Logical Shift Right	*LSR (register)* on page A7-339	All
010x	0000		Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (register)* on page A7-237	All
011x	0000		Rotate Right	*ROR (register)* on page A7-407	All
0000	1xxx	not 1111	Signed Extend and Add Halfword	*SXTAH* on page A7-509	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Extend Halfword	*SXTH* on page A7-515	All
0001	1xxx	not 1111	Unsigned Extend and Add Halfword	*UXTAH* on page A7-557	v7E-M
		1111	Unsigned Extend Halfword	*UXTH* on page A7-563	All
0010	1xxx	not 1111	Signed Extend and Add Byte 16	*SXTAB16* on page A7-507	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Extend Byte 16	*SXTB16* on page A7-513	v7E-M
0011	1xxx	not 1111	Unsigned Extend and Add Byte 16	*UXTAB16* on page A7-555	v7E-M
		1111	Unsigned Extend Byte 16	*UXTB16* on page A7-561	v7E-M
0100	1xxx	not 1111	Signed Extend and Add Byte	*SXTAB* on page A7-505	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Extend Byte	*SXTB* on page A7-511	All
0101	1xxx	not 1111	Unsigned Extend and Add Byte	*UXTAB* on page A7-553	v7E-M
		1111	Unsigned Extend Byte	*UXTB* on page A7-559	All
1xxx	00xx	-	-	*Parallel addition and subtraction, signed* on page A5-182	-

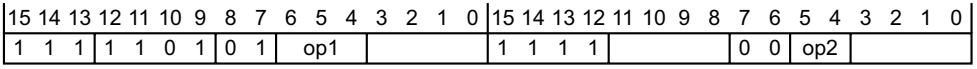
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-24 Data processing (register) (continued)

op1	op2	Rn	Instruction	See	Variant
1xxx	01xx	-	-	*Parallel addition and subtraction, unsigned* on page A5-183	-
10xx	10xx	-	-	*Miscellaneous operations* on page A5-185	-

A5.3.13 Parallel addition and subtraction, signed

The encoding of the signed parallel addition and subtraction instructions is:



If, in the second halfword of the instruction, bits[15:12] != 0b1111, the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Table A5-25 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-25 Signed parallel addition and subtraction instructions

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
001	00	Add 16-bit	*SADD16* on page A7-415	v7E-M
010	00	Add, Subtract	*SASX* on page A7-417	v7E-M
110	00	Subtract, Add	*SSAX* on page A7-464	v7E-M
101	00	Subtract 16-bit	*SSUB16* on page A7-465	v7E-M
000	00	Add 8-bit	*SADD8* on page A7-416	v7E-M
100	00	Subtract 8-bit	*SSUB8* on page A7-466	v7E-M
Saturating instructions				
001	01	Saturating Add 16-bit	*QADD16* on page A7-392	v7E-M
010	01	Saturating Add, Subtract	*QASX* on page A7-394	v7E-M
110	01	Saturating Subtract, Add	*QSAX* on page A7-397	v7E-M
101	01	Saturating Subtract 16-bit	*QSUB16* on page A7-399	v7E-M
000	01	Saturating Add 8-bit	*QADD8* on page A7-393	v7E-M
100	01	Saturating Subtract 8-bit	*QSUB8* on page A7-400	v7E-M

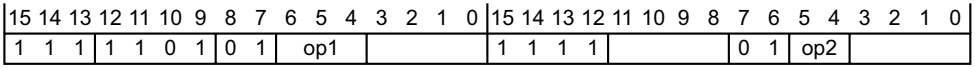
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-25 Signed parallel addition and subtraction instructions (continued)

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
Halving instructions				
001	10	Halving Add 16-bit	*SHADD16* on page A7-427	v7E-M
010	10	Halving Add, Subtract	*SHASX* on page A7-429	v7E-M
110	10	Halving Subtract, Add	*SHSAX* on page A7-430	v7E-M
101	10	Halving Subtract 16-bit	*SHSUB16* on page A7-431	v7E-M
000	10	Halving Add 8-bit	*SHADD8* on page A7-428	v7E-M
100	10	Halving Subtract 8-bit	*SHSUB8* on page A7-432	v7E-M

A5.3.14 Parallel addition and subtraction, unsigned

The encoding of the unsigned parallel addition and subtraction instructions is:



If, in the second halfword of the instruction, bits[15:12] != 0b1111, the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Table A5-26 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-26 Unsigned parallel addition and subtraction instructions

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
001	00	Add 16-bit	*UADD16* on page A7-525	v7E-M
010	00	Add, Subtract	*UASX* on page A7-527	v7E-M
110	00	Subtract, Add	*USAX* on page A7-550	v7E-M
101	00	Subtract 16-bit	*USUB16* on page A7-551	v7E-M
000	00	Add 8-bit	*UADD8* on page A7-526	v7E-M
100	00	Subtract 8-bit	*USUB8* on page A7-552	v7E-M

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

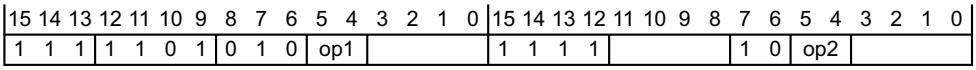
Table A5-26 Unsigned parallel addition and subtraction instructions (continued)

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
Saturating instructions				
001	01	Saturating Add 16-bit	*UQADD16* on page A7-539	v7E-M
010	01	Saturating Add, Subtract	*UQASX* on page A7-541	v7E-M
110	01	Saturating Subtract, Add	*UQSAX* on page A7-542	v7E-M
101	01	Saturating Subtract 16-bit	*UQSUB16* on page A7-543	v7E-M
000	01	Saturating Add 8-bit	*UQADD8* on page A7-540	v7E-M
100	01	Saturating Subtract 8-bit	*UQSUB8* on page A7-544	v7E-M
Halving instructions				
001	10	Halving Add 16-bit	*UHADD16* on page A7-530	v7E-M
010	10	Halving Add, Subtract	*UHASX* on page A7-532	v7E-M
110	10	Halving Subtract, Add	*UHSAX* on page A7-533	v7E-M
101	10	Halving Subtract 16-bit	*UHSUB16* on page A7-534	v7E-M
000	10	Halving Add 8-bit	*UHADD8* on page A7-531	v7E-M
100	10	Halving Subtract 8-bit	*UHSUB8* on page A7-535	v7E-M

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.15 Miscellaneous operations

The encoding of some miscellaneous instructions is:



If, in the second halfword of the instruction, bits [15:12] != 0b1111, the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Table A5-27 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

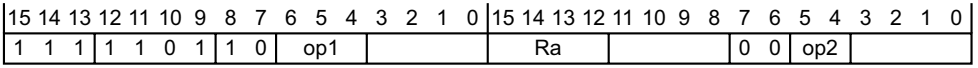
Table A5-27 Miscellaneous operations

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
00	00	Saturating Add	*QADD* on page A7-391	v7E-M
	01	Saturating Double and Add	*QDADD* on page A7-395	v7E-M
	10	Saturating Subtract	*QSUB* on page A7-398	v7E-M
	11	Saturating Double and Subtract	*QDSUB* on page A7-396	v7E-M
01	00	Byte-Reverse Word	*REV* on page A7-402	All
	01	Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword	*REV16* on page A7-403	All
	10	Reverse Bits	*RBIT* on page A7-401	All
	11	Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword	*REVSH* on page A7-404	All
10	00	Select Bytes	*SEL* on page A7-425	v7E-M
11	00	Count Leading Zeros	*CLZ* on page A7-256	All

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.16 Multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference

The encoding of multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference instructions is:



If, in the second halfword of the instruction, bits [7:6] != 0b00, the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Table A5-28 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-28 Multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference operations

op1	op2	Ra	Instruction	See	Variant
000	00	not 1111	Multiply Accumulate	*MLA* on page A7-345	All
		1111	Multiply	*MUL* on page A7-359	All
	01	-	Multiply and Subtract	*MLS* on page A7-346	All
001	-	not 1111	Signed Multiply Accumulate, Halfwords	*SMLABB, SMLABT, SMLATB, SMLATT* on page A7-433	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Multiply, Halfwords	*SMULBB, SMULBT, SMULTB, SMULTT* on page A7-455	v7E-M
010	0x	not 1111	Signed Multiply Accumulate Dual	*SMLAD, SMLADX* on page A7-435	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Dual Multiply Add	*SMUAD, SMUADX* on page A7-453	v7E-M
011	0x	not 1111	Signed Multiply Accumulate, Word by halfword	*SMLAWB, SMLAWT* on page A7-443	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Multiply, Word by halfword	*SMULWB, SMULWT* on page A7-458	v7E-M
100	0x	not 1111	Signed Multiply Subtract Dual	*SMLSD, SMLSDX* on page A7-445	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Dual Multiply Subtract	*SMUSD, SMUSDX* on page A7-459	v7E-M
101	0x	not 1111	Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Accumulate	*SMMLA, SMMLAR* on page A7-449	v7E-M
		1111	Signed Most Significant Word Multiply	*SMMUL, SMMULR* on page A7-451	v7E-M

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A5-28 Multiply, multiply accumulate, and absolute difference operations (continued)

op1	op2	Ra	Instruction	See	Variant
110	0x	-	Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Subtract	*SMMLS, SMMLSR* on page A7-450	v7E-M
111	00	not 1111	Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences	*USAD8* on page A7-545	v7E-M
		1111	Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences, Accumulate	*USADA8* on page A7-546	v7E-M

A5.3.17 Long multiply, long multiply accumulate, and divide

The encoding of long multiply, long multiply accumulate, and divide, instructions is:

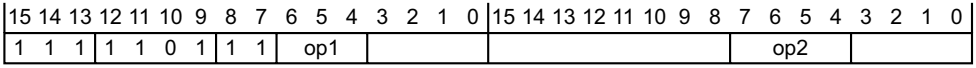


Table A5-29 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-29 Long multiply, long multiply accumulate, and divide operations

op1	op2	Instruction	See	Variant
000	0000	Signed Multiply Long	*SMULL* on page A7-457	All
001	1111	Signed Divide	*SDIV* on page A7-423	All
010	0000	Unsigned Multiply Long	*UMULL* on page A7-538	All
011	1111	Unsigned Divide	*UDIV* on page A7-529	All
100	0000	Signed Multiply Accumulate Long	*SMLAL* on page A7-437	All
	10xx	Signed Multiply Accumulate Long, Halfwords	*SMLALBB, SMLALBT, SMLALTB, SMLALTT* on page A7-439	v7E-M
	110x	Signed Multiply Accumulate Long Dual	*SMLALD, SMLALDX* on page A7-441	v7E-M
101	110x	Signed Multiply Subtract Long Dual	*SMLSLD, SMLSLDX* on page A7-447	v7E-M
110	0000	Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Long	*UMLAL* on page A7-537	All
	0110	Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Accumulate Long	*UMAAL* on page A7-536	v7E-M

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A5.3.18 Coprocessor instructions

The encoding of coprocessor instructions is:

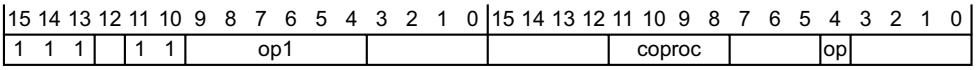


Table A5-30 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Note

A coprocessor instruction executes successfully or causes an Undefined Instruction UsageFault only if the targeted coprocessor exists and is enabled for accesses at the appropriate privilege level, see *Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735. In all other cases, a coprocessor instruction causes a UsageFault exception with the UFSR.NOCP bit set to 1, see *UsageFault Status Register, UFSR* on page B3-731.

Table A5-30 Coprocessor instructions

op1	op	coproc	Instructions	See
0xxxx0[a]	x	xxxx	Store Coprocessor	*STC, STC2* on page A7-467
0xxxx1[a]	x	xxxx	Load Coprocessor	*LDC, LDC2 (immediate)* on page A7-279 *LDC, LDC2 (literal)* on page A7-281
000100	x	xxxx	Move to Coprocessor from two ARM core registers	*MCRR, MCRR2* on page A7-343
000101	x	xxxx	Move to two ARM core registers from Coprocessor	*MRRC, MRRC2* on page A7-355
10xxxx	0	xxxx	Coprocessor data operations	*CDP, CDP2* on page A7-253
10xxx0	1	xxxx	Move to Coprocessor from ARM core register	*MCR, MCR2* on page A7-341
10xxx1	1	xxxx	Move to ARM core register from Coprocessor	*MRC, MRC2* on page A7-353

a. but not 000x0x

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A6
The Floating-Point Instruction Set Encoding

The optional ARMv7-M FP extension provides a range of single-precision *floating-point* (FP) instructions. These instructions extend the ARMv7-M Thumb instructions. This chapter summarizes the ARMv7-M Floating-point instruction set, and its encoding. It contains the following sections:

- *Overview* on page A6-190
- *Floating-point instruction syntax* on page A6-191
- *Register encoding* on page A6-194
- *Floating-point data-processing instructions* on page A6-195
- *Extension register load or store instructions* on page A6-197
- *32-bit transfer between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-198
- *64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199.

Note

In the decode tables in this chapter, an entry of - for a field value means the value of the field does not affect the decoding.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.1 Overview

The ARMv7-M Floating-point extension adds single-precision floating-point (FP) instructions to the Thumb instruction set. Implementing this extension does not affect the operating states of the processor.

The following sections give general information about the floating-point instructions:

- *Floating-point instruction syntax* on page A6-191
- *Register encoding* on page A6-194.

The following sections describe the classes of instruction added by the FP extension:

- *Floating-point data-processing instructions* on page A6-195.
- *Extension register load or store instructions* on page A6-197
- *32-bit transfer between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-198
- *64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.2 Floating-point instruction syntax

Floating-point instructions use the general conventions of the Thumb instruction set.

Floating-point data-processing instructions use the following general format:

```
V<operation>{<c>}{<q>}{.<dt>}  {<dest>,} <src1>, <src2>
```

All floating-point instructions begin with a `V`. This distinguishes instructions in the Floating-point instruction set from Thumb instructions.

The main operation is specified in the `<operation>` field. It is usually a three letter mnemonic the same as or similar to the corresponding Thumb integer instruction.

The `<c>` and `<q>` fields are standard assembler syntax fields. For details see *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

A6.2.1 Data type specifiers

The `<dt>` field normally contains one data type specifier. This indicates the data type contained in

- the second operand, if any
- the operand, if there is no second operand
- the result, if there are no operand registers.

The data types of the other operand and result are implied by the `<dt>` field combined with the instruction shape.

In the instruction syntax descriptions in Chapter A7 *Instruction Details*, the `<dt>` field is usually specified as a single field. However, where more convenient, it is sometimes specified as a concatenation of two fields, `<type><size>`.

Syntax flexibility

There is some flexibility in the data type specifier syntax:

- An instruction can specify two data types, specifying the data types of the single operand and the result.
- Where an instruction requires a less specific data type, it can instead specify a more specific type, as shown in Table A6-1 on page A6-192.
- Where an instruction does not require a data type, it can provide one.
- The `F32` data type can be abbreviated to `F`.
- The `F64` data type can be abbreviated to `D`.

In all cases, if an instruction provides additional information, the additional information must match the instruction shape. Disassembly does not regenerate this additional information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A6-1 Data type specification flexibility

Specified data type	Permitted more specific data types		
None	Any		
.16	.S16	.U16	.F16
.32	.S32	.U32	.F32 or .F
.64	-	-	.F64 or .D

A6.2.2 Register specifiers

The <dest>, <src1>, and <src2> fields contain register specifiers, or in some cases register lists, see *Register lists* on page A6-193. Table A6-2 shows the register specifier formats that appear in the instruction descriptions.

If <dest> is omitted, it is the same as <src1>.

Table A6-2 Floating-point register specifier formats

<specifier>	Usual meaning [a]
<Dd>	A doubleword destination register for the result.
<Dn>	A doubleword source register for the first operand.
<Dm>	A doubleword source register for the second operand.
<Sd>	A singleword destination register for the floating-point result.
<Sn>	A singleword source register for the first operand floating-point value.
<Sm>	A singleword source register for the second operand floating-point value.
<Rn>	An ARM core register, used for an address.
<Rt>	An ARM core register, used as a source or destination register.
<Rt2>	An ARM core register, used as a source or destination register.

a. In some instructions the roles of registers are different.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.2.3 Register lists

A register list is a list of register specifiers separated by commas and enclosed in brackets, { and }. There are restrictions on what registers can appear in a register list. The individual instruction descriptions describe these restrictions. Table A6-3 shows some register list formats, with examples of actual register lists corresponding to those formats.

Note

Register lists must not wrap around the end of the register bank.

Syntax flexibility

There is some flexibility in the register list syntax:

- Where a register list contains consecutive registers, they can be specified as a range, instead of listing every register, for example `{S0-S3}` instead of `{S0,S1,S2,S3}`.
- Where a register list contains an even number of consecutive doubleword registers starting with an even numbered register, it can be written as a list of quadword registers instead, for example `{Q1,Q2}` instead of `{D2-D5}`.
- Where a register list contains only one register, the enclosing braces can be omitted, for example `VLDM.32 R2, S5` instead of `VLDM.32 R2, {S5}`.

Table A6-3 Example register lists

Format	Example	Alternative
{<Sd>}	{S3}	S3
{<Sd>,<Sd+1>,<Sd+2>}	{S3,S4,S5}	{S3-S5}
{<Dd[x]>,<Dd+2[x]>}	{D0[3],D2[3]}	-
{<Dd[]>}	{D7[]}	D7[]

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.3 Register encoding

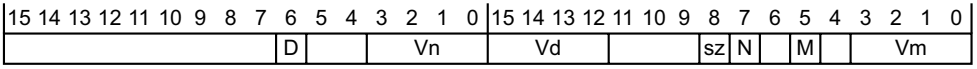
An FP extension register is either:

- a doubleword register, meaning it is 64 bits wide
- a single-precision register, meaning it is 32 bits wide.

Note

Although the FP extension supports only single-precision arithmetic, it supports some doubleword data transfer instructions, such as move, pop and push.

The encoding of the floating-point registers in a Thumb floating-point instruction is:



When appropriate, the sz field, bit[8], encodes the register width, as sz == 1 for doubleword operations, or sz == 0 for single-precision operations. Most instructions are single-precision only, and for these instructions bit[8] is 0.

Table A6-4 shows the encodings for the registers in this instruction.

Table A6-4 Encoding of register numbers

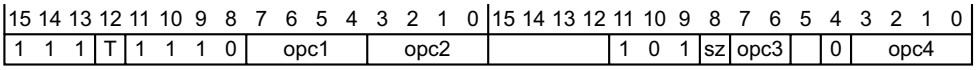
Register mnemonic	Usual usage	Register number encoded in
<Dd>	Destination, doubleword	D:Vd, bits[22,15:12]
<Dn>	First operand, doubleword	N:Vn, bits[7,19:16]
<Dm>	Second operand, doubleword	M:Vm, bits[5,3:0]
<Sd>	Destination, single-precision	Vd:D, bits[15:12,22]
<Sn>	First operand, single-precision	Vn: N, bits[19:16,7]
<Sm>	Second operand, single-precision	Vm: M, bits[3:0,5]

Some instructions use only one or two registers, and use the unused register fields as additional opcode bits.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.4 Floating-point data-processing instructions

The encoding of floating-point data processing instructions is:



If T==1 or sz==1 the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Otherwise:

- Table A6-5 shows the encodings for three-register floating-point data-processing instructions. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.
- Table A6-6 on page A6-196 shows the immediate constants available in the VMOV (immediate) instruction.

These instructions are CDP instructions for coprocessors 10 and 11, see *CDP, CDP2* on page A7-253.

Table A6-5 Three-register floating-point data-processing instructions

opc1	opc2	opc3	Instruction	See
0x00	-	-	FP Multiply Accumulate or Subtract	*VMLA, VMLS* on page A7-583
0x01	-	-	FP Negate Multiply Accumulate or Subtract	*VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL* on page A7-597
0x10	-	x1		
		x0	FP Multiply	*VMUL* on page A7-594
0x11	-	x0	FP Add	*VADD* on page A7-566
		x1	FP Subtract	*VSUB* on page A7-609
1x00	-	x0	FP Divide	*VDIV* on page A7-575
1x11	-	x0	FP Move	*VMOV (immediate)* on page A7-585
	0000	01	FP Move	*VMOV (register)* on page A7-586
		11	FP Absolute	*VABS* on page A7-565
	0001	01	FP Negate	*VNEG* on page A7-595
		11	FP Square Root	*VSQRT* on page A7-603
	001x	x1	FP Convert	*VCVTB, VCVTT* on page A7-573
	010x	x1	FP Compare	*VCMP, VCMPE* on page A7-567

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A6-5 Three-register floating-point data-processing instructions (continued)

opc1	opc2	opc3	Instruction	See
1x11	1000	x1	FP Convert	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
	1x1x	x1	FP Convert	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
	110x	x1	FP Convert	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569

Table A6-6 Floating-point modified immediate constants

Data type	opc2	opc4	Constant [a]
F32	abcd	efgh	aBbbbbbc defgh000 00000000 00000000

a. In this column, `B` = NOT(`b`). The bit pattern represents the floating-point number $(-1)^S * 2^{exp} *$ mantissa, where S = `UInt(a)`, exp = `UInt(NOT(b):c:d)-3` and mantissa = `(16+UInt(e:f:g:h))/16`.

A6.4.1 Operation of modified immediate constants in floating-point instructions

The `VFPExpandImm()` pseudocode function expands the modified immediate constant in a floating-point operation:

```
// VFPExpandImm()

// ==============


bits(N) VFPExpandImm(bits(8) imm8, integer N)

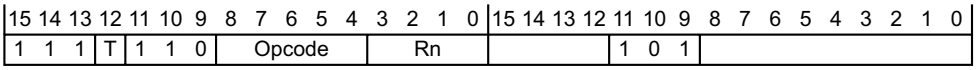
    assert N == 32;

    return imm8<7>:NOT(imm8<6>):Replicate(imm8<6>,5):imm8<5:0>:Zeros(19);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.5 Extension register load or store instructions

The encoding of an FP extension register load or store instructions is:



If T==1 the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Otherwise, Table A6-7 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

These instructions are LDC and STC instructions for coprocessors 10 and 11, see *LDC, LDC2 (immediate)* on page A7-279, *LDC, LDC2 (literal)* on page A7-281, and *STC, STC2* on page A7-467.

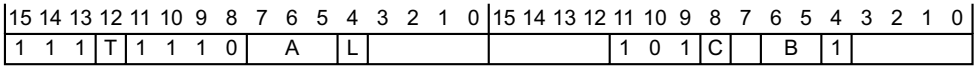
Table A6-7 FP extension register load and store instructions

Opcode	Rn	Instruction	See
0010x	-	-	*64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199
01x00	-	FP Store Multiple (Increment After, no writeback)	*VSTM* on page A7-605
01x10	-	FP Store Multiple (Increment After, writeback)	*VSTM* on page A7-605
1xx00	-	FP Store Register	*VSTR* on page A7-607
10x10	not 1101	FP Store Multiple (Decrement Before, writeback)	*VSTM* on page A7-605
	1101	FP Push Registers	*VPUSH* on page A7-601
01x01	-	FP Load Multiple (Increment After, no writeback)	*VLDM* on page A7-579
01x11	not 1101	FP Load Multiple (Increment After, writeback)	*VLDM* on page A7-579
	1101	FP Pop Registers	*VPOP* on page A7-599
1xx01	-	FP Load Register	*VLDR* on page A7-581
10x11	-	FP Load Multiple (Decrement Before, writeback)	*VLDM* on page A7-579

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.6 32-bit transfer between ARM core and extension registers

The encoding of floating-point 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit register data transfer instructions is:



If T==1 the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Otherwise, Table A6-8 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

These instructions are MRC and MCR instructions for coprocessors 10 and 11, see *MRC, MRC2* on page A7-353 and *MCR, MCR2* on page A7-341.

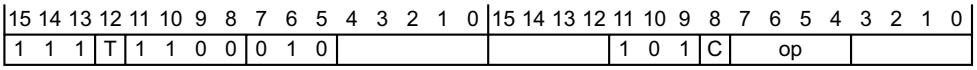
Table A6-8 Instructions for 32-bit data transfers to or from FP extension registers

L	C	A	B	Instruction	See
0	0	000	-	FP Move	*VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)* on page A7-589
		111	-	Move to FP Special Register from ARM core register	*VMSR* on page A7-593
0	1	00x	00	FP Move	*VMOV (ARM core register to scalar)* on page A7-587
1	0	000	-	FP Move	*VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)* on page A7-589
		111	-	Move to ARM core register from FP Special Register	*VMRS* on page A7-592
	1	00x	00	FP Move	*VMOV (scalar to ARM core register)* on page A7-588

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A6.7 64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers

The encoding of FP extension 64-bit register data transfer instructions is:



If `T` == 1 the instruction is UNDEFINED.

Otherwise, Table A6-9 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

These instructions are `MRRC` and `MCRR` instructions for coprocessors 10 and 11, see *MRRC, MRRC2* on page A7-355 and *MCRR, MCRR2* on page A7-343.

Table A6-9 64-bit data transfer instructions

C	op	Instruction
0	00x1	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers)* on page A7-590
1	00x1	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register)* on page A7-591.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter A7
Instruction Details

This chapter describes each instruction in the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction sets, including the floating-point instructions provided by the ARMv7-M Floating-point extension. It contains the following sections:

- *Format of instruction descriptions* on page A7-202
- *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207
- *Conditional execution* on page A7-208
- *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212
- *Memory accesses* on page A7-214
- *Hint Instructions* on page A7-215.
- *Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions* on page A7-216.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.1 Format of instruction descriptions

The instruction descriptions in the alphabetical lists of instructions in *Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions* on page A7-216 normally use the following format:

- instruction section title
- introduction to the instruction
- instruction encoding(s) with architecture information
- assembler syntax
- pseudocode describing how the instruction operates
- exception information
- notes (where applicable).

Each of these items is described in more detail in the following subsections.

A few instruction descriptions describe alternative mnemonics for other instructions and use an abbreviated and modified version of this format.

A7.1.1 Instruction section title

The instruction section title gives the base mnemonic for the instructions described in the section. When one mnemonic has multiple forms described in separate instruction sections, this is followed by a short description of the form in parentheses. The most common use of this is to distinguish between forms of an instruction in which one of the operands is an immediate value and forms in which it is a register.

Parenthesized text is also used to document the former mnemonic in some cases where a mnemonic has been replaced entirely by another mnemonic in the new assembler syntax.

A7.1.2 Introduction to the instruction

The instruction section title is followed by text that briefly describes the main features of the instruction. This description is not necessarily complete and is not definitive. If there is any conflict between it and the more detailed information that follows, the latter takes priority.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.1.3 Instruction encodings

The *Encodings* subsection contains a list of one or more instruction encodings. For reference purposes, each Thumb instruction encoding has a numbered label, T1, T2, and so on.

Each instruction encoding description consists of:

- Information about which architecture variants include the particular encoding of the instruction. Thumb instructions present since ARMv4T are labelled as *all versions of the Thumb instruction set*, otherwise:
  - — ARMv5T* means all variants of ARM Architecture version 5 that include Thumb instruction support.
  - — ARMv6-M means a Thumb-only variant of the ARM architecture microcontroller profile that is compatible with ARMv6 Thumb support prior to the introduction of Thumb-2 technology.
  - — ARMv7-M means a Thumb-only variant of the ARM architecture microcontroller profile that provides enhanced performance and functionality with respect to ARMv6-M through Thumb-2 technology and additional system features such as fault handling support.

  Note

  This manual does not provide architecture variant information about non-M profile variants of ARMv6 and ARMv7. For such information, see the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition*.

- An assembly syntax that ensures that the assembler selects the encoding in preference to any other encoding. In some cases, multiple syntaxes are given. The correct one to use is sometimes indicated by annotations to the syntax, such as *Inside IT block* and *Outside IT block*. In other cases, the correct one to use can be determined by looking at the assembler syntax description and using it to determine which syntax corresponds to the instruction being disassembled.

  There is usually more than one syntax that ensures re-assembly to any particular encoding, and the exact set of syntaxes that do so usually depends on the register numbers, immediate constants and other operands to the instruction. For example, when assembling to the Thumb instruction set, the syntax `AND R0,R0,R8` ensures selection of a 32-bit encoding but `AND R0,R0,R1` selects a 16-bit encoding.

  The assembly syntax documented for the encoding is chosen to be the simplest one that ensures selection of that encoding for all operand combinations supported by that encoding. This often means that it includes elements that are only necessary for a small subset of operand combinations. For example, the assembler syntax documented for the 32-bit Thumb `AND` (register) encoding includes the `.W` qualifier to ensure that the 32-bit encoding is selected even for the small proportion of operand combinations for which the 16-bit encoding is also available.

  The assembly syntax given for an encoding is therefore a suitable one for a disassembler to disassemble that encoding to. However, disassemblers may wish to use simpler syntaxes when they are suitable for the operand combination, in order to produce more readable disassembled code.

- An encoding diagram. This is half-width for 16-bit Thumb encodings and full-width for 32-bit Thumb encodings. Thumb encodings use the byte order of a sequence of two halfwords rather than of a word, as described in *Instruction alignment and byte ordering* on page A3-87.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- Encoding-specific pseudocode. This is pseudocode that translates the encoding-specific instruction fields into inputs to the encoding-independent pseudocode in the later *Operation* subsection, and that picks out any special cases in the encoding. For a detailed description of the pseudocode used and of the relationship between the encoding diagram, the encoding-specific pseudocode and the encoding-independent pseudocode, see Appendix F *Pseudocode Definition*.

A7.1.4 Assembler syntax

The *Assembly syntax* subsection describes the standard UAL syntax for the instruction.

Each syntax description consists of the following elements:

- One or more syntax prototype lines written in a typewriter font, using the conventions described in *Assembler syntax prototype line conventions* on page A7-205. Each prototype line documents the mnemonic and (where appropriate) operand parts of a full line of assembler code. When there is more than one such line, each prototype line is annotated to indicate required results of the encoding-specific pseudocode. For each instruction encoding, this information can be used to determine whether any instructions matching that encoding are available when assembling that syntax, and if so, which ones.

- The line *where:* followed by descriptions of all of the variable or optional fields of the prototype syntax line.

  Some syntax fields are standardized across all or most instructions. These fields are described in *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

  By default, syntax fields that specify registers (such as `<Rd>`, `<Rn>`, or `<Rt>`) are permitted to be any of R0-R12 or LR in Thumb instructions. These require that the encoding-specific pseudocode should set the corresponding integer variable (such as `d`, `n`, or `t`) to the corresponding register number (0-12 for R0-R12, 14 for LR). This can normally be done by setting the corresponding bitfield in the instruction, for example, Rd, Rn, or Rt, to the binary encoding of that number. In the case of 16-bit Thumb encodings, this bitfield is normally of length 3 and so the encoding is only available when one of R0-R7 was specified in the assembler syntax. It is also common for such encodings to use a bitfield name such as Rdn. This indicates that the encoding is only available if `<Rd>` and `<Rn>` specify the same register, and that the register number of that register is encoded in the bitfield if they do.

  The description of a syntax field that specifies a register sometimes extends or restricts the permitted range of registers or document other differences from the default rules for such fields. Typical extensions are to allow the use of one or both of the SP and the PC, using register numbers 13 and 15 respectively.

Note

The pre-UAL Thumb assembler syntax is incompatible with UAL and is not documented in the instruction sections.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax prototype line conventions

The following conventions are used in assembler syntax prototype lines and their subfields:

`< >` Any item bracketed by < and > is a short description of a type of value to be supplied by the user in that position. A longer description of the item is normally supplied by subsequent text. Such items often correspond to a similarly named field in an encoding diagram for an instruction. When the correspondence simply requires the binary encoding of an integer value or register number to be substituted into the instruction encoding, it is not described explicitly. For example, if the assembler syntax for a Thumb instruction contains an item `<Rn>` and the instruction encoding diagram contains a 4-bit field named Rn, the number of the register specified in the assembler syntax is encoded in binary in the instruction field.

If the correspondence between the assembler syntax item and the instruction encoding is more complex than simple binary encoding of an integer or register number, the item description indicates how it is encoded. This is often done by specifying a required output from the encoding-specific pseudocode, such as add = `TRUE`. The assembler must only use encodings that produce that output.

`{ }` Any item bracketed by { and } is optional. A description of the item and of how its presence or absence is encoded in the instruction is normally supplied by subsequent text.

Many instructions have an optional destination register. Unless otherwise stated, if such a destination register is omitted, it is the same as the immediately following source register in the instruction syntax.

spaces Single spaces are used for clarity, to separate items. When a space is obligatory in the assembler syntax, two or more consecutive spaces are used.

`+/-` This indicates an optional + or - sign. If neither is coded, + is assumed.

All other characters must be encoded precisely as they appear in the assembler syntax. Apart from { and }, the special characters described above do not appear in the basic forms of assembler instructions documented in this manual. The { and } characters need to be encoded in a few places as part of a variable item. When this happens, the description of the variable item indicates how they must be used.

A7.1.5 Pseudocode describing how the instruction operates

The *Operation* subsection contains encoding-independent pseudocode that describes the main operation of the instruction. For a detailed description of the pseudocode used and of the relationship between the encoding diagram, the encoding-specific pseudocode and the encoding-independent pseudocode, see Appendix F *Pseudocode Definition*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.1.6 Exception information

The *Exceptions* subsection contains a list of the exceptional conditions that can be caused by execution of the instruction.

Processor exceptions are listed as follows:

- Resets and interrupts, including NMI, PendSV and SysTick, are not listed. They can occur before or after the execution of any instruction, and in some cases during the execution of an instruction, but they are not in general caused by the instruction concerned.
- MemManage and BusFault exceptions are listed for all instructions that perform explicit data memory accesses.

  All instruction fetches can cause MemManage and BusFault exceptions. These are not caused by execution of the instruction and so are not listed.
- UsageFault exceptions can occur for a variety of reasons and are listed against instructions as appropriate.

  UsageFault exceptions also occur when pseudocode indicates that the instruction is UNDEFINED. These UsageFaults are not listed.
- The SVCall exception is listed for the `SVC` instruction.
- The DebugMonitor exception is listed for the `BKPT` instruction.
- HardFault exceptions can arise from escalation of faults listed against an instruction, but are not themselves listed.

Note

For a summary of the different types of MemManage, BusFault and UsageFault exceptions see *Fault behavior* on page B1-669.

A7.1.7 Notes

Where appropriate, additional notes about the instruction appear under further subheadings.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.2 Standard assembler syntax fields

The following assembler syntax fields are standard across all or most instructions:

<c> Is an optional field. It specifies the condition under which the instruction is executed. If <c> is omitted, it defaults to *always* (AL). For details see *Conditional instructions* on page A4-126.

<q> Specifies optional assembler qualifiers on the instruction. The following qualifiers are defined:

- .N Meaning narrow, specifies that the assembler must select a 16-bit encoding for the instruction. If this is not possible, an assembler error is produced.
- .W Meaning wide, specifies that the assembler must select a 32-bit encoding for the instruction. If this is not possible, an assembler error is produced.

If neither .W nor .N is specified, the assembler can select either 16-bit or 32-bit encodings. If both are available, it must select a 16-bit encoding. In a few cases, more than one encoding of the same length can be available for an instruction. The rules for selecting between such encodings are instruction-specific and are part of the instruction description.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.3 Conditional execution

Most Thumb instructions in ARMv7-M can be executed conditionally, based on the values of the APSR condition flags. The available conditions are listed in Table A7-1.

In Thumb instructions, the condition (if it is not AL) is normally encoded in a preceding IT instruction, see *Conditional instructions* on page A4-126, *ITSTATE* on page A7-210 and *IT* on page A7-277 for details. Some conditional branch instructions do not require a preceding IT instruction, and include a condition code in their encoding.

Table A7-1 Condition codes

cond	Mnemonic extension	Meaning, integer arithmetic	Meaning, floating-point arithmetic[a]	Condition flags
0000	EQ	Equal	Equal	Z == 1
0001	NE	Not equal	Not equal, or unordered	Z == 0
0010	CS[b]	Carry set	Greater than, equal, or unordered	C == 1
0011	CC[c]	Carry clear	Less than	C == 0
0100	MI	Minus, negative	Less than	N == 1
0101	PL	Plus, positive or zero	Greater than, equal, or unordered	N == 0
0110	VS	Overflow	Unordered	V == 1
0111	VC	No overflow	Not unordered	V == 0
1000	HI	Unsigned higher	Greater than, or unordered	C == 1 and Z == 0
1001	LS	Unsigned lower or same	Less than or equal	C == 0 or Z == 1
1010	GE	Signed greater than or equal	Greater than or equal	N == V
1011	LT	Signed less than	Less than, or unordered	N != V
1100	GT	Signed greater than	Greater than	Z == 0 and N == V
1101	LE	Signed less than or equal	Less than, equal, or unordered	Z == 1 or N != V
1110	None (AL)[d]	Always (unconditional)	Always (unconditional)	Any

a. Unordered means at least one NaN operand.
b. HS (unsigned higher or same) is a synonym for CS.
c. LO (unsigned lower) is a synonym for CC.
d. AL is an optional mnemonic extension for always, except in IT instructions. See *IT* on page A7-277 for details.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.3.1 Pseudocode details of conditional execution

The CurrentCond() pseudocode function has prototype:

```
bits(4) CurrentCond()
```

and returns a 4-bit condition specifier as follows:

- For the T1 and T3 encodings of the Branch instruction shown in *B* on page A7-239, it returns the 4-bit cond field of the encoding.
- For all other Thumb instructions, it returns ITSTATE.IT[7:4]. See *ITSTATE* on page A7-210.

The ConditionPassed() function uses this condition specifier and the APSR condition flags to determine whether the instruction must be executed:

```
// ConditionPassed()
// =================

boolean ConditionPassed()
    cond = CurrentCond();

    // Evaluate base condition.
    case cond<3:1> of
        when '000'  result = (APSR.Z == '1');                       // EQ or NE
        when '001'  result = (APSR.C == '1');                       // CS or CC
        when '010'  result = (APSR.N == '1');                       // MI or PL
        when '011'  result = (APSR.V == '1');                       // VS or VC
        when '100'  result = (APSR.C == '1') && (APSR.Z == '0');    // HI or LS
        when '101'  result = (APSR.N == APSR.V);                    // GE or LT
        when '110'  result = (APSR.N == APSR.V) && (APSR.Z == '0'); // GT or LE
        when '111'  result = TRUE;                                  // AL

    // Condition bits in the set "111x" indicate the instruction is always executed.
    // Otherwise, invert condition if necessary.
    if cond<0> == '1' && cond != '1111' then
        result = !result;

    return result;
```

A7.3.2 Conditional execution of undefined instructions

If an undefined instruction fails a condition check in ARMv7-M, the instruction behaves as a NOP and does not cause an exception.

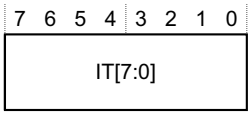
Note

The Branch (B) instruction with a conditional field of '1110' is UNDEFINED and takes an exception unless qualified by a condition check failure from an IT instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.3.3 ITSTATE

The bit assignments of the ITSTATE field are:



This field holds the If-Then execution state bits for the Thumb `IT` instruction. See *IT* on page A7-277 for a description of the `IT` instruction and the associated IT block.

ITSTATE divides into two subfields:

IT[7:5] Holds the *base condition* for the current IT block. The base condition is the top 3 bits of the condition specified by the IT instruction.

This subfield is 0b000 when no IT block is active.

IT[4:0] Encodes:

- The size of the IT block. This is the number of instructions that are to be conditionally executed. The size of the block is implied by the position of the least significant 1 in this field, as shown in Table A7-2 on page A7-211.
- The value of the least significant bit of the condition code for each instruction in the block.

  Note

  Changing the value of the least significant bit of a condition code from 0 to 1 has the effect of inverting the condition code.

This subfield is 0b00000 when no IT block is active.

When an IT instruction is executed, these bits are set according to the condition in the instruction, and the *Then* and *Else* (T and E) parameters in the instruction, see *IT* on page A7-277 for more information.

An instruction in an IT block is conditional, see *Conditional instructions* on page A4-126. The condition used is the current value of IT[7:4]. When an instruction in an IT block completes its execution normally, `ITSTATE` is advanced to the next line of Table A7-2 on page A7-211.

See *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 for details of what happens if such an instruction takes an exception.

Note

Instructions that can complete their normal execution by branching are only permitted in an IT block as its last instruction, and so always result in `ITSTATE` advancing to normal execution.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A7-2 Effect of IT execution state bits

	IT bits [a]					
[7:5]	**[4]**	**[3]**	**[2]**	**[1]**	**[0]**	
cond_base	P1	P2	P3	P4	1	Entry point for 4-instruction IT block
cond_base	P1	P2	P3	1	0	Entry point for 3-instruction IT block
cond_base	P1	P2	1	0	0	Entry point for 2-instruction IT block
cond_base	P1	1	0	0	0	Entry point for 1-instruction IT block
000	0	0	0	0	0	Normal execution, not in an IT block

a. Combinations of the IT bits not shown in this table are reserved.

Pseudocode details of ITSTATE operation

`ITSTATE` advances after normal execution of an IT block instruction. This is described by the `ITAdvance()` pseudocode function:

```
// ITAdvance()
// ===========

ITAdvance()
    if ITSTATE<2:0> == '000' then
        ITSTATE.IT = '00000000';
    else
        ITSTATE.IT<4:0> = LSL(ITSTATE.IT<4:0>, 1);
```

The following functions test whether the current instruction is in an IT block, and whether it is the last instruction of an IT block:

```
// InITBlock()
// ===========

boolean InITBlock()
    return (ITSTATE.IT<3:0> != '0000');

// LastInITBlock()
// ===============

boolean LastInITBlock()
    return (ITSTATE.IT<3:0> == '1000');
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.4 Shifts applied to a register

Thumb data-processing instructions can apply a range of constant shifts to the second operand register. See *Constant shifts* for details.

A7.4.1 Constant shifts

<shift> is an optional shift to be applied to <Rm>. It can be any one of:

(omitted) Equivalent to LSL #0.

LSL #<n> logical shift left <n> bits. 0 <= <n> <= 31.

LSR #<n> logical shift right <n> bits. 1 <= <n> <= 32.

ASR #<n> arithmetic shift right <n> bits. 1 <= <n> <= 32.

ROR #<n> rotate right <n> bits. 1 <= <n> <= 31.

RRX rotate right one bit, with extend. bit [0] is written to shifter_carry_out, bits [31:1] are shifted right one bit, and the Carry Flag is shifted into bit [31].

Encoding

The assembler encodes <shift> into two type bits and five immediate bits, as follows:

(omitted) type = 0b00, immediate = 0.

LSL #<n> type = 0b00, immediate = <n>.

LSR #<n> type = 0b01.
If <n> < 32, immediate = <n>.
If <n> == 32, immediate = 0.

ASR #<n> type = 0b10.
If <n> < 32, immediate = <n>.
If <n> == 32, immediate = 0.

ROR #<n> type = 0b11, immediate = <n>.

RRX type = 0b11, immediate = 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.4.2 Shift operations

```
// DecodeImmShift()
// ================

(SRType, integer) DecodeImmShift(bits(2) type, bits(5) imm5)

    case type of
        when '00'
            shift_t = SRType_LSL;  shift_n = UInt(imm5);
        when '01'
            shift_t = SRType_LSR;  shift_n = if imm5 == '00000' then 32 else UInt(imm5);
        when '10'
            shift_t = SRType_ASR;  shift_n = if imm5 == '00000' then 32 else UInt(imm5);
        when '11'
            if imm5 == '00000' then
                shift_t = SRType_RRX;  shift_n = 1;
            else
                shift_t = SRType_ROR;  shift_n = UInt(imm5);

    return (shift_t, shift_n);

// Shift()
// =======

bits(N) Shift(bits(N) value, SRType type, integer amount, bit carry_in)
    (result, -) = Shift_C(value, type, amount, carry_in);
    return result;

// Shift_C()
// =========

(bits(N), bit) Shift_C(bits(N) value, SRType type, integer amount, bit carry_in)
    assert !(type == SRType_RRX && amount != 1);

    if amount == 0 then
        (result, carry_out) = (value, carry_in);
    else
        case type of
            when SRType_LSL
                (result, carry_out) = LSL_C(value, amount);
            when SRType_LSR
                (result, carry_out) = LSR_C(value, amount);
            when SRType_ASR
                (result, carry_out) = ASR_C(value, amount);
            when SRType_ROR
                (result, carry_out) = ROR_C(value, amount);
            when SRType_RRX
                (result, carry_out) = RRX_C(value, carry_in);

    return (result, carry_out);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.5 Memory accesses

The following addressing modes are commonly permitted for memory access instructions:

Offset addressing

The offset value is added to or subtracted from an address obtained from the base register. The result is used as the address for the memory access. The base register is unaltered.

The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

`[<Rn>,<offset>]`

Pre-indexed addressing

The offset value is applied to an address obtained from the base register. The result is used as the address for the memory access, and written back into the base register.

The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

`[<Rn>,<offset>]!`

Post-indexed addressing

The address obtained from the base register is used, unaltered, as the address for the memory access. The offset value is applied to the address, and written back into the base register.

The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

`[<Rn>],<offset>`

In each case, `<Rn>` is the base register. `<offset>` can be:

- an immediate constant, such as `<imm8>` or `<imm12>`
- an index register, `<Rm>`
- a shifted index register, such as `<Rm>, LSL #<shift>`.

For information about unaligned access, endianness, and exclusive access, see:

- *Alignment support* on page A3-83
- *Endian support* on page A3-85
- *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-89

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.6 Hint Instructions

The Thumb instruction set includes the following classes of hint instruction:

- memory hints
- NOP-compatible hints.

A7.6.1 Memory hints

Some load instructions with Rt == 0b1111 are memory *hints*. Memory hints allow you to provide advance information to memory systems about future memory accesses, without actually loading or storing any data.

`PLD` and `PLI` are the only memory hint instructions currently defined, see *Load byte, memory hints* on page A5-176. For instruction details, see:

- *PLD (immediate)* on page A7-377
- *PLD (literal)* on page A7-379
- *PLD (register)* on page A7-381
- *PLI (immediate, literal)* on page A7-383
- *PLI (register)* on page A7-385.

Other memory hints are currently unallocated, see *Load halfword, memory hints* on page A5-174. The effect of a memory hint instruction is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Unallocated memory hints must be implemented as `NOP`, and software must not use them.

A7.6.2 NOP-compatible hints

Hint instructions that are not associated with memory accesses are part of a separate category of hint instructions known as NOP-compatible hints. NOP-compatible hints provide IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED behavior or act as a NOP. Both 16-bit and 32-bit encodings are reserved:

- For information on the 16-bit encodings see *If-Then, and hints* on page A5-162.
- For information on the 32-bit encodings see *Hint instructions* on page A5-170.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7 Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions

Every ARMv7-M Thumb instruction is listed in this section. See *Format of instruction descriptions* on page A7-202 for details of the format used.

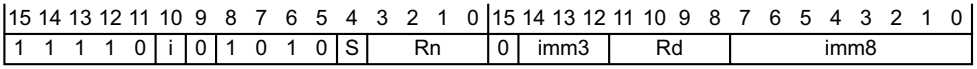
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.1 ADC (immediate)

Add with Carry (immediate) adds an immediate value and the carry flag value to a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
ADC{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ADC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax ADC<c>S is equivalent to ADCS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], imm32, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

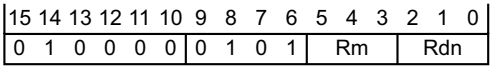
A7.7.2 ADC (register)

Add with Carry (register) adds a register value, the carry flag value, and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`ADCS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

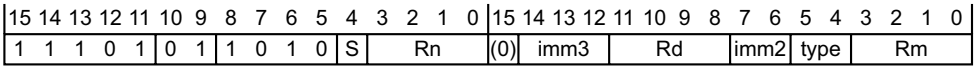
`ADC<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`ADC{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ADC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

A special case is that if ADC<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rd> is written with <Rd> and <Rn> both in the range R0-R7, it will be assembled using encoding T2 as though ADC<c> <Rd>,<Rn> had been written. To prevent this happening, use the .W qualifier.

The pre-UAL syntax ADC<c>S is equivalent to ADCS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

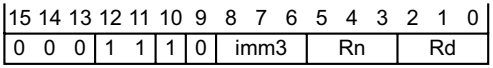
A7.7.3 ADD (immediate)

This instruction adds an immediate value to a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`ADDS <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>` Outside IT block.

`ADD<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>` Inside IT block.

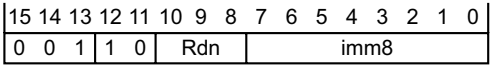



```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm3, 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`ADDS <Rdn>,#<imm8>` Outside IT block.

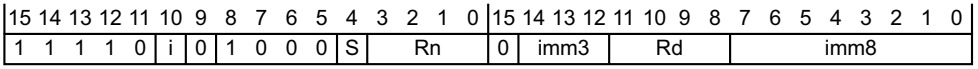
`ADD<c> <Rdn>,#<imm8>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

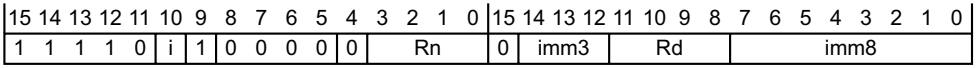
`ADD{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>`




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMN (immediate);
if Rn == '1101' then SEE ADD (SP plus immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

`ADDW<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm12>`




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE ADR;
if Rn == '1101' then SEE ADD (SP plus immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`ADD{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>`	All encodings permitted
`ADDW<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>`	Only encoding T4 permitted

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A7-225. If the PC is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADR* on page A7-229.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of allowed values is 0-7 for encoding T1, 0-255 for encoding T2 and 0-4095 for encoding T4. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T3.

When multiple encodings of the same length are available for an instruction, encoding T3 is preferred to encoding T4 (if encoding T4 is required, use the `ADDW` syntax). Encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2 if `<Rd>` is specified and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if `<Rd>` is omitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `ADD<c>S` is equivalent to `ADDS<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], imm32, '0');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

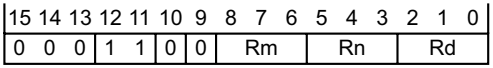
A7.7.4 ADD (register)

ADD (register) adds a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`ADDS <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

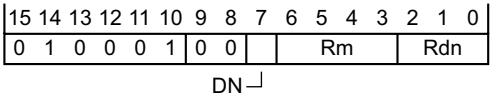
`ADD<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

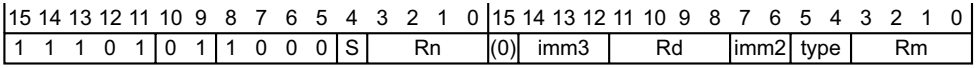
`ADD<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>`




```
if (DN:Rdn) == '1101' || Rm == '1101' then SEE ADD (SP plus register);
d = UInt(DN:Rdn);  n = UInt(DN:Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
if d == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == 15 && m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

`ADD{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}`




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMN (register);
if Rn == '1101' then SEE ADD (SP plus register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ADD{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn> and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if both are available. This can only happen inside an IT block. If <Rd> is specified, encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2. If <Rm> is not the PC, the PC can be used in encoding T2.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for <Rn>, see *ADD (SP plus register)* on page A7-227. If <Rm> is not the PC, the PC can be used in encoding T2.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand. The PC can be used in encoding T2.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and all encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T3 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Inside an IT block, if ADD<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rd> cannot be assembled using encoding T1, it is assembled using encoding T2 as though ADD<c> <Rd>,<Rn> had been written. To prevent this happening, use the .W qualifier.

The pre-UAL syntax ADD<c>S is equivalent to ADDS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, '0');
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);  // setflags is always FALSE here
    else
        R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

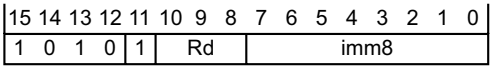
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.5 ADD (SP plus immediate)

ADD (SP plus immediate) adds an immediate value to the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

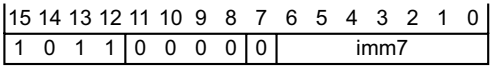
```
ADD<c> <Rd>,SP,#<imm8>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

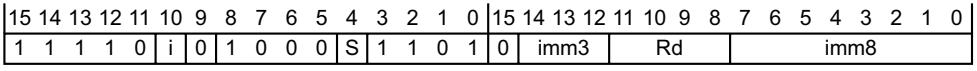
```
ADD<c> SP,SP,#<imm7>
```




```
d = 13;  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm7:'00', 32);
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

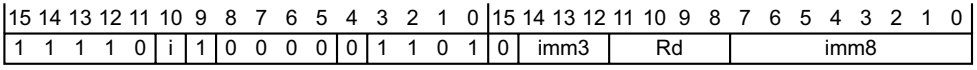
```
ADD{S}<c>.W <Rd>,SP,#<const>
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMN (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d == 15 && S == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

```
ADDW<c> <Rd>,SP,#<imm12>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);
if d == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`ADD{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>`	All encodings permitted
`ADDW<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>`	Only encoding T4 is permitted

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is SP.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T1, multiples of 4 in the range 0-508 for encoding T2 and any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T4. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T3.

When both 32-bit encodings are available for an instruction, encoding T3 is preferred to encoding T4 (if encoding T4 is required, use the `ADDW` syntax).

The pre-UAL syntax `ADD<c>S` is equivalent to `ADDS<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, imm32, '0');
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

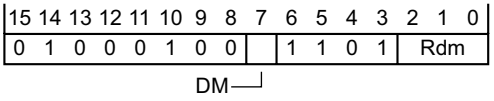
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.6 ADD (SP plus register)

ADD (SP plus register) adds an optionally-shifted register value to the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

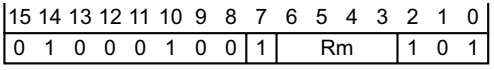
```
ADD<c> <Rdm>, SP, <Rdm>
```




```
d = UInt(DM:Rdm);  m = UInt(DM:Rdm);  setflags = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

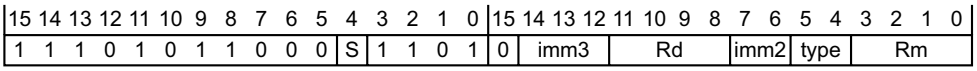
```
ADD<c> SP,<Rm>
```




```
if Rm == '1101' then SEE encoding T1;
d = 13;  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
ADD{S}<c>.W <Rd>,SP,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 && (shift_t != SRType_LSL || shift_n > 3) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ADD{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, <Rm>{, <shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is SP. The use of the PC as <Rd> in encoding T1 is deprecated.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand. The use of the SP as <Rm> in encoding T1 is deprecated. The use of the PC as <Rm> in encoding T1 and encoding T2 is deprecated.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and all encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T3 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212. If <Rd> is SP or omitted, <shift> is only permitted to be LSL #0, LSL #1, LSL #2 or LSL #3.

The pre-UAL syntax ADD<c>S is equivalent to ADDS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, shifted, '0');
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);  // setflags is always FALSE here
    else
        R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

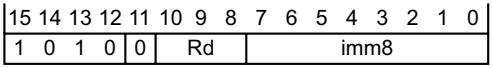
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.7 ADR

Address to Register adds an immediate value to the PC value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADR<c> <Rd>,<label>
```

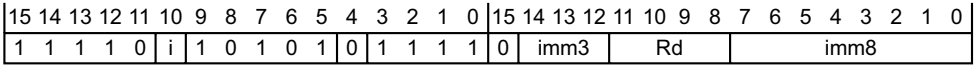



```
d = UInt(Rd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M.

```
ADR<c>.W <Rd>,<label>
```
<label> before current instruction

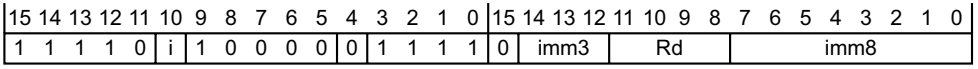
```
SUB <Rd>,PC,#0
```
Special case for zero offset




```
d = UInt(Rd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);  add = FALSE;
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
ADR<c>.W <Rd>,<label>
```
<label> after current instruction




```
d = UInt(Rd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);  add = TRUE;
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`ADR<c><q> <Rd>, <label>`	Normal syntax
`ADD<c><q> <Rd>, PC, #<const>`	Alternative for encodings T1, T3
`SUB<c><q> <Rd>, PC, #<const>`	Alternative for encoding T2

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<label>` Specifies the label of an instruction or literal data item whose address is to be loaded into `<Rd>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the `Align(PC,4)` value of the `ADR` instruction to this label.

If the offset is positive, encodings T1 and T3 are permitted with `imm32` equal to the offset. Allowed values of the offset are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1 and any value in the range 0 to 4095 for encoding T3.

If the offset is negative, encoding T2 is permitted with `imm32` equal to minus the offset. Allowed values of the offset are -4095 to -1.

In the alternative syntax forms:

`<const>` Specifies the offset value for the `ADD` form and minus the offset value for the `SUB` form. Allowed values are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1 and any value in the range 0 to 4095 for encodings T2 and T3.

Note

It is recommended that the alternative syntax forms are avoided where possible. However, the only possible syntax for encoding T2 with all immediate bits zero is `SUB<c><q> <Rd>,PC,#0`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = if add then (Align(PC,4) + imm32) else (Align(PC,4) - imm32);
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

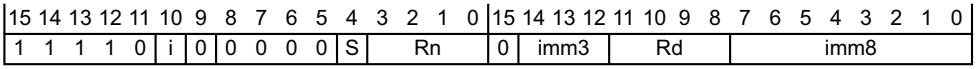
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.8 AND (immediate)

AND (immediate) performs a bitwise AND of a register value and an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
AND{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE TST (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
AND{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax AND<c>S is equivalent to ANDS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] AND imm32;
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

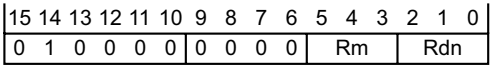
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.9 AND (register)

AND (register) performs a bitwise AND of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

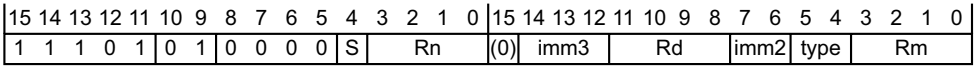
```
ANDS   <Rdn>,<Rm>          Outside IT block.
AND<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>          Inside IT block.
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
AND{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE TST (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
AND{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

A special case is that if AND<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rd> is written with <Rd> and <Rn> both in the range R0-R7, it will be assembled using encoding T2 as though AND<c> <Rd>,<Rn> had been written. To prevent this happening, use the .W qualifier.

The pre-UAL syntax AND<c>S is equivalent to ANDS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND shifted;
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

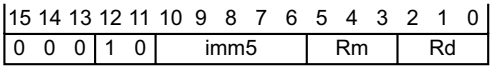
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.10 ASR (immediate)

Arithmetic Shift Right (immediate) shifts a register value right by an immediate number of bits, shifting in copies of its sign bit, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ASRS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>                Outside IT block.
ASR<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>              Inside IT block.
```

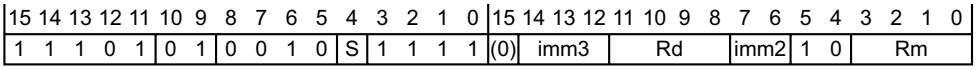


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	imm5					Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('10', imm5);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
ASR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	S	1	1	1	1	(0)	imm3			Rd				imm2		1	0	Rm			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('10', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ASR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<imm5>	Specifies the shift amount, in the range 1 to 32. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_ASR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

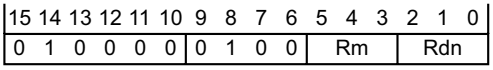
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.11 ASR (register)

Arithmetic Shift Right (register) shifts a register value right by a variable number of bits, shifting in copies of its sign bit, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

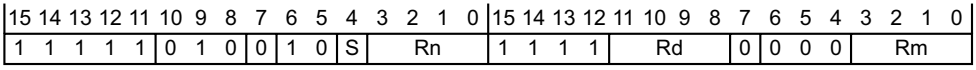
```
ASRS    <Rdn>,<Rm>          Outside IT block.
ASR<c>  <Rdn>,<Rm>          Inside IT block.
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
ASR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ASR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_ASR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

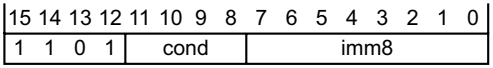
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.12 B

Branch causes a branch to a target address.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

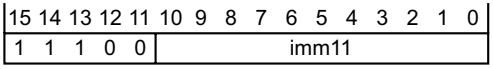
`B<c> <label>` Not allowed in IT block.




```
if cond == '1110' then UNDEFINED;
if cond == '1111' then SEE SVC;
imm32 = SignExtend(imm8:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

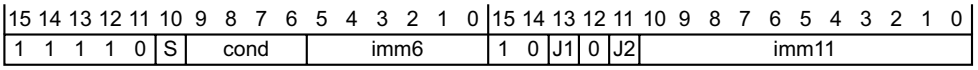
`B<c> <label>` Outside or last in IT block




```
imm32 = SignExtend(imm11:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

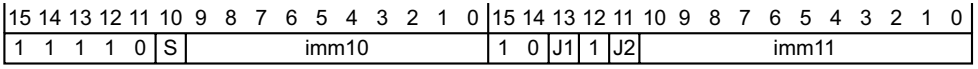
Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

`B<c>.W <label>` Not allowed in IT block.



Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

`B<c>.W <label>` Outside or last in IT block




```
I1 = NOT(J1 EOR S);  I2 = NOT(J2 EOR S);  imm32 = SignExtend(S:I1:I2:imm10:imm11:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
B<c><q>  <label>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Note

Encodings T1 and T3 are conditional in their own right, and do not require an `IT` instruction to make them conditional.

For encodings T1 and T3, `<c>` is not allowed to be `AL` or omitted. The 4-bit encoding of the condition is placed in the instruction and not in a preceding `IT` instruction, and the instruction is not allowed to be in an IT block. As a result, encodings T1 and T2 are never both available to the assembler, nor are encodings T3 and T4.

`<label>` Specifies the label of the instruction that is to be branched to. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `B` instruction to this label, then selects an encoding that will set `imm32` to that offset.

Allowed offsets are even numbers in the range -256 to 254 for encoding T1, -2048 to 2046 for encoding T2, -1048576 to 1048574 for encoding T3, and -16777216 to 16777214 for encoding T4.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    BranchWritePC(PC + imm32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Related encodings

If the cond field of encoding T3 is '1110' or '1111', a different instruction is encoded. To determine which instruction, see *Branches and miscellaneous control* on page A5-169.

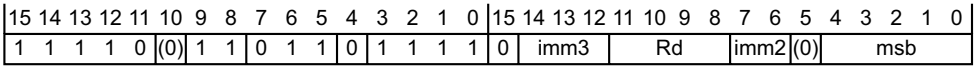
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.13 BFC

Bit Field Clear clears any number of adjacent bits at any position in a register, without affecting the other bits in the register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
BFC<c> <Rd>,#<lsb>,#<width>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  msbit = UInt(msb);  lsbit = UInt(imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BFC<c><q>  <Rd>, #<lsb>, #<width>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<lsb>` Specifies the least significant bit that is to be cleared, in the range 0 to 31. This determines the required value of `lsbit`.

`<width>` Specifies the number of bits to be cleared, in the range 1 to 32-`<lsb>`. The required value of `msbit` is `<lsb>+<width>-1`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if msbit >= lsbit then
        R[d]<msbit:lsbit> = Replicate('0', msbit-lsbit+1);
        // Other bits of R[d] are unchanged
    else
        UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Exceptions

None.

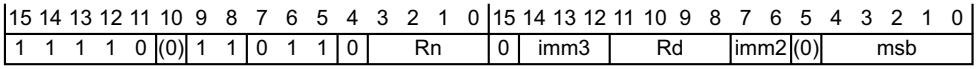
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.14 BFI

Bit Field Insert copies any number of low order bits from a register into the same number of adjacent bits at any position in the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
BFI<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<lsb>,#<width>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE BFC;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  msbit = UInt(msb);  lsbit = UInt(imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BFI<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, #<lsb>, #<width>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the source register.

`<lsb>` Specifies the least significant destination bit, in the range 0 to 31. This determines the required value of `lsbit`.

`<width>` Specifies the number of bits to be copied, in the range 1-32-`<lsb>`. The required value of `msbit` is `<lsb>+<width>-1`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if msbit >= lsbit then
        R[d]<msbit:lsbit> = R[n]<(msbit-lsbit):0>;
        // Other bits of R[d] are unchanged
    else
        UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Exceptions

None.

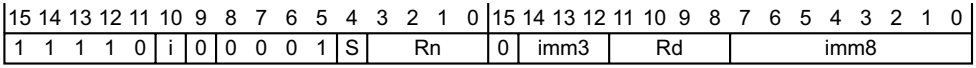
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.15 BIC (immediate)

Bit Clear (immediate) performs a bitwise AND of a register value and the complement of an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
BIC{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
BIC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax BIC<c>S is equivalent to BICS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] AND NOT(imm32);
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

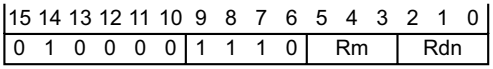
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.16 BIC (register)

Bit Clear (register) performs a bitwise AND of a register value and the complement of an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

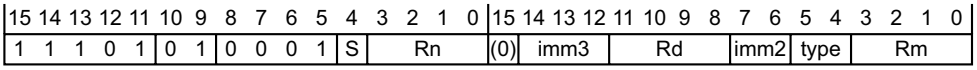
```
BICS   <Rdn>,<Rm>          Outside IT block.
BIC<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>          Inside IT block.
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
BIC{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
BIC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

The pre-UAL syntax BIC<c>S is equivalent to BICS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND NOT(shifted);
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.17 BKPT

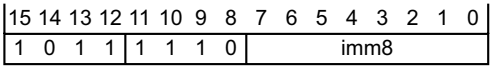
Breakpoint causes a DebugMonitor exception or a debug halt to occur depending on the configuration of the debug support.

Note

`BKPT` is an unconditional instruction and executes as such both inside and outside an `IT` instruction block.

Encoding T1 ARMv5T*, ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M M profile specific behavior

```
BKPT #<imm8>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly/disassembly only and is ignored by hardware.
```

Assembler syntax

```
BKPT<q>#<imm8>
```

where:

`<q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<imm8>` Specifies an 8-bit value that is stored in the instruction. This value is ignored by the ARM hardware, but can be used by a debugger to store additional information about the breakpoint.

Operation

```
EncodingSpecificOperations();
BKPTInstrDebugEvent();
```

Exceptions

DebugMonitor.

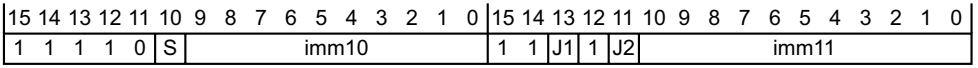
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.18 BL

Branch with Link (immediate) calls a subroutine at a PC-relative address.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`BL<c> <label>` Outside or last in IT block




```
I1 = NOT(J1 EOR S);  I2 = NOT(J2 EOR S);  imm32 = SignExtend(S:I1:I2:imm10:imm11:'0', 32);
targetInstrSet = CurrentInstrSet();
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

`BL<c><q>  <label>`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<label>` Specifies the label of the instruction that is to be branched to.

The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `BL` instruction to this label, then selects an encoding that will set `imm32` to that offset. Allowed offsets are even numbers in the range -16777216 to 16777214.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    next_instr_addr = PC;
    LR = next_instr_addr<31:1> : '1';
    BranchWritePC(PC + imm32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Note

Before the introduction of Thumb-2 technology, J1 and J2 in encodings T1 and T2 were both 1, resulting in a smaller branch range. The instructions could be executed as two separate 16-bit instructions, with the first instruction `instr1` setting LR to `PC + SignExtend(instr1<10:0>:'000000000000', 32)` and the second instruction completing the operation. It is not possible to split the `BL` instruction into two 16-bit instructions in ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M.

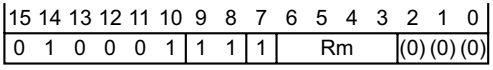
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.19 BLX (register)

Branch with Link and Exchange calls a subroutine at an address and instruction set specified by a register. ARMv7-M only supports the Thumb instruction set. An attempt to change the instruction execution state causes the processor to take an exception on the instruction at the target address.

Encoding T1 ARMv5T*, ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

`BLX<c> <Rm>` Outside or last in IT block




```
m = UInt(Rm);
if m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BLX<c><q>  <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the branch target address and instruction set selection bit.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    target = R[m];
    next_instr_addr = PC - 2;
    LR = next_instr_addr<31:1> : '1';
    BLXWritePC(target);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

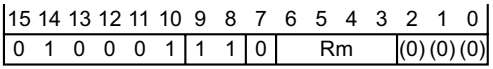
A7.7.20 BX

Branch and Exchange causes a branch to an address and instruction set specified by a register. ARMv7-M only supports the Thumb instruction set. An attempt to change the instruction execution state causes the processor to take an exception on the instruction at the target address.

BX can also be used for an exception return, see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`BX<c> <Rm>` Outside or last in IT block




```
m = UInt(Rm);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

`BX<c><q>  <Rm>`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the branch target address and instruction set selection bit.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    BXWritePC(R[m]);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

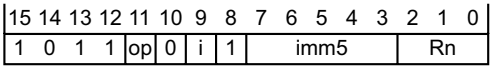
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.21 CBNZ, CBZ

Compare and Branch on Non-Zero and Compare and Branch on Zero compares the value in a register with zero, and conditionally branches forward a constant value. They do not affect the condition flags.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

`CB{N}Z <Rn>,<label>` Not allowed in IT block.




```
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm5:'0', 32);  nonzero = (op == '1');
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CB{N}Z<q>  <Rn>, <label>
```

where:

`<q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<label>` The label of the instruction that is to be branched to. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `CB{N}Z` instruction to this label, then selects an encoding that will set `imm32` to that offset. Allowed offsets are even numbers in the range 0 to 126.

Operation

```
EncodingSpecificOperations();
if nonzero ^ IsZero(R[n]) then
    BranchWritePC(PC + imm32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

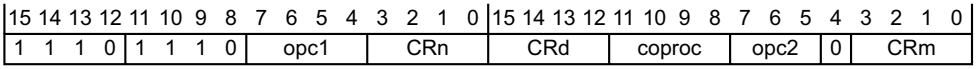
A7.7.22 CDP, CDP2

Coprocessor Data Processing tells a coprocessor to perform an operation that is independent of ARM registers and memory.

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
CDP<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<CRd>,<CRn>,<CRm>,<opc2>
```

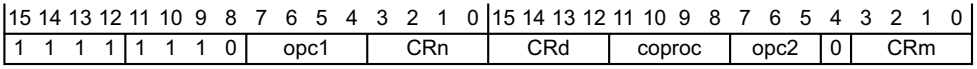


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	opc1				CRn				CRd				coproc				opc2			0	CRm			

```
cp = UInt(coproc);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
CDP2<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<CRd>,<CRn>,<CRm>,<opc2>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	opc1				CRn				CRd				coproc				opc2			0	CRm			

```
cp = UInt(coproc);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CDP{2}<c><q>  <coproc>, #<opc1>, <CRd>, <CRn>, <CRm> {,#<opc2>}
```

where:

2	If specified, selects the opc0 == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the opc0 == 0 form.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<coproc>	Specifies the name of the coprocessor, and causes the corresponding coprocessor number to be placed in the cp_num field of the instruction. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.
<opc1>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode, in the range 0 to 15.
<CRd>	Specifies the destination coprocessor register for the instruction.
<CRn>	Specifies the coprocessor register that contains the first operand.
<CRm>	Specifies the coprocessor register that contains the second operand.
<opc2>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 7. If it is omitted, <opc2> is assumed to be 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        Coproc_InternalOperation(cp, ThisInstr());
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

Notes

Coprocessor fields Only instruction bits<31:24>, bits<11:8>, and bit<4> are architecturally defined. The remaining fields are recommendations.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.23 CLREX

Clear Exclusive clears the local record of the executing processor that an address has had a request for an exclusive access.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
CLREX<c>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	0	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
CLREX<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ClearExclusiveLocal(ProcessorID());
```

Exceptions

None.

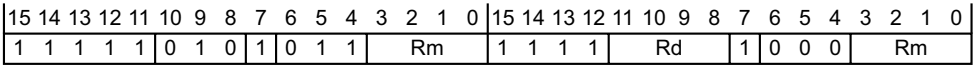
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.24 CLZ

Count Leading Zeros returns the number of binary zero bits before the first binary one bit in a value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
CLZ<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Rm				1	1	1	1	Rd				1	0	0	0	Rm			

```
if !Consistent(Rm) then UNPREDICTABLE;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
CLZ<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the operand. Its number must be encoded twice in encoding T1, in both the `Rm` and `Rm2` fields.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = CountLeadingZeroBits(R[m]);
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

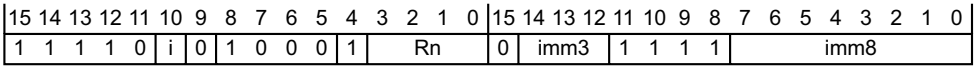
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.25 CMN (immediate)

Compare Negative (immediate) adds a register value and an immediate value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
CMN<c> <Rn>,#<const>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CMN<c><q>  <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the operand. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], imm32, '0');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

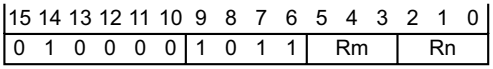
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.26 CMN (register)

Compare Negative (register) adds a register value and an optionally-shifted register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

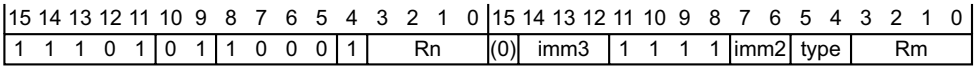
```
CMN<c> <Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
CMN<c>.W  <Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if n == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CMN<c><q>  <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

`<shift>` Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`. If `<shift>` is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If `<shift>` is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, '0');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

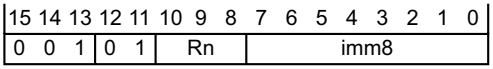
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.27 CMP (immediate)

Compare (immediate) subtracts an immediate value from a register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

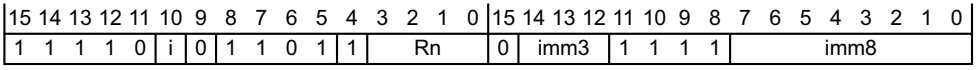
```
CMP<c> <Rn>,#<imm8>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
CMP<c>.W <Rn>,#<const>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CMP<c><q>  <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the operand. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of allowed values is 0-255 for encoding T1. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T2.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(imm32), '1');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.28 CMP (register)

Compare (register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value from a register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`CMP<c> <Rn>,<Rm>` `<Rn>` and `<Rm>` both from R0-R7

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	Rm			Rn		

```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`CMP<c> <Rn>,<Rm>` `<Rn>` and `<Rm>` not both from R0-R7

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	N	Rm				Rn		

```
n = UInt(N:Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
if n < 8 && m < 8 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if n == 15 || m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

`CMP<c>.W <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}`

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	Rn				(0)	imm3			1	1	1	1	imm2		type		Rm			

```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if n == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
CMP<c><q>  <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand. The SP can be used.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand. The SP can be used, but use of the SP is deprecated.

`<shift>` Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`. If `<shift>` is omitted, no shift is applied and all encodings are permitted. If shift is specified, only encoding T3 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), '1');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.29 CPS

Change Processor State. The instruction modifies the PRIMASK and FAULTMASK special-purpose register values.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

`CPS<effect> <iflags>`

Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M.
Not allowed in IT block.

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	im	(0)	(0)	I	F

Note

`CPS` is a system level instruction with ARMv7-M specific behavior. For the complete instruction definition see *CPS* on page B5-801.

A7.7.30 CPY

Copy is a pre-UAL synonym for `MOV` (register).

Assembler syntax

```
CPY  <Rd>, <Rn>
```

This is equivalent to:

```
MOV  <Rd>, <Rn>
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

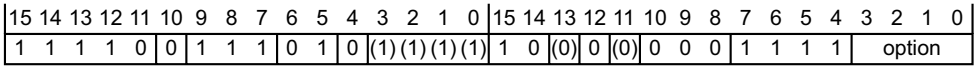
A7.7.31 DBG

Debug Hint provides a hint to debug trace support and related debug systems. See debug architecture documentation for what use (if any) is made of this instruction.

This is a NOP-compatible hint. See *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215 for general hint behavior.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
DBG<c> #<option>
```




```
// Any decoding of ‘option’ is specified by the debug system
```

Assembler syntax

```
DBG<c><q>  #<option>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<option> Provides extra information about the hint, and is in the range 0 to 15.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    Hint_Debug(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

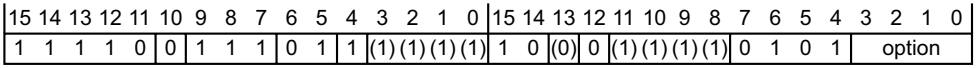
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.32 DMB

Data Memory Barrier acts as a memory barrier. It ensures that all explicit memory accesses that appear in program order before the `DMB` instruction are observed before any explicit memory accesses that appear in program order after the `DMB` instruction. It does not affect the ordering of any other instructions executing on the processor.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
DMB<c> #<option>
```




```
// No additional decoding required
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
DMB<c><q>  {<opt>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the DMB operation.

`SY` DMB operation ensures ordering of all accesses, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of option are reserved. The corresponding instructions execute as system (SY) DMB operations, but software must not rely on this behavior.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    DataMemoryBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.33 DSB

Data Synchronization Barrier acts as a special kind of memory barrier. No instruction in program order after this instruction can execute until this instruction completes. This instruction completes only when both:

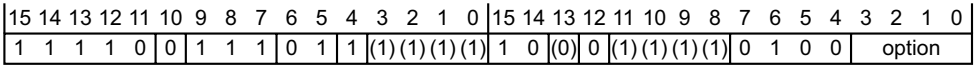
- any explicit memory access made before this instruction is complete
- the side-effects of any SCS access that performs a context-altering operation are visible.

Note

See *Synchronization requirements for System Control Space updates* on page A3-119 for more information about synchronisation of SCS updates.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
DSB<c> #<option>
```




```
// No additional decoding required
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
DSB<c><q>  {<opt>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the DSB operation. Values are:

`SY` DSB operation ensures completion of all accesses, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of option are reserved. The corresponding instructions execute as system (SY) DSB operations, but software must not rely on this behavior.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    DataSynchronizationBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

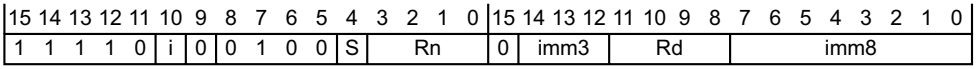
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.34 EOR (immediate)

Exclusive OR (immediate) performs a bitwise Exclusive OR of a register value and an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
EOR{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE TEQ (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
EOR{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax EOR<c>S is equivalent to EORS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] EOR imm32;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

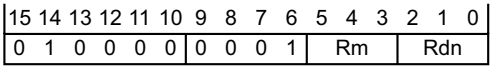
A7.7.35 EOR (register)

Exclusive OR (register) performs a bitwise Exclusive OR of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`EORS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

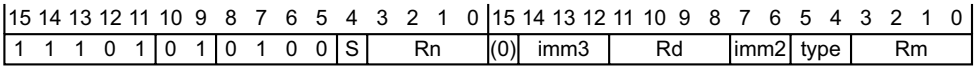
`EOR<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`EOR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}`




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE TEQ (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
EOR{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

A special case is that if EOR<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rd> is written with <Rd> and <Rn> both in the range R0-R7, it will be assembled using encoding T2 as though EOR<c> <Rd>,<Rn> had been written. To prevent this happening, use the .W qualifier.

The pre-UAL syntax EOR<c>S is equivalent to EORS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] EOR shifted;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.36 ISB

Instruction Synchronization Barrier flushes the pipeline in the processor, so that all instructions following the `ISB` are fetched from cache or memory after the instruction has completed. It ensures that the effects of context altering operations, such as those resulting from read or write accesses to the system control space (SCS), that completed before the `ISB` instruction are visible to the instructions fetched after the `ISB`.

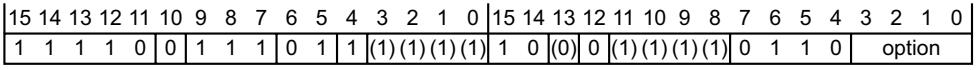
Note

See *Synchronization requirements for System Control Space updates* on page A3-119 for more information about synchronisation of SCS updates.

In addition, the `ISB` instruction ensures that any branches that appear in program order after it are always written into the branch prediction logic with the context that is visible after the `ISB` instruction. This is required to ensure correct execution of the instruction stream.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
ISB<c> #<option>
```




```
// No additional decoding required
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ISB<c><q>  {<opt>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the ISB operation. Allowed values are:

`SY` Full system ISB operation, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of option are RESERVED. The corresponding instructions execute as full system ISB operations, but should not be relied upon by software.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    InstructionSynchronizationBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.37 IT

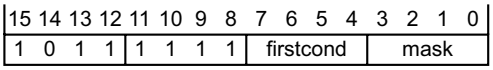
If Then makes up to four following instructions (the *IT block*) conditional. The conditions for the instructions in the IT block can be the same, or some of them can be the inverse of others.

IT does not affect the condition code flags. Branches to any instruction in the IT block are not permitted, apart from those performed by exception returns.

16-bit instructions in the IT block, other than CMP, CMN and TST, do not set the condition code flags. The AL condition can be specified to get this changed behavior without conditional execution.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

IT{x{y{z}}} <firstcond> Not allowed in IT block




```
if mask == '0000' then SEE "Related encodings";
if firstcond == '1111' || (firstcond == '1110' && BitCount(mask) != 1) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings

If the mask field of encoding T1 is '0000', a different instruction is encoded. To determine which instruction, see *If-Then, and hints* on page A5-162.

Assembler syntax

IT{x{y{z}}}<q> <firstcond>

where:

<x> Specifies the condition for the second instruction in the IT block.

<y> Specifies the condition for the third instruction in the IT block.

<z> Specifies the condition for the fourth instruction in the IT block.

<q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<firstcond> Specifies the condition for the first instruction in the IT block.

Each of <x>, <y>, and <z> can be either:

T Then. The condition attached to the instruction is <firstcond>.

E Else. The condition attached to the instruction is the inverse of <firstcond>. The condition code is the same as <firstcond>, except that the least significant bit is inverted. E must not be specified if <firstcond> is AL.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A7-3 shows how the values of <x>, <y>, and <z> determine the value of the mask field.

Table A7-3 Determination of mask[a] field

<x>	<y>	<z>	mask[3]	mask[2]	mask[1]	mask[0]
omitted	omitted	omitted	1	0	0	0
T	omitted	omitted	firstcond[0]	1	0	0
E	omitted	omitted	NOT firstcond[0]	1	0	0
T	T	omitted	firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1	0
E	T	omitted	NOT firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1	0
T	E	omitted	firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1	0
E	E	omitted	NOT firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1	0
T	T	T	firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1
E	T	T	NOT firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1
T	E	T	firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1
E	E	T	NOT firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	1
T	T	E	firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1
E	T	E	NOT firstcond[0]	firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1
T	E	E	firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1
E	E	E	NOT firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	NOT firstcond[0]	1

a. In any mask, at least one bit must be 1.

See also *ITSTATE* on page A7-210.

Operation

```
EncodingSpecificOperations();
ITSTATE.IT<7:0> = firstcond:mask;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

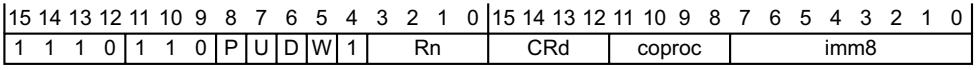
A7.7.38 LDC, LDC2 (immediate)

Load Coprocessor loads memory data from a sequence of consecutive memory addresses to a coprocessor. If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, an UsageFault exception is generated.

This is a generic coprocessor instruction. Some of the fields have no functionality defined by the architecture and are free for use by the coprocessor instruction set designer. These fields are the D bit, the CRd field, and in the Unindexed addressing mode only, the imm8 field.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

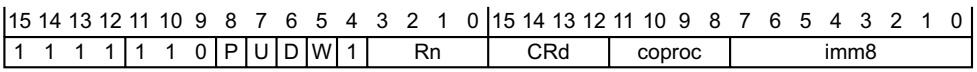
```
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDC (literal);
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MRRC, MRRC2;
n = UInt(Rn);  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDC (literal);
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MRRC, MRRC2;
n = UInt(Rn);  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDC{2}{L}<c><q> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]`	Offset. P = 1, W = 0.
`LDC{2}{L}<c><q> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed. P = 1, W = 1.
`LDC{2}{L}<c><q> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed. P = 0, W = 1.
`LDC{2}{L}<c><q> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>`	Unindexed. P = 0, W = 0, U = 1.

where:

`L` If specified, selects the D == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the D == 0 form.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<coproc>` The name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.

`<CRd>` The coprocessor destination register.

`<Rn>` The base register. This register is allowed to be the SP or PC.

`+/-` Is + or omitted if the immediate offset is to be added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – if it is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). `#0` and `#-0` generate different instructions.

`<imm>` The immediate offset applied to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of +0.

`<option>` An additional instruction option to the coprocessor. An integer in the range 0-255 enclosed in { }. Encoded in imm8.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDC<c>L` is equivalent to `LDCL<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
        address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
        repeat
            Coproc_SendLoadedWord(MemA[address,4], cp, ThisInstr());  address = address + 4;
        until Coproc_DoneLoading(cp, ThisInstr());
        if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

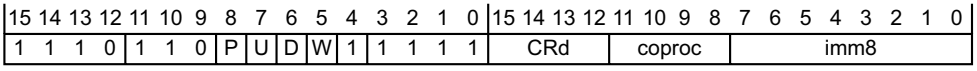
A7.7.39 LDC, LDC2 (literal)

Load Coprocessor loads memory data from a sequence of consecutive memory addresses to a coprocessor. If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

This is a generic coprocessor instruction. The D bit and the CRd field have no functionality defined by the architecture and are free for use by the coprocessor instruction set designer.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

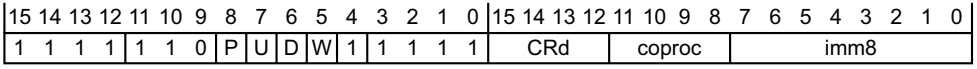
```
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,label
LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[PC,#-0]          Special case LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[PC],<option>
```




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MRRC, MRRC2;
index = (P == '1');     // Always TRUE in the Thumb instruction set
add = (U == '1');  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
if W == '1' || P == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,label
LDC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[PC,#-0]         Special case LDC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[PC],<option>
```




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MRRC, MRRC2;
index = (P == '1');     // Always TRUE in the Thumb instruction set
add = (U == '1');  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
if W == '1' || P == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,label`	Normal form with P = 1, W = 0
`LDC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,[PC,#-0]`	Alternative form with P = 1, W = 0

where:

`L` If specified, selects the D == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the D == 0 form.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<coproc>` The name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.

`<CRd>` The coprocessor destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label. Permitted values of the offset are multiples of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDC<c>L` is equivalent to `LDCL<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        offset_addr = if add then (Align(PC,4) + imm32) else (Align(PC,4) - imm32);
        address = if index then offset_addr else Align(PC,4);
        repeat
            Coproc_SendLoadedWord(MemA[address,4], cp, ThisInstr());  address = address + 4;
        until Coproc_DoneLoading(cp, ThisInstr());
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.40 LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD

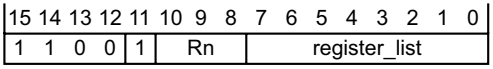
Load Multiple loads multiple registers from consecutive memory locations using an address from a base register. The sequential memory locations start at this address, and the address just above the last of those locations can optionally be written back to the base register.

The registers loaded can include the PC. If they do, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LDM<c> <Rn>!,<registers>` `<Rn>` not included in `<registers>`

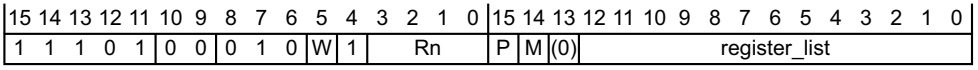
`LDM<c> <Rn>,<registers>` `<Rn>` included in `<registers>`




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '00000000':register_list;  wback = (registers<n> == '0');
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`LDM<c>.W <Rn>{!},<registers>`




```
if W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE POP;
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = P:M:'0':register_list;  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 || BitCount(registers) < 2 || (P == '1' && M == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
if registers<15> == '1' && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
if wback && registers<n> == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDM<c><q>  <Rn>{!}, <registers>
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rn>`	The base register. If it is the SP and ! is specified, the instruction is treated as described in *POP* on page A7-387.
`!`	Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. If ! is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>` in this way.
`<registers>`	Is a list of one or more registers to be loaded, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. The lowest-numbered register is loaded from the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register from the highest memory address. If the PC is specified in the register list, the instruction causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC. Encoding T2 does not support a list containing only one register. If an `LDMIA` instruction with just one register `<Rt>` in the list is assembled to Thumb and encoding T1 is not available, it is assembled to the equivalent `LDR<c><q> <Rt>,[<Rn>]{,#4}` instruction. The SP cannot be in the list. If the PC is in the list, the LR must not be in the list and the instruction must either be outside an IT block or the last instruction in an IT block.

`LDMIA` and `LDMFD` are pseudo-instructions for `LDM`. `LDMFD` refers to its use for popping data from Full Descending stacks.

The pre-UAL syntaxes `LDM<c>IA` and `LDM<c>FD` are equivalent to `LDM<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            R[i] = MemA[address,4];  address = address + 4;
    if registers<15> == '1' then
        LoadWritePC(MemA[address,4]);

    if wback && registers<n> == '0' then R[n] = R[n] + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

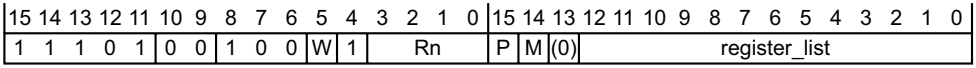
A7.7.41 LDMDB, LDMEA

Load Multiple Decrement Before (Load Multiple Empty Ascending) loads multiple registers from sequential memory locations using an address from a base register. The sequential memory locations end just below this address, and the address of the first of those locations can optionally be written back to the base register.

The registers loaded can include the PC. If they do, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDMDB<c> <Rn>{!},<registers>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = P:M:'0':register_list;  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 || BitCount(registers) < 2 || (P == '1' && M == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
if registers<15> == '1' && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
if wback && registers<n> == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDMDB<c><q>  <Rn>{!}, <registers>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. Encoded as W = 1.

If `!` is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>` in this way. Encoded as W = 0.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. It specifies the set of registers to be loaded. The registers are loaded with the lowest-numbered register from the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register from the highest memory address. If the PC is specified in the register list, the instruction causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

Encoding T1 does not support a list containing only one register. If an `LDMDB` instruction with just one register `<Rt>` in the list is assembled to Thumb, it is assembled to the equivalent `LDR<c><q> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-4]{!}` instruction.

The SP cannot be in the list.

If the PC is in the list, the LR must not be in the list and the instruction must either be outside an IT block or the last instruction in an IT block.

`LDMEA` is a pseudo-instruction for `LDMDB`, referring to its use for popping data from Empty Ascending stacks.

The pre-UAL syntaxes `LDM<c>DB` and `LDM<c>EA` are equivalent to `LDMDB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] - 4*BitCount(registers);

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            R[i] = MemA[address,4];  address = address + 4;
    if registers<15> == '1' then
        LoadWritePC(MemA[address,4]);

    if wback && registers<n> == '0' then R[n] = R[n] - 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

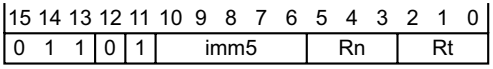
A7.7.42 LDR (immediate)

Load Register (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

The register loaded can be the PC. If it is, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

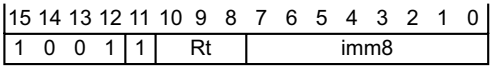
```
LDR<c> <Rt>, [<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

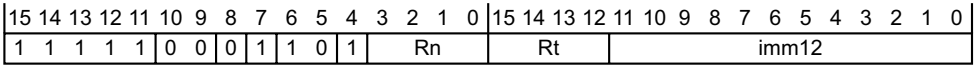
```
LDR<c> <Rt>,[SP{,#<imm8>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = 13;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

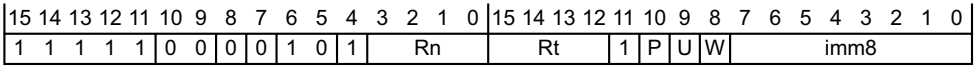
```
LDR<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm12>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDR (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

```
LDR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
LDR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDR (literal);
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE LDRT;
if Rn == '1101' && P == '0' && U == '1' && W == '1' && imm8 == '00000100' then SEE POP;
if P == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if (wback && n == t) || (t == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock()) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

`LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register. This register is allowed to be the SP. It is also allowed to be the PC, provided the instruction is either outside an IT block or the last instruction of an IT block. If it is the PC, it causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. If this register is the PC, see *LDR (literal)* on page A7-289.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-124 for encoding T1, multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T2, any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T3, and any value in the range 0-255 for encoding T4. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,4];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    if t == 15 then
        if address<1:0> == '00' then LoadWritePC(data);  else UNPREDICTABLE;
    else
        R[t] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

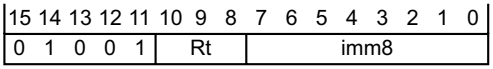
A7.7.43 LDR (literal)

Load Register (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

The register loaded can be the PC. If it is, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

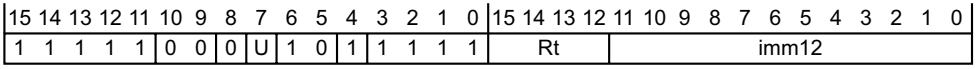
```
LDR<c> <Rt>,<label>
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDR<c>.W <Rt>,<label>
LDR<c>.W <Rt>,[PC,#-0]                                    Special case
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, <label>                    Normal form
LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]            Alternative form
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register. The SP can be used. The PC can be used, provided the instruction is either outside an IT block or the last instruction of an IT block. If the PC is used, the instruction branches to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label. Permitted values of the offset are:

Encoding T1 multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020

Encoding T2 any value in the range -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If the offset is negative, imm32 is equal to minus the offset and add == FALSE. Negative offset is not available in encoding T1.

Note

In code examples in this manual, the syntax =<value> is used for the label of a memory word whose contents are constant and equal to <value>. The actual syntax for such a label is assembler-dependent.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    data = MemU[address,4];
    if t == 15 then
        if address<1:0> == '00' then LoadWritePC(data);  else UNPREDICTABLE;
    else
        R[t] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

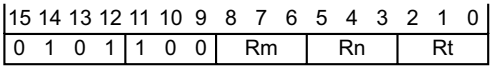
A7.7.44 LDR (register)

Load Register (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

The register loaded can be the PC. If it is, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

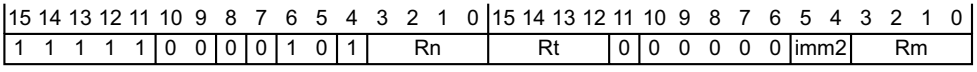
```
LDR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDR<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDR (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDR<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register. This register is allowed to be the SP. It is also allowed to be the PC, provided the instruction is either outside an IT block or the last instruction of an IT block. If it is the PC, it causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

`<shift>` Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,4];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    if t == 15 then
        if address<1:0> == '00' then LoadWritePC(data);  else UNPREDICTABLE;
    else
        R[t] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

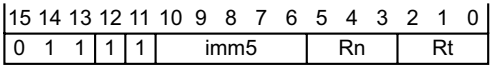
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.45 LDRB (immediate)

Load Register Byte (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

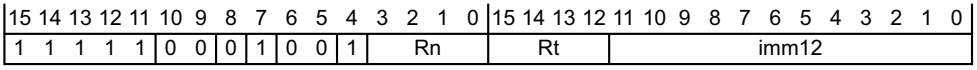
```
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

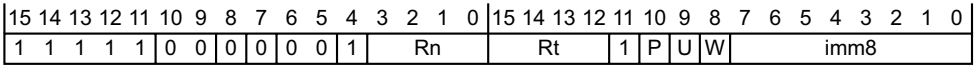
```
LDRB<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm12>}]
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLD;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if Rt == '1111' && P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE PLD;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRB (literal);
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE LDRBT;
if P == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t == 13 || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 15 && (P == '0' || U == '1' || W == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`LDRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`LDRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. If this register is the PC, see *LDRB (literal)* on page A7-295.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-31 for encoding T1, 0-4095 for encoding T2, and 0-255 for encoding T3. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>B` is equivalent to `LDRB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.46 LDRB (literal)

Load Register Byte (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRB<c> <Rt>,<label>
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[PC,#-0]                                   Special case
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	U	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	Rt				imm12											

```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLD;
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRB<c><q> <Rt>, <label>`	Normal form
`LDRB<c><q> <Rt>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Alternative form

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label. Permitted values of the offset are -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>B` is equivalent to `LDRB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

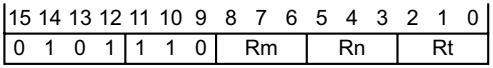
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.47 LDRB (register)

Load Register Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

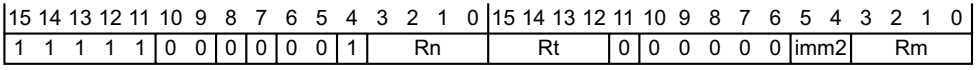
```
LDRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRB<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLD;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRB<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

`<shift>` Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>B` is equivalent to `LDRB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU[address,1],32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

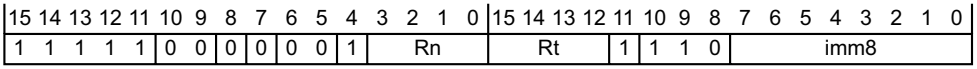
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.48 LDRBT

Load Register Byte Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an LDRBT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRBT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRBT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<imm>`	Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>BT` is equivalent to `LDRBT<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU_unpriv[address,1],32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

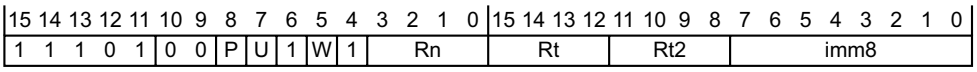
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.49 LDRD (immediate)

Load Register Dual (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads two words from memory, and writes them to two registers. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm8>}]
LDRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if P == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRD (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if wback && (n == t || n == t2) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t IN {13,15} || t2 IN {13,15} || t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings See *Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch* on page A5-172

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

LDRD<c><q>	<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]	Offset: index==TRUE, wback==FALSE
LDRD<c><q>	<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!	Pre-indexed: index==TRUE, wback==TRUE
LDRD<c><q>	<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>	Post-indexed: index==FALSE, wback==TRUE

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rt> Specifies the first destination register.

<Rt2> Specifies the second destination register.

<Rn> Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. In the offset addressing form of the syntax, it is also allowed to be the PC.

+/- Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (add == TRUE), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (add == FALSE). Different instructions are generated for #0 and #-0.

<imm> Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of <Rn> to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. For the offset addressing syntax, <imm> can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax LDR<c>D is equivalent to LDRD<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = MemA[address,4];
    R[t2] = MemA[address+4,4];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.50 LDRD (literal)

Load Register Dual (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads two words from memory, and writes them to two registers. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Note

For the M profile, the PC value must be word-aligned, otherwise the behavior of the instruction is UNPREDICTABLE.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,<label>
LDRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[PC,#-0]                                   Special case
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	P	U	1	W	1	1	1	1	1	Rt					Rt2			imm8							

```
if P == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t IN {13,15} || t2 IN {13,15} || t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if W == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings See *Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch* on page A5-172

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRD<c><q> <Rt>, <Rt2>, <label>`	Normal form
`LDRD<c><q> <Rt>, <Rt2>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Alternative form

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The first destination register.

`<Rt2>` The second destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label. Permitted values of the offset are multiples of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>D` is equivalent to `LDRD<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if PC<1:0> != '00' then UNPREDICTABLE;
    address = if add then (PC + imm32) else (PC - imm32);
    R[t] = MemA[address,4];
    R[t2] = MemA[address+4,4];
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.51 LDREX

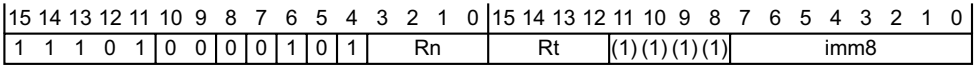
Load Register Exclusive calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, writes it to a register and:

- if the address has the Shareable Memory attribute, marks the physical address as exclusive access for the executing processor in a global monitor
- causes the executing processor to indicate an active exclusive access in the local monitor.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDREX<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm8>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
if t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDREX<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {,#<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    SetExclusiveMonitors(address,4);
    R[t] = MemA[address,4];
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.52 LDREXB

Load Register Exclusive Byte derives an address from a base register value, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, writes it to a register and:

- if the address has the Shareable Memory attribute, marks the physical address as exclusive access for the executing processor in a global monitor
- causes the executing processor to indicate an active exclusive access in the local monitor.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7

```
LDREXB<c> <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Rn				Rt				(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	0	1	0	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)

```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);
if t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDREXB<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];
    SetExclusiveMonitors(address,1);
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemA[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.53 LDREXH

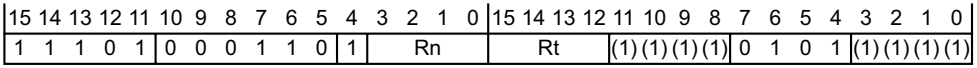
Load Register Exclusive Halfword derives an address from a base register value, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, writes it to a register and:

- if the address has the Shareable Memory attribute, marks the physical address as exclusive access for the executing processor in a global monitor
- causes the executing processor to indicate an active exclusive access in the local monitor.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7

```
LDREXH<c> <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);
if t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDREXH<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];
    SetExclusiveMonitors(address,2);
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemA[address,2], 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

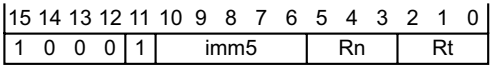
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.54 LDRH (immediate)

Load Register Halfword (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

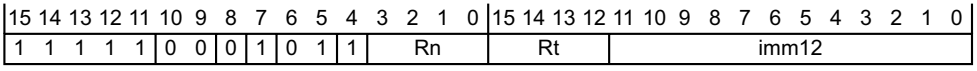
```
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'0', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

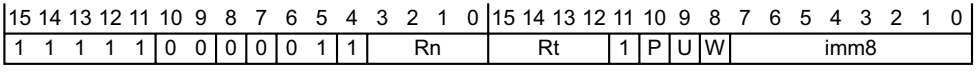
```
LDRH<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm12>}]
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRH (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRH (literal);
if Rt == '1111' && P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE LDRHT;
if P == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t ==13 || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t ==15 && (P == '0' || U == '1' || W == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`LDRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`LDRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. If this register is the PC, see *LDRH (literal)* on page A7-311.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 2 in the range 0-62 for encoding T1, any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T2, and any value in the range 0-255 for encoding T3. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>H` is equivalent to `LDRH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Unallocated memory hints

If the Rt field is '1111' in encoding T2, or if the Rt field and P, U, and W bits in encoding T3 are '1111', '1', '0' and '0' respectively, the instruction is an unallocated memory hint.

Unallocated memory hints must be implemented as NOPs. Software must not use them, and they therefore have no UAL assembler syntax.

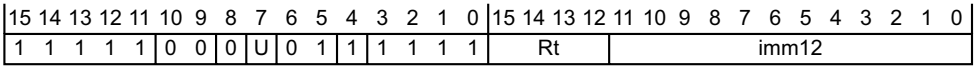
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.55 LDRH (literal)

Load Register Halfword (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRH<c> <Rt>,<label>
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[PC,#-0]                                   Special case
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRH<c><q> <Rt>, <label>`	Normal form
`LDRH<c><q> <Rt>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Alternative form

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `ADR` instruction to this label. Permitted values of the offset are -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>H` is equivalent to `LDRH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    data = MemU[address,2];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

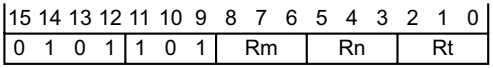
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.56 LDRH (register)

Load Register Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

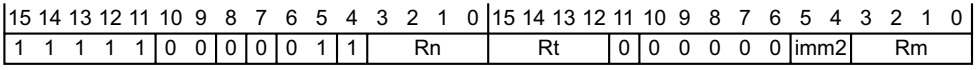
```
LDRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRH<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRH (literal);
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRH<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.
`<shift>`	Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>H` is equivalent to `LDRH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

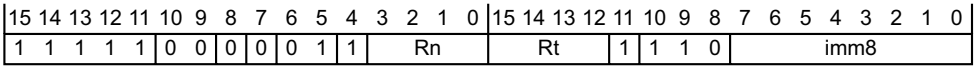
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.57 LDRHT

Load Register Halfword Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an LDRHT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRHT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRH (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRHT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<imm>`	Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    data = MemU_unpriv[address,2];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

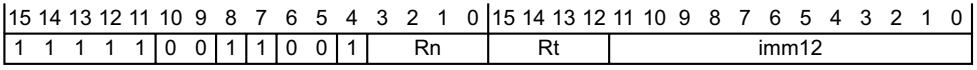
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.58 LDRSB (immediate)

Load Register Signed Byte (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

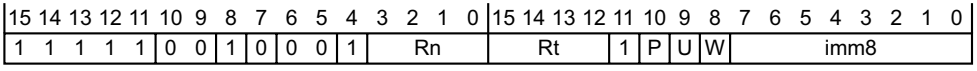
```
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLI;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if Rt == '1111' && P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE PLI;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSB (literal);
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE LDRSBT;
if P == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t == 13 || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 15 && (P == '0' || U == '1' || W == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRSB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`LDRSB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`LDRSB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. If this register is the PC, see *LDRSB (literal)* on page A7-319.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-4095 for encoding T1, and 0-255 for encoding T2. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SB` is equivalent to `LDRSB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = SignExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

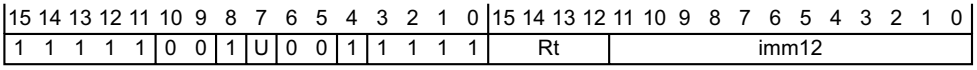
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.59 LDRSB (literal)

Load Register Signed Byte (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,<label>
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[PC,#-0]                                  Special case
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	U	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	Rt				imm12											

```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLI;
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRSB<c><q> <Rt>, <label>`	Normal form
`LDRSB<c><q> <Rt>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Alternative form

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `ADR` instruction to this label. Permitted values of the offset are -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SB` is equivalent to `LDRSB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    R[t] = SignExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

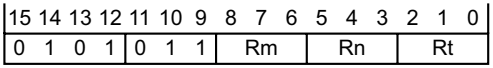
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.60 LDRSB (register)

Load Register Signed Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a byte from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

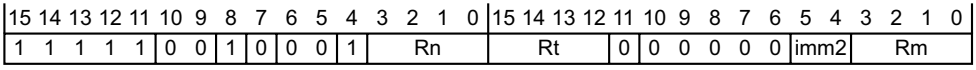
```
LDRSB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSB<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE PLI;
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSB<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.
`<shift>`	Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SB` is equivalent to `LDRSB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = SignExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

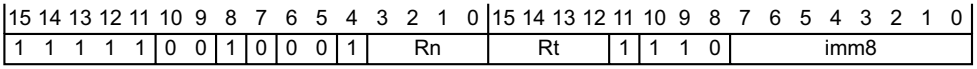
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.61 LDRSBT

Load Register Signed Byte Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an LDRSBT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSBT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSB (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSBT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<imm>`	Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    R[t] = SignExtend(MemU_unpriv[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

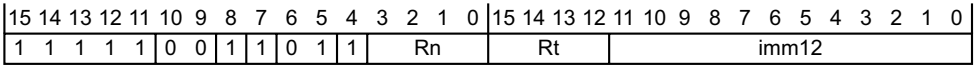
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.62 LDRSH (immediate)

Load Register Signed Halfword (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

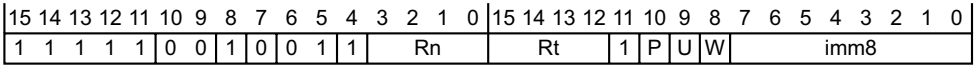
```
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSH (literal);
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSH (literal);
if Rt == '1111' && P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE LDRSHT;
if P == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t == 13 || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 15 && (P == '0' || U == '1' || W == '1') || then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`LDRSH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`LDRSH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`LDRSH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP. If this register is the PC, see *LDRSH (literal)* on page A7-327.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-4095 for encoding T1, and 0-255 for encoding T2. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SH` is equivalent to `LDRSH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = SignExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

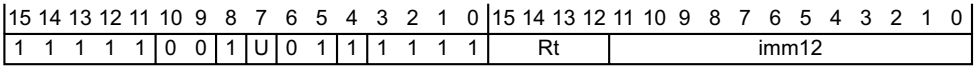
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.63 LDRSH (literal)

Load Register Signed Halfword (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,<label>
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[PC,#-0]                                   Special case
```




```
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSH<c><q>  <Rt>, <label>                    Normal form
LDRSH<c><q>  <Rt>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]            Alternative form
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the `PC` value of the `ADR` instruction to this label. Permitted values of the offset are -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SH` is equivalent to `LDRSH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    data = MemU[address,2];
    R[t] = SignExtend(data, 32);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Unallocated memory hints

If the Rt field is '1111' in encoding T1, the instruction is an unallocated memory hint.

Unallocated memory hints must be implemented as NOPs. Software must not use them, and they therefore have no UAL assembler syntax.

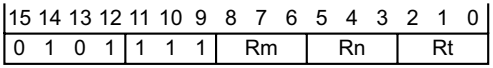
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.64 LDRSH (register)

Load Register Signed Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a halfword from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

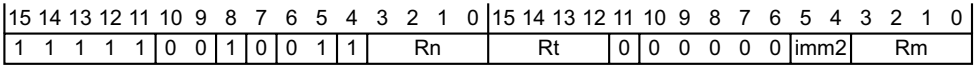
```
LDRSH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSH<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSH (literal);
if Rt == '1111' then SEE "Unallocated memory hints";
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSH<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.
`<shift>`	Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SH` is equivalent to `LDRSH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = SignExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

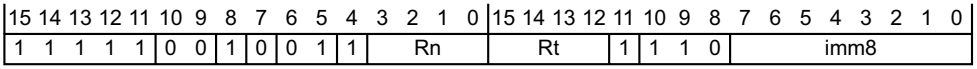
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.65 LDRSHT

Load Register Signed Halfword Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an LDRSHT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRSHT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDRSH (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSHT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rm>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `LDR<c>SH` is equivalent to `LDRSH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    data = MemU_unpriv[address,2];
    R[t] = SignExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

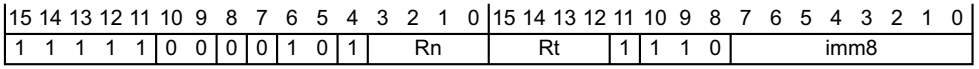
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.66 LDRT

Load Register Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an LDRT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
LDRT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE LDR (literal);
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rt> Specifies the destination register.

<Rn> Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

<imm> Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of <Rn> to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. <imm> can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax LDR<c>T is equivalent to LDRT<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    data = MemU_unpriv[address,4];
    R[t] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

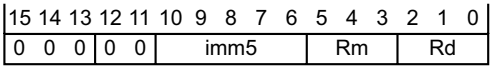
A7.7.67 LSL (immediate)

Logical Shift Left (immediate) shifts a register value left by an immediate number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LSLS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>` Outside IT block.

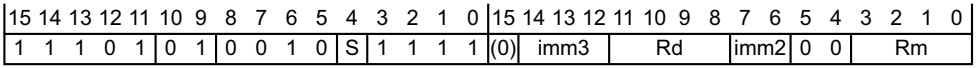
`LSL<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>` Inside IT block.




```
if imm5 == '00000' then SEE MOV (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('00', imm5);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`LSL{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>`




```
if (imm3:imm2) == '00000' then SEE MOV (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('00', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LSL{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

`S`	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rm>`	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
`<imm5>`	Specifies the shift amount, in the range 0 to 31. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_LSL, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

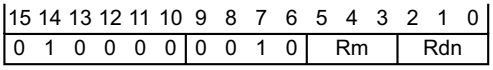
A7.7.68 LSL (register)

Logical Shift Left (register) shifts a register value left by a variable number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LSLS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

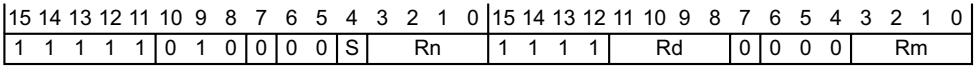
`LSL<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LSL{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LSL{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_LSL, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

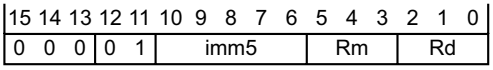
A7.7.69 LSR (immediate)

Logical Shift Right (immediate) shifts a register value right by an immediate number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LSRS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>` Outside IT block.

`LSR<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>` Inside IT block.

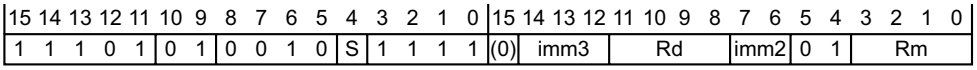


[

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('01', imm5);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`LSR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('01', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LSR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

`S`	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rm>`	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
`<imm5>`	Specifies the shift amount, in the range 1 to 32. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_LSR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

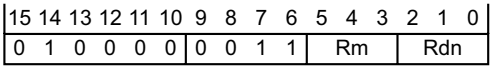
A7.7.70 LSR (register)

Logical Shift Right (register) shifts a register value right by a variable number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LSRS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

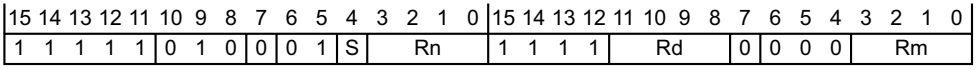
`LSR<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
LSR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
LSR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_LSR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

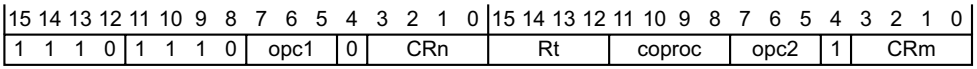
A7.7.71 MCR, MCR2

Move to Coprocessor from ARM Register passes the value of an ARM register to a coprocessor.

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

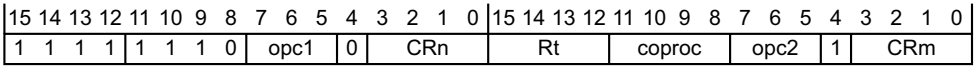
```
MCR<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<CRn>,<CRm>{,<opc2>}
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
MCR2<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<CRn>,<CRm>{,<opc2>}
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MCR{2}<c><q>  <coproc>, #<opc1>, <Rt>, <CRn>, <CRm>{, #<opc2>}
```

where:

2	If specified, selects the C == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the C == 0 form.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<coproc>	Specifies the name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.
<opc1>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 7.
<Rt>	Is the ARM register whose value is transferred to the coprocessor.
<CRn>	Is the destination coprocessor register.
<CRm>	Is an additional destination coprocessor register.
<opc2>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0-7. If it is omitted, <opc2> is assumed to be 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        Coproc_SendOneWord(R[t], cp, ThisInstr());
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

Notes

Coprocessor fields Only instruction bits<31:24>, bit<20>, bits<15:8>, and bit<4> are defined by the ARM architecture. The remaining fields are recommendations.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

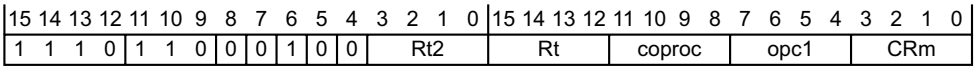
A7.7.72 MCRR, MCRR2

Move to Coprocessor from two ARM Registers passes the values of two ARM registers to a coprocessor.

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

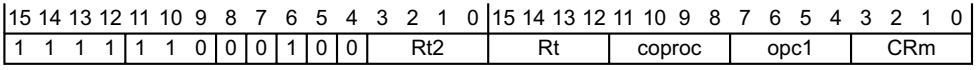
```
MCRR<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<Rt2>,<CRm>
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
MCRR2<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<Rt2>,<CRm>
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MCRR{2}<c><q>  <coproc>, #<opc1>, <Rt>, <Rt2>, <CRm>
```

where:

`2`	If specified, selects the C ==1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the C == 0 form.
`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<coproc>`	Specifies the name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.
`<opc1>`	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 15.
`<Rt>`	Is the first ARM register whose value is transferred to the coprocessor.
`<Rt2>`	Is the second ARM register whose value is transferred to the coprocessor.
`<CRm>`	Is the destination coprocessor register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        Coproc_SendTwoWords(R[t], R[t2], cp, ThisInstr());
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

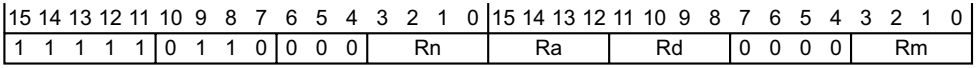
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.73 MLA

Multiply Accumulate multiplies two register values, and adds a third register value. The least significant 32 bits of the result are written to the destination register. These 32 bits do not depend on whether signed or unsigned calculations are performed.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MLA<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE MUL;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);  setflags = FALSE;
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MLA<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

`<Ra>` Specifies the register containing the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = SInt(R[n]);  // operand1 = UInt(R[n]) produces the same final results
    operand2 = SInt(R[m]);  // operand2 = UInt(R[m]) produces the same final results
    addend   = SInt(R[a]);  // addend   = UInt(R[a]) produces the same final results
    result = operand1 * operand2 + addend;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        // APSR.C unchanged
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

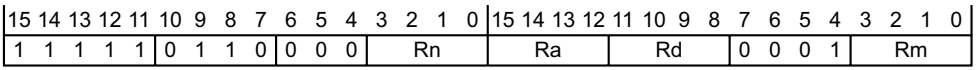
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.74 MLS

Multiply and Subtract multiplies two register values, and subtracts the least significant 32 bits of the result from a third register value. These 32 bits do not depend on whether signed or unsigned calculations are performed. The result is written to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MLS<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MLS<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> Specifies the destination register.

<Rn> Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

<Ra> Specifies the register containing the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = SInt(R[n]);  // operand1 = UInt(R[n]) produces the same final results
    operand2 = SInt(R[m]);  // operand2 = UInt(R[m]) produces the same final results
    addend   = SInt(R[a]);  // addend   = UInt(R[a]) produces the same final results
    result = addend - operand1 * operand2;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

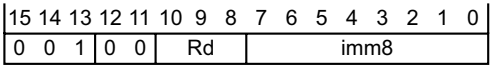
A7.7.75 MOV (immediate)

Move (immediate) writes an immediate value to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the value.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`MOVS <Rd>,#<imm8>` Outside IT block.

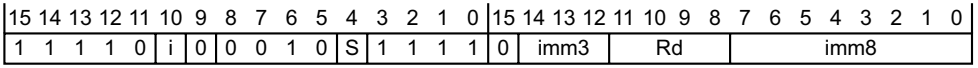
`MOV<c> <Rd>,#<imm8>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);  carry = APSR.C;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

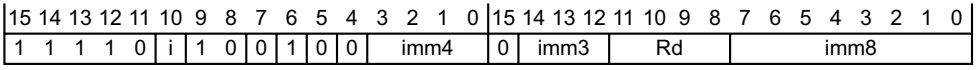
`MOV{S}<c>.W <Rd>,#<const>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = (S == '1');  (imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

`MOVW<c> <Rd>,#<imm16>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm4:i:imm3:imm8, 32);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`MOV{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, #<const>`	All encodings permitted
`MOVW<c><q>  <Rd>, #<const>`	Only encoding T3 permitted

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be placed in `<Rd>`. The range of allowed values is 0-255 for encoding T1 and 0-65535 for encoding T3. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T2.

When both 32-bit encodings are available for an instruction, encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T3 (if encoding T3 is required, use the `MOVW` syntax).

The pre-UAL syntax `MOV<c>S` is equivalent to `MOVS<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = imm32;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.76 MOV (register)

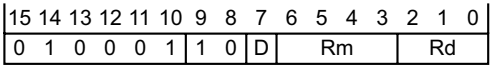
Move (register) copies a value from a register to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

If <Rd> and <Rm> both from R0-R7, otherwise all versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
MOV<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```

If <Rd> is the PC, must be outside or last in IT block

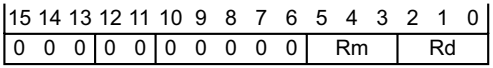



```
d = UInt(D:Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if d == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>
```

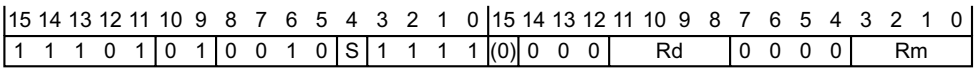
Not permitted inside IT block




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = TRUE;
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
MOV{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if setflags && (d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15}) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if !setflags && (d == 15 || m == 15 || (d == 13 && m == 13)) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MOV{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register. This register can be the SP or PC, provided S is not specified. If <Rd> is the PC, then only encoding T1 is permitted, and the instruction causes a branch to the address moved to the PC. The instruction must either be outside an IT block or the last instruction of an IT block.
<Rm>	The source register. This register can be the SP or PC.The instruction must not specify S if <Rm> is the SP or PC.

Encoding T3 is not permitted if either:

- <Rd> or <Rm> is the PC
- both <Rd> and <Rm> are the SP.

Note

ARM deprecates the use of the following MOV (register) instructions:

- ones in which <Rd> is the SP or PC and <Rm> is also the SP or PC is deprecated.
- ones in which S is specified and <Rm> is the SP, or <Rm> is the PC.

The pre-UAL syntax MOV<c>S is equivalent to MOVS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[m];
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);  // setflags is always FALSE here
    else
        R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            // APSR.C unchanged
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.77 MOV (shifted register)

Move (shifted register) is a synonym for ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR, and RRX.

See the following sections for details:

- *ASR (immediate)* on page A7-235
- *ASR (register)* on page A7-237
- *LSL (immediate)* on page A7-333
- *LSL (register)* on page A7-335
- *LSR (immediate)* on page A7-337
- *LSR (register)* on page A7-339
- *ROR (immediate)* on page A7-405
- *ROR (register)* on page A7-407
- *RRX* on page A7-409.

Assembler syntax

Table A7-4 shows the equivalences between MOV (shifted register) and other instructions.

Table A7-4 MOV (shift, register shift) equivalences)

MOV instruction	Canonical form
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,ASR #<n>	ASR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,LSL #<n>	LSL{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,LSR #<n>	LSR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,ROR #<n>	ROR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,ASR <Rs>	ASR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,LSL <Rs>	LSL{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,LSR <Rs>	LSR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,ROR <Rs>	ROR{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOV{S} <Rd>,<Rm>,RRX	RRX{S} <Rd>,<Rm>

The canonical form of the instruction is produced on disassembly.

Exceptions

None.

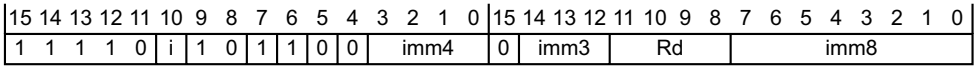
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.78 MOVT

Move Top writes an immediate value to the top halfword of the destination register. It does not affect the contents of the bottom halfword.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MOVT<c> <Rd>,#<imm16>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  imm16 = imm4:i:imm3:imm8;
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MOVT<c><q>  <Rd>, #<imm16>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> Specifies the destination register.

<imm16> Specifies the immediate value to be written to <Rd>. It must be in the range 0-65535.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    R[d]<31:16> = imm16;
    // R[d]<15:0> unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.79 MRC, MRC2

Move to ARM Register from Coprocessor causes a coprocessor to transfer a value to an ARM register or to the condition flags.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MRC<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<CRn>,<CRm>{,<opc2>}
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	opc1			1	CRn				Rt				coproc				opc2			1	CRm			

```
t = UInt(Rt);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
MRC2<c> <coproc>,<opc1>,<Rt>,<CRn>,<CRm>{,<opc2>}
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	opc1			1	CRn				Rt				coproc				opc2			1	CRm			

```
t = UInt(Rt);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MRC{2}<c><q>  <coproc>, #<opc1>, <Rt>, <CRn>, <CRm>{, #<opc2>}
```

where:

2	If specified, selects the C == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the C == 0 form.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<coproc>	Specifies the name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.
<opc1>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 7.
<Rt>	Is the destination ARM register. This register is allowed to be R0-R14 or APSR_nzcv. The last form writes bits<31:28> of the transferred value to the N, Z, C and V condition flags and is specified by setting the Rt field of the encoding to 0b1111. In pre-UAL assembler syntax, PC was written instead of APSR_nzcv to select this form.
<CRn>	Is the coprocessor register that contains the first operand.
<CRm>	Is an additional source or destination coprocessor register.
<opc2>	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 7. If it is omitted, <opc2> is assumed to be 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        value = Coproc_GetOneWord(cp, ThisInstr());
        if t != 15 then
            R[t] = value;
        else
            APSR.N = value<31>;
            APSR.Z = value<30>;
            APSR.C = value<29>;
            APSR.V = value<28>;
            // value<27:0> are not used.
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

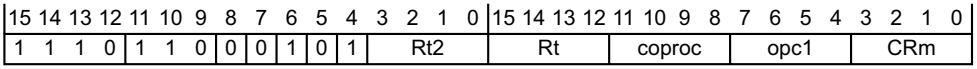
A7.7.80 MRRC, MRRC2

Move to two ARM Registers from Coprocessor causes a coprocessor to transfer values to two ARM registers.

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MRRC<c> <coproc>,<opc>,<Rt>,<Rt2>,<CRm>
```

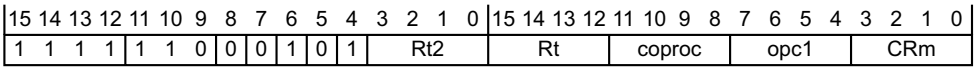


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Rt2				Rt				coproc				opc1				CRm			

```
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 || t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
MRRC2<c> <coproc>,<opc>,<Rt>,<Rt2>,<CRm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	Rt2				Rt				coproc				opc1				CRm			

```
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  cp = UInt(coproc);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 || t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MRRC{2}<c><q>  <coproc>, #<opc1>, <Rt>, <Rt2>, <CRm>
```

where:

`2`	If specified, selects the C == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the C == 0 form.
`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<coproc>`	Specifies the name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0-p15.
`<opc1>`	Is a coprocessor-specific opcode in the range 0 to 15.
`<Rt>`	Is the first destination ARM register.
`<Rt2>`	Is the second destination ARM register.
`<CRm>`	Is the coprocessor register that supplies the data to be transferred.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        (R[t], R[t2]) = Coproc_GetTwoWords(cp, ThisInstr());
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

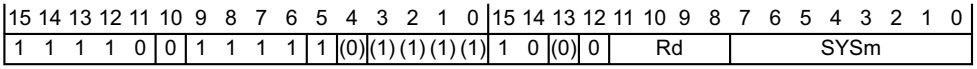
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.81 MRS

Move to Register from Special register moves the value from the selected special-purpose register into a general-purpose ARM register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M.

```
MRS<c> <Rd>,<spec_reg>
```



`MRS` is a system level instruction except when accessing the APSR or CONTROL register. See *MRS* on page B5-803 for the complete description of the instruction, including its application-level uses.

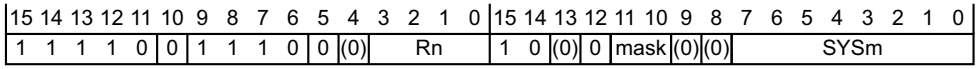
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.82 MSR

Move to Special Register from ARM Register moves the value of a general-purpose ARM register to the specified special-purpose register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M.

```
MSR<c> <spec_reg>,<Rn>
```



`MSR` is a system level instruction except when accessing the APSR. See *MSR* on page B5-805 for the complete description of the instruction, including its application-level uses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.83 MUL

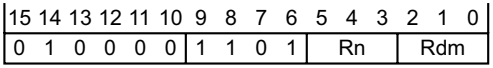
Multiply multiplies two register values. The least significant 32 bits of the result are written to the destination register. These 32 bits do not depend on whether signed or unsigned calculations are performed.

It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result. This option is limited to only a few forms of the instruction in the Thumb instruction set, and use of it will adversely affect performance on many processor implementations.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`MULS <Rdm>,<Rn>,<Rdm>` Outside IT block.

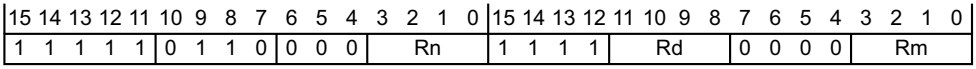
`MUL<c> <Rdm>,<Rn>,<Rdm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdm);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rdm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`MUL<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MUL{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = SInt(R[n]);  // operand1 = UInt(R[n]) produces the same final results
    operand2 = SInt(R[m]);  // operand2 = UInt(R[m]) produces the same final results
    result = operand1 * operand2;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        // APSR.C unchanged
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

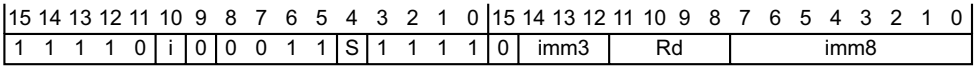
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.84 MVN (immediate)

Bitwise NOT (immediate) writes the bitwise inverse of an immediate value to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
MVN{S}<c> <Rd>,#<const>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MVN{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax MVN<c>S is equivalent to MVNS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = NOT(imm32);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

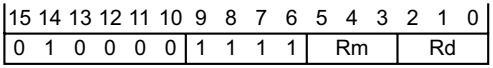
A7.7.85 MVN (register)

Bitwise NOT (register) writes the bitwise inverse of a register value to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`MVNS <Rd>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

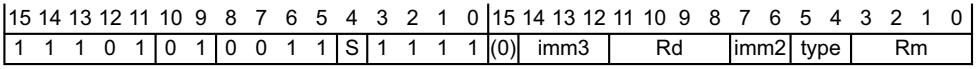
`MVN<c> <Rd>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`MVN{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>{,shift>}`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
MVN{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm> {, <shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the source register.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

The pre-UAL syntax MVN<c>S is equivalent to MVNS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = NOT(shifted);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.86 NEG

Negate is a pre-UAL synonym for RSB (immediate) with an immediate value of 0. See *RSB (immediate)* on page A7-411 for details.

Assembler syntax

```
NEG<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rm>
```

This is equivalent to:

```
RSBS<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, #0
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

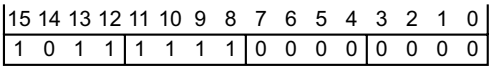
A7.7.87 NOP

No Operation does nothing.

This is a NOP-compatible hint, the architected NOP, see *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
NOP<c>
```

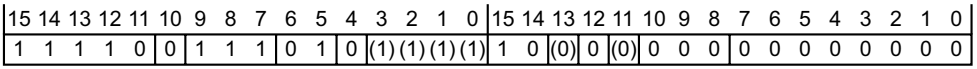


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
NOP<c>.W
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
NOP<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    // Do nothing
```

Exceptions

None.

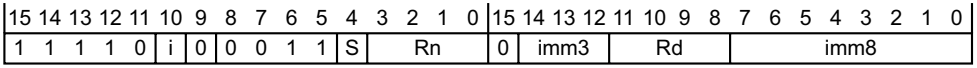
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.88 ORN (immediate)

Logical OR NOT (immediate) performs a bitwise (inclusive) OR of a register value and the complement of an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
ORN{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE MVN (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ORN{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] OR NOT(imm32);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

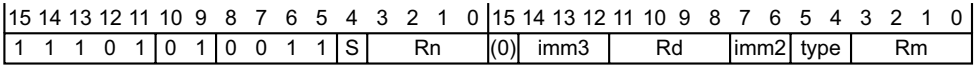
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.89 ORN (register)

Logical OR NOT (register) performs a bitwise (inclusive) OR of a register value and the complement of an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
ORN{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE MVN (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ORN{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] OR NOT(shifted);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

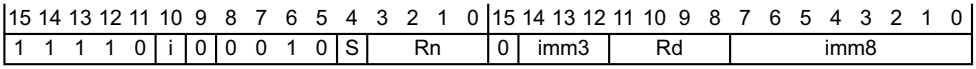
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.90 ORR (immediate)

Logical OR (immediate) performs a bitwise (inclusive) OR of a register value and an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
ORR{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE MOV (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ORR{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax ORR<c>S is equivalent to ORRS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] OR imm32;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

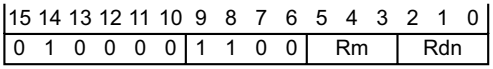
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.91 ORR (register)

Logical OR (register) performs a bitwise (inclusive) OR of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

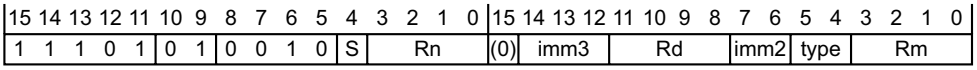
```
ORRS   <Rdn>,<Rm>          Outside IT block.
ORR<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>          Inside IT block.
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
ORR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE MOV (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ORR{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

A special case is that if ORR<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rd> is written with <Rd> and <Rn> both in the range R0-R7, it will be assembled using encoding T2 as though ORR<c> <Rd>,<Rn> had been written. To prevent this happening, use the .W qualifier.

The pre-UAL syntax ORR<c>S is equivalent to ORRS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] OR shifted;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

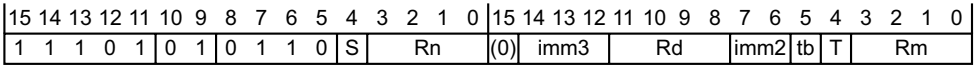
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.92 PKHBT, PKHTB

A Pack Halfword instruction combines one halfword of its first operand with the other halfword of its shifted second operand.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
PKHBT<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm>}
PKHTB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,ASR #<imm>}
```




```
if S == '1' || T == '1' then UNDEFINED;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  tbform = (tb == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(tb:'0', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
PKHBT{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<imm>}          tb == 0
PKHTB{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, ASR #<imm>}          tb == 1
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

`<imm>` The shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`, encoded in imm3:imm2.

For `PKHBT`, it is one of:

omitted No shift, encoded as `0b00000`

1-31 Left shift by specified number of bits, encoded as a binary number.

For `PKHTB`, it is one of:

omitted Instruction is a pseudo-instruction and is assembled as though `PKHBT{<c>}{<q>} <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rn>` had been written

1-32 Arithmetic right shift by specified number of bits. A shift by 32 bits is encoded as `0b00000`. Other shift amounts are encoded as binary numbers.

Note

An assembler can permit `<imm>` = 0 to mean the same thing as omitting the shift, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);  // APSR.C ignored
    R[d]<15:0>  = if tbform then operand2<15:0> else R[n]<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = if tbform then R[n]<31:16>    else operand2<31:16>;
```

Exceptions

None.

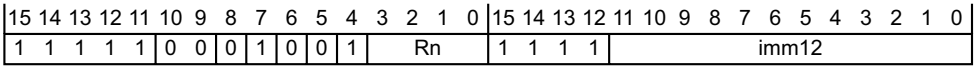
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.93 PLD (immediate)

Preload Data signals the memory system that data memory accesses from a specified address are likely in the near future. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses when they do occur, such as pre-loading the cache line containing the specified address into the data cache. See *Preloading caches* on page A3-121 and *Memory hints* on page A7-215 for additional information.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

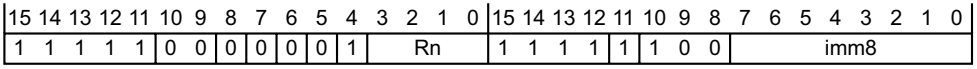
```
PLD<c> [<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE PLD (literal);
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
PLD<c> [<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE PLD (literal);
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);  add = FALSE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
PLD<c><q>  [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used. For PC use in the `PLD` instruction, see *PLD (literal)* on page A7-379.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` The immediate offset used to form the address. This offset can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0. Values are:

Encoding T1 any value in the range 0-4095

Encoding T2 any value in the range 0-255.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    Hint_PreloadData(address);
```

Exceptions

None.

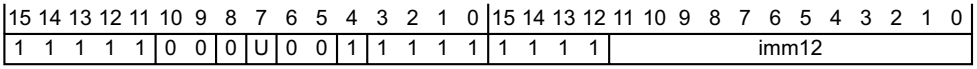
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.94 PLD (literal)

Preload Data signals the memory system that data memory accesses from a specified address are likely in the near future. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses when they do occur, such as pre-loading the cache line containing the specified address into the data cache. See *Preloading caches* on page A3-121 and *Memory hints* on page A7-215 for additional information.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
PLD<c> <label>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`PLD<c><q> <label>`	Normal form
`PLD<c><q> [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Alternative form

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<label>` The label of the literal item that is likely to be accessed in the near future. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label. The offset must be in the range -4095 to 4095.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` The immediate offset used to form the address. Values are in the range 0-4095.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = if add then (Align(PC,4) + imm32) else (Align(PC,4) - imm32);
    Hint_PreloadData(address);
```

Exceptions

None.

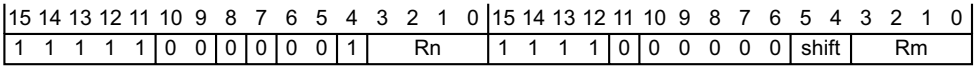
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.95 PLD (register)

Preload Data is a memory hint instruction that can signal the memory system that data memory accesses from a specified address are likely in the near future. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses when they do occur, such as pre-loading the cache line containing the specified address into the data cache. See *Preloading caches* on page A3-121 and *Memory hints* on page A7-215 for additional information.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
PLD<c> [<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE PLD (literal);
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  add = TRUE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
PLD<c><q>  [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Is the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rm>` Is the optionally shifted offset register.

`<shift>` Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    Hint_PreloadData(address);
```

Exceptions

None.

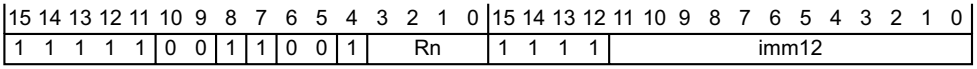
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.96 PLI (immediate, literal)

Preload Instruction is a memory hint instruction that can signal the memory system that instruction memory accesses from a specified address are likely in the near future. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses when they do occur, such as pre-loading the cache line containing the specified address into the instruction cache. See *Preloading caches* on page A3-121 and *Memory hints* on page A7-215 for additional information.

Encoding T1 ARMv7

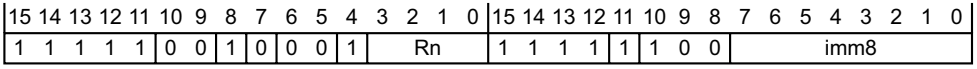
```
PLI<c> [<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE encoding T3;
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7

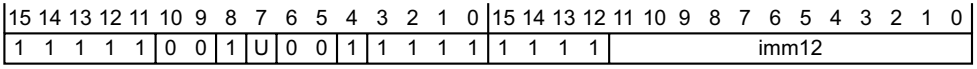
```
PLI<c> [<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE encoding T3;
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);  add = FALSE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7

```
PLI<c> <label>
```




```
n = 15;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);  add = (U == '1');
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
PLI<c><q>  [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]
PLI<c><q>  [PC, #+/-<imm>]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Is the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the offset from the base register. It must be in the range:

- –4095 to 4095 if the base register is the PC
- –255 to 4095 otherwise.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = if n == 15 then Align(PC,4) else R[n];
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    Hint_PreloadInstr(address);
```

Exceptions

None.

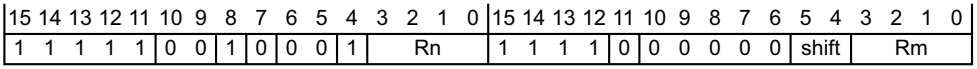
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.97 PLI (register)

Preload Instruction is a memory hint instruction that can signal the memory system that instruction memory accesses from a specified address are likely in the near future. The memory system can respond by taking actions that are expected to speed up the memory accesses when they do occur, such as pre-loading the cache line containing the specified address into the instruction cache. For more information see *Preloading caches* on page A3-121 and *Memory hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv7

```
PLI<c> [<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE PLI (immediate, literal);
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  add = TRUE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
PLI<c><q>  [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rn>`	Is the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Is the optionally shifted offset register.
`<shift>`	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    Hint_PreloadInstr(address);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

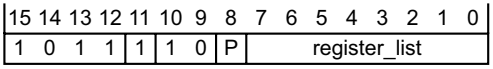
A7.7.98 POP

Pop Multiple Registers loads a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers R0-R12 and the PC or the LR from the stack.

If the registers loaded include the PC, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value. Bit<0> complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit<0> is 0, a UsageFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
POP<c> <registers>
```

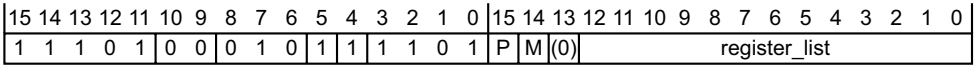



```
registers = P:'0000000':register_list;  if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
POP<c>.W <registers>
```

`<registers>` contains more than one register

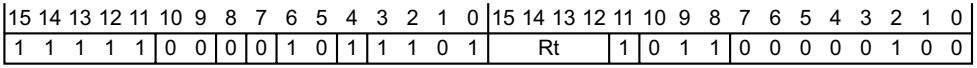



```
registers = P:M:'0':register_list;
if BitCount(registers) < 2 || (P == '1' && M == '1') then UNPREDICTABLE;
if registers<15> == '1' && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
POP<c>.W <registers>
```

`<registers>` contains one register, `<Rt>`




```
t = UInt(Rt);  registers = Zeros(16);  registers<t> = '1';
if t == 13 || (t == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock()) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`POP<c><q>  <registers>`	Standard syntax
`LDMIA<c><q>  SP!, <registers>`	Equivalent `LDM` syntax

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. It specifies the set of registers to be loaded. The registers are loaded in sequence, the lowest-numbered register from the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register from the highest memory address. If the PC is specified in the register list, the instruction causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

If the list contains more than one register, the instruction is assembled to encoding T1 or T2. If the list contains exactly one register, the instruction is assembled to encoding T1 or T3.

The SP cannot be in the list.

If the PC is in the list, the LR must not be in the list.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = SP;

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            R[i} = MemA[address,4];  address = address + 4;
    if registers<15> == '1' then
        LoadWritePC(MemA[address,4]);

    SP = SP + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

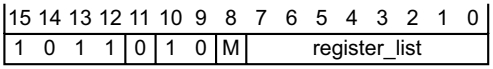
A7.7.99 PUSH

Push Multiple Registers stores a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers R0-R12 and the LR to the stack.

Encoding T1

All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
PUSH<c> <registers>
```



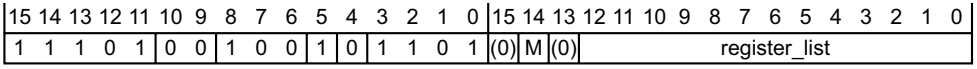

```
registers = '0':M:'000000':register_list;
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2

ARMv7-M

```
PUSH<c>.W <registers>
```

<registers> contains more than one register



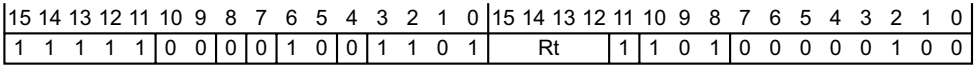

```
registers = '0':M:'0':register_list;
if BitCount(registers) < 2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3

ARMv7-M

```
PUSH<c>.W <registers>
```

<registers> contains one register, <Rt>




```
t = UInt(Rt);  registers = Zeros(16);  registers<t> = '1';
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`PUSH<c><q>  <registers>`	Standard syntax
`STMDB<c><q>  SP!, <registers>`	Equivalent `STM` syntax

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<registers>` Is a list of one or more registers, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. It specifies the set of registers to be stored. The registers are stored in sequence, the lowest-numbered register to the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register to the highest memory address.

If the list contains more than one register, the instruction is assembled to encoding T1 or T2. If the list contains exactly one register, the instruction is assembled to encoding T1 or T3.

The SP and PC cannot be in the list.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = SP - 4*BitCount(registers);

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            MemA[address,4] = R[i];
            address = address + 4;

    SP = SP - 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

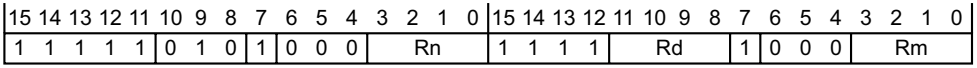
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.100 QADD

Saturating Add adds two register values, saturates the result to the 32-bit signed integer range $-2^{31} \le x \le 2^{31} - 1$, and writes the result to the destination register. If saturation occurs, it sets the Q flag in the APSR.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QADD<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rn>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QADD{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The first operand register.

`<Rn>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (R[d], sat) = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[m]) + SInt(R[n]), 32);
    if sat then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

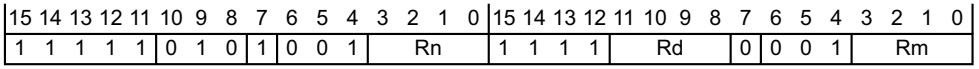
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.101 QADD16

Saturating Add 16 performs two 16-bit integer additions, saturates the results to the 16-bit signed integer range $-2^{15} \le x \le 2^{15} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = SignedSat(sum1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignedSat(sum2, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

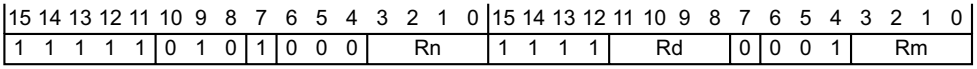
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.102 QADD8

Saturating Add 8 performs four 8-bit integer additions, saturates the results to the 8-bit signed integer range $-2^7 \le x \le 2^7 - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) + SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) + SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) + SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) + SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = SignedSat(sum1, 8);
    R[d]<15:8>  = SignedSat(sum2, 8);
    R[d]<23:16> = SignedSat(sum3, 8);
    R[d]<31:24> = SignedSat(sum4, 8);
```

Exceptions

None.

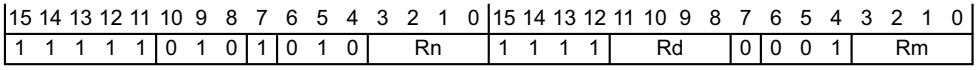
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.103 QASX

Saturating Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one 16-bit integer addition and one 16-bit subtraction, saturates the results to the 16-bit signed integer range $-2^{15} \le x \le 2^{15} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `QADDSUBX<c>` is equivalent to `QASX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = SignedSat(diff, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignedSat(sum, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

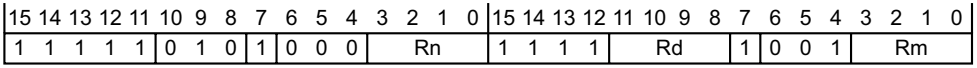
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.104 QDADD

Saturating Double and Add adds a doubled register value to another register value, and writes the result to the destination register. Both the doubling and the addition have their results saturated to the 32-bit signed integer range $-2^{31} \le x \le 2^{31} - 1$. If saturation occurs in either operation, it sets the Q flag in the APSR.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QDADD<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rn>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	Rn				1	1	1	1	Rd				1	0	0	1	Rm			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QDADD{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rm>`	The first operand register.
`<Rn>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (doubled, sat1) = SignedSatQ(2 * SInt(R[n]), 32);
    (R[d], sat2)  = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[m]) + SInt(doubled), 32);
    if sat1 || sat2 then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

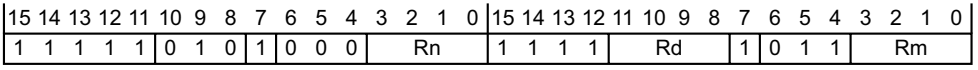
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.105 QDSUB

Saturating Double and Subtract subtracts a doubled register value from another register value, and writes the result to the destination register. Both the doubling and the subtraction have their results saturated to the 32-bit signed integer range $-2^{31} \le x \le 2^{31} - 1$. If saturation occurs in either operation, it sets the Q flag in the APSR.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QDSUB<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rn>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QDSUB{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rm>`	The first operand register.
`<Rn>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (doubled, sat1) = SignedSatQ(2 * SInt(R[n]), 32);
    (R[d], sat2)  = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[m]) - SInt(doubled), 32);
    if sat1 || sat2 then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

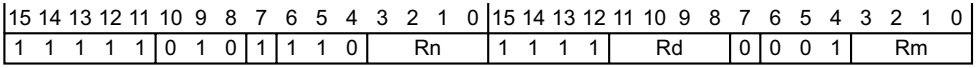
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.106 QSAX

Saturating Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one 16-bit integer subtraction and one 16-bit addition, saturates the results to the 16-bit signed integer range $-2^{15} \le x \le 2^{15} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QSAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QSAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `QSUBADDX<c>` is equivalent to `QSAX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = SignedSat(sum, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignedSat(diff, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

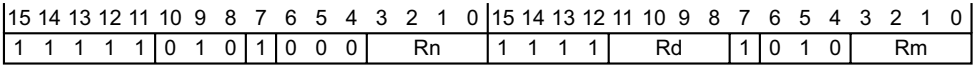
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.107 QSUB

Saturating Subtract subtracts one register value from another register value, saturates the result to the 32-bit signed integer range $-2^{31} \le x \le 2^{31} - 1$, and writes the result to the destination register. If saturation occurs, it sets the Q flag in the APSR.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QSUB<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rn>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QSUB{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rm>`	The first operand register.
`<Rn>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (R[d], sat) = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[m]) - SInt(R[n]), 32);
    if sat then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

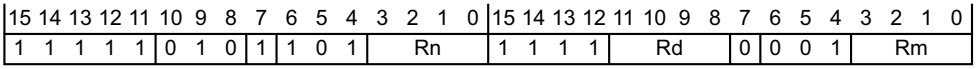
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.108 QSUB16

Saturating Subtract 16 performs two 16-bit integer subtractions, saturates the results to the 16-bit signed integer range $-2^{15} \le x \le 2^{15} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QSUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QSUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = SignedSat(diff1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignedSat(diff2, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

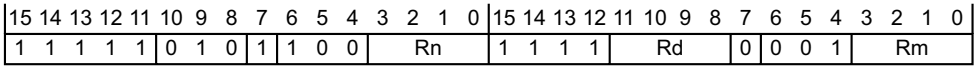
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.109 QSUB8

Saturating Subtract 8 performs four 8-bit integer subtractions, saturates the results to the 8-bit signed integer range $-2^7 \le x \le 2^7 - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
QSUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
QSUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) - SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) - SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) - SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) - SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = SignedSat(diff1, 8);
    R[d]<15:8>  = SignedSat(diff2, 8);
    R[d]<23:16> = SignedSat(diff3, 8);
    R[d]<31:24> = SignedSat(diff4, 8);
```

Exceptions

None.

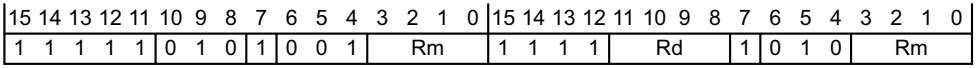
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.110 RBIT

Reverse Bits reverses the bit order in a 32-bit register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
RBIT<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Rm				1	1	1	1	Rd				1	0	1	0	Rm			

```
if !Consistent(Rm) then UNPREDICTABLE;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
RBIT<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> Specifies the destination register.

<Rm> Specifies the register that contains the operand. Its number must be encoded twice in encoding T1, in both the Rm and Rm2 fields.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    for i = 0 to 31 do
        result<31-i> = R[m]<i>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.111 REV

Byte-Reverse Word reverses the byte order in a 32-bit register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
REV<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
REV<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	Rm				1	1	1	1	Rd				1	0	0	0	Rm			

```
if !Consistent(Rm) then UNPREDICTABLE;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
REV<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the operand. Its number must be encoded twice in encoding T2, in both the Rm and Rm2 fields.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:24> = R[m]<7:0>;
    result<23:16> = R[m]<15:8>;
    result<15:8>  = R[m]<23:16>;
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<31:24>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

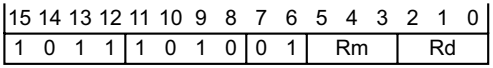
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.112 REV16

Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword reverses the byte order in each 16-bit halfword of a 32-bit register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

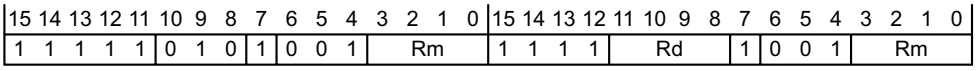
```
REV16<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
REV16<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
if !Consistent(Rm) then UNPREDICTABLE;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
REV16<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> Specifies the destination register.

<Rm> Specifies the register that contains the operand. Its number must be encoded twice in encoding T2, in both the Rm and Rm2 fields.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:24> = R[m]<23:16>;
    result<23:16> = R[m]<31:24>;
    result<15:8>  = R[m]<7:0>;
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<15:8>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

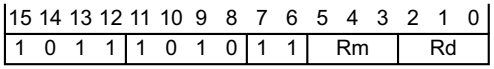
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.113 REVSH

Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword reverses the byte order in the lower 16-bit halfword of a 32-bit register, and sign extends the result to 32 bits.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

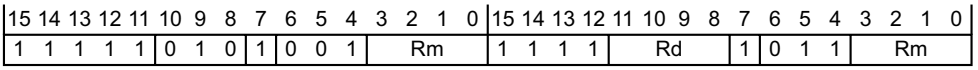
```
REVSH<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
REVSH<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
if !Consistent(Rm) then UNPREDICTABLE;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
REVSH<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the operand. Its number must be encoded twice in encoding T2, in both the Rm and Rm2 fields.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:8>  = SignExtend(R[m]<7:0>, 24);
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<15:8>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

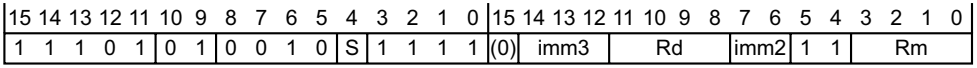
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.114 ROR (immediate)

Rotate Right (immediate) provides the value of the contents of a register rotated by a constant value. The bits that are rotated off the right end are inserted into the vacated bit positions on the left. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
ROR{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>
```




```
if (imm3:imm2) == '00000' then SEE RRX;
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('11', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ROR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<imm5>	Specifies the shift amount, in the range 1 to 31. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_ROR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

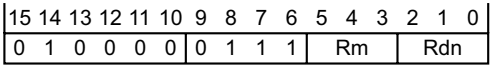
A7.7.115 ROR (register)

Rotate Right (register) provides the value of the contents of a register rotated by a variable number of bits. The bits that are rotated off the right end are inserted into the vacated bit positions on the left. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`RORS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

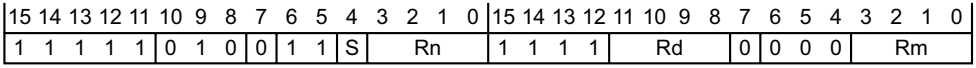
`ROR<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`ROR{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
ROR{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register whose bottom byte contains the amount to rotate by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_ROR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

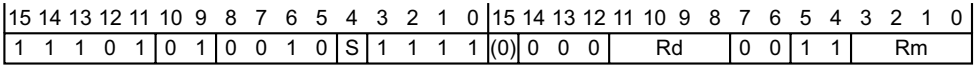
A7.7.116 RRX

Rotate Right with Extend provides the value of the contents of a register shifted right by one place, with the carry flag shifted into bit<31>.

RRX can optionally update the condition flags based on the result. In that case, bit<0> is shifted into the carry flag.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
RRX{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
RRX{S}<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_RRX, 1, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

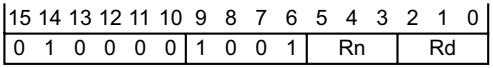
A7.7.117 RSB (immediate)

Reverse Subtract (immediate) subtracts a register value from an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`RSBS <Rd>,<Rn>,#0` Outside IT block.

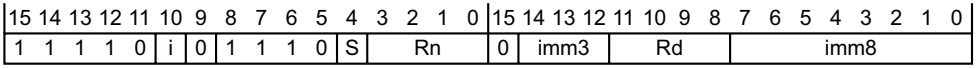
`RSB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#0` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = Zeros(32); // immediate = #0
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`RSB{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
RSB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<const>	Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. The only allowed value for encoding T1 is 0. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T2.

The pre-UAL syntax RSB<c>S is equivalent to RSBS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(NOT(R[n]), imm32, '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

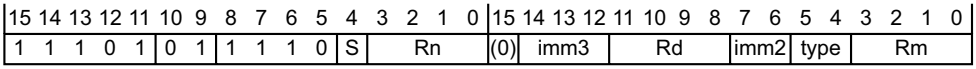
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.118 RSB (register)

Reverse Subtract (register) subtracts a register value from an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
RSB{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
RSB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.
<Rn>	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

The pre-UAL syntax RSB<c>S is equivalent to RSBS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(NOT(R[n]), shifted, '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

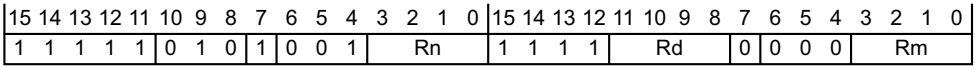
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.119 SADD16

Signed Add 16 performs two 16-bit signed integer additions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the additions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum1<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum2<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if sum1 >= 0 then ‘11’ else ‘00’;
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if sum2 >= 0 then ‘11’ else ‘00’;
```

Exceptions

None.

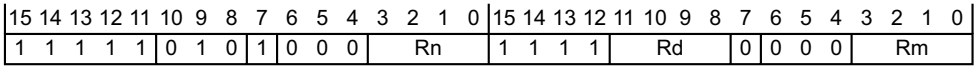
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.120 SADD8

Signed Add 8 performs four 8-bit signed integer additions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the additions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) + SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) + SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) + SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) + SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = sum1<7:0>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = sum2<7:0>;
    R[d]<23:16> = sum3<7:0>;
    R[d]<31:24> = sum4<7:0>;
    APSR.GE<0>  = if sum1 >= 0 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<1>  = if sum2 >= 0 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<2>  = if sum3 >= 0 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<3>  = if sum4 >= 0 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
```

Exceptions

None.

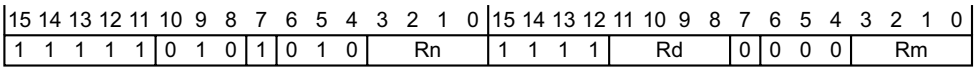
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.121 SASX

Signed Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one 16-bit integer addition and one 16-bit subtraction, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `SADDSUBX<c>` is equivalent to `SASX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if diff >= 0 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if sum  >= 0 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

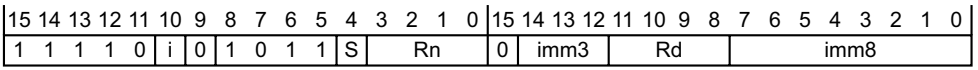
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.122 SBC (immediate)

Subtract with Carry (immediate) subtracts an immediate value and the value of NOT(Carry flag) from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SBC{S}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SBC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<const> — Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from <Rn>. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

The pre-UAL syntax SBC<c>S is equivalent to SBCS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(imm32), APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

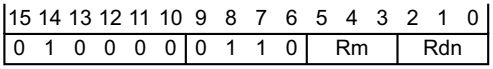
A7.7.123 SBC (register)

Subtract with Carry (register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value and the value of NOT(Carry flag) from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`SBCS <Rdn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

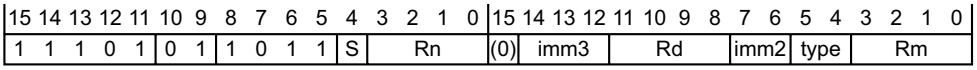
`SBC<c> <Rdn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`SBC{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}`




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SBC{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

The pre-UAL syntax SBC<c>S is equivalent to SBCS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

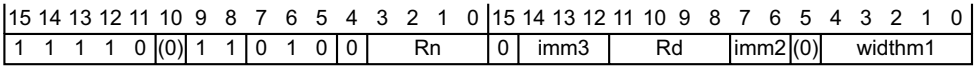
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.124 SBFX

Signed Bit Field Extract extracts any number of adjacent bits at any position from one register, sign extends them to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SBFX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<lsb>,#<width>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);
lsbit = UInt(imm3:imm2);  widthminus1 = UInt(widthm1);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SBFX<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, #<lsb>, #<width>
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	Specifies the destination register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the first operand.
`<lsb>`	is the bit number of the least significant bit in the bitfield, in the range 0-31. This determines the required value of `lsbit`.
`<width>`	is the width of the bitfield, in the range 1 to 32-`<lsb>`. The required value of `widthminus1` is `<width>-1`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    msbit = lsbit + widthminus1;
    if msbit <= 31 then
        R[d] = SignExtend(R[n]<msbit:lsbit>, 32);
    else
        UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Exceptions

None.

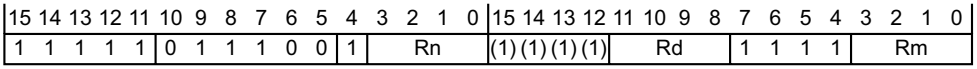
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.125 SDIV

Signed Divide divides a 32-bit signed integer register value by a 32-bit signed integer register value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition code flags are not affected.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SDIV<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SDIV<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the dividend.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the divisor.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if SInt(R[m]) == 0 then
        if IntegerZeroDivideTrappingEnabled() then
            GenerateIntegerZeroDivide();
        else
            result = 0;
    else
        result = RoundTowardsZero(SInt(R[n]) / SInt(R[m]));
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

Notes

Overflow If the signed integer division `0x80000000 / 0xFFFFFFFF` is performed, the pseudocode produces the intermediate integer result $+2^{31}$, that overflows the 32-bit signed integer range. No indication of this overflow case is produced, and the 32-bit result written to `R[d]` is required to be the bottom 32 bits of the binary representation of $+2^{31}$. So the result of the division is `0x80000000`.

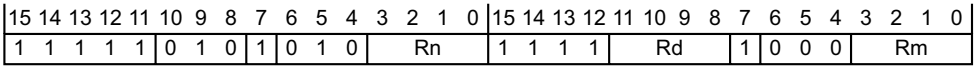
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.126 SEL

Select Bytes selects each byte of its result from either its first operand or its second operand, according to the values of the GE flags.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SEL<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SEL{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    R[d]<7:0>   = if APSR.GE<0> == '1' then R[n]<7:0>   else R[m]<7:0>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = if APSR.GE<1> == '1' then R[n]<15:8>  else R[m]<15:8>;
    R[d]<23:16> = if APSR.GE<2> == '1' then R[n]<23:16> else R[m]<23:16>;
    R[d]<31:24> = if APSR.GE<3> == '1' then R[n]<31:24> else R[m]<31:24>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.127 SEV

Send Event is a hint instruction. It causes an event to be signaled to all CPUs within the multiprocessor system. See *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-681 for more details.

This is a NOP-compatible hint, see *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
SEV<c>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
SEV<c>.W
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
SEV<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    Hint_SendEvent();
```

Exceptions

None.

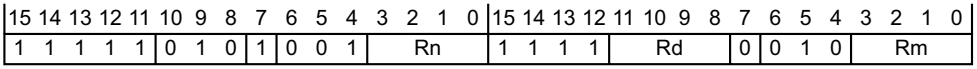
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.128 SHADD16

Signed Halving Add 16 performs two signed 16-bit integer additions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum1<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum2<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

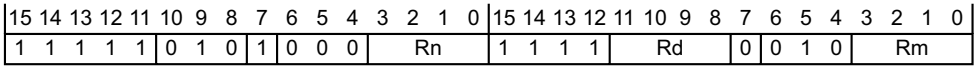
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.129 SHADD8

Signed Halving Add 8 performs four signed 8-bit integer additions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) + SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) + SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) + SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) + SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = sum1<8:1>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = sum2<8:1>;
    R[d]<23:16> = sum3<8:1>;
    R[d]<31:24> = sum4<8:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

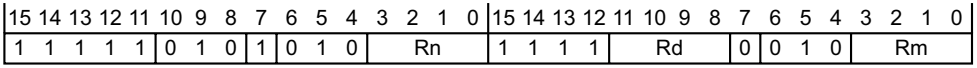
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.130 SHASX

Signed Halving Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one signed 16-bit integer addition and one signed 16-bit subtraction, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `SHADDSUBX<c>` is equivalent to `SHASX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) + SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

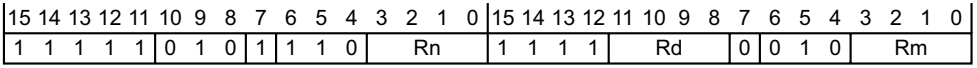
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.131 SHSAX

Signed Halving Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one signed 16-bit integer subtraction and one signed 16-bit addition, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHSAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	Rn				1	1	1	1	Rd				0	0	1	0	Rm			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHSAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `SHSUBADDX<c>` is equivalent to `SHSAX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

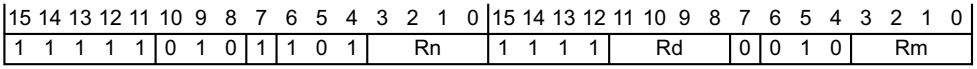
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.132 SHSUB16

Signed Halving Subtract 16 performs two signed 16-bit integer subtractions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHSUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHSUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff1<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff2<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

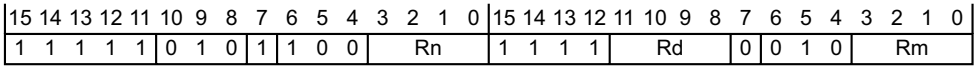
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.133 SHSUB8

Signed Halving Subtract 8 performs four signed 8-bit integer subtractions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SHSUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SHSUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) - SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) - SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) - SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) - SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = diff1<8:1>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = diff2<8:1>;
    R[d]<23:16> = diff3<8:1>;
    R[d]<31:24> = diff4<8:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

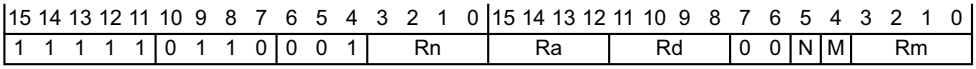
A7.7.134 SMLABB, SMLABT, SMLATB, SMLATT

Signed Multiply Accumulate (halfwords) performs a signed multiply accumulate operation. The multiply acts on two signed 16-bit quantities, taken from either the bottom or the top half of their respective source registers. The other halves of these source registers are ignored. The 32-bit product is added to a 32-bit accumulate value and the result is written to the destination register.

If overflow occurs during the addition of the accumulate value, the instruction sets the Q flag in the APSR. It is not possible for overflow to occur during the multiplication.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLA<x><y><c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE SMULBB, SMULBT, SMULTB, SMULTT;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);
n_high = (N == '1');  m_high = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLA<x><y>{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

`<x>` Specifies which half of the source register `<Rn>` is used as the first multiply operand. If `<x>` is `B`, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of `<Rn>` is used. If `<x>` is `T`, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of `<Rn>` is used.

`<y>` Specifies which half of the source register `<Rm>` is used as the second multiply operand. If `<y>` is `B`, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of `<Rm>` is used. If `<y>` is `T`, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of `<Rm>` is used.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by `<x>`) is the first multiply operand.

`<Rm>` The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by `<y>`) is the second multiply operand.

`<Ra>` The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = if n_high then R[n]<31:16> else R[n]<15:0>;
    operand2 = if m_high then R[m]<31:16> else R[m]<15:0>;
    result = SInt(operand1) * SInt(operand2) + SInt(R[a]);
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if result != SInt(result<31:0>) then  // Signed overflow
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.135 SMLAD, SMLADX

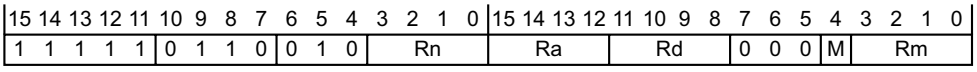
Signed Multiply Accumulate Dual performs two signed 16 x 16-bit multiplications. It adds the products to a 32-bit accumulate operand.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

This instruction sets the Q flag if the accumulate operation overflows. Overflow cannot occur during the multiplications.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLAD{X}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	Rn				Ra					Rd			0	0	0	M	Rm			

```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE SMUAD;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);
m_swap = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLAD{X}{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

X	If X is present (encoded as M == 1), the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted (encoded as M == 0), the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.
<Ra>	The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 + product2 + SInt(R[a]);
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if result != SInt(result<31:0>) then  // Signed overflow
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

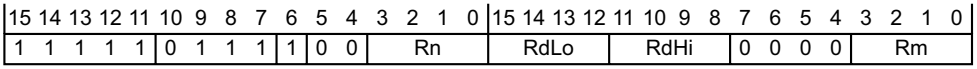
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.136 SMLAL

Signed Multiply Accumulate Long multiplies two signed 32-bit values to produce a 64-bit value, and accumulates this with a 64-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SMLAL<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	Rn				RdLo				RdHi				0	0	0	0	Rm			

```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SMLAL<c><q>  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Supplies the lower 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Supplies the upper 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = SInt(R[n]) * SInt(R[m]) + SInt(R[dHi]:R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

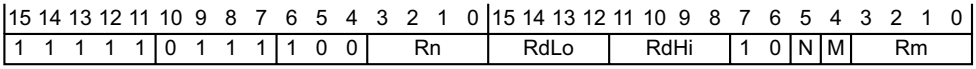
A7.7.137 SMLALBB, SMLALBT, SMLALTB, SMLALTT

Signed Multiply Accumulate Long (halfwords) multiplies two signed 16-bit values to produce a 32-bit value, and accumulates this with a 64-bit value. The multiply acts on two signed 16-bit quantities, taken from either the bottom or the top half of their respective source registers. The other halves of these source registers are ignored. The 32-bit product is sign-extended and accumulated with a 64-bit accumulate value.

Overflow is possible during this instruction, but only as a result of the 64-bit addition. This overflow is not detected if it occurs. Instead, the result wraps around modulo 2^{64}.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLAL<x><y><c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
n_high = (N == '1');  m_high = (M == '1');
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLAL<x><y>{<c>}{<q>}  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<x>` Specifies which half of the source register `<Rn>` is used as the first multiply operand. If `<x>` is `B`, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of `<Rn>` is used. If `<x>` is `T`, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of `<Rn>` is used.

`<y>` Specifies which half of the source register `<Rm>` is used as the second multiply operand. If `<y>` is `B`, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of `<Rm>` is used. If `<y>` is `T`, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of `<Rm>` is used.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Supplies the lower 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Supplies the upper 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by `<x>`) is the first multiply operand.

`<Rm>` The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by `<y>`) is the second multiply operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = if n_high then R[n]<31:16> else R[n]<15:0>;
    operand2 = if m_high then R[m]<31:16> else R[m]<15:0>;
    result = SInt(operand1) * SInt(operand2) + SInt(R[dHi]:R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.138 SMLALD, SMLALDX

Signed Multiply Accumulate Long Dual performs two signed 16 × 16-bit multiplications. It adds the products to a 64-bit accumulate operand.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

Overflow is possible during this instruction, but only as a result of the 64-bit addition. This overflow is not detected if it occurs. Instead, the result wraps around modulo 2^{64}.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLALD{X}<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	Rn				RdLo					RdHi			1	1	0	M	Rm			

```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  m_swap = (M == '1');
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLALD{X}{<c>}{<q>}  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

X	If X is present, the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted, the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<RdLo>	Supplies the lower 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.
<RdHi>	Supplies the upper 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 + product2 + SInt(R[dHi]:R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

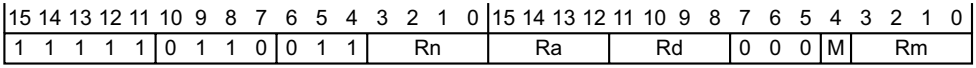
A7.7.139 SMLAWB, SMLAWT

Signed Multiply Accumulate (word by halfword) performs a signed multiply accumulate operation. The multiply acts on a signed 32-bit quantity and a signed 16-bit quantity. The signed 16-bit quantity is taken from either the bottom or the top half of its source register. The other half of the second source register is ignored. The top 32 bits of the 48-bit product are added to a 32-bit accumulate value and the result is written to the destination register. The bottom 16 bits of the 48-bit product are ignored.

If overflow occurs during the addition of the accumulate value, the instruction sets the Q flag in the APSR. No overflow can occur during the multiplication.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLAW<y><c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	Rn				Ra					Rd			0	0	0	M	Rm			

```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE SMULWB, SMULWT;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);  m_high = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLAW<y>{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

<y>	Specifies which half of the source register <Rm> is used as the second multiply operand. If <y> is B, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of <Rm> is used. If <y> is T, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of <Rm> is used.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by <y>) is the second multiply operand.
<Ra>	The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_high then R[m]<31:16> else R[m]<15:0>;
    result = SInt(R[n]) * SInt(operand2) + (SInt(R[a]) << 16);
    R[d] = result<47:16>;
    if (result >> 16) != SInt(R[d]) then  // Signed overflow
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.140 SMLSD, SMLSDX

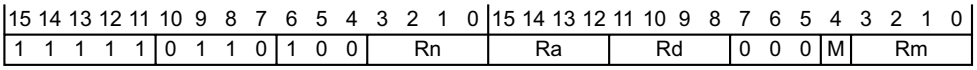
Signed Multiply Subtract Dual performs two signed 16 × 16-bit multiplications. It adds the difference of the products to a 32-bit accumulate operand.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

This instruction sets the Q flag if the accumulate operation overflows. Overflow cannot occur during the multiplications or subtraction.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLSD{X}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	Rn				Ra					Rd			0	0	0	M	Rm			

```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE SMUSD;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);  m_swap = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLSD{X}{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

X	If X is present, the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted, the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.
<Ra>	The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 - product2 + SInt(R[a]);
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if result != SInt(result<31:0>) then  // Signed overflow
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.141 SMLSLD, SMLSLDX

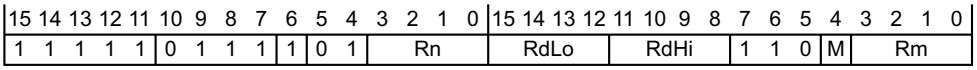
Signed Multiply Subtract Long Dual performs two signed 16 × 16-bit multiplications. It adds the difference of the products to a 64-bit accumulate operand.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

Overflow is possible during this instruction, but only as a result of the 64-bit addition. This overflow is not detected if it occurs. Instead, the result wraps around modulo 2^{64}.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMLSLD{X}<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  m_swap = (M == '1');
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMLSLD{X}{<c>}{<q>}  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

X	If X is present, the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted, the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<RdLo>	Supplies the lower 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.
<RdHi>	Supplies the upper 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 - product2 + SInt(R[dHi]:R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

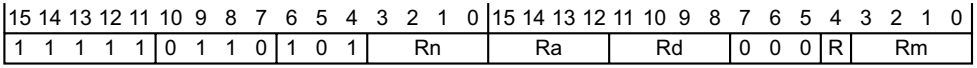
A7.7.142 SMMLA, SMMLAR

Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Accumulate multiplies two signed 32-bit values, extracts the most significant 32 bits of the result, and adds an accumulate value.

Optionally, you can specify that the result is rounded instead of being truncated. In this case, the constant `0x80000000` is added to the product before the high word is extracted.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMMLA{R}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE SMMUL;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);  round = (R == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SMMLA{R}{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

`R` If R is present, the multiplication is rounded.
If the R is omitted, the multiplication is truncated.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first multiply operand.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second multiply operand.

`<Ra>` The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = (SInt(R[a]) << 32) + SInt(R[n]) * SInt(R[m]);
    if round then result = result + 0x80000000;
    R[d] = result<63:32>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

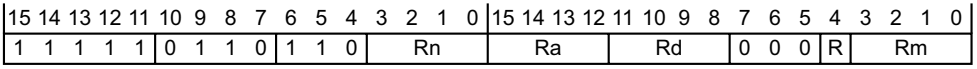
A7.7.143 SMMLS, SMMLSR

Signed Most Significant Word Multiply Subtract multiplies two signed 32-bit values, subtracts the result from a 32-bit accumulate value that is shifted left by 32 bits, and extracts the most significant 32 bits of the result of that subtraction.

Optionally, you can specify that the result of the instruction is rounded instead of being truncated. In this case, the constant `0x80000000` is added to the result of the subtraction before the high word is extracted.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMMLS{R}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a = UInt(Ra);  round = (R == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SMMLS{R}{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

`R` If R is present, the multiplication is rounded.
If the R is omitted, the multiplication is truncated.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first multiply operand.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second multiply operand.

`<Ra>` The register that contains the accumulate value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = (SInt(R[a]) << 32) - SInt(R[n]) * SInt(R[m]);
    if round then result = result + 0x80000000;
    R[d] = result<63:32>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

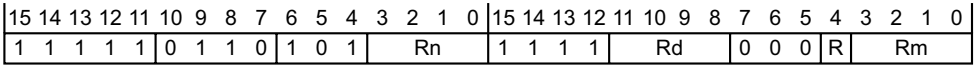
A7.7.144 SMMUL, SMMULR

Signed Most Significant Word Multiply multiplies two signed 32-bit values, extracts the most significant 32 bits of the result, and writes those bits to the destination register.

Optionally, you can specify that the result is rounded instead of being truncated. In this case, the constant `0x80000000` is added to the product before the high word is extracted.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMMUL{R}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  round = (R == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMMUL{R}{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`R`	If R is present, the multiplication is rounded. If the R is omitted, the multiplication is truncated.
`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = SInt(R[n]) * SInt(R[m]);
    if round then result = result + 0x80000000;
    R[d] = result<63:32>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.145 SMUAD, SMUADX

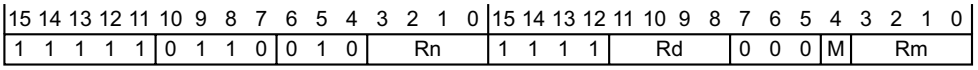
Signed Dual Multiply Add performs two signed 16 × 16-bit multiplications. It adds the products together, and writes the result to the destination register.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

This instruction sets the Q flag if the addition overflows. The multiplications cannot overflow.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMUAD{X}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	Rn				1	1	1	1	Rd				0	0	0	M	Rm			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  m_swap = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMUAD{x}{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

X	If X is present, the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted, the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 + product2;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if result != SInt(result<31:0>) then  // Signed overflow
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

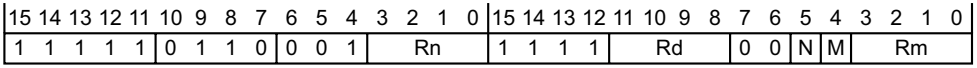
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.146 SMULBB, SMULBT, SMULTB, SMULTT

Signed Multiply (halfwords) multiplies two signed 16-bit quantities, taken from either the bottom or the top half of their respective source registers. The other halves of these source registers are ignored. The 32-bit product is written to the destination register. No overflow is possible during this instruction.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMUL<x><y><c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
n_high = (N == '1');  m_high = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMUL<x><y>{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<x> Specifies which half of the source register <Rn> is used as the first multiply operand. If <x> is B, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of <Rn> is used. If <x> is T, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of <Rn> is used.

<y> Specifies which half of the source register <Rm> is used as the second multiply operand. If <y> is B, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of <Rm> is used. If <y> is T, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of <Rm> is used.

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by <x>) is the first multiply operand.

<Rm> The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by <y>) is the second multiply operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = if n_high then R[n]<31:16> else R[n]<15:0>;
    operand2 = if m_high then R[m]<31:16> else R[m]<15:0>;
    result = SInt(operand1) * SInt(operand2);
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    // Signed overflow cannot occur
```

Exceptions

None.

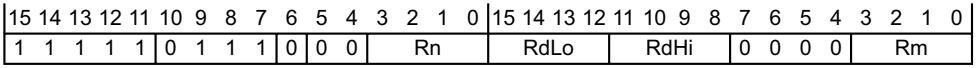
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.147 SMULL

Signed Multiply Long multiplies two 32-bit signed values to produce a 64-bit result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SMULL<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SMULL<c><q>  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Stores the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Stores the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = SInt(R[n]) * SInt(R[m]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

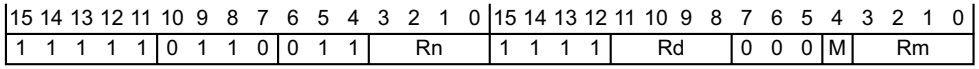
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.148 SMULWB, SMULWT

Signed Multiply (word by halfword) multiplies a signed 32-bit quantity and a signed 16-bit quantity. The signed 16-bit quantity is taken from either the bottom or the top half of its source register. The other half of the second source register is ignored. The top 32 bits of the 48-bit product are written to the destination register. The bottom 16 bits of the 48-bit product are ignored. No overflow is possible during this instruction.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMULW<y><c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  m_high = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SMULW<y>{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<y> Specifies which half of the source register <Rm> is used as the second multiply operand. If <y> is B, then the bottom half (bits [15:0]) of <Rm> is used. If <y> is T, then the top half (bits [31:16]) of <Rm> is used.

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The source register whose bottom or top half (selected by <y>) is the second multiply operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_high then R[m]<31:16> else R[m]<15:0>;
    product = SInt(R[n]) * SInt(operand2);
    R[d] = product<47:16>;
    // Signed overflow cannot occur
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.149 SMUSD, SMUSDX

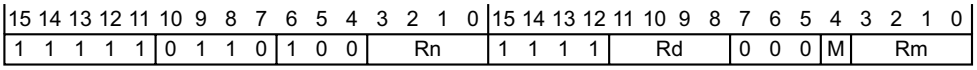
Signed Dual Multiply Subtract performs two signed 16 × 16-bit multiplications. It subtracts one of the products from the other, and writes the result to the destination register.

Optionally, you can exchange the halfwords of the second operand before performing the arithmetic. This produces top × bottom and bottom × top multiplication.

Overflow cannot occur.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SMUSD{X}<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	Rn				1	1	1	1	Rd				0	0	0	M	Rm			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  m_swap = (M == '1');
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SMUSD{X}{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

X	If X is present, the multiplications are bottom × top and top × bottom. If the X is omitted, the multiplications are bottom × bottom and top × top.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand2 = if m_swap then ROR(R[m],16) else R[m];
    product1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) * SInt(operand2<15:0>);
    product2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) * SInt(operand2<31:16>);
    result = product1 - product2;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    // Signed overflow cannot occur
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

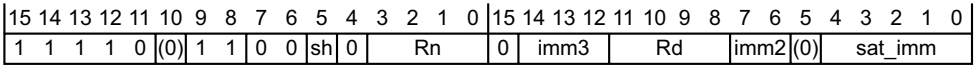
A7.7.150 SSAT

Signed Saturate saturates an optionally-shifted signed value to a selectable signed range.

The Q flag is set to 1 if the operation saturates.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
SSAT<c> <Rd>,#<imm5>,<Rn>{,<shift>}
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	(0)	1	1	0	0	sh	0	Rn				0	imm3			Rd				imm2		(0)	sat_imm				

```
if sh == '1' && (imm3:imm2) == '00000' then
    if HaveDSPExt() then SEE SSAT16 else UNDEFINED;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  saturate_to = UInt(sat_imm)+1;
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(sh:'0', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SSAT<c><q>  <Rd>, #<imm>, <Rn> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<imm>` Specifies the bit position for saturation, in the range 1 to 32.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the value to be saturated.

`<shift>` Specifies the optional shift. If `<shift>` is omitted, `LSL #0` is used.

If present, it must be one of:

LSL #*N* *N* must be in the range 0 to 31.

ASR #*N* *N* must be in the range 1 to 31.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand = Shift(R[n], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);  // APSR.C ignored
    (result, sat) = SignedSatQ(SInt(operand), saturate_to);
    R[d] = SignExtend(result, 32);
    if sat then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

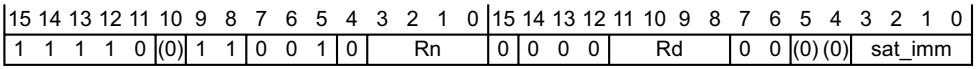
A7.7.151 SSAT16

Signed Saturate 16 saturates two signed 16-bit values to a selected signed range.

The Q flag is set to 1 if the operation saturates.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SSAT16<c> <Rd>,#<imm>,<Rn>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  saturate_to = UInt(sat_imm)+1;
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SSAT16{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, #<imm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<imm>`	The bit position for saturation, in the range 1 to 16.
`<Rn>`	The register that contains the values to be saturated.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result1, sat1) = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[n]<15:0>), saturate_to);
    (result2, sat2) = SignedSatQ(SInt(R[n]<31:16>), saturate_to);
    R[d]<15:0> = SignExtend(result1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignExtend(result2, 16);
    if sat1 || sat2 then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

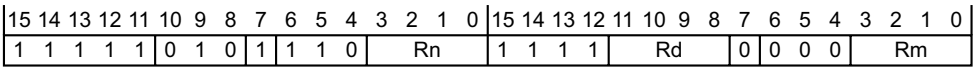
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.152 SSAX

Signed Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one 16-bit integer subtraction and one 16-bit addition, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SSAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SSAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `SSUBADDX<c>` is equivalent to `SSAX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) + SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if sum  >= 0 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if diff >= 0 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

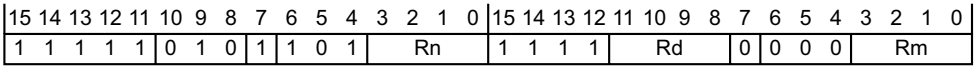
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.153 SSUB16

Signed Subtract 16 performs two 16-bit signed integer subtractions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the subtractions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SSUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SSUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<15:0>) - SInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<31:16>) - SInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff1<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff2<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if diff1 >= 0 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if diff2 >= 0 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

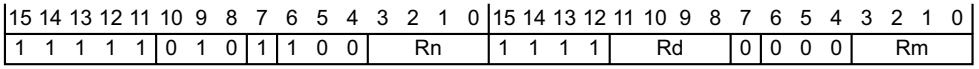
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.154 SSUB8

Signed Subtract 8 performs four 8-bit signed integer subtractions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the subtractions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SSUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SSUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = SInt(R[n]<7:0>) - SInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = SInt(R[n]<15:8>) - SInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = SInt(R[n]<23:16>) - SInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = SInt(R[n]<31:24>) - SInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = diff1<7:0>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = diff2<7:0>;
    R[d]<23:16> = diff3<7:0>;
    R[d]<31:24> = diff4<7:0>;
    APSR.GE<0>  = if diff1 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<1>  = if diff2 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<2>  = if diff3 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<3>  = if diff4 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

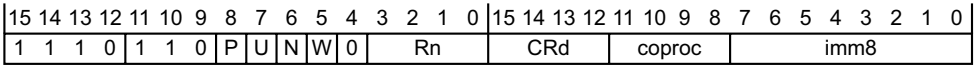
A7.7.155 STC, STC2

Store Coprocessor stores data from a coprocessor to a sequence of consecutive memory addresses.

If no coprocessor can execute the instruction, a UsageFault exception is generated.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

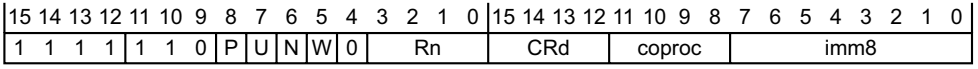
```
STC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm8>}]
STC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
STC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STC{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>
```




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MCRR, MCRR2;
n = UInt(Rn);  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
STC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm8>}]
STC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
STC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STC2{L}<c> <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>
```




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '0' && W == '0' then UNDEFINED;
if P == '0' && U == '0' && D == '1' && W == '0' then SEE MCRR, MCRR2;
n = UInt(Rn);  cp = UInt(coproc);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

`STC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]`	Offset. P = 1, W = 0.
`STC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed. P = 1, W = 1.
`STC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed. P = 0, W = 1.
`STC{2}{L}<c><q>  <coproc>,<CRd>,[<Rn>],<option>`	Unindexed. P = 0, W = 0, U = 1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

where:

`2` If specified, selects encoding T2. If omitted, selects encoding T1.

`L` If specified, selects the N == 1 form of the encoding. If omitted, selects the N == 0 form.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<coproc>` Specifies the name of the coprocessor. The standard generic coprocessor names are p0 - p15.

`<CRd>` Specifies the coprocessor source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

`<option>` Specifies additional instruction options to the coprocessor, as an integer in the range 0-255, surrounded by { and }. This integer is encoded in the imm8 field of the instruction.

The pre-UAL syntax `STC<c>L` is equivalent to `STCL<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if !Coproc_Accepted(cp, ThisInstr()) then
        GenerateCoprocessorException();
    else
        offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
        address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
        repeat
            MemA[address,4] = Coproc_GetWordToStore(cp, ThisInstr());  address = address + 4;
        until Coproc_DoneStoring(cp, ThisInstr());
        if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

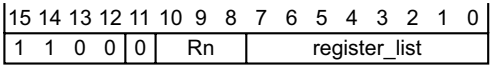
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.156 STM, STMIA, STMEA

Store Multiple stores multiple registers to consecutive memory locations using an address from a base register. The consecutive memory locations start at this address, and the address just above the last of those locations can optionally be written back to the base register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

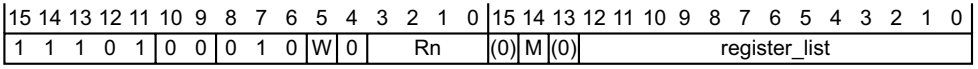
```
STM<c> <Rn>!,<registers>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '00000000':register_list;  wback = TRUE;
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
STM<c>.W <Rn>{!},<registers>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '0':M:'0':register_list;  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 || BitCount(registers) < 2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if wback && registers<n> == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STM<c><q>  <Rn>{!}, <registers>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. If `!` is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>`.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers to be stored, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. The lowest-numbered register is stored to the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register to the highest memory address.

Encoding T2 does not support a list containing only one register. If an `STM` instruction with just one register `<Rt>` in the list is assembled to Thumb and encoding T1 is not available, it is assembled to the equivalent `STR<c><q> <Rt>,[<Rn>]{,#4}` instruction.

The SP and PC cannot be in the list.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Encoding T2 is not available for instructions with the base register in the list and ! specified, and the use of such instructions is deprecated. If the base register is not the lowest-numbered register in the list, such an instruction stores an UNKNOWN value for the base register.

STMEA and STMIA are pseudo-instructions for STM, STMEA referring to its use for pushing data onto Empty Ascending stacks.

The pre-UAL syntaxes STM<c>IA and STM<c>EA are equivalent to STM<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            if i == n && wback && i != LowestSetBit(registers) then
                MemA[address,4] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;    // encoding T1 only
            else
                MemA[address,4] = R[i];
            address = address + 4;

    if wback then R[n] = R[n] + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

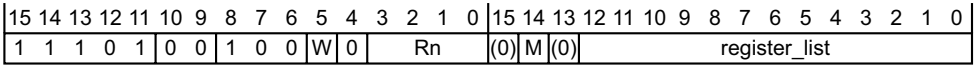
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.157 STMDB, STMFD

Store Multiple Decrement Before stores multiple registers to consecutive memory locations using an address from a base register. The consecutive memory locations end just below this address, and the address of the first of those locations can optionally be written back to the base register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STMDB<c> <Rn>{!},<registers>
```




```
if W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE PUSH;
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '0':M:'0':register_list;  wback = (W == '1');
if n == 15 || BitCount(registers) < 2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if wback && registers<n> == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STMDB<c><q>  <Rn>{!}, <registers>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The base register. If it is the SP and ! is specified, the instruction is treated as described in *PUSH* on page A7-389.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. Encoded as W = 1.

If ! is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>`. Encoded as W = 0.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers to be stored, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. The lowest-numbered register is stored to the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register to the highest memory address.

Encoding T1 does not support a list containing only one register. If an `STMDB` instruction with just one register `<Rt>` in the list is assembled to Thumb, it is assembled to the equivalent `STR<c><q> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-4]{!}` instruction.

The SP and PC cannot be in the list.

`STMFD` is s synonym for `STMDB`, referring to its use for pushing data onto Full Descending stacks.

The pre-UAL syntaxes `STM<c>DB` and `STM<c>FD` are equivalent to `STMDB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] - 4*BitCount(registers);

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            MemA[address,4] = R[i];
            address = address + 4;

    if wback then R[n] = R[n] - 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

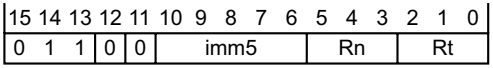
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.158 STR (immediate)

Store Register (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a word from a register to memory. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

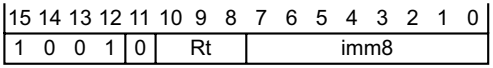
```
STR<c> <Rt>, [<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

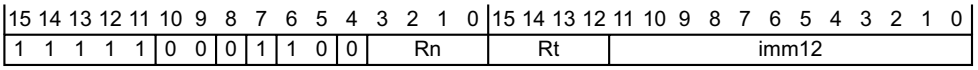
```
STR<c> <Rt>,[SP,#<imm8>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = 13;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

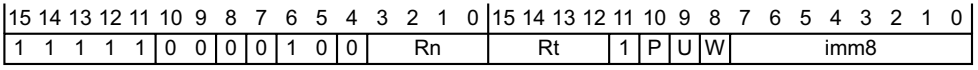
```
STR<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

```
STR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
STR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE STRT;
if Rn == '1101' && P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '1' && imm8 == '00000100' then SEE PUSH;
if Rn == '1111' || (P == '0' && W == '0') then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t == 15 || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`STR<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`STR<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`STR<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-124 for encoding T1, multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T2, any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T3, and any value in the range 0-255 for encoding T4. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,4] = R[t];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

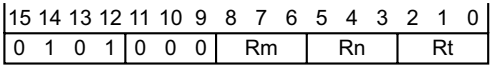
A7.7.159 STR (register)

Store Register (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, stores a word from a register to memory. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1

All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STR<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```

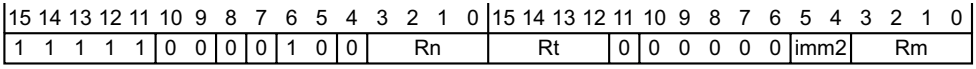



```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2

ARMv7-M

```
STR<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STR<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the source register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.
`<shift>`	Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    data = R[t];
    MemU[address,4] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

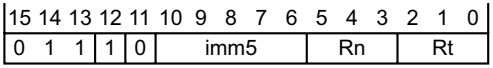
A7.7.160 STRB (immediate)

Store Register Byte (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a byte from a register to memory. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1

All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm5>]
```

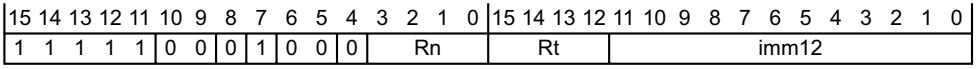



```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2

ARMv7-M

```
STRB<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm12>]
```

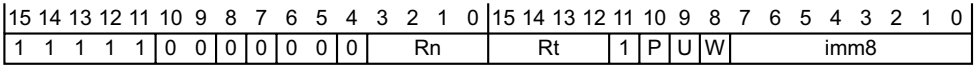



```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3

ARMv7-M

```
STRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
STRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE STRBT;
if Rn == '1111' || (P == '0' && W == '0') then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t IN {13,15} || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`STRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`STRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`STRB<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-31 for encoding T1, 0-4095 for encoding T2, and 0-255 for encoding T3. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>B` is equivalent to `STRB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,1] = R[t]<7:0>;
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

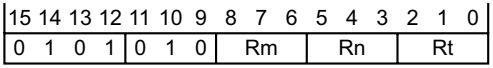
A7.7.161 STRB (register)

Store Register Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, and stores a byte from a register to memory. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1

All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRB<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```

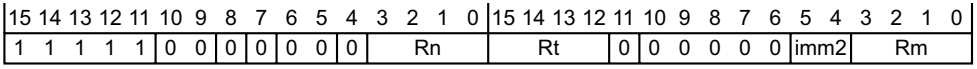



```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2

ARMv7-M

```
STRB<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STRB<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

`<shift>` Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>B` is equivalent to `STRB<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    MemU[address,1] = R[t]<7:0>;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

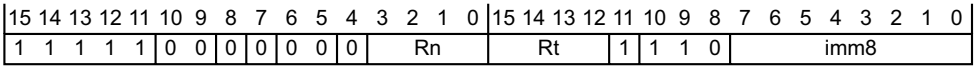
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.162 STRBT

Store Register Byte Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a byte from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an STRBT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STRBT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STRBT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rt>`	Specifies the source register.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<imm>`	Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>BT` is equivalent to `STRBT<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    MemU_unpriv[address,1] = R[t]<7:0>;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

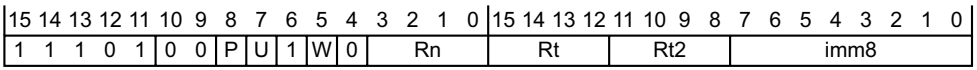
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.163 STRD (immediate)

Store Register Dual (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores two words from two registers to memory. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm8>}]
STRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STRD<c> <Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if P == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if wback && (n == t || n == t2) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if n == 15 || t IN {13,15} || t2 IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings See *Load/store dual or exclusive, table branch* on page A5-172

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`STRD<c><q>`	`<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>{,#+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`STRD<c><q>`	`<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`STRD<c><q>`	`<Rt>,<Rt2>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the first source register.

`<Rt2>` Specifies the second source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>D` is equivalent to `STRD<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemA[address,4] = R[t];
    MemA[address+4,4] = R[t2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

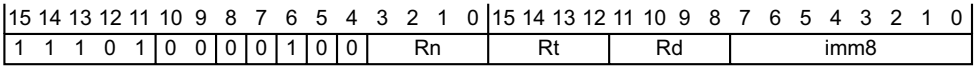
A7.7.164 STREX

Store Register Exclusive calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a word from a register to memory if the executing processor has exclusive access to the memory addressed.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STREX<c> <Rd>,<Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm8>}]
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
if d IN {13,15} || t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == n || d == t then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STREX<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rt>, [<Rn> {,#<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register for the returned status value. The value returned is:

- `0` if the operation updates memory
- `1` if the operation fails to update memory.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    if ExclusiveMonitorsPass(address,4) then
        MemA[address,4] = R[t];
        R[d] = 0;
    else
        R[d] = 1;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

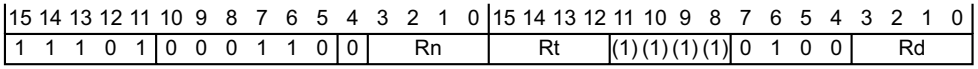
A7.7.165 STREXB

Store Register Exclusive Byte derives an address from a base register value, and stores a byte from a register to memory if the executing processor has exclusive access to the memory addressed.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STREXB<c> <Rd>,<Rt>,[<Rn>]
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);
if d IN {13,15} || t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == n || d == t then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STREXB<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register for the returned status value. The value returned is:

- `0` if the operation updates memory
- `1` if the operation fails to update memory.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];
    if ExclusiveMonitorsPass(address,1) then
        MemA[address,1] = R[t];
        R[d] = 0;
    else
        R[d] = 1;
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.166 STREXH

Store Register Exclusive Halfword derives an address from a base register value, and stores a halfword from a register to memory if the executing processor has exclusive access to the memory addressed.

See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STREXH<c> <Rd>,<Rt>,[<Rn>]
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	Rn				Rt				(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	0	1	0	1	Rd			

```
d = UInt(Rd);  t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);
if d IN {13,15} || t IN {13,15} || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == n || d == t then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STREXH<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rt>, [<Rn>]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register for the returned status value. The value returned is:

- `0` if the operation updates memory
- `1` if the operation fails to update memory.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];
    if ExclusiveMonitorsPass(address,2) then
        MemA[address,2] = R[t];
        R[d] = 0;
    else
        R[d] = 1;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

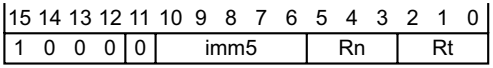
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.167 STRH (immediate)

Store Register Halfword (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a halfword from a register to memory. It can use offset, post-indexed, or pre-indexed addressing. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

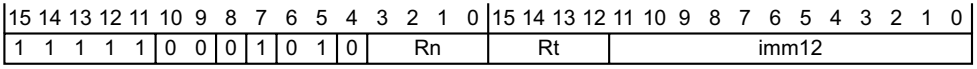
```
STRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'0', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

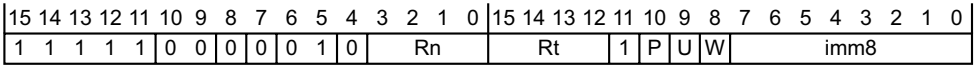
```
STRH<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm12>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm12, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
STRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#-<imm8>]
STRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>],#+/-<imm8>
STRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#+/-<imm8>]!
```




```
if P == '1' && U == '1' && W == '0' then SEE STRHT;
if Rn == '1111' || (P == '0' && W == '0') then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
index = (P == '1');  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
if t IN {13,15} || (wback && n == t) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`STRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Offset: `index==TRUE`, `wback==FALSE`
`STRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>, #+/-<imm>]!`	Pre-indexed: `index==TRUE`, `wback==TRUE`
`STRH<c><q> <Rt>, [<Rn>], #+/-<imm>`	Post-indexed: `index==FALSE`, `wback==TRUE`

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – to indicate that the offset is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). Different instructions are generated for `#0` and `#-0`.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Allowed values are multiples of 2 in the range 0-62 for encoding T1, any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T2, and any value in the range 0-255 for encoding T3. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>H` is equivalent to `STRH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,2] = R[t]<15:0>;

    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

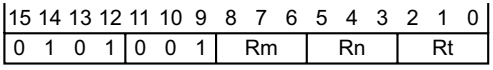
A7.7.168 STRH (register)

Store Register Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, and stores a halfword from a register to memory. The offset register value can be shifted left by 0, 1, 2, or 3 bits. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1

All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRH<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```

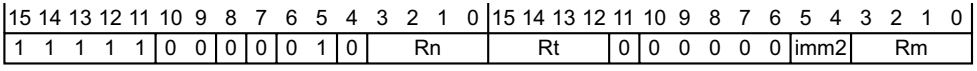



```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2

ARMv7-M

```
STRH<c>.W <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>{,LSL #<imm2>}]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, UInt(imm2));
if t IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
STRH<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rn>`	Specifies the register that contains the base value. This register is allowed to be the SP.
`<Rm>`	Contains the offset that is shifted left and added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.
`<shift>`	Specifies the number of bits the value from `<Rm>` is shifted left, in the range 0-3. If this option is omitted, a shift by 0 is assumed and both encodings are permitted. If this option is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>H` is equivalent to `STRH<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    MemU[address,2] = R[t]<15:0>;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

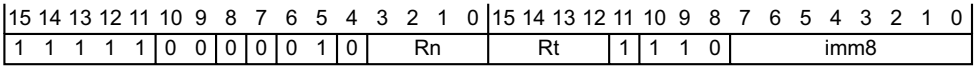
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.169 STRHT

Store Register Halfword Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a halfword from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an STRHT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STRHT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRHT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rt> Specifies the source register.

<Rn> Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

<imm> Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of <Rn> to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. <imm> can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    MemU_unpriv[address,2] = R[t]<15:0>;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

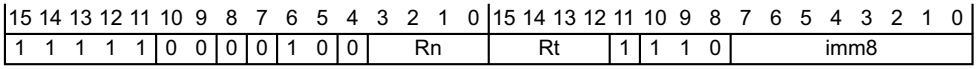
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.170 STRT

Store Register Unprivileged calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a word from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A7-214 for information about memory accesses. When privileged software uses an STRT instruction, the memory access is restricted as if the software was unprivileged. See also *Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions* on page B3-768.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
STRT<c> <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm8>]
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then UNDEFINED;
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  postindex = FALSE;  add = TRUE;
register_form = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
if t IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRT<c><q>  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #<imm>}]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` Specifies the source register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the base register. This register is allowed to be the SP.

`<imm>` Specifies the immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of allowed values is 0-255. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

The pre-UAL syntax `STR<c>T` is equivalent to `STRT<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n] + imm32;
    data = R[t];
    MemU_unpriv[address,4] = data;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault, MemManage, BusFault.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

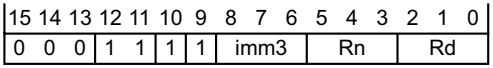
A7.7.171 SUB (immediate)

Subtract (immediate) subtracts an immediate value from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`SUBS <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>` Outside IT block.

`SUB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>` Inside IT block.

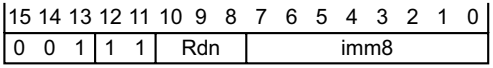



```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm3, 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`SUBS <Rdn>,#<imm8>` Outside IT block.

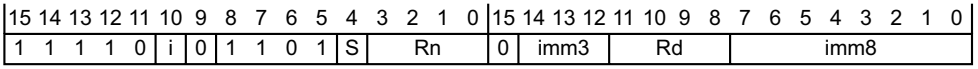
`SUB<c> <Rdn>,#<imm8>` Inside IT block.




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

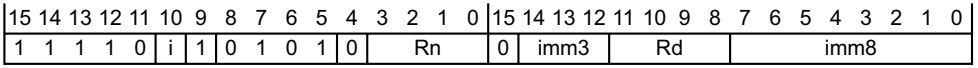
```
SUB{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,#<const>
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMP (immediate);
if Rn == '1101' then SEE SUB (SP minus immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T4 ARMv7-M

```
SUBW<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm12>
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE ADR;
if Rn == '1101' then SEE SUB (SP minus immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);
if d IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`SUB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>`	All encodings permitted
`SUBW<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>`	Only encoding T4 permitted

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for `<Rn>`, see *SUB (SP minus immediate)* on page A7-499. If the PC is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADR* on page A7-229.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be subtracted from the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of allowed values is 0-7 for encoding T1, 0-255 for encoding T2 and 0-4095 for encoding T4. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T3.

When multiple encodings of the same length are available for an instruction, encoding T3 is preferred to encoding T4 (if encoding T4 is required, use the `SUBW` syntax). Encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2 if `<Rd>` is specified and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if `<Rd>` is omitted.

The pre-UAL syntax `SUB<c>S` is equivalent to `SUBS<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(imm32), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

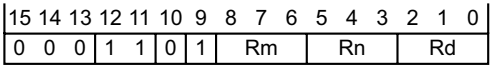
A7.7.172 SUB (register)

Subtract (register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It can optionally update the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`SUBS <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>` Outside IT block.

`SUB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>` Inside IT block.

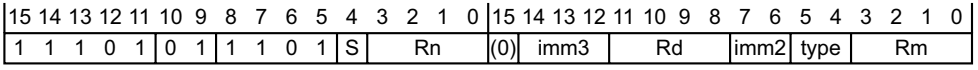


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Rm			Rn			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

`SUB{S}<c>.W <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}`



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	S	Rn				(0)	imm3			Rd				imm2		type		Rm			

```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMP (register);
if Rn == '1101' then SEE SUB (SP minus register);
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 || (d == 15 && S == '0') || n == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SUB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S — If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

<c><q> — See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> — Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> — Specifies the register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for <Rn>, see *SUB (SP minus register)* on page A7-501.

<Rm> — Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

<shift> — Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If <shift> is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

The pre-UAL syntax SUB<c>S is equivalent to SUBS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

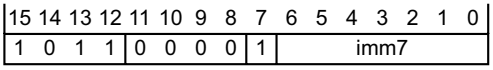
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.173 SUB (SP minus immediate)

Subtract (SP minus immediate) subtracts an immediate value from the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

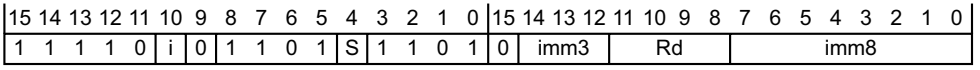
```
SUB<c> SP,SP,#<imm7>
```




```
d = 13;  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm7:'00', 32);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

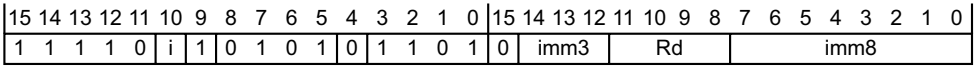
```
SUB{S}<c>.W <Rd>,SP,#<const>
```




```
if Rd == '1111' && S == '1' then SEE CMP (immediate);
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = (S == '1');  imm32 = ThumbExpandImm(i:imm3:imm8);
if d == 15 && S == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T3 ARMv7-M

```
SUBW<c> <Rd>,SP,#<imm12>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(i:imm3:imm8, 32);
if d == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`SUB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>`	All encodings permitted
`SUBW<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>`	Only encoding T4 permitted

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is SP.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be added to the value obtained from SP. Allowed values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-508 for encoding T1 and any value in the range 0-4095 for encoding T3. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values for encoding T2.

When both 32-bit encodings are available for an instruction, encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T3 (if encoding T3 is required, use the `SUBW` syntax).

The pre-UAL syntax `SUB<c>S` is equivalent to `SUBS<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, NOT(imm32), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

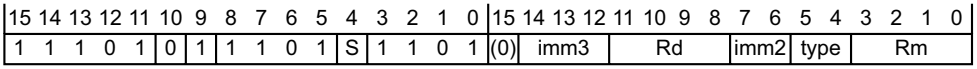
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.174 SUB (SP minus register)

Subtract (SP minus register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value from the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SUB{S}<c> <Rd>,SP,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = (S == '1');
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if d == 13 && (shift_t != SRType_LSL || shift_n > 3) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == 15 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SUB{S}<c><q>  {<Rd>,} SP, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

S	If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.
<c><q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is SP.
<Rm>	Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.
<shift>	Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from <Rm>. If <shift> is omitted, no shift is applied. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212. If <Rd> is SP or omitted, <shift> is only permitted to be LSL #0, LSL #1, LSL #2 or LSL #3.

The pre-UAL syntax SUB<c>S is equivalent to SUBS<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, NOT(shifted), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.175 SVC

The Supervisor Call instruction generates a call to a system supervisor. For more information see *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631.

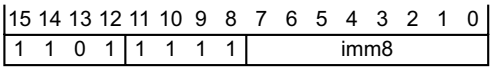
Use it as a call to an operating system to provide a service.

Note

In older versions of the ARM architecture, SVC was called SWI, Software Interrupt.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SVC<c> #<imm8>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly/disassembly, and is ignored by hardware. SVC handlers in some
// systems interpret imm8 in software, for example to determine the required service.
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SVC<c><q>  #<imm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<imm>` Specifies an 8-bit immediate constant.

The pre-UAL syntax `SWI<c>` is equivalent to `SVC<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    CallSupervisor();
```

Exceptions

SVCall.

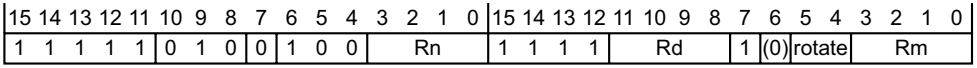
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.176 SXTAB

Signed Extend and Add Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, sign-extends it to 32 bits, adds the result to the value in another register, and writes the final result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SXTAB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE SXTB;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTAB{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = R[n] + SignExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

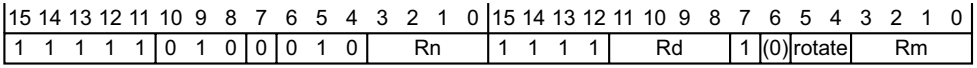
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.177 SXTAB16

Signed Extend and Add Byte 16 extracts two 8-bit values from a register, sign-extends them to 16 bits each, adds the results to two 16-bit values from another register, and writes the final results to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit values.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SXTAB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE SXTB16;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTAB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d]<15:0>  = R[n]<15:0> + SignExtend(rotated<7:0>, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = R[n]<31:16> + SignExtend(rotated<23:16>, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

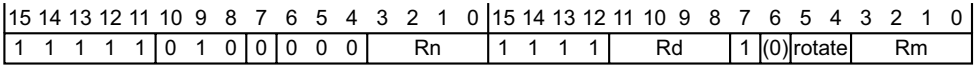
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.178 SXTAH

Signed Extend and Add Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, sign-extends it to 32 bits, adds the result to a value from another register, and writes the final result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 16-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SXTAH<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE SXTH;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTAH{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = R[n] + SignExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

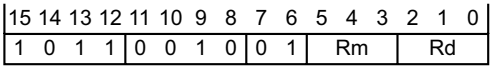
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.179 SXTB

Signed Extend Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, sign extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

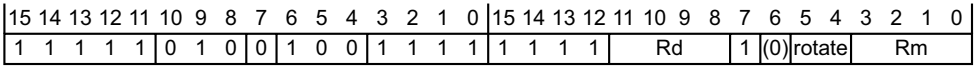
```
SXTB<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
SXTB<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTB<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the operand.

`<rotation>`

This can be any one of:

- `ROR #8`.
- `ROR #16`.
- `ROR #24`.
- Omitted.

Note

If your assembler accepts shifts by `#0` and treats them as equivalent to no shift or `LSL #0`, then it must accept `ROR #0` here. It is equivalent to omitting `<rotation>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = SignExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

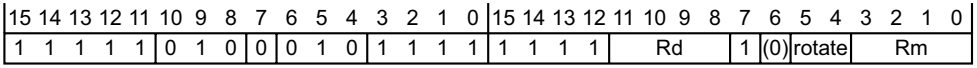
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.180 SXTB16

Signed Extend Byte 16 extracts two 8-bit values from a register, sign-extends them to 16 bits each, and writes the results to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit values.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
SXTB16<c> <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d]<15:0>  = SignExtend(rotated<7:0>, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = SignExtend(rotated<23:16>, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

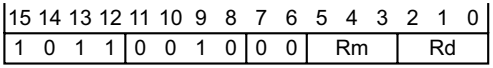
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.181 SXTH

Signed Extend Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, sign extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 16-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

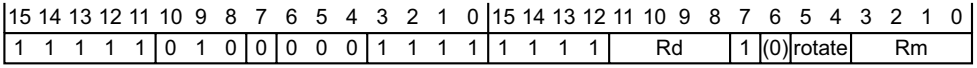
```
SXTH<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
SXTH<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
SXTH<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the operand.

`<rotation>`

This can be any one of:

- `ROR #8`.
- `ROR #16`.
- `ROR #24`.
- Omitted.

Note

If your assembler accepts shifts by `#0` and treats them as equivalent to no shift or `LSL #0`, then it must accept `ROR #0` here. It is equivalent to omitting `<rotation>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = SignExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

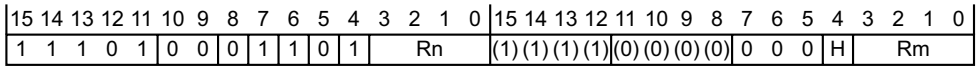
A7.7.182 TBB, TBH

Table Branch Byte causes a PC-relative forward branch using a table of single byte offsets. A base register provides a pointer to the table, and a second register supplies an index into the table. The branch length is twice the value of the byte returned from the table.

Table Branch Halfword causes a PC-relative forward branch using a table of single halfword offsets. A base register provides a pointer to the table, and a second register supplies an index into the table. The branch length is twice the value of the halfword returned from the table.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

`TBB<c> [<Rn>,<Rm>]`	Outside or last in IT block
`TBH<c> [<Rn>,<Rm>,LSL #1]`	Outside or last in IT block



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Rn				(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)	0	0	0	H	Rm			

```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  is_tbh = (H == '1');
if n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
TBB<c><q>  [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

```
TBH<c><q>  [<Rn>, <Rm>, LSL #1]
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The base register. This contains the address of the table of branch lengths. This register can be the PC. If it is, the table immediately follows this instruction.

`<Rm>` The index register.

For `TBB`, this contains an integer pointing to a single byte in the table. The offset in the table is the value of the index.

For `TBH`, this contains an integer pointing to a halfword in the table. The offset in the table is twice the value of the index.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if is_tbh then
        halfwords = UInt(MemU[R[n]+LSL(R[m],1), 2]);
    else
        halfwords = UInt(MemU[R[n]+R[m], 1]);
    BranchWritePC(PC + 2*halfwords);
```

Exceptions

MemManage, BusFault, UsageFault.

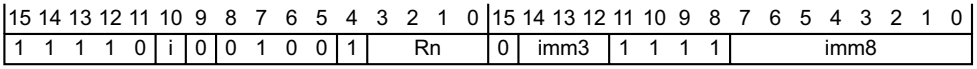
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.183 TEQ (immediate)

Test Equivalence (immediate) performs an exclusive OR operation on a register value and an immediate value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
TEQ<c> <Rn>,#<const>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
TEQ<c><q>  <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the operand.

`<const>` The immediate value to be tested against the value obtained from `<Rn>`. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] EOR imm32;
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

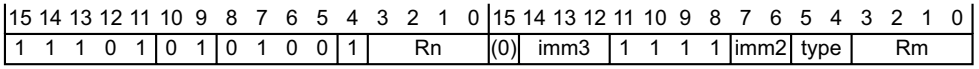
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.184 TEQ (register)

Test Equivalence (register) performs an exclusive OR operation on a register value and an optionally-shifted register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
TEQ<c> <Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
TEQ<c><q>  <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

`<shift>` Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`. If `<shift>` is omitted, no shift is applied. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] EOR shifted;
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

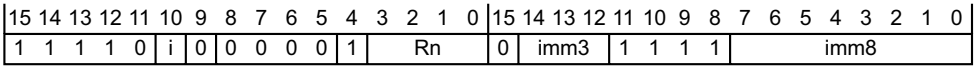
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.185 TST (immediate)

Test (immediate) performs a logical AND operation on a register value and an immediate value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
TST<c> <Rn>,#<const>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);
(imm32, carry) = ThumbExpandImm_C(i:imm3:imm8, APSR.C);
if n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
TST<c><q>  <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the operand.

`<const>` Specifies the immediate value to be tested against the value obtained from `<Rn>`. See *Modified immediate constants in Thumb instructions* on page A5-166 for the range of allowed values.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[n] AND imm32;
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

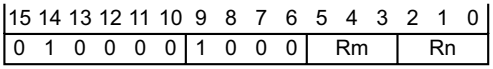
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.186 TST (register)

Test (register) performs a logical AND operation on a register value and an optionally-shifted register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

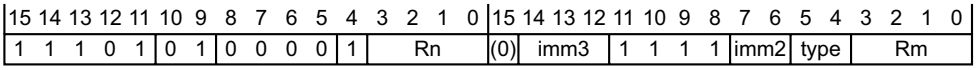
```
TST<c> <Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
TST<c>.W  <Rn>,<Rm>{,<shift>}
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(type, imm3:imm2);
if n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
TST<c><q>  <Rn>, <Rm> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

`<shift>` Specifies the shift to apply to the value read from `<Rm>`. If `<shift>` is omitted, no shift is applied and both encodings are permitted. If `<shift>` is specified, only encoding T2 is permitted. The possible shifts and how they are encoded are described in *Shifts applied to a register* on page A7-212.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND shifted;
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

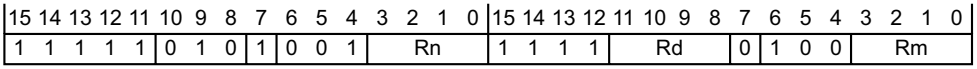
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.187 UADD16

Unsigned Add 16 performs two 16-bit unsigned integer additions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the additions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum1<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum2<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if sum1 >= 0x10000 then ‘11’ else ‘00’;
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if sum2 >= 0x10000 then ‘11’ else ‘00’;
```

Exceptions

None.

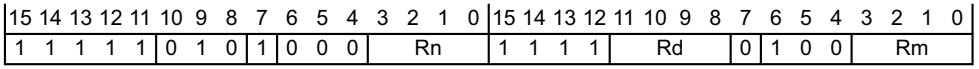
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.188 UADD8

Unsigned Add 8 performs four unsigned 8-bit integer additions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the additions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) + UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) + UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) + UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) + UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = sum1<7:0>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = sum2<7:0>;
    R[d]<23:16> = sum3<7:0>;
    R[d]<31:24> = sum4<7:0>;
    APSR.GE<0>  = if sum1 >= 0x100 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<1>  = if sum2 >= 0x100 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<2>  = if sum3 >= 0x100 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
    APSR.GE<3>  = if sum4 >= 0x100 then ‘1’ else ‘0’;
```

Exceptions

None.

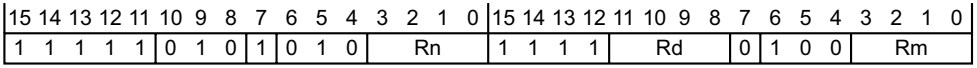
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.189 UASX

Unsigned Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer addition and one unsigned 16-bit subtraction, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax UADDSUBX<c> is equivalent to UASX<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if diff >= 0 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if sum  >= 0x10000 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

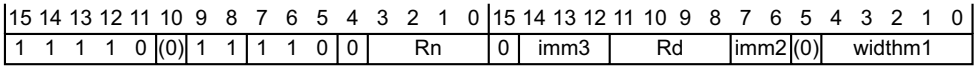
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.190 UBFX

Unsigned Bit Field Extract extracts any number of adjacent bits at any position from one register, zero extends them to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
UBFX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,#<lsb>,#<width>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);
lsbit = UInt(imm3:imm2);  widthminus1 = UInt(widthm1);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UBFX<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rn>, #<lsb>, #<width>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<lsb>` is the bit number of the least significant bit in the bitfield, in the range 0-31. This determines the required value of `lsbit`.

`<width>` is the width of the bitfield, in the range 1 to 32-`<lsb>`). The required value of `widthminus1` is `<width>-1`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    msbit = lsbit + widthminus1;
    if msbit <= 31 then
        R[d] = ZeroExtend(R[n]<msbit:lsbit>, 32);
    else
        UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Exceptions

None.

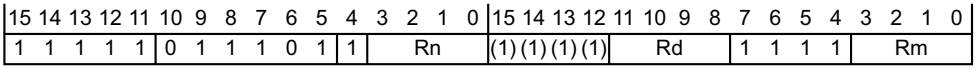
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.191 UDIV

Unsigned Divide divides a 32-bit unsigned integer register value by a 32-bit unsigned integer register value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition code flags are not affected.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
UDIV<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UDIV<c><q>  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> Specifies the destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> Specifies the register that contains the dividend.

<Rm> Specifies the register that contains the divisor.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if UInt(R[m]) == 0 then
        if IntegerZeroDivideTrappingEnabled() then
            GenerateIntegerZeroDivide();
        else
            result = 0;
    else
        result = RoundTowardsZero(UInt(R[n]) / UInt(R[m]));
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

UsageFault.

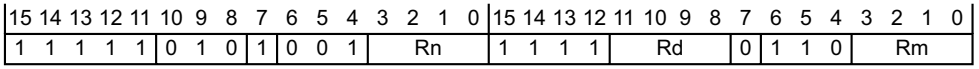
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.192 UHADD16

Unsigned Halving Add 16 performs two unsigned 16-bit integer additions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum1<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum2<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

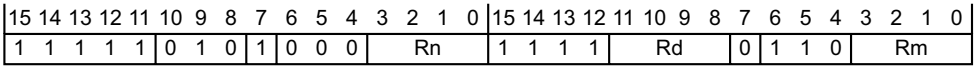
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.193 UHADD8

Unsigned Halving Add 8 performs four unsigned 8-bit integer additions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) + UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) + UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) + UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) + UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = sum1<8:1>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = sum2<8:1>;
    R[d]<23:16> = sum3<8:1>;
    R[d]<31:24> = sum4<8:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

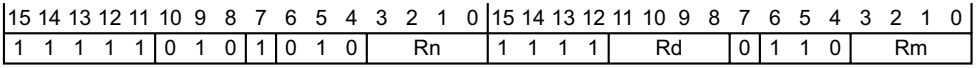
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.194 UHASX

Unsigned Halving Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer addition and one unsigned 16-bit subtraction, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `UHADDSUBX<c>` is equivalent to `UHASX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = sum<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

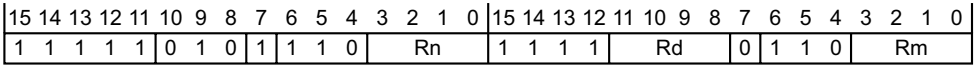
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.195 UHSAX

Unsigned Halving Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer subtraction and one unsigned 16-bit addition, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHSAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHSAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax UHSUBADDX<c> is equivalent to UHSAX<c>.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

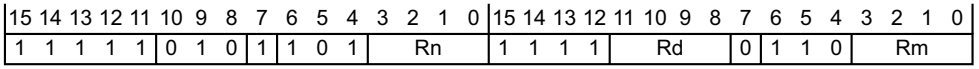
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.196 UHSUB16

Unsigned Halving Subtract 16 performs two unsigned 16-bit integer subtractions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHSUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHSUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff1<16:1>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff2<16:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

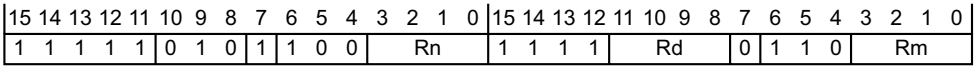
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.197 UHSUB8

Unsigned Halving Subtract 8 performs four unsigned 8-bit integer subtractions, halves the results, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UHSUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UHSUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) - UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) - UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) - UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) - UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = diff1<8:1>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = diff2<8:1>;
    R[d]<23:16> = diff3<8:1>;
    R[d]<31:24> = diff4<8:1>;
```

Exceptions

None.

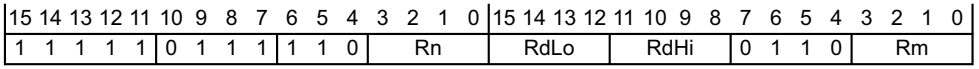
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.198 UMAAL

Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Accumulate Long multiplies two unsigned 32-bit values to produce a 64-bit value, adds two unsigned 32-bit values, and writes the 64-bit result to two registers.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UMAAL<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UMAAL{<c>}{<q>}  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Supplies one of the 32 bit values to be added, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Supplies the other of the 32 bit values to be added, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first multiply operand.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second multiply operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = UInt(R[n]) * UInt(R[m]) + UInt(R[dHi]) + UInt(R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

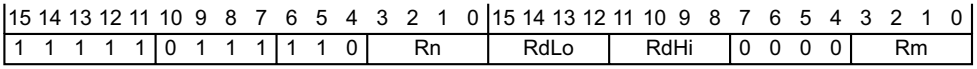
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.199 UMLAL

Unsigned Multiply Accumulate Long multiplies two unsigned 32-bit values to produce a 64-bit value, and accumulates this with a 64-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
UMLAL<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	Rn				RdLo				RdHi				0	0	0	0	Rm			

```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UMLAL<c><q>  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Supplies the lower 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Supplies the upper 32 bits of the accumulate value, and is the destination register for the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = UInt(R[n]) * UInt(R[m]) + UInt(R[dHi]:R[dLo]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

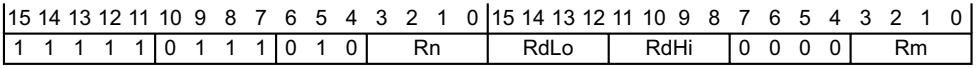
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.200 UMULL

Unsigned Multiply Long multiplies two 32-bit unsigned values to produce a 64-bit result.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
UMULL<c> <RdLo>,<RdHi>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
dLo = UInt(RdLo);  dHi = UInt(RdHi);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
if dLo IN {13,15} || dHi IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
if dHi == dLo then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UMULL<c><q>  <RdLo>, <RdHi>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<RdLo>` Stores the lower 32 bits of the result.

`<RdHi>` Stores the upper 32 bits of the result.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = UInt(R[n]) * UInt(R[m]);
    R[dHi] = result<63:32>;
    R[dLo] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

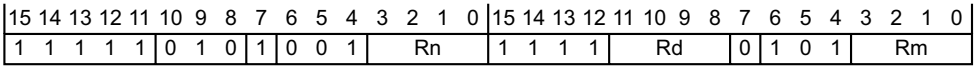
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.201 UQADD16

Unsigned Saturating Add 16 performs two unsigned 16-bit integer additions, saturates the results to the 16-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^{16} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQADD16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQADD16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = UnsignedSat(sum1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = UnsignedSat(sum2, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

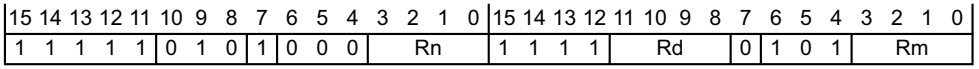
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.202 UQADD8

Unsigned Saturating Add 8 performs four unsigned 8-bit integer additions, saturates the results to the 8-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^8 - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQADD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQADD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) + UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    sum2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) + UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    sum3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) + UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    sum4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) + UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = UnsignedSat(sum1, 8);
    R[d]<15:8>  = UnsignedSat(sum2, 8);
    R[d]<23:16> = UnsignedSat(sum3, 8);
    R[d]<31:24> = UnsignedSat(sum4, 8);
```

Exceptions

None.

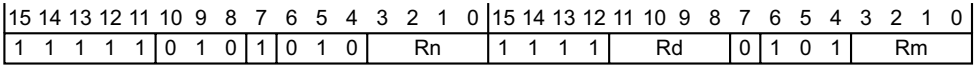
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.203 UQASX

Unsigned Saturating Add and Subtract with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer addition and one unsigned 16-bit subtraction, saturates the results to the 16-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^{16} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQASX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQASX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `UQADDSUBX<c>` is equivalent to `UQASX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) + UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = UnsignedSat(diff, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = UnsignedSat(sum, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

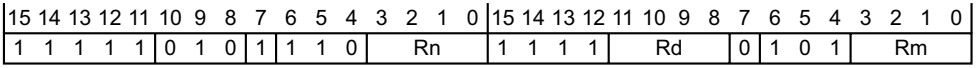
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.204 UQSAX

Unsigned Saturating Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer subtraction and one unsigned 16-bit addition, saturates the results to the 16-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^{16} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQSAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQSAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `UQSUBADDX<c>` is equivalent to `UQSAX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = UnsignedSat(sum, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = UnsignedSat(diff, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

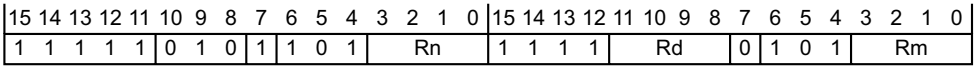
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.205 UQSUB16

Unsigned Saturating Subtract 16 performs two unsigned 16-bit integer subtractions, saturates the results to the 16-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^{16} - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQSUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQSUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = UnsignedSat(diff1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = UnsignedSat(diff2, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

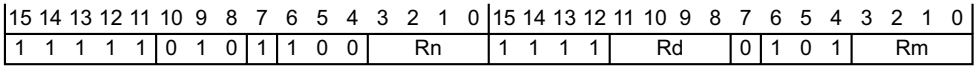
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.206 UQSUB8

Unsigned Saturating Subtract 8 performs four unsigned 8-bit integer subtractions, saturates the results to the 8-bit unsigned integer range $0 \le x \le 2^8 - 1$, and writes the results to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UQSUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UQSUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) - UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) - UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) - UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) - UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = UnsignedSat(diff1, 8);
    R[d]<15:8>  = UnsignedSat(diff2, 8);
    R[d]<23:16> = UnsignedSat(diff3, 8);
    R[d]<31:24> = UnsignedSat(diff4, 8);
```

Exceptions

None.

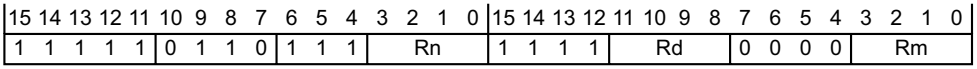
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.207 USAD8

Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences performs four unsigned 8-bit subtractions, and adds the absolute values of the differences together.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USAD8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USAD8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Rd>	The destination register.
<Rn>	The first operand register.
<Rm>	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    absdiff1 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<7:0>)   - UInt(R[m]<7:0>));
    absdiff2 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<15:8>)  - UInt(R[m]<15:8>));
    absdiff3 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<23:16>) - UInt(R[m]<23:16>));
    absdiff4 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<31:24>) - UInt(R[m]<31:24>));
    result = absdiff1 + absdiff2 + absdiff3 + absdiff4;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

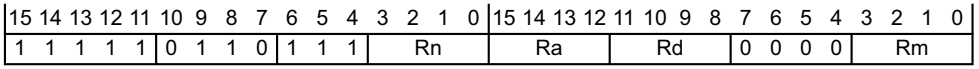
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.208 USADA8

Unsigned Sum of Absolute Differences and Accumulate performs four unsigned 8-bit subtractions, and adds the absolute values of the differences to a 32-bit accumulate operand.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USADA8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>,<Ra>
```




```
if Ra == '1111' then SEE USAD8;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  a == UInt(Ra);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} || a == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USADA8{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>, <Ra>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<Ra>` The register that contains the accumulation value.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    absdiff1 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<7:0>)   - UInt(R[m]<7:0>));
    absdiff2 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<15:8>)  - UInt(R[m]<15:8>));
    absdiff3 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<23:16>) - UInt(R[m]<23:16>));
    absdiff4 = Abs(UInt(R[n]<31:24>) - UInt(R[m]<31:24>));
    result = UInt(R[a]) + absdiff1 + absdiff2 + absdiff3 + absdiff4;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

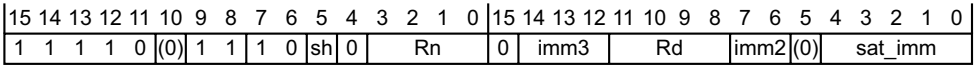
A7.7.209 USAT

Unsigned Saturate saturates an optionally-shifted signed value to a selected unsigned range.

The Q flag is set to 1 if the operation saturates.

Encoding T1 ARMv7-M

```
USAT<c> <Rd>,#<imm5>,<Rn>{,<shift>}
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	(0)	1	1	1	0	sh	0	Rn				0	imm3			Rd				imm2		(0)	sat_imm				

```
if sh == '1' && (imm3:imm2) == '00000' then
    if HaveDSPExt() then SEE USAT16 else UNDEFINED;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  saturate_to = UInt(sat_imm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift(sh:'0', imm3:imm2);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
USAT<c><q>  <Rd>, #<imm>, <Rn> {,<shift>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<imm>` Specifies the bit position for saturation, in the range 0 to 31.

`<Rn>` Specifies the register that contains the value to be saturated.

`<shift>` Specifies the optional shift. If present, it must be one of:

LSL #*N* *N* must be in the range 0 to 31.

ASR #*N* *N* must be in the range 1 to 31.

If `<shift>` is omitted, `LSL #0` is used.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand = Shift(R[n], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);  // APSR.C ignored
    (result, sat) = UnsignedSatQ(SInt(operand), saturate_to);
    R[d] = ZeroExtend(result, 32);
    if sat then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

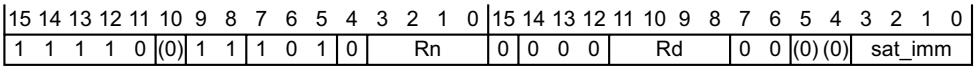
A7.7.210 USAT16

Unsigned Saturate 16 saturates two signed 16-bit values to a selected unsigned range.

The Q flag is set to 1 if the operation saturates.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USAT16<c> <Rd>,#<imm4>,<Rn>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  saturate_to = UInt(sat_imm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USAT16{<c>}{<q>}  <Rd>, #<imm>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<imm>`	The bit position for saturation, in the range 0 to 15.
`<Rn>`	The register that contains the values to be saturated.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result1, sat1) = UnsignedSatQ(SInt(R[n]<15:0>), saturate_to);
    (result2, sat2) = UnsignedSatQ(SInt(R[n]<31:16>), saturate_to);
    R[d]<15:0> = ZeroExtend(result1, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = ZeroExtend(result2, 16);
    if sat1 || sat2 then
        APSR.Q = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

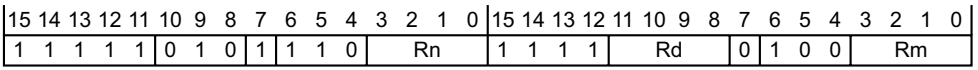
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.211 USAX

Unsigned Subtract and Add with Exchange exchanges the two halfwords of the second operand, performs one unsigned 16-bit integer subtraction and one unsigned 16-bit addition, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USAX<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USAX{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

The pre-UAL syntax `USUBADDX<c>` is equivalent to `USAX<c>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    sum  = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) + UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    diff = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = sum<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if sum  >= 0x10000 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if diff >= 0 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

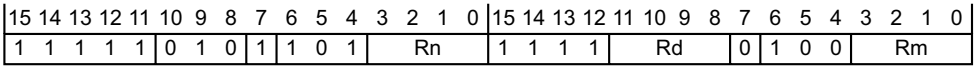
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.212 USUB16

Unsigned Subtract 16 performs two 16-bit unsigned integer subtractions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the subtractions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USUB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USUB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Rd> The destination register.

<Rn> The first operand register.

<Rm> The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<15:0>) - UInt(R[m]<15:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<31:16>) - UInt(R[m]<31:16>);
    R[d]<15:0>  = diff1<15:0>;
    R[d]<31:16> = diff2<15:0>;
    APSR.GE<1:0> = if diff1 >= 0 then '11' else '00';
    APSR.GE<3:2> = if diff2 >= 0 then '11' else '00';
```

Exceptions

None.

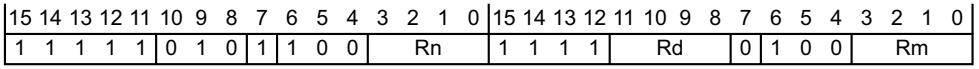
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.213 USUB8

Unsigned Subtract 8 performs four 8-bit unsigned integer subtractions, and writes the results to the destination register. It sets the APSR.GE bits according to the results of the subtractions.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
USUB8<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
if d IN {13,15} || n IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
USUB8{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Rd>`	The destination register.
`<Rn>`	The first operand register.
`<Rm>`	The second operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    diff1 = UInt(R[n]<7:0>) - UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    diff2 = UInt(R[n]<15:8>) - UInt(R[m]<15:8>);
    diff3 = UInt(R[n]<23:16>) - UInt(R[m]<23:16>);
    diff4 = UInt(R[n]<31:24>) - UInt(R[m]<31:24>);
    R[d]<7:0>   = diff1<7:0>;
    R[d]<15:8>  = diff2<7:0>;
    R[d]<23:16> = diff3<7:0>;
    R[d]<31:24> = diff4<7:0>;
    APSR.GE<0>  = if diff1 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<1>  = if diff2 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<2>  = if diff3 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
    APSR.GE<3>  = if diff4 >= 0 then '1' else '0';
```

Exceptions

None.

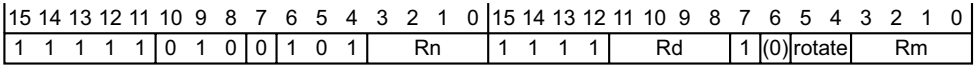
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.214 UXTAB

Unsigned Extend and Add Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, zero-extends it to 32 bits, adds the result to the value in another register, and writes the final result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UXTAB<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE UXTB;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTAB{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = R[n] + ZeroExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

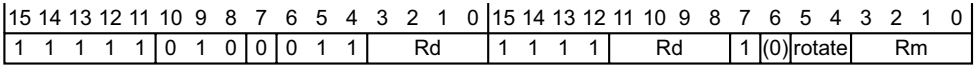
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.215 UXTAB16

Unsigned Extend and Add Byte 16 extracts two 8-bit values from a register, zero-extends them to 16 bits each, adds the results to two 16-bit values from another register, and writes the final results to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit values.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UXTAB16<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE UXTB16;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTAB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d]<15:0>  = R[n]<15:0> + ZeroExtend(rotated<7:0>, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = R[n]<31:16> + ZeroExtend(rotated<23:16>, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

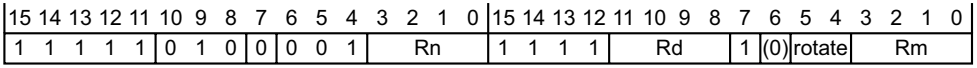
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.216 UXTAH

Unsigned Extend and Add Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, zero-extends it to 32 bits, adds the result to a value from another register, and writes the final result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 16-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UXTAH<c> <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
if Rn == '1111' then SEE UXTH;
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || n == 13 || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTAH{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The first operand register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = R[n] + ZeroExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

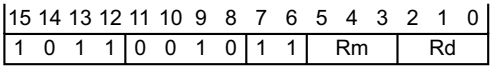
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.217 UXTB

Unsigned Extend Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, zero extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7

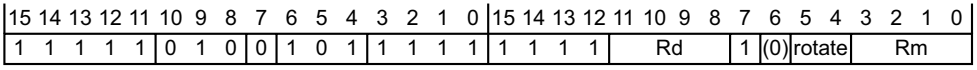
```
UXTB<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
UXTB<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTB<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

`<rotation>`

This can be any one of:

- `ROR #8`.
- `ROR #16`.
- `ROR #24`.
- Omitted.

Note

If your assembler accepts shifts by `#0` and treats them as equivalent to no shift or `LSL #0`, then it must accept `ROR #0` here. It is equivalent to omitting `<rotation>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = ZeroExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

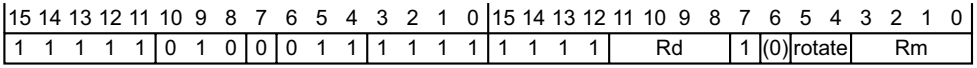
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.218 UXTB16

Unsigned Extend Byte 16 extracts two 8-bit values from a register, zero-extends them to 16 bits each, and writes the results to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 8-bit values.

Encoding T1 ARMv7E-M

```
UXTB16<c> <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTB16{<c>}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The second operand register.

`<rotation>` This can be any one of:

omitted	encoded as rotate = ’00’
`ROR #8`	encoded as rotate = ’01’
`ROR #16`	encoded as rotate = ’10’
`ROR #24`	encoded as rotate = ’11’.

Note

An assembler can permit `ROR #0` to mean the same thing as omitting the rotation, possibly with restrictions on the permitted encodings, but this is not standard UAL and must not be used for disassembly.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d]<15:0>  = ZeroExtend(rotated<7:0>, 16);
    R[d]<31:16> = ZeroExtend(rotated<23:16>, 16);
```

Exceptions

None.

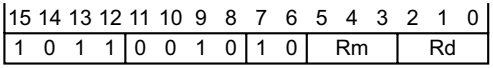
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.219 UXTH

Unsigned Extend Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, zero extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register. You can specify a rotation by 0, 8, 16, or 24 bits before extracting the 16-bit value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7

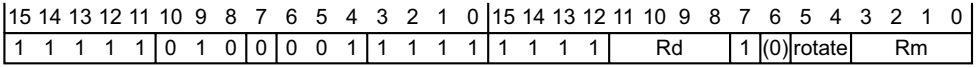
```
UXTH<c> <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
UXTH<c>.W <Rd>,<Rm>{,<rotation>}
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = UInt(rotate:'000');
if d IN {13,15} || m IN {13,15} then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
UXTH<c><q>  <Rd>, <Rm> {, <rotation>}
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register.

`<Rm>` Specifies the register that contains the second operand.

`<rotation>`

This can be any one of:

- `ROR #8`.
- `ROR #16`.
- `ROR #24`.
- Omitted.

Note

If your assembler accepts shifts by `#0` and treats them as equivalent to no shift or `LSL #0`, then it must accept `ROR #0` here. It is equivalent to omitting `<rotation>`.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = ZeroExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.220 VABS

Floating-point Absolute takes the absolute value of a single-precision register, and places the result in a second single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VABS<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	0	0	0	0	Vd				1	0	1	0	1	1	M	0	Vm			

```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VABS{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPAbs(S[m]);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.221 VADD

Floating-point Add adds two single-precision registers, and places the results in the destination single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VADD<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	D	1	1	Vn				Vd				1	0	1	0	N	0	M	0	Vm			

```
d = UInt(Vd:D);

n = UInt(Vn:N);

m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VADD{<c>}{<q>}.F32  {<Sd>,} <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPAdd(S[n], S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.222 VCMP, VCMPE

Floating-point Compare compares two single-precision registers, or one single-precision register and zero. It writes the result to the FPSCR flags. These are normally transferred to the ARM flags by a subsequent `VMRS` instruction.

It can optionally raise an Invalid Operation exception if either operand is any type of NaN. It always raises an Invalid Operation exception if either operand is a signaling NaN.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VCMP{E}<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	0	1	0	0	Vd				1	0	1	0	E	1	M	0	Vm			

```
quiet_nan_exc = (E == '1'); with_zero = FALSE;
d = UInt(Vd:D);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

```
VCMP{E}<c>.F32 <Sd>, #0.0
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	0	1	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	0	E	1	(0)	0	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

```
quiet_nan_exc = (E == '1');  with_zero = TRUE;
d = UInt(Vd:D);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VCMP{E}{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>                    Encoding T1
VCMP{E}{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, #0.0                    Encoding T2
```

where:

`E` If present, any NaN operand causes an Invalid Operation exception. Encoded as E = 1.
Otherwise, only a signaling NaN causes the exception. Encoded as E = 0.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    op2 = if with_zero then FPZero('0',32) else S[m];
    (FPSCR.N, FPSCR.Z, FPSCR.C, FPSCR.V) = FPCompare(S[d], op2, quiet_nan_exc, TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Invalid Operation, Input Denormal.

NaNs

The IEEE 754 standard specifies that the result of a comparison is precisely one of `<`, `==`, `>` or *unordered*. If either or both of the operands are NaNs, they are unordered, and all three of (Operand1 < Operand2), (Operand1 == Operand2) and (Operand1 > Operand2) are false. This results in the FPSCR flags being set as N=0, Z=0, C=1 and V=1.

`VCMPE` causes an Invalid Operation exception if either operand is any type of NaN. Software can use VCMPE to test for `<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`, and other predicates that cause an exception when the operands are unordered.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.223 VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)

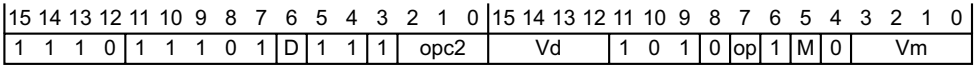
Floating-point Convert (between floating-point and integer) converts a value in a register from floating-point to a 32-bit integer, or from a 32-bit integer to floating-point, and place the result in a second register.

The floating-point to integer operation normally uses the Round towards Zero rounding mode, but can optionally use the rounding mode specified by the FPSCR. The integer to floating-point operation uses the rounding mode specified by the FPSCR.

VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point) on page A7-571 describes conversions between floating-point and 16-bit integers.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VCVT{R}<c>.S32.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
VCVT{R}<c>.U32.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
VCVT<c>.F32.<Tm> <Sd>, <Sm>
```




```
to_integer = (opc2<2> == '1');
if to_integer then
    unsigned = (opc2<0> == '0');  round_zero = (op == '1');
    d = UInt(Vd:D);  m = UInt(Vm:M);
else
    unsigned = (op == '0');  round_fpscr = FALSE;  // FALSE selects FPSCR rounding
    m = UInt(Vm:M);  d = UInt(Vd:D);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

`VCVT{R}{<c>}{<q>}.S32.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>`	opc2 = 101
`VCVT{R}{<c>}{<q>}.U32.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>`	opc2 = 100
`VCVT{<c>}{<q>}.F32.<Tm> <Sd>, <Sm>`	opc2 = 000

where:

`R` If `R` is specified, the operation uses the rounding mode specified by the FPSCR. Encoded as op = 0.

If `R` is omitted. the operation uses the Round towards Zero rounding mode. For syntaxes in which `R` is optional, op is encoded as 1 if `R` is omitted.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Tm>` The data type for the operand. It must be one of:

- `S32` encoded as op = 1
- `U32` encoded as op = 0.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The destination register and the operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    if to_integer then
        S[d] = FPToFixed(S[m], 32, 0, unsigned, round_zero, TRUE);
    else
        S[d] = FixedToFP(S[m], 32, 0, unsigned, round_fpscr, TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.224 VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)

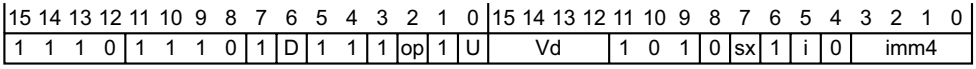
Floating-point Convert (between floating-point and fixed-point) converts a value in a register from floating-point to fixed-point, or from fixed-point to floating-point, and places the result in a second register. You can specify the fixed-point value as either signed or unsigned.

The fixed-point value can be 16-bit or 32-bit. Conversions from fixed-point values take their operand from the low-order bits of the source register and ignore any remaining bits. Signed conversions to fixed-point values sign-extend the result value to the destination register width. Unsigned conversions to fixed-point values zero-extend the result value to the destination register width.

The floating-point to fixed-point operation uses the Round towards Zero rounding mode. The fixed-point to floating-point operation uses the Round to Nearest rounding mode.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VCVT<c>.<Td>.F32 <Sd>, <Sd>, #<fbits>
VCVT<c>.F32.<Td> <Sd>, <Sd>, #<fbits>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	1	op	1	U	Vd				1	0	1	0	sx	1	i	0	imm4			

```
to_fixed = (op == '1');  unsigned = (U == '1');
size = if sx == '0' then 16 else 32;
frac_bits = size - UInt(imm4:i);
if to_fixed then
    round_zero = TRUE;
else
    round_nearest = TRUE;
d = UInt(Vd:D);
if frac_bits < 0 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VCVT{<c>}{<q>}.<Td>.F32  <Sd>, <Sd>, #<fbits>                    op = 1
VCVT{<c>}{<q>}.F32.<Td>  <Sd>, <Sd>, #<fbits>                    op = 0
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Td>` The data type for the fixed-point number. It must be one of:

- `S16` encoded as U = 0, sx = 0
- `U16` encoded as U = 1, sx = 0
- `S32` encoded as U = 0, sx = 1
- `U32` encoded as U = 1, sx = 1.

`<Sd>` The destination and operand register.

`<fbits>` The number of fraction bits in the fixed-point number:

- If `<Td>` is `S16` or `U16`, `<fbits>` must be in the range 0-16. (16 - `<fbits>`) is encoded in [imm4,i]
- I f `<Td>` is `S32` or `U32`, `<fbits>` must be in the range 1-32. (32 - `<fbits>`) is encoded in [imm4,i].

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    if to_fixed then
        result = FPToFixed(S[m], size, frac_bits, unsigned, round_zero, TRUE);
        S[d] = if unsigned then ZeroExtend(result, 32) else SignExtend(result, 32);
    else
        S[d] = FixedToFP(S[d]<size-1:0>, 32, frac_bits, unsigned, round_nearest, TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

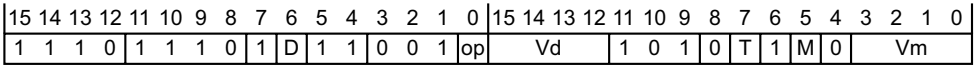
A7.7.225 VCVTB, VCVTT

Floating-point Convert Bottom and Floating-point Convert Top do one of the following:

- convert the half-precision value in the top or bottom half of a single-precision register to single-precision and write the result to a single-precision register
- convert the value in a single-precision register to half-precision and write the result into the top or bottom half of a single-precision register, preserving the other half of the target register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VCVTB<c>.F32.F16 <Sd>, <Sm>
VCVTT<c>.F32.F16 <Sd>, <Sm>
VCVTB<c>.F16.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
VCVTT<c>.F16.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```




```
half_to_single = (op == '0');
lowbit = if T == '1' then 16 else 0;
m = UInt(Vm:M);  d = UInt(Vd:D);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VCVT<y>{<c>}{<q>}.F32.F16  <Sd>, <Sm>                    op = 0
VCVT<y>{<c>}{<q>}.F16.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>                    op = 1
```

where:

<y> Specifies which half of the operand register <Sm> or destination register <Sd> is used for the operand or destination:

- B VCVTB. Encoded as T = 0. Uses the bottom half, bits [15:0], of <Sm> or <Sd>.
- T VCVTT. Encoded as T = 1. Uses the top half, bits1:16], of <Sm> or <Sd>.

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Sd> The destination register.

<Sm> The operand register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    if half_to_single then
        S[d] = FPHalfToSingle(S[m]<lowbit+15:lowbit>, TRUE);
    else
        S[d]<lowbit+15:lowbit> = FPSingleToHalf(S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Invalid Operation, Input Denormal, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

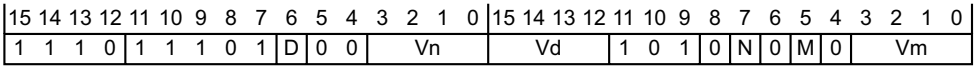
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.226 VDIV

Floating-point Divide divides one single-precision register value by another single-precision register value and writes the result to a third single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VDIV<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VDIV{<c>}{<q>}.F32  {<Sd>,} <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>` The destination register and the operand registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPDiv(S[n], S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Invalid Operation, Division by Zero, Overflow, Underflow, Inexact, Input Denormal.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

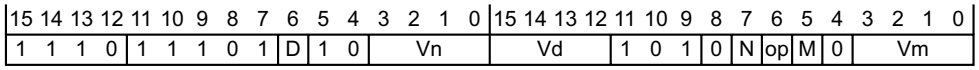
A7.7.227 VFMA, VFMS

Floating-point Fused Multiply Accumulate multiplies two single-precision registers, and accumulates the result into the destination single-precision register. The result of the multiply is not rounded before the accumulation.

Floating-point Fused Multiply Subtract negates one single-precision register and multiplies it with another single-precision register, adds the product to the destination single-precision register, and places the result in the destination single-precision register. The result of the multiply is not rounded before the addition.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VFMA<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
VFMS<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
op1_neg = (op == '1');
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VFM<y><c><q>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

<y> A, for VFMA, encoded as op=0
S, for VFMS, encoded as op=1.

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207. A VFMA or VFMS instruction must be unconditional.

<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
The destination register and the operand registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    op1 = if op1_neg then FPNeg(S[n]) else S[n];
    S[d] = FPMulAdd(S[d], op1, S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

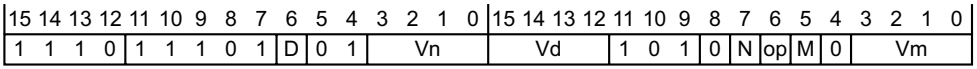
A7.7.228 VFNMA, VFNMS

Floating-point Fused Negate Multiply Accumulate negates one single-precision register value and multiplies it by another single-precision register value, adds the negation of the floating-point value in the destination single-precision register to the product, and writes the result back to the destination single-precision register. The result of the multiply is not rounded before the addition.

Floating-point Fused Negate Multiply Subtract multiplies together two single-precision register values, adds the negation of the floating-point value in the destination single-precision register to the product, and writes the result back to the destination single-precision register. The result of the multiply is not rounded before the addition.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VFNMA<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
VFNMS<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
op1_neg = (op == '1');
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VFNM<y><c><q>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

<y> A, for VFNMA, encoded as op=0
S, for VFNMS, encoded as op=1.

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207. A VFNMA or VFNMS instruction must be unconditional.

<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
The destination register and the operand registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    op1 = if op1_neg then FPNeg(S[n]) else S[n];
    S[d] = FPMulAdd(FPNeg(S[d]), op1, S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

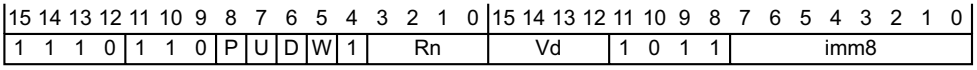
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.229 VLDM

Floating-point Load Multiple loads multiple extension registers from consecutive memory locations using an address from an ARM core register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

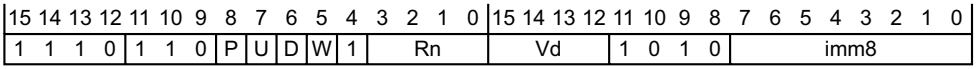
`VLDM{mode}<c> <Rn>{!}, <list>` `<list>` is consecutive 64-bit registers




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
if P == '0' && U == '1' && W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE VPOP;
if P == '1' && W == '0' then SEE VLDR;
if P == U && W == '1' then UNDEFINED;
// Remaining combinations are PUW = 010 (IA without !), 011 (IA with !), 101 (DB with !)
single_regs = FALSE;  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
d = UInt(D:Vd);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8) DIV 2;
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

`VLDM{mode}<c> <Rn>{!}, <list>` `<list>` is consecutive 32-bit registers




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
if P == '0' && U == '1' && W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE VPOP;
if P == '1' && W == '0' then SEE VLDR;
if P == U && W == '1' then UNDEFINED;
// Remaining combinations are PUW = 010 (IA without !), 011 (IA with !), 101 (DB with !)
single_regs = TRUE;  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
d = UInt(Vd:D);  n = UInt(Rn); imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if regs == 0 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings See *64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VLDM{<mode>}{<c>}{<q>}{.<size>}  <Rn>{!}, <list>
```

where:

`<mode>` The addressing mode:

- `IA` Increment After. The consecutive addresses start at the address specified in `<Rn>`. This is the default and can be omitted. Encoded as P = 0, U = 1.
- `DB` Decrement Before. The consecutive addresses end just before the address specified in `<Rn>`. Encoded as P = 1, U = 0.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<size>` An optional data size specifier. If present, it must be equal to the size in bits, 32 or 64, of the registers in `<list>`.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. This is required if `<mode>` == `DB`, and is optional if `<mode>` == `IA`. Encoded as W = 1.

If `!` is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>` in this way. Encoded as W = 0.

`<list>` The extension registers to be loaded, as a list of consecutively numbered registers, separated by commas and surrounded by brackets. It is encoded in the instruction by setting D and Vd to specify the first register in the list, and imm8 to the number of registers in the list. `<list>` must contain at least one register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    address = if add then R[n] else R[n]-imm32;
    if wback then R[n] = if add then R[n]+imm32 else R[n]-imm32;
    for r = 0 to regs-1
        if single_regs then
            S[d+r] = MemA[address,4];  address = address+4;
        else
            word1 = MemA[address,4];  word2 = MemA[address+4,4];  address = address+8;
            // Combine the word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
            D[d+r] = if BigEndian() then word1:word2 else word2:word1;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

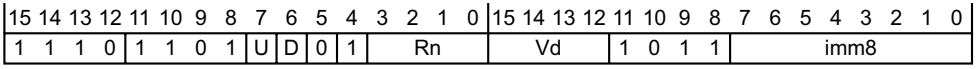
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.230 VLDR

Floating-point Load Register loads an extension register from memory, using an address from an ARM core register, with an optional offset.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

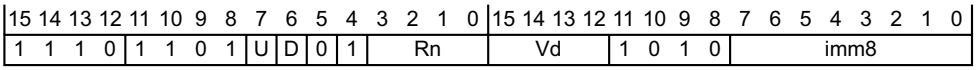
```
VLDR<c> <Dd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]
VLDR<c> <Dd>, <label>
VLDR<c> <Dd>, [PC,#-0]                                  Special case
```




```
single_reg = FALSE;  add = (U == '1');  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
d = UInt(D:Vd);  n = UInt(Rn);
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

```
VLDR<c> <Sd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]
VLDR<c> <Sd>, <label>
VLDR<c> <Sd>, [PC,#-0]                                  Special case
```




```
single_reg = TRUE;  add = (U == '1');  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
d = UInt(Vd:D);  n = UInt(Rn);
```

Assembler syntax

`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.64}  <Dd>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Encoding T1, immediate form
`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.64}  <Dd>, <label>`	Encoding T1, normal literal form
`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.64}  <Dd>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Encoding T1, alternative literal form
`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.32}  <Sd>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]`	Encoding T2, immediate form
`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.32}  <Sd>, <label>`	Encoding T2, normal literal form
`VLDR{<c>}{<q>}{.32}  <Sd>, [PC, #+/-<imm>]`	Encoding T2, alternative literal form

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`.32, .64` Optional data size specifiers.

`<Dd>` The destination register for a doubleword load.

`<Sd>` The destination register for a singleword load.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

`+/-` Is + or omitted if the immediate offset is to be added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – if it is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). `#0` and `#-0` generate different instructions.

`<imm>` The immediate offset used to form the address. For the immediate forms of the syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, in which case the #0 form of the instruction is assembled. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range 0 to 1020.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item to be loaded. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the `Align(PC,4)` value of this instruction to the label. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range -1020 to 1020.

If the offset is zero or positive, `imm32` is equal to the offset and `add == TRUE`.

If the offset is negative, `imm32` is equal to minus the offset and `add == FALSE`.

For the literal forms of the instruction, the base register is encoded as '1111' to indicate that the PC is the base register.

The alternative syntax permits the addition or subtraction of the offset and the immediate offset to be specified separately, including permitting a subtraction of 0 that cannot be specified using the normal syntax. For more information, see *Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax* on page A4-127.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    base = if n == 15 then Align(PC,4) else R[n];
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    if single_reg then
        S[d] = MemA[address,4];
    else
        word1 = MemA[address,4];  word2 = MemA[address+4,4];
        // Combine the word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
        D[d] = if BigEndian() then word1:word2 else word2:word1;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.231 VMLA, VMLS

Floating-point Multiply Accumulate multiplies two single-precision registers, and accumulates the results into the destination single-precision register.

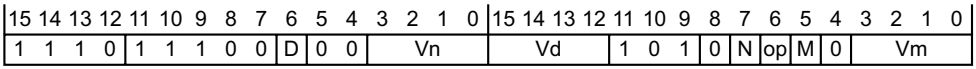
Floating-point Multiply Subtract multiplies two single-precision registers, subtracts the product from the destination single-precision register, and places the results in the destination single-precision register.

Note

ARM recommends that software does not use the `VMLS` instruction in the *Round towards Plus Infinity* and *Round towards Minus Infinity* rounding modes, because the rounding of the product and of the sum can change the result of the instruction in opposite directions, defeating the purpose of these rounding modes.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMLA<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
VMLS<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
add = (op == '0');
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VML<y>{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

<y>	A, for VMLA, encoded as op=0 S, for VMLS, encoded as op=0.
<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>	The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    addend = if add then FPMul(S[n], S[m], TRUE) else FPNeg(FPMul(S[n], S[m], TRUE));
    S[d] = FPAdd(S[d], addend, TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.232 VMOV (immediate)

VMOV (immediate) places an immediate constant into the destination single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c>.F32 <Sd>, #<imm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	imm4H				Vd				1	0	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	imm4L			

```
d = UInt(D:Vd);  imm32 = VFPExpandImm(imm4H:imm4L, 32);  regs = 1;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, #<imm>
```

where:

<c>, <q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

<Sd> The destination register.

<imm> A floating-point constant.

For the encoding of <imm>, see:*Operation of modified immediate constants in floating-point instructions* on page A6-196.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = imm32;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

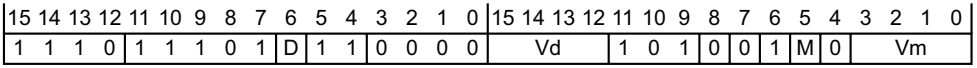
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.233 VMOV (register)

VMOV (register) copies the contents of one single-precision register to another.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	0	0	0	0	Vd				1	0	1	0	0	1	M	0	Vm			

```
d = UInt(Vd:D);  m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The destination register and the source register, for a singleword operation.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = S[m];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

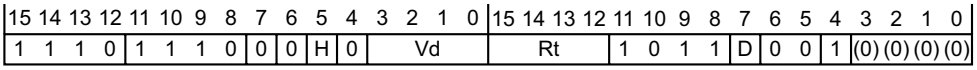
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.234 VMOV (ARM core register to scalar)

VMOV (ARM core register to scalar) transfers one word from an ARM core register to the upper or lower half of a doubleword register.

Note

The pseudocode descriptions of the instruction operation convert the doubleword register description into the corresponding single-precision register, so D3[1], indicating the upper word of D3, becomes S7.



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	H	0	Vd				Rt				1	0	1	1	D	0	0	1	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP,

```
VMOV<c>.<size> <Dd[x]>, <Rt>

d = UInt(D:Vd:H);  t = UInt(Rt);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}{.<size>}  <Dd[x]>, <Rt>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<size>	The data size. It must be either 32 or omitted.
<Dd[x]>	The doubleword register and required word. x is 1 for the top half of the register, or 0 for the bottom half, and is encoded in H.
<Rt>	The source ARM core register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = R[t];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.235 VMOV (scalar to ARM core register)

VMOV (scalar to ARM core register) transfers one word from the upper or lower half of a doubleword register to an ARM core register.

Note

The pseudocode descriptions of the instruction operation convert the doubleword register description into the corresponding single-precision register, so D3[1], indicating the upper word of D3, becomes S7.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c>.<dt> <Rt>, <Dn[x]>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	H	1	Vn				Rt				1	0	1	1	N	0	0	1	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(N:Vn:H);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}{.<dt>}  <Rt>, <Dn[x]>
```

where:

<c>, <q>	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
<dt>	The data size. It must be either 32 or omitted.
<Dn[x]>	The doubleword register and required word. x is 1 for the top half of the register, or 0 for the bottom half, and is encoded in H.
<Rt>	The destination ARM core register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    R[t] = S[n];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.236 VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)

Floating-point Move (between ARM core register and single-precision register) transfers the contents of a single-precision register to an ARM core register, or the contents of an ARM core register to a single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c> <Sn>, <Rt>
VMOV<c> <Rt>, <Sn>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	op	Vn				Rt				1	0	1	0	N	(0)	(0)	1	(0)	(0)	(0)	(0)

```
to_arm_register = (op == '1');  t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Vn:N);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Sn>, <Rt>                                  op = 0
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Rt>, <Sn>                                  op = 1
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sn>` The single-precision register.

`<Rt>` The ARM core register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteVFPCheck();
    if to_arm_register then
        R[t] = S[n];
    else
        S[n] = R[t];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

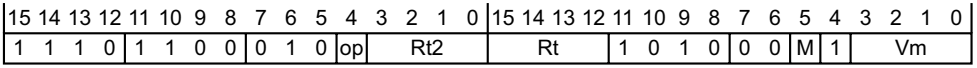
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.237 VMOV (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers)

Floating-point Move (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers) transfers the contents of two consecutively numbered single-precision registers to two ARM core registers, or the contents of two ARM core registers to a pair of single-precision registers. The ARM core registers do not have to be contiguous.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c> <Sm>, <Sm1>, <Rt>, <Rt2>
VMOV<c> <Rt>, <Rt2>, <Sm>, <Sm1>
```




```
to_arm_registers = (op == '1');  t = UInt(Rt);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  m = UInt(Vm:M);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 || m == 31 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if to_arm_registers && t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Sm>, <Sm1>, <Rt>, <Rt2>                    op = 0
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Rt>, <Rt2>, <Sm>, <Sm1>                    op = 1
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sm>` The first single-precision register.

`<Sm1>` The second single-precision register. This is the next single-precision register after `<Sm>`.

`<Rt>` The ARM core register that `<Sm>` is transferred to or from.

`<Rt2>` The ARM core register that `<Sm1>` is transferred to or from.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    if to_arm_registers then
        R[t] = S[m];
        R[t2] = S[m+1];
    else
        S[m] = R[t];
        S[m+1] = R[t2];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

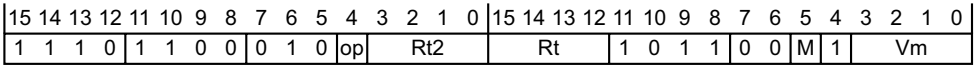
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.238 VMOV (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register)

Floating-point Move (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register) transfers two words from two ARM core registers to a doubleword register, or from a doubleword register to two ARM core registers.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMOV<c> <Dm>, <Rt>, <Rt2>
VMOV<c> <Rt>, <Rt2>, <Dm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	op	Rt2				Rt				1	0	1	1	0	0	M	1	Vm			

```
to_arm_registers = (op == '1');  t = UInt(Rd);  t2 = UInt(Rt2);  m = UInt(M:Vm);
if t == 15 || t2 == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if t == 13 || t2 == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if to_arm_registers && t == t2 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Dm>, <Rt>, <Rt2>                    op = 0
VMOV{<c>}{<q>}  <Rt>, <Rt2>, <Dm>                    op = 1
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Dm>` The double-precision register.

`<Rt>, <Rt2>` The two ARM core registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    if to_arm_registers then
        R[t] = D[m]<31:0>;
        R[t2] = D[m]<63:32>;
    else
        D[m]<31:0> = R[t];
        D[m]<63:32> = R[t2];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

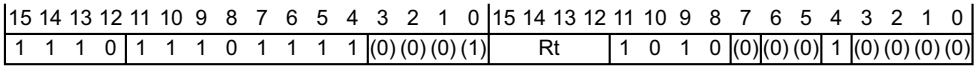
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.239 VMRS

Move to ARM core register from floating-point Special Register moves the value of the FPSCR to a general-purpose register, or the values of the FCSR flags to the APSR.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMRS<c> <Rt>, FPSCR
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);
if t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMRS{<c>}{<q>}  <Rt>, FPSCR
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The destination ARM core register. This register can be R0-R14 or APSR_nzcv. APSR_nzcv is encoded as Rt = ’1111’, and the instruction transfers the FPSCR N, Z, C, and V flags to the APSR N, Z, C, and V flags.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    SerializeVFP();
    VFPExcBarrier();
    if t == 15 then
        APSR.N = FPSCR.N;
        APSR.Z = FPSCR.Z;
        APSR.C = FPSCR.C;
        APSR.V = FPSCR.V;
    else
        R[t] = FPSCR;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

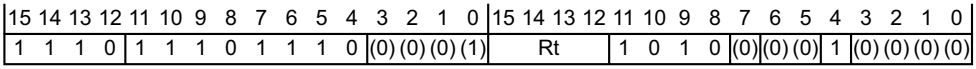
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.240 VMSR

Move to floating-point Special Register from ARM core register moves the value of a general-purpose register to the FPSCR.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMSR<c> FPSCR, <Rt>
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);
if t == 15 || t == 13 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMSR{<c>}{<q>}  FPSCR, <Rt>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rt>` The general-purpose register to be transferred to the FPSCR.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    SerializeVFP();
    VFPExcBarrier();
    FPSCR = R[t];
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

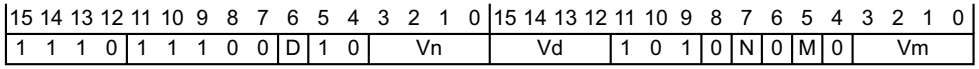
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.241 VMUL

Floating-point Multiply multiplies two single-precision register values, and places the result in the destination single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VMUL<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VMUL{<c>}{<q>}.F32  {<Sd>,} <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPMul(S[n], S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

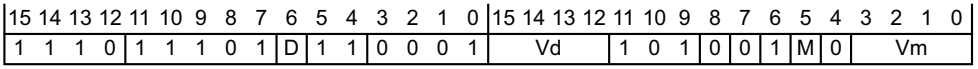
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.242 VNEG

Floating-point Negate inverts the sign bit of a single-precision register, and places the results in a second single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VNEG<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```




```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VNEG{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPNeg(S[m]);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.243 VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL

Floating-point Multiply Accumulate and Negate multiplies two single-precision register values, adds the negation of the single-precision value in the destination register to the negation of the product, and writes the result back to the destination register.

Floating-point Multiply Subtract and Negate multiplies two single-precision register values, adds the negation of the floating-point value in the destination register to the product, and writes the result back to the destination register.

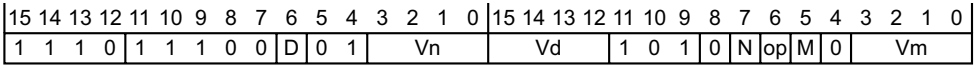
Floating-point Multiply and Negate multiplies two single-precision register values, and writes the negation of the result to the destination register.

Note

ARM recommends that software does not use the `VNMLA` instruction in the *Round towards Plus Infinity* and *Round towards Minus Infinity* rounding modes, because the rounding of the product and of the sum can change the result of the instruction in opposite directions, defeating the purpose of these rounding modes.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

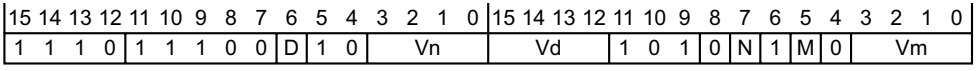
```
VNMLA<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
VNMLS<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
type = if op == '1' then VFPNegMul_VNMLA else VFPNegMul_VNMLS;
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

```
VNMUL<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```




```
type = VFPNegMul_VNMUL;
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VNML<y>{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>          Encoding T1
VNMUL{<c>}{<q>}.F32  {<Sd>,} <Sn>, <Sm>          Encoding T2
```

where:

`<y>`	`A`, for `VNMLA`, encoded as op=0 `S`, for `VNMLS`, encoded as op=1.
`<c>, <q>`	See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.
`<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>`	The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
enumeration VFPNegMul {VFPNegMul_VNMLA, VFPNegMul_VNMLS, VFPNegMul_VNMUL};

if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    product = FPMul(S[n], S[m], TRUE);
    case type of
        when VFPNegMul_VNMLA  S[d] = FPAdd(FPNeg(S[d]), FPNeg(product), TRUE);
        when VFPNegMul_VNMLS  S[d] = FPAdd(FPNeg(S[d]), product, TRUE);
        when VFPNegMul_VNMUL  S[d] = FPNeg(product);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, Inexact, Input Denormal.

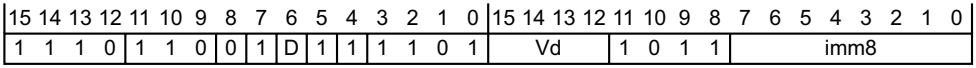
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.244 VPOP

Floating-point Pop Registers loads multiple consecutive floating-point registers from the stack.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

`VPOP <list>` — `<list>` is consecutive 64-bit registers

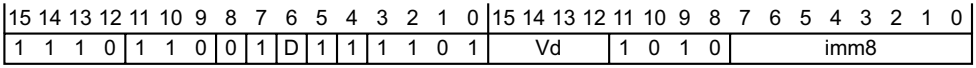


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	D	1	1	1	1	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	1	imm8							

```
single_regs = FALSE;  d = UInt(D:Vd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8) DIV 2;
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

`VPOP <list>` — `<list>` is consecutive 32-bit registers



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	D	1	1	1	1	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	0	imm8							

```
single_regs = TRUE;  d = UInt(Vd:D); imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8);
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VPOP{<c>}{<q>}{.<size>}  <list>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<size>` An optional data size specifier. If present, it must be equal to the size in bits, 32 or 64, of the floating-point registers in `<list>`.

`<list>` The extension registers to be loaded, as a list of consecutively numbered doubleword or single-precision floating-point registers, separated by commas and surrounded by brackets.

`<list>` must contain at least one floating-point register, and not more than sixteen.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    address = SP;
    SP = SP + imm32;
    if single_regs then
        for r = 0 to regs-1
            S[d+r] = MemA[address,4];  address = address+4;
    else
        for r = 0 to regs-1
            word1 = MemA[address,4];  word2 = MemA[address+4,4];  address = address+8;
            // Combine the word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
            D[d+r] = if BigEndian() then word1:word2 else word2:word1;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

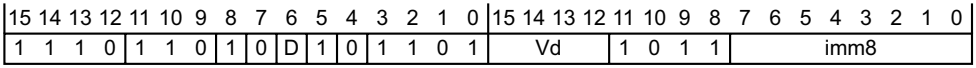
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.245 VPUSH

Floating-point Push Registers stores multiple consecutive floating-point registers to the stack.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

`VPUSH<c> <list>` — `<list>` is consecutive 64-bit registers

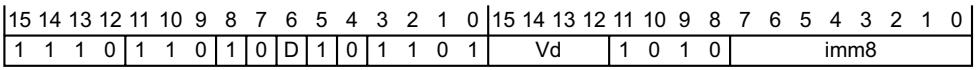


15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	D	1	0	1	1	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	1	imm8							

```
single_regs = FALSE;  d = UInt(D:Vd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8) DIV 2;
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

`VPUSH<c> <list>` — `<list>` is consecutive 32-bit registers



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	D	1	0	1	1	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	0	imm8							

```
single_regs = TRUE;  d = UInt(Vd:D);
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  regs = UInt(imm8);
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VPUSH{<c>}{<q>}{.<size>}  <list>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<size>` An optional data size specifier. If present, it must be equal to the size in bits, 32 or 64, of the registers in `<list>`.

`<list>` The extension registers to be stored, as a list of consecutively numbered double-precision or single-precision floating-point registers, separated by commas and surrounded by brackets.

`<list>` must contain at least one floating-point register, and not more than sixteen.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    address = SP - imm32;
    SP = SP - imm32;
    if single_regs then
        for r = 0 to regs-1
            MemA[address,4] = S[d+r];  address = address+4;
    else
        for r = 0 to regs-1
            // Store as two word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
            MemA[address,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d+r]<63:32> else D[d+r]<31:0>;
            MemA[address+4,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d+r]<31:0> else D[d+r]<63:32>;
            address = address+8;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

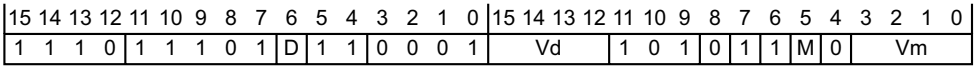
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.246 VSQRT

Floating-point Square Root calculates the square root of a single-precision register value and writes the result to another single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VSQRT<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	D	1	1	0	0	0	1	Vd				1	0	1	0	1	1	M	0	Vm			

```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VSQRT{<c>}{<q>}.F32  <Sd>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPSqrt(S[m]);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Invalid Operation, Inexact, Input Denormal.

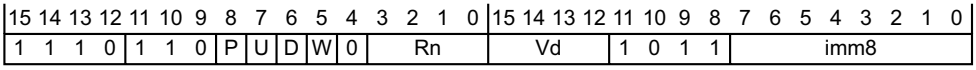
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.247 VSTM

Floating-point Store Multiple stores multiple extension registers to consecutive memory locations using an address from an ARM core register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

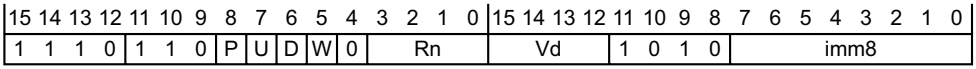
`VSTM{mode}<c> <Rn>{!}, <list>` `<list>` is consecutive 64-bit registers




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
if P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE VPUSH;
if P == '1' && W == '0' then SEE VSTR;
if P == U && W == '1' then UNDEFINED;
// Remaining combinations are PUW = 010 (IA without !), 011 (IA with !), 101 (DB with !)
single_regs = FALSE;  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');
d = UInt(D:Vd);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
regs = UInt(imm8) DIV 2;
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if regs == 0 || regs > 16 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

`VSTM{mode}<c> <Rn>{!}, <list>` `<list>` is consecutive 32-bit registers




```
if P == '0' && U == '0' && W == '0' then SEE "Related encodings";
if P == '1' && U == '0' && W == '1' && Rn == '1101' then SEE VPUSH;
if P == '1' && W == '0' then SEE VSTR;
if P == U && W == '1' then UNDEFINED;
// Remaining combinations are PUW = 010 (IA without !), 011 (IA with !), 101 (DB with !)
single_regs = TRUE;  add = (U == '1');  wback = (W == '1');  d = UInt(Vd:D);  n = UInt(Rn);
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  regs = UInt(imm8);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if regs == 0 || (d+regs) > 32 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Related encodings See *64-bit transfers between ARM core and extension registers* on page A6-199

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VSTM{<mode>}{<c>}{<q>}{.<size>}  <Rn>{!}, <list>
```

where:

`<mode>` The addressing mode:

- `IA` Increment After. The consecutive addresses start at the address specified in `<Rn>`. This is the default and can be omitted. Encoded as P = 0, U = 1.
- `DB` Decrement Before. The consecutive addresses end just before the address specified in `<Rn>`. Encoded as P = 1, U = 0.

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<size>` An optional data size specifier. If present, it must be equal to the size in bits, 32 or 64, of the registers in `<list>`.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. Required if <mode> == `DB`. Encoded as W = 1.

If `!` is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>` in this way. Encoded as W = 0.

`<list>` The floating-point registers to be stored, as a list of consecutively numbered doubleword (encoding T1) or singleword (encoding T2) floating-point registers, separated by commas and surrounded by brackets. It is encoded in the instruction by setting D and Vd to specify the first floating-point register in the list, and imm8 to twice the number of floating-point registers in the list (encoding T1) or the number of floating-point registers (encoding T2). `<list>` must contain at least one floating-point register. If it contains doubleword floating-point registers it must not contain more than 16 floating-point registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    address = if add then R[n] else R[n]-imm32;
    if wback then R[n] = if add then R[n}+imm32 else R[n]-imm32;
    for r = 0 to regs-1
        if single_regs then
            MemA[address,4] = S[d+r];  address = address+4;
        else
            // Store as two word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
            MemA[address,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d+r]<63:32> else D[d+r]<31:0>;
            MemA[address+4,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d+r]<31:0> else D[d+r]<63:32>;
            address = address+8;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

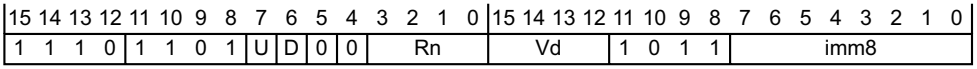
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.248 VSTR

Floating-point Store Register stores a single extension register to memory, using an address from an ARM core register, with an optional offset.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

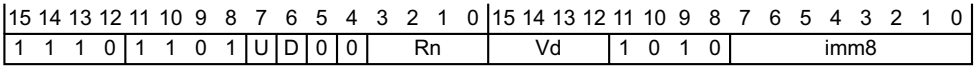
```
VSTR<c> <Dd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]
```




```
single_reg = FALSE;  add = (U == '1');  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
d = UInt(D:Vd);  n = UInt(Rn);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 FPv4-SP

```
VSTR<c> <Sd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]
```




```
single_reg = TRUE;  add = (U == '1');  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
d = UInt(Vd:D);  n = UInt(Rn);
if n == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Assembler syntax

```
VSTR{<c>}{<q>}{.64}  <Dd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]                Encoding T1
VSTR{<c>}{<q>}{.32}  <Sd>, [<Rn>{, #+/-<imm>}]                Encoding T2
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`.32, .64` Optional data size specifiers.

`<Dd>` The source floating-point register for a doubleword store.

`<Sd>` The source floating-point register for a singleword store.

`<Rn>` The base register. The SP can be used.

`+/-` Is + or omitted if the immediate offset is to be added to the base register value (`add == TRUE`), or – if it is to be subtracted (`add == FALSE`). `#0` and `#-0` generate different instructions.

`<imm>` The immediate offset used to form the address. Values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of +0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    address = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    if single_reg then
        MemA[address,4] = S[d];
    else
        // Store as two word-aligned words in the correct order for current endianness.
        MemA[address,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d]<63:32> else D[d]<31:0>;
        MemA[address+4,4] = if BigEndian() then D[d]<31:0> else D[d]<63:32>;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction, Data Abort.

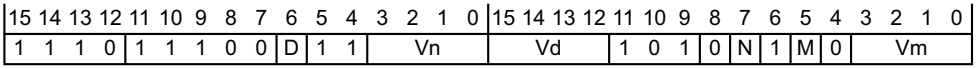
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.249 VSUB

Floating-point Subtract subtracts one single-precision register value from another single-precision register value, and places the results in the destination single-precision register.

Encoding T1 FPv4-SP

```
VSUB<c>.F32 <Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	D	1	1	Vn				Vd				1	0	1	0	N	1	M	0	Vm			

```
d = UInt(Vd:D);
n = UInt(Vn:N);
m = UInt(Vm:M);
```

Assembler syntax

```
VSUB{<c>}{<q>}.F32  {<Sd>,} <Sn>, <Sm>
```

where:

`<c>, <q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Sd>, <Sn>, <Sm>` The destination single-precision register and the operand single-precision registers.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    ExecuteFPCheck();
    S[d] = FPSub(S[n], S[m], TRUE);
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

Floating-point exceptions: Input Denormal, Invalid Operation, Overflow, Underflow, and Inexact.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.250 WFE

Wait For Event is a hint instruction. If the Event Register is clear, it suspends execution in the lowest power state available consistent with a fast wakeup without the need for software restoration, until a reset, exception or other event occurs. See *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-681 for more details.

For general hint behavior, see *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
WFE<c>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
WFE<c>.W
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
WFE<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if EventRegistered() then
        ClearEventRegister();
    else
        WaitForEvent();
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.251 WFI

Wait For Interrupt is a hint instruction. It suspends execution, in the lowest power state available consistent with a fast wakeup without the need for software restoration, until a reset, asynchronous exception or other event occurs. See *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-683 for more details.

For general hint behavior, see *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
WFI<c>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
WFI<c>.W
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
WFI<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    WaitForInterrupt();
```

Exceptions

None.

Notes

PRIMASK For the effect of PRIMASK on WFI, see *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-683.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A7.7.252 YIELD

YIELD is a hint instruction. It allows software with a multithreading capability to indicate to the hardware that it is performing a task, for example a spinlock, that could be swapped out to improve overall system performance. Hardware can use this hint to suspend and resume multiple code threads if it supports the capability.

For general hint behavior, see *NOP-compatible hints* on page A7-215.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
YIELD<c>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Encoding T2 ARMv7-M

```
YIELD<c>.W
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
YIELD<c><q>
```

where:

<c><q> See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    Hint_Yield();
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Part B

System Level Architecture

Chapter B1
System Level Programmers' Model

This chapter provides a system-level view of the ARMv7-M programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *Introduction to the system level* on page B1-616
- *About the ARMv7-M memory mapped architecture* on page B1-617
- *Overview of system level terminology and operation* on page B1-618
- *Registers* on page B1-623
- *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631
- *Floating-point support* on page B1-685.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.1 Introduction to the system level

The ARM architecture defines a hierarchy for software operation:

- The lowest level is the application level, described in part A of this manual. In particular, Chapter A2 *Application Level Programmers' Model* describes the programmers model for applications. Application-level software is largely independent of the architecture profile.
- The higher level is the system level, that includes support for the applications. The system level features and how they are supported, is significantly different in the different ARMv7 architecture profiles.

Part B of this manual describes the ARMv7-M architecture at the system level.

As stated in *Privileged execution* on page A2-49, programs can execute in a privileged or unprivileged manner. System level support requires privileged access, giving system software the access permissions required to configure and control the resources. Typically, an operating system provides this control, providing system services to the applications, either transparently, or through application initiated Supervisor calls. The operating system is also responsible for servicing interrupts and other system events, making exceptions a key component of the system level programmers' model.

In addition, ARMv7-M is a departure from the normal architecture evolution in that it has been designed to take the ARM architecture to lower cost or performance points than previously supported as well as having a strong migration path to ARMv7-R and the broad spectrum of embedded processing.

Note

- In deeply embedded systems, particularly at low cost or performance points, there might be no clear distinction between an operating system and the applications, and software might be developed as a homogeneous codebase.
- Appendix C *Deprecated Features in ARMv7-M* describes deprecated features of the ARMv7-M profile.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.2 About the ARMv7-M memory mapped architecture

ARMv7-M is a memory-mapped architecture, meaning the architecture assigns physical addresses for processor registers to provide:

- event entry points, as vectors
- system control and configuration.

An ARMv7-M implementation maintains exception handler entry points in a table of address pointers.

The architecture reserves address space `0xE0000000` to `0xFFFFFFFF` for system-level use. ARM reserves the first 1MB of this system address space, `0xE0000000` to `0xE00FFFFF`, as the *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB).The assignment of the rest of the address space, from `0xE0100000`, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, with some memory attribute restrictions. See *The system address map* on page B3-704 for more information.

In the PPB address space, the architecture assigns a 4KB block, `0xE000E000` to `0xE000EFFF`, as the *System Control Space* (SCS). The SCS supports:

- processor ID registers
- general control and configuration, including the vector table base address
- system handler support, for system interrupts and exceptions
- a system timer, SysTick
- a Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller (NVIC), that supports up to 496 discrete external interrupts
- fault status and control registers
- the *Protected Memory System Architecture*, PMSAv7
- processor debug.

See *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708 for more details.

In the ARMv7-M architecture, all exceptions and interrupts, including the external interrupts handled by the NVIC, share a common prioritization model, controlled by registers in the SCS.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.3 Overview of system level terminology and operation

The following sections describe the concepts that are central to the system level architecture:

B1.3.1 Modes, privilege and stacks

Mode, privilege and stack pointer are key concepts used in ARMv7-M.

Mode An M-profile processor supports two operating modes:

Thread mode
Is entered on reset, and can be entered as a result of an exception return.

Handler mode
Is entered as a result of an exception. The processor must be in Handler mode to issue an exception return.

Privilege Code can execute as privileged or unprivileged. Unprivileged execution limits or excludes access to some resources. Privileged execution has access to all resources.

Execution in Handler mode is always privileged. Execution in Thread mode can be privileged or unprivileged.

Stack pointer The processor implements a banked pair of stack pointers, the Main stack pointer, and the Process stack pointer. See *The SP registers* on page B1-623 for more information.

In Handler mode, the processor uses the Main stack pointer. In Thread mode it can use either stack pointer.

Table B1-1 shows the possible combinations of mode, privilege and stack pointer usage.

Table B1-1 Mode, privilege and stack relationship

Mode	Privilege	Stack pointer	Typical usage model
Handler	Privileged	Main	Exception handling.
Thread	Privileged	Main	Execution of a privileged process or thread using a common stack in a system that only supports privileged access.
		Process	Execution of a privileged process or thread using a stack reserved for that process or thread in a system that only supports privileged access, or that supports a mix of privileged and unprivileged threads.
Thread	Unprivileged	Main	Execution of an unprivileged process or thread using a common stack in a system that supports privileged and unprivileged access.
		Process	Execution of an unprivileged process or thread using a stack reserved for that process or thread in a system that supports privileged and unprivileged access.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Pseudocode details of processor mode

The CurrentModeIsPrivileged() pseudocode function determines whether the current software execution is privileged:

```
// CurrentModeIsPrivileged()
// =========================

boolean CurrentModeIsPrivileged()
    return (CurrentMode == Mode_Handler || CONTROL.nPRIV == '0');
```

B1.3.2 Exceptions

An exception is a condition that changes the normal flow of control in a program. Exception behavior splits into two stages:

Exception generation

When an exception event occurs and is presented to the processor

Exception processing, or activation

When the processor follows a sequence of exception entry, exception handler code execution, and exception return. The transition from exception generation to exception processing can be instantaneous.

ARMv7-M defines the following exception categories:

Reset Reset is a special form of exception that, when asserted, terminates current execution in a potentially unrecoverable way. When reset is deasserted, execution restarts from a fixed point.

Supervisor call (SVCall)

An exception caused explicitly by the SVC instruction. Application software uses the SVC instruction to make a call to an underlying operating system. This is called a Supervisor call. The SVC instruction enables the application to issue a Supervisor call that requires privileged access to the system and executes in program order with respect to the application. ARMv7-M also supports an interrupt-driven Supervisor-calling mechanism, PendSV, see *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-631.

Fault A fault is an exception that results from an error condition in instruction execution. A fault can be reported synchronously or asynchronously to the instruction that caused it. In general, faults are reported synchronously. The Imprecise BusFault is an asynchronous fault supported in the ARMv7-M profile.

A synchronous fault is always reported with the instruction that caused the fault. The architecture makes no guarantee about how an asynchronous fault is reported relative to the instruction that caused the fault.

Synchronous debug monitor exceptions are faults. Debug watchpoints are asynchronous and are treated as an interrupt.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Interrupt An interrupt is an exception, other than a reset, fault or a supervisor call. All interrupts are asynchronous to the instruction stream. Typically interrupts are used by other components of the system that must communicate with the processor. This can include software running on another processor in the system.

Each exception has:

- An exception number.
- A priority level.
- A vector in memory that defines the entry point for execution on taking the exception. The value held in a vector is the address of the entry point of the exception handler, or *Interrupt Service Routine* (ISR), for the corresponding exception.

An exception, other than reset, has the following possible states:

Inactive An exception that is not pending or active.

Pending An exception that has been generated, but that the processor has not yet started processing. An exception is generated when the corresponding exception event occurs.

Active An exception for which the processor has started executing a corresponding exception handler, but has not returned from that handler. The handler for an active exception is either running or preempted by a the handler for a higher priority exception.

Active and pending

One instance of the exception is active, and a second instance of the exception is pending.

Only asynchronous exceptions can be active and pending. Any synchronous exception is either inactive, pending, or active.

Priority levels, execution priority, exception entry, and execution preemption

Exception priorities determine the order in which the processor handles exceptions:

- Every exception has a priority level, the exception priority. Three exceptions have fixed priorities, while all others have a priority that can be configured by privileged software.
- The instruction stream executing on the processor has a priority level associated with it, the execution priority.
- The execution priority immediately after a reset is the base level of execution priority. Only execution in Thread mode can be at this base level of execution priority.
- An exception whose exception priority is sufficiently higher than the execution priority becomes active. The concept of sufficiently higher priority relates to priority grouping, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-636.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Software can boost the execution priority using registers provided for this purpose, otherwise the execution priority is the highest priority of all the active exceptions, see *Execution priority and priority boosting* on page B1-637 for more information.

When an exception becomes active because its priority is sufficiently higher that the executing priority:

- its exception handler preempts the currently running instruction stream
- its priority becomes the executing priority

When an exception other than reset preempts an instruction stream, the processor automatically saves key context information onto the stack, and execution branches to the code pointed to by the corresponding exception vector.

An exception can occur during exception activation, for example as a result of a memory fault when pushing context information. Also, the architecture permits the optimization of a late-arriving exception. *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-662 describes the behavior of these cases.

The processor always runs an exception handler in Handler mode. If the exception preempts software running in Thread mode the processor changes to Handler mode as part of the exception entry.

Exception return

The processor executes the exception handler in Handler mode, and returns from the handler. On exception return:

- If the exception state is active and pending:
  - if the exception has sufficient priority, it becomes active and the processor re-enters the exception handler
  - otherwise, it becomes pending.
- If the exception state is active it becomes inactive.
- The processor restores the information that it stacked on exception entry.
- If the code that was preempted by the exception handler was running in Thread mode the processor changes to Thread mode.
- The processor resumes execution of the code that was preempted by the exception handler.

The Exception Return Link, a value stored in the link register on exception entry, determines the target of the exception return.

On an exception return, there can be a pending exception with sufficient priority to preempt the execution being returned to. This results in an exception entry sequence immediately after the exception return sequence. This is referred to as chaining the exceptions. Hardware can optimize chaining of exceptions to remove the need to restore and resave the key context state. This optimization is referred to as Tail-chaining, see *Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions* on page B1-664 for details.

Faults can occur during the exception return, for example as a result of a memory fault when popping previous state off the stack. The behavior in this and other cases is explained in *Derived exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-663.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.3.3 Execution state

ARMv7-M only executes Thumb instructions, as described in *The ARMv7-M architecture profile* on page A1-33. This means it is always executing in Thumb state. The ARMv7 architecture profiles use a value of 1 for an execution status bit, the EPSR.T to indicate execution in Thumb state, see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624. Setting EPSR.T to zero in an ARMv7-M processor causes a fault when the next instruction executes, because in this state all instructions are UNDEFINED.

B1.3.4 Debug state

A processor enters Debug state if it is configured to halt on a debug event, and a debug event occurs. See Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug* for more details.

The alternative debug mechanism, where a debug event generates a DebugMonitor exception, does not cause entry to Debug state.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.4 Registers

The ARMv7-M profile has the following registers closely coupled to the processor:

- General-purpose registers R0-R12.
- Two stack pointer registers, SP_main and SP_process. These are banked versions of SP, also described as R13.
- The Link Register, LR, also described as R14.
- The Program Counter, PC, sometimes described as R15.
- Status registers for flags, execution state bits, and when handling an exception, the exception number.
- Mask registers used in managing the prioritization scheme for exceptions and interrupts
- A control register, CONTROL, that identifies the current stack and Thread mode privilege level.

All other registers described in this specification are memory mapped.

Note

Where this part of this manual gives register access restrictions, these apply to normal execution. Debug restrictions can differ, see *General rules applying to debug register access* on page C1-816, *Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-834, and *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-836.

B1.4.1 The ARM core registers

The registers R0-R12, SP, LR, and PC are named the ARM core registers. These registers can be described as R0-R15.

The SP registers

An ARMv7-M processor implements two stacks:

- the Main stack, SP_main or MSP
- the Process stack, SP_process or PSP.

The stack pointer, SP, banks SP_main and SP_process. The current stack depends on the mode and, in Thread mode, the value of the CONTROL.SPSEL bit, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628. A reset selects and initializes SP_main, see *Reset behavior* on page B1-641.

ARMv7-M implementations treat SP bits [1:0] as RAZ/WI. ARM strongly recommends that software treats SP bits [1:0] as SBZP for maximum portability across ARMv7 profiles.

The processor selects the SP used by an instruction that references the SP explicitly according to the function `LookUpSP()` described in *Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-629.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The stack pointer that is used in exception entry and exit is described in the pseudocode sequences of the exception entry and exit, see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 and *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652t.

B1.4.2 The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR

The *Program Status Register* (PSR) is a 32-bit register that comprises three subregisters:

Application Program Status Register, APSR

Holds flags that can be written by application-level software, that is, by unprivileged software. APSR handling of application-level writable flags by the `MSR` and `MRS` instructions is consistent across all ARMv7 profiles.

Interrupt Program Status Register, IPSR

When the processor is executing an exception handler, holds the exception number of the exception being processed. Otherwise, the IPSR value is zero.

Execution Program Status Register, EPSR

Holds execution state bits.

Software can use the `MRS` and `MSR` instructions.to access the complete PSR, or any combination of one or more of the subregisters. xPSR is a generic term for a program status register.

Figure B1-1 shows how the APSR, IPSR, and EPSR combine to form the PSR.

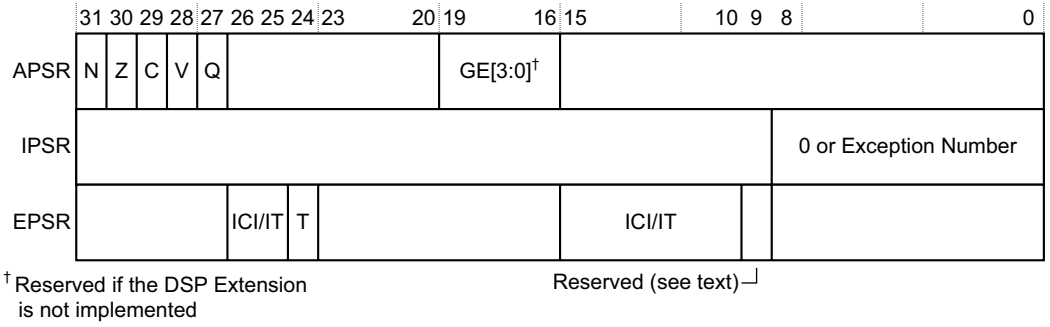


Figure B1-1 The PSR register layout

All unused bits in any individual or combined xPSR are reserved.

The APSR

Flag setting instructions modify the APSR flags N, Z, C, V, and Q, and the processor uses these flags to evaluate conditional execution in IT and conditional branch instructions. *ARM core registers* on page A2-46 describes the flags. The flags are UNKNOWN on reset.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

On an implementation that includes the DSP extension, the APSR.GE bits are stacked as part of the xPSR on exception entry, and restored as part of exception return. On entry to an exception handler or following a reset, the values of the APSR.GE bits are UNKNOWN.

The IPSR

The processor writes to the IPSR on exception entry and exit. Software can use an `MRS` instruction, to read the IPSR, but the processor ignores writes to the IPSR by an `MSR` instruction. The IPSR Exception Number field is defined as follows:

- in Thread mode, the value is 0
- in Handler mode, holds the exception number of the currently-executing exception.

An exception number indicates the currently executing exception and its entry vector, see *Exception number definition* on page B1-633 and *The vector table* on page B1-634.

On reset, the processor is in Thread mode and the Exception Number field of the IPSR is cleared to 0. As a result, the value 1, the exception number for reset, is a transitory value, that software cannot see as a valid IPSR Exception Number.

The EPSR

The EPSR contains the T bit, that is set to 1 to indicate that the processor executes Thumb instructions, and an overlaid ICI or IT field that supports interrupt-continue load/store instructions and the `IT` instruction.

Note

The ARM A and R architecture profiles have two alternative instruction sets, ARM and Thumb. The *instruction set state* identifies the current instruction set, and the PSR T bit identifies that state. The M profile supports only the Thumb instruction set, and therefore the processor can execute instructions only if the T bit is set to 1.

All fields read as zero using an `MRS` instruction, and the processor ignores writes to the EPSR by an `MSR` instruction.

The EPSR.T bit supports the ARM architecture interworking model, however, as ARMv7-M only supports execution of Thumb instructions, it must always be maintained with the value 1. Updates to the PC that comply with the Thumb instruction interworking rules must update the EPSR.T accordingly. Instruction execution with EPSR.T set to 0 causes the invalid state UsageFault, INVSTATE. A reset:

- Sets the T bit to the value of bit [0] of the reset vector. This bit must be 1 if the processor is to execute the code indicated by the reset vector. If this bit is 0, the processor takes a HardFault exception and enters the HardFault handler, with the stacked `ReturnAddress()` value pointing to the reset handler, and the T bit of the stacked xPSR value set to 0.
- Clears the IT/ICI bits to 0.

See *Reset behavior* on page B1-641.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The ICI/IT bits are used for saved exception-continuable instruction state or saved IT state:

- When used as ICI bits, they provide information on the outstanding register list for an interrupted exception-continuable multi-cycle load or store instruction.
- When used as IT bits, they provide context information for the conditional execution of a sequence of instructions in an IT block so that it can be interrupted and restarted at the appropriate point. See *IT* on page A7-277 for more information.

Table B1-2 shows the assignment of the ICI/IT bits.

Table B1-2 ICI/IT bit allocation in the EPSR

Use	EPSR[26:25]	EPSR[15:12]	EPSR[11:10]	Additional Information
IT	IT[1:0]	IT[7:4]	IT[3:2]	See *ITSTATE* on page A7-210.
ICI	ICI[7:6] = 0b00	ICI[5:2] = reg_num	ICI[1:0] = 0b00	See *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658.

The IT feature takes precedence over the ICI feature if an exception-continuable instruction is used in an IT construct. In this situation, the multi-cycle load or store instruction is treated as restartable.

Composite views of the xPSR registers

The `MSR` and `MRS` instructions recognize `APSR`, `IPSR`, and `EPSR` as mnemonics for the corresponding registers. They also recognize mnemonics for different combinations of the registers, as Table B1-3 shows:

Table B1-3 Mnemonics for combinations of xPSR registers

Mnemonic	Registers accessed
`IAPSR`	IPSR and APSR
`EAPSR`	EPSR and APSR
`XPSR`	All three xPSR registers
`IEPSR`	IPSR and EPSR

For more information see *Special register encodings used in ARMv7-M system instructions* on page B5-798.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.4.3 The special-purpose mask registers

An ARMv7-M processor implements the following special-purpose registers for exception priority boosting:

PRIMASK The exception mask register, a 1-bit register. Setting PRIMASK to 1 raises the execution priority to 0.

BASEPRI The base priority mask, an 8-bit register. BASEPRI changes the priority level required for exception preemption. It has an effect only when BASEPRI has a lower value than the unmasked priority level of the currently executing software.

The number of implemented bits in BASEPRI is the same as the number of implemented bits in each field of the priority registers, and BASEPRI has the same format as those fields. For more information see *Maximum supported priority value* on page B1-636.

A value of zero disables masking by BASEPRI.

FAULTMASK

The fault mask, a 1-bit register. Setting FAULTMASK to 1 raises the execution priority to -1, the priority of HardFault. Only privileged software executing at a priority below -1 can set FAULTMASK to 1. This means HardFault and NMI handlers cannot set FAULTMASK to 1. Returning from any exception except NMI clears FAULTMASK to 0.

A reset clears all the mask registers to zero. The processor ignores unprivileged writes to the mask registers. *Execution priority and priority boosting* on page B1-637 gives more information about their function.

Software can access these registers using the `MRS` and `MSR` instructions, see *MRS* on page B5-803 and *MSR* on page B5-805. The `MSR` instruction accepts a register masking argument, `BASEPRI_MAX`, that updates BASEPRI only if BASEPRI masking is disabled, or the new value increases the BASEPRI priority level. Figure B1-2 shows the formats of `MRS` and `MSR` accesses to the mask registers.

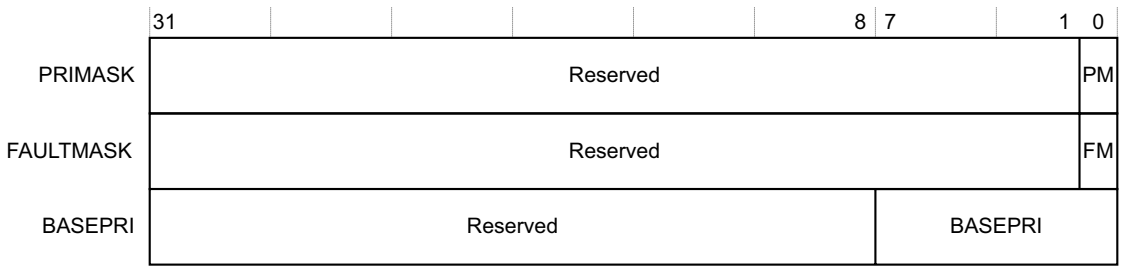


Figure B1-2 The special-purpose mask registers

In addition:

- FAULTMASK is set to 1 by the execution of the instruction `CPSID f`
- FAULTMASK is cleared to 0 by the execution of the instruction `CPSIE f`
- PRIMASK is set to 1 by the execution of the instruction `CPSID i`
- PRIMASK is cleared to 0 by the execution of the instruction `CPSIE i`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.4.4 The special-purpose CONTROL register

The special-purpose CONTROL register is a 2-bit or 3-bit register defined as follows:

nPRIV, bit[0] Defines the execution privilege in Thread mode:

0 Thread mode has privileged access

1 Thread mode has unprivileged access.

Note

In Handler mode, execution is always privileged.

SPSEL, bit[1] Defines the stack to be used:

0 Use SP_main as the current stack

1 In Thread mode, use SP_process as the current stack.
In Handler mode, this value is reserved.

FPCA, bit[2], if the processor includes the FP extension

Defines whether the FP extension is active in the current context:

0 FP extension not active.

1 FP extension is active.

If FPCCR.ASPEN is set to 1, enabling automatic FP state preservation, then the processor sets this bit to 1 on successful completion of any FP instruction. For more information see *Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737.

A reset clears the CONTROL register to zero. Software can use the `MRS` instruction to read the register, and the `MSR` instruction to write to the register. The processor ignores unprivileged write accesses.

Software can update the SPSEL bit in Thread mode. In Handler mode, the processor ignores explicit writes to the SPSEL bit.

On an exception entry or exception return, the processor updates the SPSEL bit and, if it implements the FP extension, the FPCA bit. For more information see the pseudocode in *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 and *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652.

Software must use an `ISB` barrier instruction to ensure a write to the CONTROL register takes effect before the next instruction is executed.

B1.4.5 Reserved special-purpose register bits

All unused bits in special-purpose registers are reserved. The architecture defines these reserved bits as RAZ/WI for `MRS` and `MSR` instruction accesses. However, for future compatibility, ARM recommends that software treats reserved bits as UNK/SBZP.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.4.6 Special-purpose register updates and the memory order model

Except for writes to the CONTROL register, any change to a special-purpose register by a CPS or MSR instruction is guaranteed:

- not to affect that CPS or MSR instruction or any instruction that precedes it in program order
- to be visible to all instructions that appear in program order after that CPS or MSR instruction.

B1.4.7 Register-related definitions for pseudocode

The system programmers' model pseudocode uses two register types:

- 32-bit core registers, see *The ARM core registers* on page B1-623
- 32-bit memory mapped registers.

Appendix H *Register Index* lists the ARMv7-M registers.

This manual describes register fields as <register_name>.<field_name>, or by a specific bit reference, for example:

- AIRCR<10:8> is equivalent to AIRCR.PRIGROUP
- CONTROL<1> is equivalent to CONTROL.SPSEL.

Normally, this manual uses the field names.

Pseudocode details for ARM core register access

The following pseudocode supports access to the general-purpose registers for the operations defined in *Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions* on page A7-216:

```
// The M-profile execution modes.

enumeration Mode {Mode_Thread, Mode_Handler};

// The names of the core registers. SP is a banked register.

enumeration RName {RName0, RName1, RName2, RName3, RName4, RName5, RName6,
                   RName7, RName8, RName9, RName10, RName11, RName12,
                   RNameSP_main, RNameSP_process, RName_LR, RName_PC};

// The physical array of core registers.
//
// _R[RName_PC] is defined to be the address of the current instruction.
// The offset of 4 bytes is applied to it by the register access functions.

array bits(32) _R[RName];

// LookUpSP()
// ==========

RName LookUpSP()
    RName SP;
    Mode CurrentMode;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    if CONTROL.SPSEL == 1
        if CurrentMode==Mode_Thread then
            SP is RNameSP_process;
        else
            UNPREDICTABLE;
    else
        SP is RNameSP_main;
    return SP;


// R[] - non-assignment form
// =========================

bits(32) R[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 15;
    if n == 15 then
        result = _R[RName_PC] + 4;
    elsif n == 14 then
        result = _R[RName_LR]
    elsif n == 13 then
        LookUpSP();
        result = _R[SP];
    else
        result = _R[RName:n];
    return result;


// R[] - assignment form
// =====================

R[integer n] = bits(32) value
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 14;
    if n == 13 then
        LookUpSP();
        _R[SP] = value;
    else
        _R[RName:n] = value;
    return;


// BranchTo()
// ==========

BranchTo(bits(32) address)
    _R[RName_PC] = address;
    return;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5 ARMv7-M exception model

The ARMv7-M profile differs from the other ARMv7 profiles in using hardware save and restore of key context state on exception entry and exit, and using a table of vectors to indicate the exception entry points. In addition, the exception categorization in the ARMv7-M profile is different from the other ARMv7 profiles.

The following sections describe the ARMv7-M exception model:

- *Overview of the exceptions supported*
- *Exception number definition* on page B1-633
- *The vector table* on page B1-634
- *Exception priorities and preemption* on page B1-635
- *Reset behavior* on page B1-641
- *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
- *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-647
- *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652
- *Exceptions in single-word load operations* on page B1-658
- *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658
- *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-662
- *Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions* on page B1-664
- *Exception status and control* on page B1-667
- *Fault behavior* on page B1-669
- *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674
- *Reset management* on page B1-679
- *Power management* on page B1-680
- *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-681
- *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-683.

B1.5.1 Overview of the exceptions supported

The ARMv7-M profile supports the following exceptions:

Reset The ARMv7-M profile supports two levels of reset. The reset level determines which register bit fields are forced to their reset values on the deassertion of reset.

- A Power-on reset resets the processor, System Control Space and debug logic.
- A Local reset resets the processor and System Control Space, except for some fault and debug-related resources. For more details, see *Debug and reset* on page C1-822.

The Reset exception is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -3.

NMI NMI (Non Maskable Interrupt) is the highest priority exception other than reset. It is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -2.

Hardware can generate an NMI, or software can set the NMI exception to the Pending state, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

HardFault HardFault is the generic fault that exists for all classes of fault that cannot be handled by any of the other exception mechanisms. Typically, HardFault is used for unrecoverable system failures, although this is not required and some uses of HardFault might be recoverable. HardFault is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -1.

HardFault is used for fault escalation, see *Priority escalation* on page B1-640.

MemManage The MemManage fault handles memory protection faults that are determined by the Memory Protection Unit or by fixed memory protection constraints, for both instruction and data memory transactions. Software can disable this fault. If it does, a MemManage fault escalates to HardFault. MemManage has a configurable priority.

BusFault The BusFault fault handles memory-related faults, other than those handled by the MemManage fault, for both instruction and data memory transactions. Typically these faults arise from errors detected on the system buses. The architecture permits an implementation to report synchronous or asynchronous BusFaults according to the circumstances that trigger the exceptions. Software can disable this fault. If it does, a BusFault escalates to HardFault. BusFault has a configurable priority.

UsageFault The UsageFault fault handles non-memory related faults caused by instruction execution. A number of different situations cause usage faults, including:

- Undefined Instruction
- invalid state on instruction execution
- error on exception return
- attempting to access a disabled or unavailable coprocessor.

The following can cause usage faults when the processor is configured to report them:

- a word or halfword memory accesses to an unaligned address
- division by zero.

Software can disable this fault. If it does, a UsageFault escalates to HardFault. UsageFault has a configurable priority.

Debug Monitor

In general, a DebugMonitor exception is a synchronous exception and classified as a fault. Debug monitor exceptions occur when halting debug is disabled, and debug monitor support is enabled. The DebugMonitor exception has a configurable priority. See *Priority escalation* on page B1-640 and *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823 for more information.

Note

A debug watchpoint is asynchronous and behaves as an interrupt.

SVCall This supervisor call handles the exception caused by the `SVC` instruction. SVCall is permanently enabled and has a configurable priority.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Interrupts The ARMv7-M profile supports two system-level interrupts, and up to 496 external interrupts. Each interrupt has a configurable priority. The system-level interrupts are:

PendSV Used for software-generated system calls. An application uses a Supervisor call, if it requires servicing by the underlying operating system. The Supervisor call associated with PendSV executes when the processor takes the PendSV interrupt.

Note

For a Supervisor call that executes synchronously with program execution, software must use the `SVC` instruction. This generates an SVCall exception.

PendSV is permanently enabled, and is controlled using the ICSR.PENDSVSET and ICSR.PENDSVCLR bits,.

SysTick Generated by the SysTick timer that is an integral component of an ARMv7-M processor. SysTick is permanently enabled, and is controlled using the ICSR.PENDSTSET and ICSR.PENDSTCLR bits.

Note

Software can suppress hardware generation of the SysTick event, but ICSR.PENDSTSET and ICSR.PENDSTCLR are always available to software.

For more information about the control of the system-level interrupts see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713.

Software can disable all external interrupts, and can set or clear the pending state of any interrupt. Interrupts other than PendSV can be set to the Pending state by hardware.

See *Fault behavior* on page B1-669 for a description of all the possible causes of faults, the types of fault reported, and the fault status registers used to identify the faults.

B1.5.2 Exception number definition

Each exception has an associated exception number as Table B1-4 shows.

Table B1-4 Exception numbers

Exception number	Exception
1	Reset
2	NMI
3	HardFault
4	MemManage
5	BusFault

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B1-4 Exception numbers (continued)

Exception number	Exception
6	UsageFault
7-10	Reserved
11	SVCall
12	Debug Monitor
13	Reserved
14	PendSV
15	SysTick
16	External interrupt 0
.	.
.	.
.	.
16+N	External interrupt N

B1.5.3 The vector table

The vector table contains the initialization value for the stack pointer, and the entry point addresses of each exception handler. The exception number, defined in Table B1-4 on page B1-633, also defines the order of entries in the vector table, as Table B1-5 shows.

Table B1-5 Vector table format

Word offset in table	Description, for all pointer address values
0	SP_main. This is the reset value of the Main stack pointer.
Exception Number	Exception using that Exception Number.

On reset, the processor initializes the vector table base address to an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED address. Software can find the current location of the table, or relocate the table, using the VTOR, see *Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-716.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

A reset can be a Power-on reset or a Local reset, see *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-631 and *Reset management* on page B1-679.

The Vector table must be naturally aligned to a power of two whose alignment value is greater than or equal to (Number of Exceptions supported x 4), with a minimum alignment of 128 bytes. On power-on or reset, the processor uses the entry at offset 0 as the initial value for SP_main, see *The SP registers* on page B1-623. All other entries must have bit [0] set to 1, because this bit defines the EPSR.T bit on exception entry. See *Reset behavior* on page B1-641 and *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 for more information.

On exception entry, if bit [0] of the associated vector table entry is set to 0, execution of the first instruction causes an INVSTATE UsageFault, see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624 and *Fault behavior* on page B1-669. If this happens on a reset, this escalates to a HardFault, because UsageFault is disabled on reset, see *Priority escalation* on page B1-640 for more information.

B1.5.4 Exception priorities and preemption

In the ARMv7-M priority model, lower numbers take precedence. That is, the lower the assigned priority value, the higher the priority level. The priority order for exceptions with the same priority level is fixed, and is determined by their exception number.

Reset, NMI and HardFault execute at fixed priorities of -3, -2, and -1 respectively. Software can set the priorities of all other exceptions, using registers in the System Control Space. Software-assigned priority values start at 0, so Reset, NMI, and HardFault always have higher priorities than any other exception. A reset clears these software-configured priority settings to 0, the highest possible configurable priority. For more information about the range of configurable priority values see *Maximum supported priority value* on page B1-636.

When multiple pending exceptions have the same priority number, the exception with the lowest exception number takes precedence. When an exception is active, only an exception with a higher priority can preempt it.

If software changes the priority of an exception that is pending or active, it must synchronize this change to the instruction stream. See *Synchronization requirements for System Control Space updates* on page A3-119 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Maximum supported priority value

The number of supported priority values is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED power of two in the range 8 to 256, and the minimum supported priority value is always 0. All priority value fields are 8-bits, and if an implementation supports fewer than 256 priority levels then low-order bits of these fields are RAZ.

Table B1-6 Relation between number of priority bits and maximum priority value

Number of priority bits	Number of priority levels	Maximum priority value[a]
3	8	0b11100000 = 224
4	16	0b11110000 = 240
5	32	0b11111000 = 248
6	64	0b11111100 = 252
7	128	0b11111110 = 254
8	256	0b11111111 = 255

a. This value always corresponds to the lowest possible exception priority.

Priority grouping

Priority grouping splits exception priority into two parts, the group priority and the subpriority. The AIRCR.PRIGROUP field controls this split, by indicating how many bits of the 8-bit priority field specify the subpriority, as Table B1-7 shows.

Table B1-7 Priority grouping

	Exception Priority Field [7:0]	
PRIGROUP value	Group priority field	Subpriority field
0	[7:1]	[0]
1	[7:2]	[1:0]
2	[7:3]	[2:0]
3	[7:4]	[3:0]
4	[7:5]	[4:0]

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B1-7 Priority grouping (continued)

	Exception Priority Field [7:0]	
PRIGROUP value	**Group priority field**	**Subpriority field**
5	[7:6]	[5:0]
6	[7]	[6:0]
7	-	[7:0]

The AIRCR.PRIGROUP field defines the position of the binary point in the priority field. For more information see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717.

The group priority field defines the priority for preemption. If multiple pending exceptions have the same group priority, the exception processing logic uses the subpriority field to resolve priority within the group.

The group priorities of Reset, NMI and HardFault are -3, -2, and -1 respectively, regardless of the value of PRIGROUP.

Execution priority and priority boosting

When no exception is active, software executing in Thread or Handler mode is, effectively, executing at a priority value of (maximum supported exception priority value +1), see *Maximum supported priority value* on page B1-636. This corresponds to the lowest possible level of priority.

The *base level of execution priority* refers to software executing at this priority level in Thread mode.

The execution priority is defined as the highest priority determined from:

- the base level of execution priority
- the highest priority of all active exceptions, including any that the current exception preempted
- the impact of PRIMASK, FAULTMASK and BASEPRI values, see *Priority boosting* on page B1-638.

This definition of execution priority means that an exception handler can be executing at a priority that is higher than the priority of the corresponding exception. In particular, if a handler reduces the priority of its corresponding exception, the execution priority falls only to the priority of the highest-priority preempted exception. Therefore, reducing the priority of the current exception never permits:

- a preempted exception to preempt the current exception handler.
- inversion of the priority of preempted exceptions.

Example B1-1 on page B1-638 shows this behavior.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Example B1-1 Limits on the effect of dynamic priority management

This example considers three exceptions with configurable priority:

- A has highest priority, described as priority A
- B has medium priority, described as priority B
- C has lowest priority, described as priority C.

Consider the following sequence of events:

1. Exception B occurs. The processor takes the exception and starts executing the handler for this exception. The execution priority is priority B.
2. Exception A occurs. Because its priority is higher than the execution priority, it preempts exception B and the processor starts executing the Exception A handler. Execution priority is now priority A.
3. Exception C occurs. Its priority is less than the execution priority so its status is pending.
4. The handler for exception A reduces the priority of exception A, to a priority lower than priority C. The execution priority falls to the highest priority of all active exceptions. This is priority B.

   Exception C remains pending because its priority is lower than the current execution priority.

   Only a pending exception with higher priority than priority B can preempt the current exception handler. Therefore, a new exception with lower priority than exception B cannot take precedence over the preempted exception B.

Priority boosting

Software can use the following mechanisms to boost priority:

PRIMASK Setting this mask bit to 1 raises the execution priority to 0. This prevents any exceptions with configurable priority from becoming active, except through the fault escalation mechanism described in *Priority escalation* on page B1-640. This also has a special impact on `WFI`, see *WFI* on page A7-611.

FAULTMASK Setting this mask bit to 1 raises the execution priority to -1. Software can set FAULTMASK to 1 only when the execution priority is not NMI or HardFault, that is FAULTMASK can be set to 1 only when the priority value is greater than or equal to zero. Setting FAULTMASK raises the priority of the exception handler to the level of a HardFault. Any exception return except a return from NMI automatically clears FAULTMASK to 0.

BASEPRI Software can write this register with a value from N, the lowest configurable priority, to 1. When this register is cleared to 0, it has no effect on the execution priority. A non-zero value, qualified by the value of the AIRCR.PRIGROUP field, acts as a priority mask. This affects the execution priority when the priority defined by BASEPRI is higher than the current executing priority.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

As explained in this section, the lowest configurable priority, N, corresponds to the highest supported value for the priority fields.

The priority boosting mechanisms only affect the group priority. They have no effect on the subpriority. The subpriority is only used to sort pending exception priorities, and does not affect active exceptions.

Execution priority

The `ExecutionPriority()` pseudocode function defines the execution priority.

```
// ExecutionPriority()
// ===================

// Determine the current execution priority

bit ExceptionActive[*]; // exception handler active state
                        // SEE TakeReset() for more information

integer ExecutionPriority()

    highestpri = 256;  // priority of Thread mode with no active exceptions
                       // the value is PriorityMax + 1 = 256
                       // (configurable priority maximum bit field is 8 bits)
    boostedpri = 256;  // priority influence of BASEPRI, PRIMASK and FAULTMASK

    subgroupshift = UInt(BITS(3) AIRCR.PRIGROUP)
    groupvalue    = '000000010' LSL groupshift   // used by priority grouping

    for (i=2, i<512, i=i+1)   ; IPSR values of the exception handlers
        if ExceptionActive[i] == '1' then
            if ExceptionPriority[i] < highestpri then
                highestpri = ExceptionPriority[i];

                // include the PRIGROUP effect

                subgroupvalue = highestpri MOD groupvalue
                highestpri    = highestpri - subgroupvalue

    if Uint(BASEPRI<7:0>) != 0 then
        boostedpri = Uint(BASEPRI<7:0>);

        // include the PRIGROUP effect

        subgroupvalue = boostedpri MOD groupvalue
        boostedpri    = boostedpri - subgroupvalue

    if PRIMASK<0> == '1' then
        boostedpri = 0;

    if FAULTMASK<0> == '1' then
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        boostedpri = -1;

    if boostedpri < highestpri then
        priority = boostedpri;
    else
        priority = highestpri;

    return (priority);
```

Priority escalation

When the current execution priority is less than HardFault, the processor escalates the exception priority to HardFault in the following cases:

- When the group priority of a pending synchronous fault or supervisor call is lower than or equal to the currently executing priority, inhibiting normal preemption. This applies to all synchronous exceptions, both faults and SVCalls. This includes a DebugMonitorFault caused by executing a `BKPT` instruction, but excludes all other DebugMonitorFaults.
- If a disabled configurable-priority fault occurs.

Escalating the exception priority to HardFault causes the processor to take a HardFault exception.

Note

In an implementation that includes the Floating-point exceptions, during a save of FP state the conditions for escalating an exception to HardFault differ from those described here. For more information see *Exceptions while saving FP state* on page B1-688.

For the behavior in these cases when the current execution priority is HardFault or higher, see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674.

A fault that is escalated to a HardFault retains the `ReturnAddress()` behavior of the original fault. See the pseudocode definition of `ReturnAddress()` in *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 for more information.

Examples of pending exceptions that cause priority escalation are:

- The exception handler for a configurable-priority fault causes the kind of exception it is servicing. For example, if the processor tries to execute an undefined instruction in a UsageFault handler.
- The exception handler for a configurable-priority fault generates a different fault, and the handler for that fault is the same or lower priority.
- A configurable-priority fault that is not enabled occurs.
- An `SVC` instruction occurs when PRIMASK is set to 1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- Enabled interrupts are not escalated, they are set to the Pending state.
- Disabled interrupts are ignored.
- Asynchronous faults are set to the Pending state and, if enabled, are entered according to normal priority rules. They are treated as HardFault exceptions when disabled. This applies to imprecise BusFaults.

Use of SVCall and PendSV to avoid critical code regions

Context switching typically requires the processor to execute a critical region of code with interrupts disabled, to avoid context corruption of key data structures during the switch. This can be a severe constraint on system design and deterministic performance. ARMv7-M can support context switching with no critical region, meaning the processor does not have to disable interrupts.

An ARMv7-M usage model to avoid critical regions is:

- Configure both SVCall and PendSV with the same, lowest exception priority.
- Use SVCall for supervisor calls from threads.
- Use PendSV to handle context-critical work offloaded from the exception handlers, including work that might otherwise be handled by the SVCall handler.

Because SVCall and PendSV have the same execution priority they cannot preempt each other, therefore one must process to completion before the other starts. SVCall and PendSV exceptions are always enabled, meaning each executes at some point, once the processor has handled all other exceptions. In addition, the associated exception handlers do not have to check whether they are returning to a process on exit with this usage model, as the PendSV exception will occur when returning to a process.

This usage model always sets PendSV to pending to issue a context switch request. However, a system can use both SVCall and PendSV exceptions for context switching because they do not interfere with each other.

Note

This is not the only usage model for avoiding use of critical code regions. Support for avoiding critical code regions is a key feature of ARMv7-M, specifically included in the specification of the SVCall and PendSV exceptions.

B1.5.5 Reset behavior

Asserting reset causes the processor to abandon the current execution state without saving it. On the deassertion of reset, all registers that have a defined reset value contain that value, and the processor performs the actions described by the `TakeReset()` pseudocode.

```
// TakeReset()
// ============
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
bit ExceptionActive[*];             /* conceptual array of 1-bit values for all exceptions */
bits(32) vectortable = VTOR<31:7>:'0000000';
Mode CurrentMode;

TakeReset()
    R[0..12] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    SP_main = MemA[vectortable,4] & 0xFFFFFFFC;
    SP_process = ((bits(30) UNKNOWN):'00');
    LR = 0xFFFFFFFF;                /* preset to an illegal exception return value */
    tmp = MemA[vectortable+4,4]
    PC = tmp AND 0xFFFFFFFE;        /* address of reset service routine */
    tbit = tmp<0>;
    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
    APSR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;        /* flags UNPREDICTABLE from reset */
    IPSR<8:0> = 0x0;                /* Exception Number cleared */
    EPSR.T = tbit;                  /* T bit set from vector */
    EPSR.IT<7:0> = 0x0;             /* IT/ICI bits cleared */
    PRIMASK<0> = '0';               /* priority mask cleared at reset */
    FAULTMASK<0> = '0';             /* fault mask cleared at reset */
    BASEPRI<7:0> = 0x0;             /* base priority disabled at reset */
    if HaveFPExt() then             /* initialize the Floating Point Extn */
        CONTROL<2:0> = '000';       /* FP inactive, stack is Main, thread is privileged */
        CPACR.cp10 = '00';
        CPACR.cp11 = '00';
        FPDSCR.AHP = '0';
        FPDSCR.DN = '0';
        FPDSCR.FZ = '0';
        FPDSCR.RMode = '00';
        FPCCR.ASPEN = '1';
        FPCCR.LSPEN = '1';
        FPCCR.LSPACT = '0';
        FPCAR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
        FPFSR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
        S[0..31] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    else
        CONTROL<1:0> = '00';        /* current stack is Main, thread is privileged */
    ResetSCSRegs();                 /* catch-all function for System Control Space reset */
    ExceptionActive[*] = '0';       /* all exceptions Inactive */
    ClearExclusiveLocal();          /* Synchronization (LDREX*/STREX*) monitor support */
                                    /* to open access state. */
    ClearEventRegister()            /* see WFE instruction for more details */
```

`ExceptionActive[*]` is a conceptual array of active flag bits for all exceptions, meaning it has active flags for the fixed-priority system exceptions, the configurable-priority system exceptions, and the external interrupts. The active flags for the fixed-priority exceptions are conceptual only, and are not required to exist in a system register.

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-629.

For helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxF-978.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5.6 Exception entry behavior

On preemption of the instruction stream, the hardware saves context state onto a stack pointed to by one of the SP registers, see *The SP registers* on page B1-623. The stack used depends on the mode of the processor at the time of the exception.

The stacked context supports the *ARM Architecture Procedure Calling Standard* (AAPCS). This means the exception handler can be an AAPCS-compliant procedure.

The ARMv7-M architecture uses a full-descending stack, where:

- when pushing context, the hardware decrements the stack pointer to the end of the new stack frame before it stores data onto the stack
- when popping context, the hardware reads the data from the stack frame and then increments the stack pointer.

When pushing context to the stack, the hardware saves eight 32-bit words, comprising xPSR, ReturnAddress, LR (R14), R12, R3, R2, R1, and R0.

If the processor implements the Floating-point extension, in addition to this eight word stack frame it can also either push FP state onto the stack, or reserve space on the stack for this state. For more information see *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-647.

The `ExceptionEntry()` pseudocode function describes the exception entry behavior:

```
// ExceptionEntry()
// ================

// NOTE: PushStack() can abandon memory accesses if a fault occurs during the stacking
//       sequence.
//       Exception entry is modified according to the behavior of a derived exception,
//       see DerivedLateArrival() and associated text.

PushStack();
ExceptionTaken(ExceptionType);    // ExceptionType is encoded as its exception number
```

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-629.

For the definition of `ExceptionActive[*]` see *Reset behavior* on page B1-641.

For helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxF-978.

The definitions of the `PushStack()` and `ExceptionTaken()` pseudocode functions are:

```
// PushStack()
// ===========

PushStack()

    if HaveFPExt() && CONTROL.FPCA == '1' then
        framesize = 0x68;
        forcealign = '1';
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        else
            framesize = 0x20;
            forcealign = CCR.STKALIGN;

        spmask = NOT(ZeroExtend(forcealign:'00',32));

        if CONTROL.SPSEL == '1' AND CurrentMode == Mode_Thread then
            frameptralign = SP_process<2> AND forcealign;
            SP_process = (SP_process - framesize) AND spmask;
            frameptr = SP_process;
        else
            frameptralign = SP_main<2> AND forcealign;
            SP_main = (SP_main - framesize) AND spmask;
            frameptr = SP_main;

           /* only the stack locations, not the store order, are architected */
        MemA[frameptr,4]      = R[0];
        MemA[frameptr+0x4,4]  = R[1];
        MemA[frameptr+0x8,4]  = R[2];
        MemA[frameptr+0xC,4]  = R[3];
        MemA[frameptr+0x10,4] = R[12];
        MemA[frameptr+0x14,4] = LR;
        MemA[frameptr+0x18,4] = ReturnAddress();
        MemA[frameptr+0x1C,4] = (xPSR<31:10>:frameptralign:xPSR<8:0>);
                                // see ReturnAddress() in-line note for information on xPSR.IT bits

        if HaveFPExt() && CONTROL.FPCA == '1' then
            if FPCCR.LSPEN == '0' then
                CheckVFPEnabled();
                for i = 0 to 15
                    MemA[frameptr+0x20+(4*i),4] = S[i];
                MemA[frameptr+0x60,4] = FPSCR;
                S[0..15] = bits(31) UNKNOWN;
                FPSCR = bits(31) UNKNOWN;
            else
                UpdateFPCCR(frameptr);

        if HaveFPExt() then
            if Mode==Handler then
                LR = Ones(27):NOT(CONTROL.FPCA):'0001';
            else
                LR = Ones(27):NOT(CONTROL.FPCA):'1':CONTROL.SPSEL:'01';
        else
            if Mode==Handler then
                LR = Ones(28):'0001';
            else
                LR = Ones(29):CONTROL.SPSEL:'01';

        return;


    // ExceptionTaken()
    // ================
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
ExceptionTaken(bits(9) ExceptionNumber)

    bit tbit;
    bits(32) tmp;

    R[0..3] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    R[12] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    tmp = MemA[VectorTable+4*ExceptionNumber,4];
    PC = tmp AND 0xFFFFFFFE;
    tbit = tmp<0>;
    CurrentMode = Mode_Handler;
    APSR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;                // Flags UNPREDICTABLE due to other activations
    IPSR<8:0> = ExceptionNumber               // ExceptionNumber set in IPSR
    EPSR.T = tbit;                            // T-bit set from vector
    EPSR.IT<7:0> = 0x0;                       // IT/ICI bits cleared
    //* PRIMASK, FAULTMASK, BASEPRI unchanged on exception entry*//
    if HaveFPExt() then
        CONTROL.FPCA = '1';                   // Floating-point extension only
    CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';                      // current Stack is Main, CONTROL.nPRIV unchanged
    //* CONTROL.nPRIV unchanged *//
    ExceptionActive[ExceptionNumber]= '1';
    SCS_UpdateStatusRegs();                   // update SCS registers as appropriate
    ClearExclusiveLocal();
    SetEventRegister();                       // see WFE instruction for more details
    InstructionSynchronizationBarrier();
```

For more information about the registers with UNKNOWN values, see *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-662.

For updates to system status registers, see *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708.

The value of `ReturnAddress()` is the address to which execution returns after the processor has handled the exception:

```
// ReturnAddress()
// ===============

Bits(32) ReturnAddress() returns the following values based on the exception cause
         // NOTE: ReturnAddress() is always halfword aligned - bit<0> is always zero
         //       xPSR.IT bits saved to the stack are consistent with ReturnAddress()

// Exception Type          Address returned
// ==============          ================

// NMI:                      Address of Next Instruction to be executed
// HardFault (precise):      Address of the Instruction causing fault
// HardFault (imprecise):    Address of Next Instruction to be executed
// MemManage:                Address of the Instruction causing fault
// BusFault (precise):       Address of the Instruction causing fault
// BusFault (imprecise):     Address of Next Instruction to be executed
// UsageFault:               Address of the Instruction causing fault
// SVC:                      Address of the Next Instruction after the SVC
// DebugMonitor (precise):   Address of the Instruction causing fault
// DebugMonitor (imprecise): Address of Next Instruction to be executed
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// IRQ:                     Address of Next Instruction to be executed after an interrupt
```

Note

- A fault that is escalated to the priority of a HardFault retains the `ReturnAddress()` value of the original fault. For a description of priority escalation see *Priority escalation* on page B1-640.
- The described IRQ behavior also applies to the SysTick and PendSV interrupts.

If the processor implements the Floating-point extension, when the processor pushes the FP state to the stack, the `UpdateFPCCR()` function updates the FPCCR:

```
// UpdateFPCCR():
// ==========================

UpdateFPCCR(bits(32) frameptr)

// FPCAR and FPCCR remain unmodified if CONTROL.FPCA and
// FPCCR.LSPEN are not both set to 1

    if (CONTROL.FPCA == '1' && FPCCR.LSPEN == '1') then
        FPCAR.ADDRESS = (frameptr + 0x20)<31:3>;
        FPCCR.LSPACT = '1';

        if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
            FPCCR.USER = '0';
        else
            FPCCR.USER = '1';
        if Mode == Thread then
            FPCCR.THREAD = '1';
        else
            FPCCR.THREAD = '0';
        if ExecutionPriority() > -1 then
            FPCCR.HFRDY = '1';
        else
            FPCCR.HFRDY = '0';
        if SHCSR.BUSFAULTENA && ExecutionPriority() > SHPR1.PRI_5 then
            FPCCR.BFRDY = '1';
        else
            FPCCR.BFRDY = '0';
        if SHCSR.MEMFAULTENA && ExecutionPriority() > SHPR1.PRI_4 then
            FPCCR.MMRDY = '1';
        else
            FPCCR.MMRDY = '0';
        if DEMCR.MON_EN && ExecutionPriority() > SHPR3.PRI_12 then
            FPCCR.MONRDY = '1';
        else
            FPCCR.MONRDY = '0';
    return;
```

For more information about the information held in the FPCCR see *Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5.7 Stack alignment on exception entry

The ARMv7-M architecture guarantees that stack pointer values are at least 4-byte aligned. However, some software standards require the stack pointer to be 8-byte aligned, and the architecture can enforce this alignment. The CCR.STKALIGN bit indicates whether, as part of an exception entry, the processor aligns the SP to 4 bytes, or to 8 bytes. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether this bit is:

- RW, in which case its reset value is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
- RO, in which case it is RAO, indicating 8-byte SP alignment.

For more information see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720.

ARM deprecates implementation or use of 4-byte SP alignment.

Note

On an implementation that includes the FP extension, if software enables automatic FP state preservation on exception entry, that state preservation enforces 8-byte stack alignment, ignoring the CCR.STKALIGN bit value. For more information see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650.

The remainder of this section gives more information about SP alignment.

Because an exception can occur on any instruction boundary, the current stack pointer might not be 8-byte aligned when the processor takes an exception. ARM recommends that exception handlers are written as AAPCS conforming functions, and the AAPCS requires 8-byte stack pointer alignment on entry to a conforming function. This means the system must ensure 8-byte alignment of the stack for all arguments passed.

Note

A function that conforms to the AAPCS must preserve the natural alignment of primitive data of size 1, 2, 4, or 8 bytes. Conforming code can rely on this alignment. Normally, to support unqualified reliance the stack pointer must be 8-byte aligned on entry to a conforming function. If a function is entered directly from an underlying execution environment, that environment must accept the stack alignment requirement to guarantee unconditionally that conforming code executes correctly in all circumstances.

In an implementation where the CCR.STKALIGN bit is RW:

- Software must ensure that the handler for any exception that the processor might take while CCR.STKALIGN is set to 0 does not require 8-byte alignment. An example is an NMI exception entered from reset, where the implementation resets to 4-byte alignment.
- If software clears the CCR.STKALIGN bit to 0 between entry to an exception handler and the return from that exception, and the stack was not 8-byte aligned on entry to the exception, the exception return can cause system corruption.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Operation of 8-byte stack alignment

On an exception entry when CCR.STKALIGN is set to 1, the exception entry sequence ensures that the stack pointer in use before the exception entry has 8-byte alignment, by adjusting its alignment if necessary. When the processor pushes the PSR value to the stack it uses bit[9] of the stacked PSR value to indicate whether it realigned the stack.

Note

In normal operation, PSR[9] is reserved.

Figure B1-3 shows the frame of information pushed onto the stack on exception entry, and how the processor reserves an additional word on the stack, if necessary, to obtain 8-byte stack alignment.

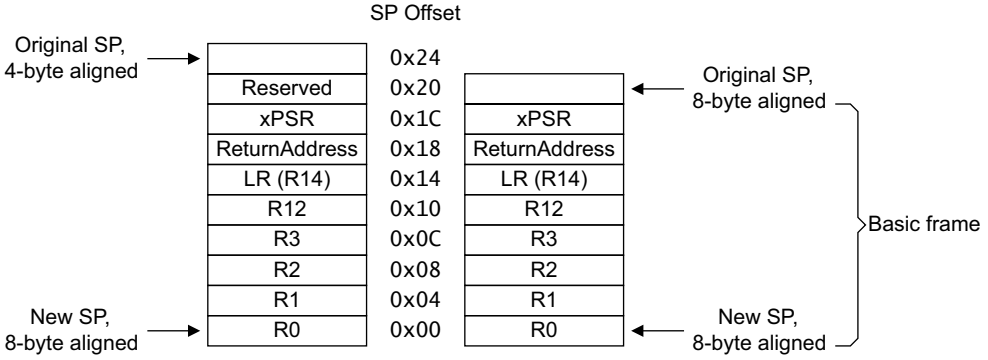


Figure B1-3 Alignment options when stacking the basic frame

When a processor implements the FP extension, on an exception entry it can push a 26-word frame onto the stack, to include FP state information, see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650. Therefore:

- an 8-word context state frame pushed onto the stack on exception entry on a processor that does not include the FP extension is called a Basic frame
- a 26-word context state frame that can be pushed onto the stack on exception entry on a processor that includes the FP extension is called an Extended frame.

On an exception return when CCR.STKALIGN is set to 1, the processor uses the value of bit [9] of the PSR value popped from the stack to determine whether it must adjust the stack pointer alignment. This reverses any forced stack alignment performed on the exception entry.

The pseudocode in *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643 and *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652 describes the effect of the CCR.STKALIGN bit value on exception entry and exception return.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- On exception return, the processor adjusts the SP by adding the frame size to the SP and ORing the result with (4*xPSR[9]), where xPSR[9] is the bit value from the stacked xPSR value. This restores the original SP alignment. If the exception exit sequence started with a stack pointer that is 4 byte aligned, then this adjustment has no effect.
- If the exception exit causes a derived exception, the processor enters the derived exception with the stack alignment that was in use before it started the exception exit sequence. For more information see *Derived exceptions on exception return* on page B1-665.
- When CCR.STKALIGN is set to 1, the amount of stack used on exception entry is a function of the alignment of the stack at the time the processor enters the exception. If the SP is 4-byte aligned at this time, the processor realigns the SP to 8-byte alignment, using an extra four bytes of stack. This means the average and worst case stack usage increases. In the worst case, the increase is 4 bytes per exception entry.
- Using a reserved bit in the PSR to indicate whether the processor realigned the stack on exception entry makes the feature transparent to context switch code, but requires all software to respect the reserved status of unused bits in the PSR.

Retrieving arguments from the stack

Any exception-handling code that must retrieve arguments from the stack, that were pushed to the stack before the exception was taken, must use the stacked value of xPSR [9] to determine whether the previous top-of-stack was at offset `0x20` or `0x24`.

If the implementation includes the FP extension, such code must use the stacked value of xPSR [9] together with the value of EXC_RETURN bit [4] to determine whether the previous top-of-stack was at offset `0x20`, `0x24`, `0x68`, or `0x6C`, see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650.

Saving context on process switch

When switching between different processes, software must save all context for the old process, including its associated EXC_RETURN value, before switching to the new process, and restore that context before returning to the old process.

Note

The 8-byte stack alignment mechanism used when CCR.STKALIGN is set to 1 does not affect the EXC_RETURN value.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension

When an ARMv7-M processor implements the FP extension, it has three possible modes for stacking FP context information on taking an exception:

- Do not stack any FP context. The processor stacks only a Basic frame, as described in *Operation of 8-byte stack alignment* on page B1-648.
- Stack an Extended frame, containing the Basic frame and the FP state information, as shown in Figure B1-4 on page B1-651. This preserves the floating-point state required by the AAPCS.
- Reserve space on the stack for an Extended frame, but write only the Basic frame information. This is similar to the operation shown in Figure B1-4 on page B1-651, except that no data is pushed into the stack locations reserved for `S0-S15` and the FPSCR value. This is an FP lazy context save, see *Lazy context save of FP state* on page B1-652.

The FPCCR.ASPEN and FPCCR.LSPEN bits determine which action is taken, see *Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

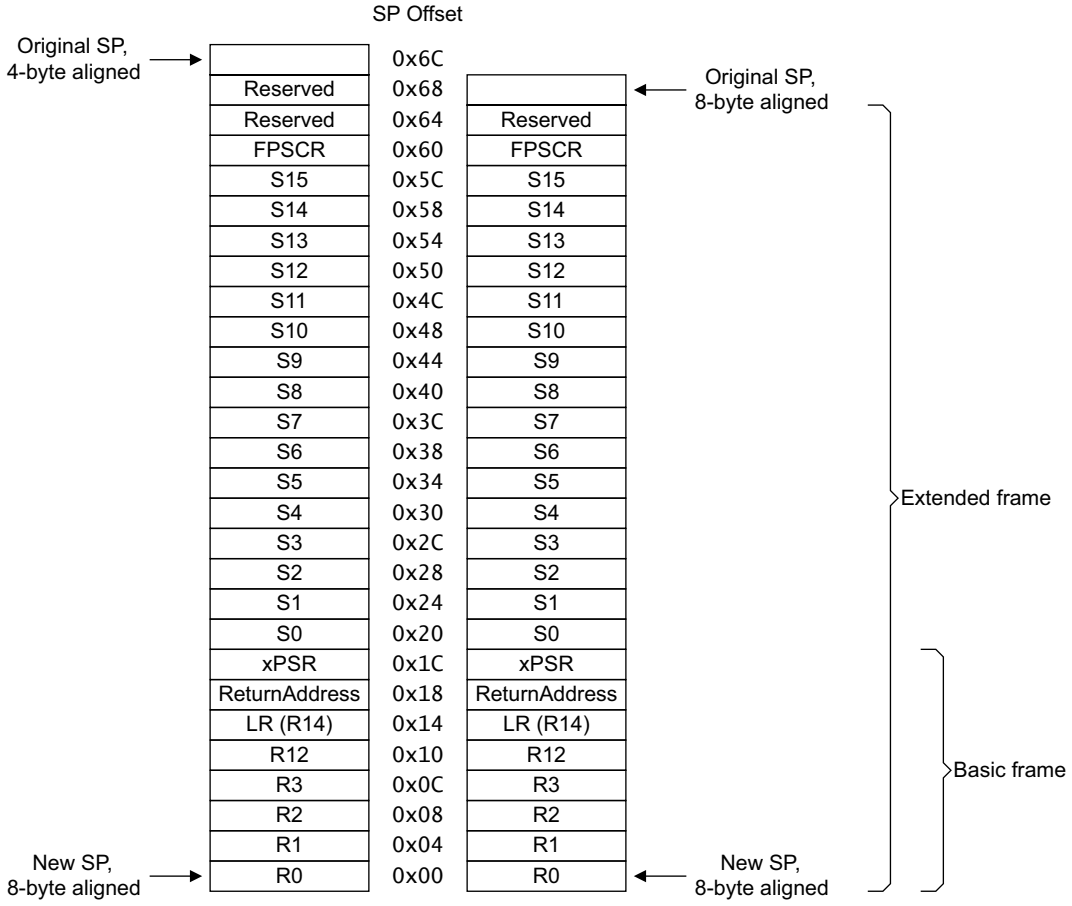


Figure B1-4 Alignment options when stacking the Extended frame

For more information see *Saving FP state* on page B1-687 and *Exceptions while saving FP state* on page B1-688.

Immediately after FP state preservation:

- the values of the following are UNKNOWN:
  - the FPSCR, see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56
  - the FPCAR, see *Floating-Point Context Address Register, FPCAR* on page B3-739
  - the FP extension registers `S0-S15`, see *The FP extension registers* on page A2-53
- the values of the FP extension registers `S16-S31` are unchanged
- the CONTROL.FPCA bit is set to 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Lazy context save of FP state

Software sets the FPCCR.LSPEN bit to 1 to enable lazy FP context save on exception entry, see *Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737, When this is done, the processor reserves space on the stack for the FP state, but does not save that state information to the stack. The stacking it performs is as shown in Figure B1-4 on page B1-651, except that no data is transferred to the stack locations reserved for `S0-S15` and the FPSCR, The processor also:

- Sets the FPCAR to point to the reserved area on the stack, see *Floating-Point Context Address Register, FPCAR* on page B3-739. The FPCAR points to the reserved `S0` stack location.
- Sets the FPCCR.LSPACT bit to 1, to indicate that lazy state preservation is active, see *Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737.

Lazy state preservation reduces the exception latency.

While lazy context save is active, the processor must not change the FP context. This means that, if software attempts to execute a floating point instruction while lazy context save is active, the processor first:

- saves the required FP state, `S0-S15` and the FPSCR, to the reserved area on the stack, as identified by the FPCAR
- sets the FPCCR.LSPACT bit to 0, to indicate that lazy state preservation is no longer active.

It then processes the instruction.

B1.5.8 Exception return behavior

An exception return occurs when the processor is in Handler mode and one of the following instructions loads a value of `0xFXXXXXXX` into the PC:

- `POP/LDM` that includes loading the PC.
- `LDR` with `PC` as a destination.
- `BX` with any register.

When used in this way, the processor intercepts the value written to the PC. This value is the EXC_RETURN value. In this value:

Bits [31:28] `0xF`. This value identifies the value in a PC load as an EXC_RETURN value.

Bits [27:5] Reserved, SBOP. The effect of writing a value other than 1 to any bit in this field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Bit [4], if the processor does not implement the FP extension

Reserved, SBOP. The effect of writing a value other than 1 to any bit in this field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Bit [4], if the processor implements the FP extension

Defines whether the stack frame for this exception has space allocated for FP state information. Bit [4] is 0 if stack space is allocated. On exception entry, the bit [4] value is saved in the EXC_RETURN value as the inverse of the CONTROL.FPCA bit value when the exception was generated, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628.

On exception return, the processor sets CONTROL.FPCA to the inverse of the EXC_RETURN[4] value.

Bits [3:0] Define the required exception return behavior, as shown in:

- Table B1-8, for an implementation without the FP extension
- Table B1-9, for an implementation with the FP extension.

In both tables:

- EXC_RETURN values not listed are reserved, for that implementation.
- The entry in the *Return stack* column is the stack that holds the information that the processor must restore as part of the exception return sequence. This is also the stack the processor will use after returning from the exception.

Table B1-8 EXC_RETURN definition of exception return behavior, no FP extension

EXC_RETURN	Return to	Return stack
0xFFFFFFF1	Handler mode	Main
0xFFFFFFF9	Thread mode	Main
0xFFFFFFFD	Thread mode	Process

Table B1-9 EXC_RETURN definition of exception return behavior, with FP extension

EXC_RETURN	Return to	Return stack	Frame type
0xFFFFFFE1	Handler mode.	Main	Extended
0xFFFFFFE9	Thread mode	Main	Extended
0xFFFFFFED	Thread mode	Process	Extended
0xFFFFFFF1	Handler mode.	Main	Basic
0xFFFFFFF9	Thread mode	Main	Basic
0xFFFFFFFD	Thread mode	Process	Basic

Using a reserved EXC_RETURN value causes a chained UsageFault exception.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If an EXC_RETURN value is loaded into the PC when in Thread mode, or from the vector table, or by any other instruction, the value is treated as an address, not as a special value. The `0xFXXXXXXX` address range, that includes all possible EXC_RETURN values, has Execute Never (XN) permissions, and loading this value causes a MemManage exception, or an INVSTATE UsageFault exception, or escalation of the exception to a HardFault.

Note

When an EXC_RETURN value is treated as a branch address, and bit [0] of the value is 0, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a MemManage or an INVSTATE UsageFault exception occurs

In a processor that supports sleep-on-exit functionality, if software has enabled this feature, when the processor returns from the only active exception, the exception return leaves the processor in a power-saving mode. For more information see *Power management* on page B1-680.

Integrity checks on exception return

The ARMv7-M architecture provides a number of integrity checks on an exception return. These provide a guard against errors in the system software. Incorrect exception return information might be inconsistent with the state of execution that the processor holds in hardware or, or inconsistent with other state stored by the exception mechanisms.

The hardware-related integrity checks ensure that the tracking of active exceptions in the NVIC and SCB hardware is consistent with the exception return.

The integrity checks test the following on an exception return:

- The Exception number being returned from, as held in the IPSR at the start of the return, is listed in the SCB as being active.
- Normally, if at least one exception other than the returning exception is active, the return must be to Handler mode. This checks for a mismatch of the number of exception returns. Software can use the CCR.NONBASETHRDENA to disable this check, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720.
- On a return to Thread mode, the value restored to the IPSR Exception number field must be 0.
- On a return to Handler mode, the value restored to the IPSR Exception number field must not be 0.
- EXC_RETURN[3:0] must not be a reserved value, see Table B1-8 on page B1-653.

Any failed check causes an INVPC UsageFault, with the EXC_RETURN value in the LR.

Exception return operation

The `ExceptionReturn()` pseudocode function describes the exception return operation:

```
// ExceptionReturn()
// =================
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
ExceptionReturn(bits(28) EXC_RETURN)
    assert CurrentMode == Mode_Handler;
    if HaveFPExt() then
        if !IsOnes(EXC_RETURN<27:5>) then UNPREDICTABLE;
    else
        if !IsOnes(EXC_RETURN<27:4>) then UNPREDICTABLE;

    integer ReturningExceptionNumber = UInt(IPSR<8:0>);
    integer NestedActivation;           // used for Handler => Thread check when value == 1

    NestedActivation = ExceptionActiveBitCount();      // Number of active exceptions

    if ExceptionActive[ReturningExceptionNumber] == '0' then
        DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
        UFSR.INVPC = '1';
        LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);                    // returning from an inactive handler
        return;
    else
        case  EXC_RETURN<3:0> of
            when '0001'                                // return to Handler
                frameptr = SP_main;
                CurrentMode = Mode_Handler;
                CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';
            when '1001'                                // returning to Thread using Main stack
                if NestedActivation != 1 && CCR.NONBASETHRDENA == '0' then
                    DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
                    UFSR.INVPC = '1';
                    LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
                    ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);        // return to Thread exception mismatch
                    return;
                else
                    frameptr = SP_main;
                    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
                    CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';
            when '1101'                                // returning to Thread using Process stack
                if NestedActivation != 1 && CCR.NONBASETHRDENA == '0' then
                    DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
                    UFSR.INVPC = '1';
                    LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
                    ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);        // return to Thread exception mismatch
                    return;
                else
                    frameptr = SP_process;
                    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
                    CONTROL.SPSEL = '1';
            otherwise
                DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
                UFSR.INVPC = '1';
                LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
                ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);            // illegal EXC_RETURN
                return;

        DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        PopStack(frameptr);

        if CurrentMode==Mode_Handler AND IPSR<8:0> == '000000000' then
            UFSR.INVPC = '1';
            PushStack();                              // to negate PopStack()
            LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
            ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);               // return IPSR is inconsistent
            return;

        if CurrentMode==Mode_Thread AND IPSR<8:0> != '000000000' then
            UFSR.INVPC = '1';
            PushStack();                              // to negate PopStack()
            LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
            ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);               // return IPSR is inconsistent
            return;

        ClearExclusiveLocal();
        SetEventRegister()                            // see WFE instruction for more details
        InstructionSynchronizationBarrier();

        if CurrentMode==Mode_Thread AND NestedActivation == 0 AND SCR.SLEEPONEXIT == '1' then
            SleepOnExit();                            // IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
```

`ExceptionActiveBitCount()` is a pseudocode function that returns the number of bits that are set to 1 in the `ExceptionActive[*]` array:

```
integer ExceptionActiveBitCount()
```

`SleepOnExit()` is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED pseudocode function that, if the exception from which the processor is returning is the only active exception, and the sleep-on-exit functionality is supported and enabled, puts the processor into a power-saving state on return from the exception. For more information see *Power management* on page B1-680.

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-629.

For the definition of `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

For the definition of `ExceptionActive[*]` see *Reset behavior* on page B1-641.

For helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxF-978.

The definitions of the `DeActivate()` and `PopStack()` pseudocode functions are:

```
// DeActivate()
// ============

DeActivate(integer ReturningExceptionNumber)
    ExceptionActive[ReturningExceptionNumber] = '0';
    /* PRIMASK and BASEPRI unchanged on exception exit */
    if IPSR<8:0> != '000000010' then
        FAULTMASK<0> = '0';                 // clear FAULTMASK on any return except NMI
    return;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// PopStack()
// ==========

PopStack(bits(32) frameptr)   /* only stack locations, not the load order, are architected */

    if HaveFPExt() && EXC_RETURN<4> == '0' then
        framesize = 0x68;
        forcealign = '1';
    else
        framesize = 0x20;
        forcealign = CCR.STKALIGN;

    R[0]  = MemA[frameptr,4];
    R[1]  = MemA[frameptr+0x4,4];
    R[2]  = MemA[frameptr+0x8,4];
    R[3]  = MemA[frameptr+0xC,4];
    R[12] = MemA[frameptr+0x10,4];
    LR    = MemA[frameptr+0x14,4];
    PC    = MemA[frameptr+0x18,4];         // UNPREDICTABLE if the new PC not halfword aligned
    psr   = MemA[frameptr+0x1C,4];

    if HaveFPExt() then
        if EXC_RETURN<4> == '0' then
            if FPCCR.LSPACT == '1' then
                FPCCR.LSPACT = '0'; // state in FP is still valid
            else
                CheckVFPEnabled();
                for i = 0 to 15
                    S[i] = MemA[frameptr+0x20+(4*i),4];
                FPSCR = MemA[frameptr+0x60,4];

        CONTROL.FPCA = NOT(EXC_RETURN<4>);

    spmask = Zeros(29)((psr<9> AND forcealign):'00';

    case  EXC_RETURN<3:0> of
        when '0001'                             // returning to Handler
            SP_main = (SP_main + framesize) OR spmask;
        when '1001'                             // returning to Thread using Main stack
            SP_main = (SP_main + framesize) OR spmask;
        when '1101'                             // returning to Thread using Process stack
            SP_process = (SP_process + framesize) OR spmask;

    APSR<31:27> = psr<31:27>;                   // valid APSR bits loaded from memory
    if HaveDSPExt() then
        APSR<19:16> = psr<19:16>;
    IPSR<8:0> = psr<8:0>;                       // valid IPSR bits loaded from memory
    EPSR<26:24,15:10> = psr<26:24,15:10>;       // valid EPSR bits loaded from memory
    return;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5.9 Exceptions in single-word load operations

To support instruction replay, single-word load instructions must not update the destination register when a fault occurs during execution. For example, this means the following instruction can be replayed:

```
LDR R0, [R2, R0];
```

B1.5.10 Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations

To improve interrupt response and increase processing throughput, the processor can take an interrupt during the execution of a Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, and continue execution of the instruction after returning from the interrupt. During the interrupt processing, the EPSR.ICI bits hold the continuation state of the Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, see *The EPSR* on page B1-625. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED when interrupts are recognized, so the use of the ICI bits is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Instructions that can be interrupted and restarted in this way are described as exception-continuable instructions.

In the base ARMv7-M architecture the exception-continuable instructions are `LDM`, `LDMDB`, `STM`, `STMDB`, `POP`, and `PUSH`. If a processor implements the FP extension the exception-continuable floating-point instructions are `VLDM`, `VSTM`, `VPOP`, and `VPUSH`.

Alternatively, the processor can abandon the execution of a Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction on taking an exception, and restart the instruction processing, from the start of the instruction, on returning from the exception. This case does not require support for the ICI bits, but means software must not use Load Multiple or Store Multiple instructions with volatile memory,

To support instruction replay, the architecture requires the Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions to restore or maintain the base register when a fault occurs during execution that prevents the base register write-back update.

Note

On an implementation that supports interruptible Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions, only Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions that are not in an IT block are compatible with the single-copy atomicity rules for Device and Strongly Ordered memory described in *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107.

For the instructions that are part of the base ARMv7-M architecture, the ICI bits store the number of the first register in the register list that must be loaded or stored on return to the instruction.

For the floating-point instructions, the ICI bits encode the number of the lowest-numbered doubleword floating-point extension register that was not completely loaded or stored before taking the exception. This means there might be multiple reads or writes of some registers.

Note

This means that vector Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions are never compatible with the single-copy atomicity rules for Device and Strongly Ordered memory described in *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

When the processor returns to executing the Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, it loads or stores all registers in the instruction register list with a number that is equal to or greater than the value held in the ICI field. See *The EPSR* on page B1-625 for the encoding of the ICI bits.

If the ICI bits are all zero, the EPSR does not hold a continuation state. This zero value indicates normal operation with neither IT nor interrupt continuation active. In this situation, an abandoned Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction restarts from the beginning.

The result is UNPREDICTABLE if the register number held in the ICI bits is non-zero and is either:

- not a register in the register list of the Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction
- the first register in the register list of the Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction.

If the ICI bit field is non-zero, and the instruction executed on an exception return is not a Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, or in an IT block, the processor generates an INVSTATE UsageFault, see *Fault behavior* on page B1-669.

If a BusFault or MemManage fault occurs on any Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, the processor abandons the instruction, and restarts the instruction from the beginning on return from the exception. If the instruction is not in an IT block, the fault clears the ICI bits to zero.

Note

If software uses an exception-continuable instruction in an IT construct, the IT feature takes precedence over the ICI feature. In this situation, the processor treats the Load Multiple and Store Multiple instruction as restartable, meaning the instruction must not be used with Device or Strongly Ordered memory.

The following sections describe restrictions that apply to taking an exception during a Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction.

LDM and PC in load list

For the ARM architecture in general, the case of `LDM` with PC in the register list is defined as unordered, meaning the registers can be loaded in a different order to that implied by the register list. The usual use is to load the PC first, described as loading the PC early.

For ARMv7-M, however, a `LDM` operation with the PC in the register list can be interrupted during execution, with the continuation state held in the ICI bits. On returning from the exception to executing the `LDM` instruction, the ICI bits indicate the next register to load, to continue correctly. This can result in an `LDM` with the PC in the register list accessing the same memory location twice.

If the processor loads the PC early, before taking an exception it must restore the PC, so that the return address from the exception is to the `LDM` instruction address. The processor then loads the new PC value again when it continues execution of the `LDM` instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Load Multiple and Store Multiple base register updates and the ICI bits

The base register can be changed as a result of a load or store multiple in the following situations:

Base register write-back

For more information see the descriptions of updating the base register in:

- *LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A7-283
- *LDMDB, LDMEA* on page A7-285
- *STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A7-469
- *STMDB, STMFD* on page A7-471.

Note

`POP` is a special case of the `LDM` instruction, and `PUSH` is a special case of the `STM` instruction, see *POP* on page A7-387 and *PUSH* on page A7-389. Therefore, `POP` and `PUSH` can both perform base register write-back.

Base register load

This occurs if the base register is in the register list of an `LDM`.

If an exception occurs during execution of the Load Multiple or Store Multiple instruction, the value left in the base register is as follows:

Fault condition:

The fault condition can be a BusFault or a MemManage fault. This case applies to all forms of `LDM` and `STM`, including `PUSH` and `POP`:

- The base register is restored to the original value.
- If the instruction is not in an IT block, the ICI bits are cleared to zero.
- If the instruction is in an IT block, the ICI bits are not used to hold the continuation state, because the IT bits indicate the position in the IT block.
- In all cases, the return from the fault handler restarts the instruction from the beginning.

Base register write-back:

The behavior depends on the context of the interrupt:

Interrupt of an `LDM` or `STM` in an IT block

- The base register contains the initial value, whether an IA or DB `LDM`/`STM` instruction.
- The ICI bits are not used to hold the continuation state, as the IT bits indicate the position in the IT block.

Interrupt of an `LDM` or `STM`, not in an IT block, using SP as the base register

- The SP that is presented to the exception entry sequence is lower than any element pushed by an `STM`, or not yet popped by an `LDM`.

  For instructions decrementing before (DB), the SP is set to the final value. This is the lowest value in the list.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

For instructions incrementing after (IA), the SP is set to the initial value. This is the lowest value in the list.

- In all cases, the ICI bits hold the continuation state.

Interrupt of `LDM` or `STM` not in an IT block, not using SP as the base register

- The base register contains the final value, whether the `LDM` or `STM` instruction is DB or IA.
- The ICI bits hold the continuation state.

Base register load

In all cases, the processor restores the original base address when it abandons the instruction. Other aspects of the behavior depend on the context of the interrupt:

Interrupt of an `LDM` in an IT block

If the instruction is in an IT block, the ICI bits cannot be used to hold the continuation state, because the IT bits indicate the position of the instruction in the IT block. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the instruction executes to completion or restarts.

Interrupt of an `LDM` not in an IT block

- If the processor takes the interrupt before it has loaded the base register, an implementation can use the ICI bits to hold the continuation state.
- If the processor takes the interrupt after it has loaded the base register, the implementation must restore the base register to its original value. The ICI bits can be set to an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED value that will load at least the base register and subsequent locations again on return.

Software must not use an `LDM` to access a volatile location if any of the following applies to that `LDM`:

- it executes inside an IT block
- it loads the base register
- it loads the PC.

As a base register load example, if the instruction `LDM R2, {R0-R4}` is interrupted, and the instruction is not in an IT block:

- If continuation is supported and the interrupt occurs after `R0` or `R1` has been loaded, the continuation bits indicate a restart on:
  - — `R1`, if `R0` has been loaded
  - — `R2`, if `R1` has been loaded.
- If continuation is supported and the interrupt occurs at any point after `R2` has been loaded, the processor abandons execution, and restarts execution, with the ICI bits cleared to zero, after it has handled the exception. This means that, in this case, the processor handles the instruction as if it does not support continuation.
- If continuation is not supported and the instruction is abandoned before loading `R4`, after the processor handles the interrupt it restarts execution of the instruction, with the ICI bits cleared to zero.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5.11 Exceptions on exception entry

During exception entry other exceptions can occur, either because of a fault on an operation involved in exception entry, or because of the arrival of an asynchronous exception, an interrupt, that is of higher priority than the current exception entry sequence.

For implementations that include the FP extension, see also *Exceptions while saving FP state* on page B1-688.

Late-arriving exceptions

The ARMv7-M architecture does not specify the point during an exception entry at which the processor recognizes the arrival of an asynchronous exception. However, to support very low interrupt latencies, the architecture permits a high priority interrupt that arrives during an exception entry to become active during that exception entry sequence, without causing the entry sequence to repeat.

When the processor takes an asynchronous interrupt during the exception entry sequence, the exception that caused the exception entry sequence is known as the original exception. The exception caused by the interrupt is known as the late-arriving exception.

In this case, the exception entry sequence started by the original exception can be used by the late-arriving exception. The processor takes the original exception after returning from the late-arriving exception. This is referred to as late-arrival preemption.

For a late arrival preemption, the processor enters the handler for the late-arriving exception, which becomes active. The original exception remains in the pending state.

A late-arriving exception can be an interrupt, a fault, or a supervisor call.

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED what conditions, if any, cause late arrival preemption. Late arrival preemption occurs only when the late-arriving exception is of higher priority than the original exception. If an implementation supports late-arriving exceptions, the `LateArrival()` pseudocode function shows their operation. This function changes the `ExceptionType` argument used in the `ExceptionTaken()` function.

```
// LateArrival()
// =============

LateArrival()

    // xEpriority: the lower the value, the higher the priority

    integer OEpriority;  // original exception group priority
    integer LAEpriority; // late-arriving exception group priority
    integer OEnumber;    // ExceptionNumber for OE
    integer LAEnumber;   // ExceptionNumber for LAE

    if (LAEpriority < OEpriority) then
        ExceptionTaken(LAEnumber);       // late-arriving exception taken
    else
        ExceptionTaken(OEnumber);        // original exception taken
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

For the definition of ExceptionTaken() see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

Derived exceptions on exception entry

Where an exception entry sequence itself causes a fault, the exception that caused the exception entry sequence is known as the original exception. The fault that is caused by the exception entry sequence is known as the derived exception. The code stream running at the time of the original exception is known as the preempted code, and the execution priority of that code is the preempted priority.

The following derived exceptions can occur during exception entry:

- A MemManage fault on a write to the stack memory performed as part of the exception entry. This is described as a MSTKERR class of MemManage fault.
- A BusFault on a write to the stack memory performed as part of the exception entry. This is described as a STKERR class of BusFault.
- A watchpoint, when halting debug is not enabled. This causes a DebugMonitorFault on exception entry.
- A BusFault on reading the vector for the original exception. This is always treated as a HardFault.

If the preempted priority is higher than or equal to the priority of the derived exception then:

- if the derived exception is a DebugMonitorFault, the processor ignores the derived exception
- otherwise, the processor escalates the derived exception to HardFault.

Note

When the preempted priority is higher than or equal to the priority of the derived exception, the priority of the original exception has no effect on whether the processor ignores a DebugMonitorFault, or escalates the derived exception.

A derived exception is treated similarly to a late arriving exception and an implementation can use late arrival preemption to handle derived exceptions. Late arrival preemption can occur only if the derived exception, after escalation if appropriate, is of higher priority than the original exception, but it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED exactly what conditions, if any, lead to late arrival preemption.

If the processor does not use the late-arrival preemption mechanism to handle a derived exception, the derived exception becomes pending, and the processor takes the exception in accordance with the prioritization rules for pending exceptions.

If the processor handles the derived exception using late-arrival preemption, it enters the handler for the derived exception, which becomes active. The original exception remains in the pending state.

The DerivedLateArrival() pseudocode function shows this operation. This function changes the ExceptionType argument used in the ExceptionTaken() function.

```
// DerivedLateArrival()
// ====================

DerivedLateArrival()
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// xEpriority: the lower the value, the higher the priority
// PE: the pre-empted exception - before exception entry
// OE: the original exception - exception entry
// DE: the derived exception - fault on exception entry

integer PEpriority;  // pre-empted exception group priority
integer OEpriority;  // group priority of the original exception
integer DEpriority;  // derived exception group priority

integer PEnumber;    // ExceptionNumber for PE
integer OEnumber;    // ExceptionNumber for OE
integer DEnumber;    // ExceptionNumber for DE

boolean DEisDbgMonFault;          // DE is a DebugMonitorFault

if DEpriority >= PEpriority && DEisDbgMonFault then
    ExceptionTaken(OEnumber);     // ignore the DebugMonitorFault
if DEpriority >= PEpriority && !DEisDbgMonFault then
    DEpriority = -1;              // escalate DE to HardFault
                                  // (incl. BKPT with DebugMonitor disabled)
    SetPending(OEnumber);         // OE to Pending state
    ExceptionTaken(HardFault);
else
    if DEpriority < OEpriority then
        SetPending(OEnumber);     // OE to Pending state
        ExceptionTaken(DEnumber); // start execution of the DE
                                  // tail-chaining IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
    else
        SetPending(DEnumber);     // DE to Pending state
        ExceptionTaken(OEnumber); // start execution of the OE
```

For definitions of `ExceptionTaken()` and `PushStack()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

The ICSR and SHCSR maintain pending state information, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713 and *System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page B3-725.

Note

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether late-arriving exceptions are supported and can affect derived exceptions. If an implementation supports late-arriving exceptions, then in the late-arrival pseudocode described in *Late-arriving exceptions* on page B1-662:

- DE maps to OE
- the late-arriving exception maps to SE.

B1.5.12 Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions

During exception return, other exceptions can affect behavior, either because of a fault on the operations performed during exception return, or because of an asynchronous exception that is of higher priority than the priority level that the exception return is returning to. The asynchronous exception might be already pending, or might arrive during the exception return.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The Exception Return Link describes the target of the exception return. The target priority is the higher of:

- the priority of the highest priority active exception, excluding the exception being returned from
- the boosted priority set by the special-purpose mask registers.

Derived exceptions on exception return

Where an exception return sequence causes a fault exception, the exception caused by the exception return sequence is known as the derived exception.

The following derived exceptions can occur during exception return:

- A MemManage fault on a read of the stack memory performed as part of the exception return. This is described as a MemManage fault of the MUNSTKERR class.
- A BusFault on a read of the stack memory performed as part of the exception return. This is described as a BusFault of the UNSTKERR class.
- A DebugMonitorFault caused by a watchpoint on the exception return.

Note

The `ExceptionReturn()` pseudocode function handles integrity checks that cause UsageFault exceptions, and therefore the list of derived exceptions does not include this case. An implementation can optimize the handling of these exceptions, using a method similar to tail-chaining.

If the target priority is higher than or equal to the priority of the derived exception, then:

- if the derived exception is a DebugMonitorFault, the processor ignores the derived exception
- otherwise, the processor escalates the derived exception to HardFault.

If a derived exception occurs on exception return, the processor uses tail-chaining to enter the handler for the derived exception.

Tail-chaining

Tail-chaining is the optimization of an exception return and an exception entry sequence by removing the load and store of the key context state.

An implementation can use tail-chaining in the following cases:

- To handle a derived exception.
- As an optimization to improve interrupt response when there is a pending exception with a higher priority than the target priority. In this case, the processor takes the Pending exception immediately on exception return, and tail-chaining optimizes the exception return and entry sequence.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In the tail-chaining optimization, the processor combines the exception return and exception entry sequences to form the sequence described by the `TailChain()` pseudocode function, in which `ReturningExceptionNumber` is the number of the exception being returned from, and `ExceptionNumber` is the number of the exception being entered by tail-chaining. `EXC_RETURN` is the EXC_RETURN value that started the original exception return.

```
// TailChain()
// ===========

TailChain(bits(28) EXC_RETURN)
    assert CurrentMode == Mode_Handler;
    if !IsOnes(EXC_RETURN<27:4>) then UNPREDICTABLE;

    integer ReturningExceptionNumber = UInt(IPSR<8:0>);
    LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
    DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
    ExceptionTaken(ExceptionNumber);
```

For a definition of `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

For a definition of `DeActivate()` see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652.

Use of tail-chaining as an optimization for pending exceptions

On an exception return, using tail-chaining to optimize the handling of a pending exception with sufficient priority to be taken immediately after the exception return can change the exception behavior. In particular, many derived exceptions that might occur during the exception return followed by exception entry might not occur during tail-chaining. If this happens, the derived exceptions can occur on return from the tail-chained exception, if the conditions causing them still apply.

Late arrival preemption and tail-chaining during exception returns

The ARMv7-M architecture does not specify the point at which the processor recognizes any asynchronous exception that arrives during an exception. If the processor recognizes a new exception while it is tail-chaining another exception, and the new exception has higher priority than the exception being tail-chained, then the processor can, instead, take the new exception, using late-arrival preemption. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED what conditions, if any, lead to late arrival preemption.

Late-arrival preemption can occur during a tail-chaining optimization of a derived exception on an exception return. The processor marks the derived exception as pending when it takes a new exception because of late-arrival preemption of the derived exception by the new exception.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.5.13 Exception status and control

The System Control Block in the System Control Space includes register support for managing the exception model, see *About the System Control Block* on page B3-709. These registers are grouped as follows:

- general configuration, status and control:
  - the VTOR, see *The vector table* on page B1-634 and *Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-716
  - the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713
  - the AIRCR, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717
  - the SCR, see *Power management* on page B1-680 and *System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-718
  - the CCR, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720
  - the SHPRs, see *System Handler Priority Register 1, SHPR1* on page B3-723, *System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-723, and *System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-724
  - the SHCSR, see *System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page B3-725
  - fault handling status and control, see *Fault behavior* on page B1-669 and *Fault status and address information* on page B1-673
  - the STIR, see *Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742
- SysTick support, see *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-744
- NVIC support, see *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-750.

Using the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713, software can:

- set the NMI, SysTick and PendSV exceptions to the pending state
- clear the pending state of the SysTick and PendSV exceptions
- find status information for any pending or active exceptions.

Using the AIRCR, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717, software can:

- control exception priority grouping, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-636
- read the endianness used for data accesses, see *Control of endianness in ARMv7-M* on page A3-86
- control reset behavior, see *Reset management* on page B1-679.

The AIRCR includes a vector key field. The processor ignores any write to the register that does not write the key value `0x05FA` to this field.

Using the CCR, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720, software can enable or disable:

- divide by zero faults, alignment faults and some features of processor operation
- BusFaults at priority -1 and higher.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Using the SHPRs, software can control the priority of the BusFault, MemManage, UsageFault, Debug Monitor Fault, SVCall, SysTick and PendSV exceptions, see:

- *System Handler Priority Register 1, SHPR1* on page B3-723
- *System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-723
- *System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-724.

Using the SHCSR, see *System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page B3-725, software can:

- Access the pending and active status of faults and supervisor calls
- Access the active status of the SysTick and PendSV interrupts
- Enable or disable the UsageFault, BusFault and MemManage exception handlers. When a fault handler is disabled, the processor escalates the corresponding fault, see *Priority escalation* on page B1-640.

Note

- There are no explicit active state bits for reset, NMI or HardFault, the fixed priority exceptions.
- The debug monitor is enabled in a debug control register, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.
- SysTick is enabled in a SysTick control register, see *SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR* on page B3-746.
- The active and pending state bits support the save and restore of information on a context switch. In particular, for an explicit software write to the SHCSR:
  - setting an active bit to 1 does not cause an exception entry
  - clearing an active bit to 0 does not cause an exception return
  - the effect of setting a pending bit to 1 for an exception with priority greater than or equal to the execution priority is UNPREDICTABLE.

Writing to the STIR, see *Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742, software can use an exception number to set the corresponding pending register bit to 1. Only external interrupts can be made pending using this method. The processor ignores any attempt to write an exception number:

- in the range 0-15
- that corresponds to an interrupt that it does not support.

Using the NVIC registers, see *NVIC register support in the SCS* on page B3-752, software can perform the following operations for external interrupts:

- enable or disable
- set or clearing the pending state
- read the active state
- program the priority.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

An interrupt can become pending when it is disabled. Enabling an interrupt means a pending interrupt can become active.

B1.5.14 Fault behavior

Under the ARMv7-M exception priority scheme, a processor handles a precise fault in one of the following ways:

- execute the corresponding exception handler
- take a HardFault exception
- if a fault occurs when executing at priority -1 or higher, as described in *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674.

The following pseudocode summarizes fault handling by a dedicated handler or HardFault handler:

```
// Fault handling
// ==============

// FaultType is a subset of ExceptionNumber and can be one of the following values:

bits(9) HardFault = 3;
bits(9) MemManage = 4;
bits(9) BusFault = 5;
bits(9) UsageFault = 6;

ExceptionTaken(FaultType);
```

In all fault handling cases, the processor sets the corresponding fault status register bit to 1, and the fault handler returns according to the rules defined in the `ReturnAddress()` pseudocode function.

For the definitions of `ExceptionTaken()` and `ReturnAddress()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

List of ARMv7-M faults

An ARMv7-M implementation recognizes the following faults, excluding faults relating to debug. As shown, each fault has an associated status bit and an associated vector catch bit, used by the debug implementation to catch the fault.

HardFault on vector read error

Status bit HFSR.VECTTBL

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_INTERR

Bus error returned when reading the vector table entry.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

Exception vector reads use the default address map, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761.

HardFault on fault escalation

Status bit HFSR.FORCED

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_HARDERR

Fault or supervisor call occurred, and the handler priority is lower than or equal to the execution priority. The exception escalates to a HardFault. The processor updates the fault address and status registers, as appropriate.

HardFault on breakpoint (`BKPT`) escalation

Status bit HFSR.DEBUGEVT

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_HARDERR

Occurs when halting debug and the DebugMonitor are disabled, and an exception associated with `BKPT` is escalated.

BusFault on exception entry stack memory operations

Status bit BFSR.STKERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_INTERR

Failure on a hardware save of context. The fault returns a bus error, but the processor does not update the BusFault Address Register.

MemManage fault on exception entry stack memory operations

Status bit MMFSR.MSTKERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_INTERR

Failure on a hardware save of context, because of an MPU access violation. The processor does not update the MemManage Address Register.

BusFault on exception return stack memory operations

Status bit BFSR.UNSTKERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_INTERR

Failure on a hardware restore of context. The fault returns a bus error, but the processor does not update the Bus Fault Address Register.

MemManage fault on exception return stack memory operations

Status bit MMFSR.MUNSTKERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_INTERR

Failure on a hardware restore of context, because of an MPU access violation. The processor does not update the MemManage Address Register.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

MemManage fault on data access

Status bit MMFSR.DACCVIOL

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_MMERR

MPU violation or fault caused by an explicit memory access. The processor writes the data address of the load or store to the MemManage Address Register.

MemManage fault on instruction access

Status bit MMFSR.IACCVIOL

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_MMERR

MPU violation or fault caused by an instruction fetch, or an instruction fetch from XN memory when there is no MPU. The fault occurs only if the processor attempts to execute the instruction. The processor does not update the MemManage Address Register.

BusFault on instruction fetch, precise

Status bit BFSR.IBUSERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_BUSERR

Bus error on an instruction fetch. The fault occurs only if the processor attempts to execute the instruction. The processor does not update the Bus Fault Address Register.

BusFault on data access, precise

Status bit BFSR.PRECISERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_BUSERR

Precise bus error caused by an explicit memory access. The processor writes the data address of the load or store to the Bus Fault Address Register.

BusFault, bus error on data bus, imprecise

Status bit BFSR.IMPRECISERR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_BUSERR

Imprecise bus error caused by an explicit memory access. The processor does not update the Bus Fault Address Register.

UsageFault, No coprocessor

Status bit UFSR.NOCP

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_NOCPERR

Occurs on an attempt to access a coprocessor that does not exist, or to which access is denied, see *Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735.

UsageFault, Undefined Instruction

Status bit UFSR.UNDEFINSTR

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_STATERR

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Occurs if the processor attempts to execute an unknown instruction, including any unknown instruction associated with an enabled coprocessor.

UsageFault, attempt to execute an instruction when EPSR.T==0

Status bit UFSR.INVSTATE

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_STATERR

Occurs if the processor attempts to execute in an invalid EPSR state, for example after a `BX` instruction branches to an unsupported state. This fault includes any state change after entry to or return from an exception, as well as from an inter-working instruction.

UsageFault, exception return integrity check failures

Status bit UFSR.INVPC

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_STATERR

Indicates any failure of the integrity checks for exception returns described in *Integrity checks on exception return* on page B1-654.

UsageFault, illegal unaligned load or store

Status bit UFSR.UNALIGNED

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_CHKERR

Occurs when a load-store multiple instruction attempts to access a non-word aligned location. If the CCR.UNALIGN_TRP bit is set to 1 it occurs, also, for any load or store that is not naturally aligned.

UsageFault, divide by 0

Status bit UFSR.DIVBYZERO

Vector catch bit DEMCR.VC_CHKERR

If the CCR.DIV_0_TRP bit is set to 1, this occurs when the processor attempts to execute `SDIV` or `UDIV` with a divisor of 0.

For more information about:

- the fault status bits, see *Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR* on page B3-727 and *HardFault Status Register, HFSR* on page B3-732
- the vector catch bits, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838 and *Vector catch support* on page C1-842.
- the CCR trap bits, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720
- faults related to debug see Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Fault status and address information

The System Control Space includes the following fault status and fault address registers:

- configurable fault status registers for UsageFault, BusFault and MemManage faults, see *Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR* on page B3-727
- a HardFault status register, see *HardFault Status Register, HFSR* on page B3-732
- a Debug fault status register, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828 for more information
- BusFault and MemManage fault address registers, see *BusFault Address Register, BFAR* on page B3-734 and *MemManage Fault Address Register, MMFAR* on page B3-733. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether these fault address registers are unique registers, or are a shared resource accessible from two locations in the System Control Space.

The HFSR provides three fault handling status flags, that indicate the reason for taking a HardFault exception. These bits are write-one-to-clear.

The 32-bit CFSR, see *Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR* on page B3-727, concatenates fault status registers for UsageFault, BusFault, and MemManage fault. These are called configurable faults because they support dynamic priority setting by software. Fault status register bits are additive, meaning each new fault sets a bit to 1. These bits are write-one-to-clear.

The BusFault and MemManage registers each include a valid bit that is set to 1 when the associated fault address register is updated with the faulting address:

- the MemManage Address register is updated only for data access violations
- the BusFault Address register is updated only for precise data errors.

Software can determine the address of the faulting instruction for UsageFault, MemManage and precise BusFaults from the stacked `ReturnAddress()` value, as defined in *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.

Note

- Escalation of a BusFault or MemManage exception to HardFault can cause the associated fault address register to be overwritten by a derived exception, see *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-662 and *Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions* on page B1-664. Therefore, ARM strongly recommends that handlers managing these types of fault clear to zero the VALID bit corresponding to the fault address, before performing their exception return.
- There are cases where the fault address register is not valid. Handlers must check address validity by ensuring the associated VALID bit is set to 1. An invalid address can occur because of the preemption of a fault.

The CCR, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720, includes control bits for features related to faults:

- The BFHFNMIGN bit prevents data access bus faults when the processor is executing at priority -1 or -2.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

An example use of the bit is in autoconfiguration of a bridge or other device, where probing a disabled or non-existent element might cause a bus fault. Before using this bit, software developers must ensure that the code and data spaces of the handler that executes at priority -1 or -2 are valid for correct operation.

- Trap enable bits:
  - — the DIV_0_TRP bit enables the divide-by-0 trap
  - — the UNALIGN_TRP bit enables the trap on unaligned word and halfword accesses.

B1.5.15 Unrecoverable exception cases

The ARMv7-M architecture generally assumes that, when the processor is running at priority -1 or higher, any fault or supervisor call that occurs is entirely unexpected and fatal.

The standard exception entry mechanism does not apply where a fault or supervisor call occurs at a priority of -1 or above. ARMv7-M requires the processor to handle most of these cases using a lockup mechanism. Other cases become pending or are ignored. Lockup means the processor suspends normal instruction execution and enters Lockup state. When in Lockup state:

- The processor repeatedly fetches the same instruction, from a fixed address, the *Lockup address*, determined by the nature of the fault, as *Possible faults when executing at a priority of less than 0* on page B1-675 describes.
- After each fetch, the processor executes the instruction, if it is valid. If the lockup is caused by a precise memory error on a load or store that has base write-back, the fault restores the base register.
- If the IT bits are non-zero when the lockup occurs, the IT bits do not advance.
- The processor sets the S_LOCKUP bit in the Debug Halting Control and Status Register to 1.
- The processor sets the Fault Status Register bits consistent with the fault causing the lockup to 1.

ARM strongly recommends that implementations provide an external signal that indicates that the processor is in Lockup state, so that an external mechanism can react.

A processor can exit Lockup state in the following ways:

- If the lockup is in a HardFault handler and an NMI exception occurs, the NMI becomes active. The NMI return link is the address used for the Lockup state instruction fetch.
- A system reset occurs. This causes exit from Lockup state, and resets the system as normal.
- The processor receives a halt command from a halting-mode debug agent. The processor enters Debug state with the PC set to the same value as is used for return context, as *Possible faults when executing at a priority of less than 0* on page B1-675 describes.
- If the lockup was caused by a memory error and that error is resolved, either by specific action by the system, or over time. For example, the memory error might be caused by a resource that requires time to configure, and therefore clears when that configuration is complete.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In most cases, once the processor enters Lockup state, it remains in that state until a reset, such as from a watchdog. However, the following mechanisms can be used to examine and correct the reason for the Lockup state, possibly avoiding the requirement for a reset:

- A debugger stops the processor by issuing a Halt, causing Debug state entry. It then fixes one or more of the xPSR, instruction, FAULTMASK and PC, and exits Debug state.
- If the processor locks up because of a fetch error caused by a BusFault on the read, an external master can correct the problem or a transitory problem can self-correct.
- If the processor locks up because of an undefined instruction, an external master can modify the memory location from which the processor is fetching the instruction.
- If NMI preempts Lockup state in a HardFault exception, the NMI handler can fix the problem before returning. For example, it might do one or more of change the return PC value, change the value in the FAULTMASK register, and fix the state bits in the saved xPSR.

In these cases, the processor exits Lockup state and continues executing from the lockup or modified PC address, as described in this section.

Note

Although the architecture permits these methods of recovering from lockup, ARM does not suggest that these methods are suitable for use by an application. ARM regards lockup as terminating execution, requiring a reset.

Possible faults when executing at a priority of less than 0

This section describes the behavior of all faults or supervisor calls that can occur when the processor is executing at priority -1 or higher. This means faults that might occur during the execution of the HardFault, NMI, or Reset handler, or when FAULTMASK is set to 1. The faults that might occur are as follows:

Vector read error at reset, when reading initial PC or SP value

Behavior Lockup at priority -1.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

Vector read error on NMI entry, processor cannot read NMI vector

Behavior Lockup at priority -2.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

The lockup occurs at priority -2 regardless of the priority of the code executing when the processor took the NMI exception.

Vector read error on HardFault entry, processor cannot read HardFault vector

Behavior Lockup at priority -1.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The lockup occurs at priority -1 regardless of the priority of the code executing when the processor took the HardFault exception.

BusFault on instruction fetch

Behavior Lockup at current execution priority. For example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.

Lockup address Address accessed by the instruction fetch.

This fault can autocorrect if the bus fault is transitory.

BusFault on imprecise data access

Behavior Processor sets state of the BusFault exception to pending.

This fault does not cause a lockup.

BusFault on precise data access

Behavior Configurable, depending on CCR.BFHFNMIGN value. Either:

- lockup at the current execution priority, for example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.
- ignored.

Lockup address Address of the instruction making the access.

The behavior depends on the value of CCR.BFHFNMIGN, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720 for more information:

BFHFNMIGN == 0

Lockup at current execution priority. For example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.

This fault can autocorrect if the bus fault is transitory.

BFHFNMIGN ==1

The processor sets the BFSR bits, see *Status registers for configurable-priority faults* on page B3-727, but otherwise ignores the bus fault.

BusFault on memory operation when stacking state on exception entry

Behavior Lockup. Whether this is at priority -1 or priority -2 is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

This case can occur only when the processor attempts to take an NMI exception that occurs when the execution priority is -1.

BusFault on memory operation when unstacking state on exception return

Returning to software executing at priority -1.

Behavior Lockup at priority -1.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

This case can occur only on returning from the NMI exception handler to an execution priority of -1.

MemManage fault on instruction fetch

Behavior Configurable, depending on MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA value and the address accessed. Either:

- lockup at the current execution priority, for example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.
- ignored.

If the address accessed is XN the lockup occurs regardless of the value of MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA.

Lockup address Address accessed by the instruction fetch.

The MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA bit and the attributes of the addressed memory determine when this fault can occur:

HFNMIENA == 0

Lockup occurs only on an attempt to execute from an XN region of the default memory map.

HFNMIENA == 1

Lockup occurs when a fetch causes an MPU access violation, an XN region violation, or missing region fault.

See *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767 for more information.

MemManage fault on data access

Behavior Configurable, depending on MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA value. Either:

- lockup at the current execution priority, for example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.
- ignored.

Lockup address Address of the instruction making the access.

The MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA bit controls whether this fault can occur:

HFNMIENA == 0

Lockup cannot occur.

HFNMIENA == 1

Lockup can occur from an MPU access or privilege violation.

See *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767 for more information.

MemManage fault on memory operation when stacking state on exception entry

Behavior Lockup. Whether this is at priority -1 or priority -2 is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

This case can occur only when the processor attempts to take an NMI exception that occurs when the execution priority is -1. In addition, the MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA bit controls whether this fault can occur, see the description of MemManage fault on data access.

MemManage fault on memory operation when unstacking state on exception return

Behavior Lockup at priority -1.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

This case can occur only on returning from the NMI exception handler to an execution priority of -1. In addition, the MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA bit controls whether this fault can occur, see the description of MemManage fault on data access.

Execution of `SVC` instruction

Behavior Lockup at current execution priority. For example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.

Lockup address Address of the `SVC` instruction.

The processor treats the `SVC` instruction as UNDEFINED.

INVPC UsageFault on exception return

Behavior Lockup at priority -2.

Lockup address `0xFFFFFFFE`.

This fault can occur only on returning from the NMI handler to an execution priority of -1.

Note

If an INVPC UsageFault occurs on returning to an execution priority of 0, or of lower priority, then the UsageFault tailchains to the HardFault handler, and does not cause lockup.

UsageFault other than INVPC

Behavior Lockup at current execution priority. For example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.

Lockup address Address of the faulting instruction.

Breakpoint triggered

Behavior Lockup at current execution priority. For example, lockup at priority -1 if executing HardFault handler.

Lockup address Address of the breakpointed instruction.

This fault can be caused by a `BKPT` instruction or by a breakpoint defined in the FPB, see *Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit* on page C1-904.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- Lockup addresses shown as 0xFFFFFFFE are sometimes described as lockups at address 0xFFFFFFFF. This is because any instruction fetch is halfword aligned. and therefore addresses 0xFFFFFFFE and 0xFFFFFFFF are equivalent.
- Lockup does not affect the value of the EPSR.T bit, that for correct operation must be set to 1 to indicate that the processor executes Thumb instructions. In particular, if lockup occurred because the T bit was set to 0 the T bit remains as 0. Regardless of the T bit value, the visible lockup address is always 0xFFFFFFFE.

If a fault or supervisor call during the execution of the HardFault or NMI handler causes the system to lockup at a priority of -1, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether either or both:

- the IPSR indicates Hardfault
- the FAULTMASK bit is set to 1.

B1.5.16 Reset management

The AIRCR provides the following mechanisms for a system reset:

- The control bit SYSRESETREQ requests a reset by an external system resource. The system components that are reset by this request are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. SYSRESETREQ is required to cause a Local reset.
- The control bit VECTRESET causes a Local reset. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether other parts of the system are reset as a result of this control bit. This is a debug feature, see *Reset and debug* on page B1-680.

  Note

  A single write to the AIRCR that sets both SYSRESETREQ and VECTRESET to 1 can cause UNPREDICTABLE behavior.

See *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717 for more information.

For SYSRESETREQ, the architecture does not guarantee that the reset takes place immediately. A typical code sequence to synchronize reset following a write to the SYSRESETREQ control bit is:

```
      DSB;
Loop  B    Loop;
```

The AIRCR also provides a mechanism to reset the active state of all exceptions. Writing 1 to the VECTCLRACTIVE bit clears the active state of all exceptions and clears the exception number in the IPSR to 0, see *The IPSR* on page B1-625. Once the effect of the write to the VECTCLRACTIVE is complete, the IPSR and the active state of all exceptions read-as-zero.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

This applies to active state only, writing 1 to the VECTCLRACTIVE bit does not affect the pending state of any exception.

Reset and debug

A Power-on reset fully resets the debug logic. A Local reset only partly resets the debug logic. See *Debug and reset* on page C1-822 for more information. A debugger must halt the processor before using VECTRESET, otherwise the effect is UNPREDICTABLE.

B1.5.17 Power management

ARMv7-M supports the use of Wait for Interrupt (`WFI`) and Wait for Event (`WFE`) instructions as part of system power management.

Wait for Interrupt provides a mechanism for hardware support of entry to one or more sleep states. Hardware can suspend execution until a wakeup event occurs. The levels of power saving, and associated wakeup latency when execution is suspended, are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Wait for Event provides a mechanism for software to suspend program execution until a wakeup condition occurs, with minimal or no impact on wakeup latency. Wait for Event provides some freedom for hardware to instigate power saving measures. Both `WFI` and `WFE` are hint instructions, that might have no effect on program execution. Normally, they are used in software idle loops that resume program execution only after an interrupt or event of interest occurs.

Note

- Code using `WFE` and `WFI` must handle any spurious wakeup event caused by a debug halt or other IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED reason.
- Applications must be aware that the architecture permits WFE, WFI, and SEV instructions to be implemented as NOPs.

For more information, see:

- *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-681
- *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-683.

While execution is suspended after a WFI or WFE, the processor is described as being in a sleep state.

Where a processor implements power management features, the SCR provides control and configuration of those features, see *System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-718. The following SCR bits control power-management functions:

SEVONPEND

Configures interrupt transitions from inactive to pending state as wakeup events. This configuration means the system can use a masked interrupt as the wakeup event from WFE power-saving.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

SLEEPONEXIT

Enables sleep-on-exit operation, if implemented. This configuration means that, on an exception return, if no exception other than the returning exception is active, the processor suspends execution without returning from the exception. Subsequently, when another exception becomes active, the processor tail-chains that exception, see *Tail-chaining* on page B1-665.

Whether a processor supports sleep-on-exit functionality, and all aspects of sleep-on-exit behavior not specified in this manual, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

When a processor enters sleep mode because of the sleep-on-exit functionality, the wakeup events are identical to those for WFI.

A processor can exit the suspended state spuriously. ARM recommends that any software that uses the sleep-on-exit feature is written to handle spurious wakeup events and the exception return caused by such an event.

SLEEPDEEP Selects between different levels of sleep. When this bit is set to 1, it indicates that the wakeup time from sleep state might be longer than it is when the bit set to 0. Typically, the system can use this value to determine whether it can suspend a PLL or other clock generator. The exact behavior is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

B1.5.18 Wait For Event and Send Event

ARMv7-M can support software-based synchronization with respect to system events using the `SEV` and `WFE` hint instructions. Software can:

- use the `WFE` instruction to indicate that it is able to suspend execution of a process or thread until an event occurs, permitting hardware to enter a low power state
- rely on a mechanism that is transparent to software and provides low latency wakeup.

The Wait For Event system relies on hardware and software working together to achieve energy saving. For example, stalling execution of a processor until a device or another processor has set a flag:

- the hardware provides the mechanism to enter the Wait For Event low-power state
- software enters a polling loop to determine when the flag is set:
  - the polling processor issues a Wait For Event instruction as part of a polling loop if the flag is clear
  - an event is generated (hardware interrupt or Send Event instruction from another processor) when the flag is set.

The mechanism depends on the interaction of:

- WFE wakeup events, see *WFE wakeup events* on page B1-682
- the Event Register, see *The Event Register* on page B1-682
- the Send Event instruction, see *The Send Event instruction* on page B1-682
- the Wait For Event instruction, see *The Wait For Event instruction* on page B1-682.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

WFE wakeup events

The following events are *WFE wakeup events*:

- the execution of an SEV instruction on any processor in the multiprocessor system
- any exception entering the Pending state if SEVONPEND in the System Control Register is set
- an asynchronous exception at a priority that preempts any currently active exceptions
- a debug event with debug enabled.

The Event Register

The Event Register is a single bit register for each processor in a multiprocessor system. When set, an Event Register indicates that an event has occurred, since the register was last cleared, that might prevent the processor needing to suspend operation on issuing a WFE instruction. The following conditions apply to the Event Register:

- A reset clears the Event Register.
- Any WFE wakeup event, or the execution of an exception return instruction, sets the Event Register. For the definition of exception return instructions see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652.
- A WFE instruction clears the Event Register.
- Software cannot read or write the value of the Event Register directly.

The Send Event instruction

The Send Event instruction, see *SEV* on page A7-426, causes a wakeup event to be signaled to all processors in a multiprocessor system. The mechanism used to signal the event to the processors is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

The Wait For Event instruction

The action of the Wait For Event instruction, see *WFE* on page A7-610, depends on the state of the Event Register:

- If the Event Register is set, the instruction clears the register and returns immediately.
- If the Event Register is clear the processor can suspend execution and enter a low-power state. It can remain in that state until the processor detects a WFE wakeup event or a reset. When the processor detects a WFE wakeup event, or earlier if the implementation chooses, the WFE instruction completes.

WFE wakeup events can occur before a WFE instruction is issued. Software using the Wait For Event mechanism must be tolerant to spurious wakeup events, including multiple wakeups.

Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism

The SetEventRegister() pseudocode procedure sets the processor Event Register.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The ClearEventRegister() pseudocode procedure clears the processor Event Register.

The EventRegistered() pseudocode function returns TRUE if the processor Event Register is set to 1 and FALSE if it is set to 0:

```
boolean EventRegistered()
```

The WaitForEvent() pseudocode procedure optionally suspends execution until a WFE wakeup event or reset occurs, or until some earlier time if the implementation chooses. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether restarting execution after the period of suspension causes a ClearEventRegister() to occur.

The SendEvent() pseudocode procedure sets the Event Register of every processor in a multiprocessor system.

B1.5.19 Wait For Interrupt

In ARMv7-M, Wait For Interrupt is supported through the hint instruction, WFI. For more information, see *WFI* on page A7-611.

When a processor issues a WFI instruction it can suspend execution and enter a low-power state. It can remain in that state until the processor detects one of the following *WFI wakeup events*:

- A reset.
- An asynchronous exception at a priority that, if PRIMASK was set to 0, would preempt any currently active exceptions.

  Note

  The processor ignores the value of PRIMASK in determining whether an asynchronous exception is a WFI wakeup event.

- If debug is enabled, a debug event.
- An IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED WFI wakeup event.

When the hardware detects a WFI wakeup event, or earlier if the implementation chooses, the WFI instruction completes. The processor then either:

- takes a pending exception, if, taking account of the value of PRIMASK, there is a pending exception with sufficient priority to preempt execution
- resumes execution from the instruction immediately following the WFI instruction.

The exception prioritization rules mean that, if the processor executes a WFI instruction at NMI priority, the only guaranteed ways of forcing that instruction to complete are a reset or Debug state entry.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- ARM recommends that software always uses the WFI instruction in a loop, and does not assume that the processor either enters low-power state, or remains in low-power state, after any particular execution of the WFI instruction. This is because:
  - the architecture defines WFI as a NOP-compatible hint, that the processor can ignore
  - a processor can exit the low-power state spuriously, or because of debug, or for some IMPLEMENTATION-DEFINED reason.
- Some implementations of Wait For Interrupt drain down any pending memory activity before suspending execution. This increases the power saving, by increasing the area over which clocks can be stopped. The ARM architecture does not require this operation, and software must not rely on Wait For Interrupt operating in this way.

Using WFI to indicate an idle state on bus interfaces

A common implementation practice is to complete any entry into power-down routines with a WFI instruction. Typically, the WFI instruction:

1. forces the suspension of execution, and of all associated bus activity
2. ceases to execute instructions from the processor.

The control logic required to do this typically tracks the activity of the bus interfaces of the processor. This means it can signal to an external power controller that there is no ongoing bus activity.

The exact nature of this interface is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, but the use of Wait For Interrupt as the only architecturally-defined mechanism that completely suspends execution makes it very suitable as the preferred power-down entry mechanism.

Pseudocode details of Wait For Interrupt

The `WaitForInterrupt()` pseudocode procedure optionally suspends execution until a WFI wakeup event or reset occurs, or until some earlier time if the implementation chooses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B1.6 Floating-point support

The optional Floating-point extension on page A2-53 introduces:

- the FP extension, used for scalar floating-point operations
- the FP extension registers S0 - S31, and their alternative view as doubleword registers D0 - D15
- the *Floating-Point Status and Control Register* (FPSCR).

For more information about the system register for the Floating-point extension see *FP extension system register*.

Software can interrogate the registers described in *Floating-point feature identification registers* on page B4-794 to discover the floating-point support implemented in a system.

This section gives more information about the Floating-point extension, in the subsections:

- *Enabling floating-point support*
- *FP extension system register*.

B1.6.1 Enabling floating-point support

If an ARMv7-M implementation includes the FP extension then the boot software for any system that uses that extension must ensure that access to CP10 and CP11 is enabled in the Coprocessor Access Control Register, see *Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735. If it does not do this, operation of FP features is UNDEFINED.

If the access control bits are programmed differently for CP10 and CP11, operation of floating-point features is UNPREDICTABLE.

For more information see *Checks on FP instruction execution* on page B1-686.

B1.6.2 FP extension system register

In an ARMv7-M implementation, the FP extension has a single system register in the CP10 and CP11 register space. Any ARMv7-M implementation that includes this extension must implement this register. This section gives general information about this register and its position in the CP10 and CP11 register space, and indicates where the register is described in detail. It contains the following subsections:

- *Register map of the FP extension system register space* on page B1-686
- *Accessing the FP extension system register* on page B1-686.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Register map of the FP extension system register space

Table B1-10 shows the register map of the FP extension system register space.

Table B1-10 FP common register block

System register	Name	Description
0b0000	Reserved	All accesses are UNPREDICTABLE
0b0001	FPSCR	See *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56
0b0010- 0b1111	Reserved	All accesses are UNPREDICTABLE

For other FP registers see:

- for other control registers, *System control and ID registers* on page B3-709
- for the feature registers, *Floating-point feature identification registers* on page B4-794.

Accessing the FP extension system register

Software accesses the Floating-point extension system register using the `VMRS` and `VMSR` instructions, see:

- *VMRS* on page A7-592
- *VMSR* on page A7-593.

For example:

```
VMRS <Rt>, FPSCR    ; Read Floating-Point System Control Register
VMSR FPSCR, <Rt>    ; Write Floating-Point System Control Register
```

The system must enable access to CP10 and CP11 in the CPACR before software can access the FP extension system register, see *Enabling floating-point support* on page B1-685.

B1.6.3 Pseudocode details of FP operation

The following subsections give pseudocode descriptions of features of floating-point operation:

- *Checks on FP instruction execution*
- *Saving FP state* on page B1-687
- *Exceptions while saving FP state* on page B1-688.

Checks on FP instruction execution

Whenever the processor attempts to execute a floating-point instruction, it must check whether access to the FP functionality is enabled. If it is, it must check whether it has an outstanding lazy save of the FP state, and if so it must save the FP state to the reserved area on the stack. The `ExecuteFPCheck()` function performs these checks.

```
// ExecuteFPCheck()
// ================
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
ExecuteFPCheck()
    // Check access to FP coprocessor is enabled
    CheckVFPEnabled();

    // If FP lazy context save is enabled then save state
    if FPCCR.LSPACT == '1' then
        PreserveFPState();

    // Update CONTROL.FPCA, and create new FP context
    // if this has been enabled by setting FPCCR.ASPEN to 1
    if FPCCR.ASPEN == '1' AND CONTROL.FPCA = '0' then
        FPSCR<26:22> = FPDSCR<26:22>;
        CONTROL.FPCA = '1';

    return;
```

Saving FP state describes the `PreserveFPState()` pseudocode procedure.

The `CheckVFPEnabled()` pseudocode procedure takes appropriate action if software uses a floating-point instruction when the Floating-point extension is not enabled:

```
// CheckVFPEnabled()
// =================

CheckVFPEnabled()
    // Check Coprocessor Access Control Register for permission to use CP10/11.
    if CPACR.cp10 != CPACR.cp11 then UNPREDICTABLE;
    case CPACR.cp10 of
        when '00'
            UFSR.NOCP = '1';
            ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
        when '01'
            if !CurrentModeIsPrivileged()
                UFSR.NOCP = '1';
                ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
        when '10'
            UNPREDICTABLE;
        // when '11' // access permitted by CPACR
    return;
```

Saving FP state

The `PreserveFPState()` pseudocode function saves the floating-point state to the stack when there is an outstanding lazy save of the FP state.

```
// PreserveFPState()
// =================

PreserveFPState()
    // Preserve FP state using address, privilege and relative
    // priorities recorded during original stacking. Derived
    // exceptions are handled by TakePreserveFPException().
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    // The checks usually performed for stacking using ValidateAddress()
    // are performed, with the value of ExecutionPriority()
    // overridden by -1 if FPCCR.HFRDY == '0'.

    ispriv = FPCCR.USER == '0';
    for i = 0 to 15
        ValidateAddress(FPCAR+(4*i),ispriv,TRUE,FALSE);
        MemA[FPCAR+(4*i),4] = S[i];

    ValidateAddress(FPCAR+0x40,ispriv,TRUE,FALSE);
    MemA[FPCAR+0x40,4] = FPSCR;

    // Whether these stores are interruptible is
    // IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. The processor can clear FPCCR.LSPACT
    // to zero and make the FP register contents UNKNOWN only if all
    // stores complete successfully, or if the stores are abandoned
    // in response to a bus or memory protection fault.

    FPCCR.LSPACT = '0';
    S[0..15] = bits(31) UNKNOWN;
    FPSCR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;

    return;
```

Exceptions while saving FP state describes possible exceptions during this save of FP state.

Exceptions while saving FP state

The `TakePreserveFPException()` pseudocode function describes the handling of possible exceptions during the `PreserveFPState()` operation. The possible exceptions are MemManage or BusFault exceptions during stacking of FP state information, or a DebugMonitor exception caused by a watchpoint.

Note

The logic used to determine whether these exceptions escalate to HardFault differs from the normal escalation logic described in *Priority escalation* on page B1-640.

```
// TakePreserveFPException()
// =========================

TakePreserveFPException(Exception)
    // Exception can be DebugMonitor, MemManage or BusFault
    // The Exception might be escalated to a lockup condition

    if FPCCR.MONRDY == '1' AND FPCCR.HFRDY == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
    if FPCCR.BFRDY == '1' AND FPCCR.HFRDY == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
    if FPCCR.MMRDY == '1' AND FPCCR.HFRDY == '0' then UNPREDICTABLE;
    if Exception == DebugMonitor AND FPCCR.MONRDY == '0' then
        // ignore DebugMonitor exception
        return;

    // Record appropriate fault status information
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
if Exception == MemManage then
    MMFSR.MLSPERR = '1';
if Exception == BusFault then
    BFSR.LSPERR = '1';

// Escalate faults for handlers that are masked
if Exception == MemManage AND FPCCR.MMRDY == '0' then
    HFSR.FORCED = 1;
    Exception = HardFault;
if Exception == BusFault AND FPCCR.BFRDY == '0' then
    HFSR.FORCED = 1;
    Exception = HardFault;

// Promote HardFault exceptions to lockup if priority permits
if ExecutionPriority() < 0 AND FPCCR.HFRDY == '0' then
    BranchWritePC(0xFFFFFFFE);    // Lockup at current priority, lock-up address = 0xFFFFFFFE

// Either pend or preempt based upon current priority
if ExceptionGroupPriority(Exception) < ExecutionPriority() AND
        ExceptionEnabled(Exception) then
    ExceptionEntry(Exception);
else
    SetPending(Exception);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter B2
System Memory Model

This chapter provides pseudocode that describes the ARMv7-M memory model. It contains the following sections:

- *About the system memory model* on page B2-692
- *Pseudocode details of general memory system operations* on page B2-693.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B2.1 About the system memory model

The pseudocode described in this chapter is associated with instruction fetches from memory and load or store data accesses.

The pseudocode hierarchy for a load or store instruction is as follows:

- the instruction operation uses the MemA[] or MemU[] helper function
- memory attributes are determined from the default system address map or using an MPU as defined in *The system address map* on page B3-704 or *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761 respectively.
- the access is governed by whether the access is a read or write, its address alignment, data endianness and memory attributes.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B2.2 Pseudocode details of general memory system operations

This section contains pseudocode describing general memory operations, in the subsections:

- *Memory data type definitions*.
- *Basic memory accesses* on page B2-694.
- *Interfaces to memory system specific pseudocode* on page B2-694.
- *Aligned memory accesses* on page B2-695
- *Unaligned memory accesses* on page B2-696
- *Reverse endianness* on page B2-697
- *Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
- *Access permission checking* on page B2-700
- *MPU access control decode* on page B2-700
- *Default memory access decode* on page B2-701
- *MemManage fault handling* on page B2-702.

Additional pseudocode for memory protection is given in *MPU pseudocode* on page B3-762.

For a list of register names see Appendix H *Register Index*.
For a list of helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxF-978.

B2.2.1 Memory data type definitions

The memory system pseudocode functions use the following data type definitions:

```
// Types of memory

enumeration MemType {MemType_Normal, MemType_Device, MemType_StronglyOrdered};


// Memory attributes descriptor

type MemoryAttributes is (
    MemType type,
    bits(2) innerattrs,  // '00' = Non-cacheable; '01' = WBWA; '10' = WT; '11' = WBnWA
    bits(2) outerattrs,  // '00' = Non-cacheable; '01' = WBWA; '10' = WT; '11' = WBnWA
    boolean shareable
)



// Descriptor used to access the underlying memory array

type AddressDescriptor is (
    MemoryAttributes memattrs,
    bits(32)         physicaladdress
)
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// Access permissions descriptor

type Permissions is (
    bits(3) ap,   // Access Permission bits
    bit     xn    // Execute Never bit
)
```

B2.2.2 Basic memory accesses

The _Mem[] function performs single-copy atomic, aligned, little-endian memory accesses to the underlying physical memory array of bytes:

```
bits(8*size) _Mem[AddressDescriptor memaddrdesc, integer size]           // non-assignment form
    assert size == 1 || size == 2 || size == 4;

_Mem[AddressDescriptor memaddrdesc, integer size] = bits(8*size) value   // assignment form
    assert size == 1 || size == 2 || size == 4;
```

The attributes in memaddrdesc.memattrs are used by the memory system to determine the memory type and ordering behaviors as described in *Memory types* on page A3-99 and *Memory access order* on page A3-111.

B2.2.3 Interfaces to memory system specific pseudocode

Global declarations are as follows:

```
boolean iswrite;            // TRUE for memory stores, FALSE for load accesses
boolean ispriv;             // TRUE if the instruction executing with privileged access
boolean isinstrfetch;       // TRUE if the memory access is associated with an instruction fetch
```

FindPriv() determines whether an access is privileged. ValidateAddress() determines the memory attributes associated with an address and, if memory protection is enabled, checks whether the access is valid.

```
// FindPriv()
// ==========

boolean FindPriv()
    if (CurrentMode==Mode_Handler)OR((CurrentMode==Mode_Thread)AND(CONTROL.nPRIV=='0')) then
        ispriv = TRUE;
    else
        ispriv = FALSE;
    return ispriv;

ValidateAddress(bits(32) address, boolean ispriv, boolean iswrite, boolean isinstrfetch)
```

MPU pseudocode on page B3-762 defines the ValidateAddress() function.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B2.2.4 Aligned memory accesses

The MemA[] function performs a memory access at the current privilege level, and the MemA_unpriv[] function performs an access that is always unprivileged. In both cases the architecture requires the access to be aligned, and generates an Alignment fault if it is not.

```
// MemA[]
// ======

bits(8*size) MemA[bits(32) address, integer size]
    return MemA_with_priv[address, size, FindPriv()];

MemA[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value
    MemA_with_priv[address, size, FindPriv()] = value;
    return;

// MemA_unpriv[]
// =============

bits(8*size) MemA_unpriv[bits(32) address, integer size]
    return MemA_with_priv[address, size, FALSE];

MemA_unpriv[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value
    MemA_with_priv[address, size, FALSE] = value;
    return;

// MemA_with_priv[]
// ================

// Non-assignment form

bits(8*size) MemA_with_priv[bits(32) address, integer size, boolean privileged]

    // Sort out alignment
    if address != Align(address, size) then
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);

    // default address map or MPU
    memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, privileged, FALSE, FALSE);

    // Memory array access, and sort out endianness
    value = _Mem[memaddrdesc, size];
    if AIRCR.ENDIANNESS == '1' then
        value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);
    return value;

// Assignment form

MemA_with_priv[bits(32) address, integer size, boolean privileged] = bits(8*size) value

    // Sort out alignment
    if address != Align(address, size) then
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
    // default address map or MPU
    memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, privileged, TRUE, FALSE);

    // Effect on exclusives
    if memaddrdesc.memattrs.shareable then
        ClearExclusiveByAddress(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);

    // Sort out endianness, then memory array access
    if AIRCR.ENDIANNESS == '1' then
        value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);
    _Mem[memaddrdesc,size] = value;

    return;
```

B2.2.5 Unaligned memory accesses

The `MemU[]` function performs a memory access at the current privilege level, and the `MemU_unpriv[]` function performs an access that is always unprivileged.

In both cases:

- if the CCR.UNALIGN_TRP bit is 0, unaligned accesses are supported
- if the CCR.UNALIGN_TRP bit is 1, unaligned accesses produce Alignment faults.

```
// MemU[]
// ======

bits(8*size) MemU[bits(32) address, integer size]
    return MemU_with_priv[address, size, FindPriv()];

MemU[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value
    MemU_with_priv[address, size, FindPriv()] = value;
    return;

// MemU_unpriv[]
// =============

bits(8*size) MemU_unpriv[bits(32) address, integer size]
    return MemU_with_priv[address, size, FALSE];

MemU_unpriv[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value
    MemU_with_priv[address, size, FALSE] = value;
    return;

// MemU_with_priv[]
// ================
//
// Due to single-copy atomicity constraints, the aligned accesses are distinguished from
// the unaligned accesses:
// * aligned accesses are performed at their size
// * unaligned accesses are expressed as a set of bytes.
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
// Non-assignment form

bits(8*size) MemU_with_priv[bits(32) address, integer size, boolean privileged]

    bits(8*size) value;
    // Do aligned access, take alignment fault, or do sequence of bytes
    if address == Align(address, size) then
        value = MemA_with_priv[address, size, privileged];
    elsif CCR.UNALIGN_TRP == '1' then
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
    else // if unaligned access
        for i = 0 to size-1
            value<8*i+7:8*i> = MemA_with_priv[address+i, 1, privileged];
        if AIRCR.ENDIANNESS == '1' then
            value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);

    return value;

// Assignment form

MemU_with_priv[bits(32) address, integer size, boolean privileged] = bits(8*size) value

    // Do aligned access, take alignment fault, or do sequence of bytes
    if address == Align(address, size) then
        MemA_with_priv[address, value, privileged] = value;
    elsif CCR.UNALIGN_TRP == '1' then
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
    else // if unaligned access
        if AIRCR.ENDIANNESS == '1' then
            value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);
        for i = 0 to size-1
            MemA_with_priv[address+i, 1, privileged] = value<8*i+7:8*i>;

    return;
```

B2.2.6 Reverse endianness

The following pseudocode describes the operation to reverse endianness:

```
// BigEndianReverse()
// ==================

bits(8*N) BigEndianReverse (bits(8*N) value, integer N)
    assert N == 1 || N == 2 || N == 4;
    bits(8*N) result;
    case N of
        when 1
            result<7:0> = value<7:0>;
        when 2
            result<15:8> = value<7:0>;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
            result<7:0> =  value<15:8>;
        when 4
            result<31:24> = value<7:0>;
            result<23:16> = value<15:8>;
            result<15:8> = value<23:16>;
            result<7:0> =  value<31:24>;
    return result;
```

B2.2.7 Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors

The SetExclusiveMonitors() function sets the exclusive monitors for a load exclusive instruction. The ExclusiveMonitorsPass() function checks whether a store exclusive instruction still has possession of the exclusive monitors and therefore completes successfully.

```
// SetExclusiveMonitors()
// ======================

SetExclusiveMonitors(bits(32) address, integer size)

    memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, FindPriv(), FALSE);

    if memaddrdesc.memattrs.shareable then
        MarkExclusiveGlobal(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);

    MarkExclusiveLocal(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);


// ExclusiveMonitorsPass()
// =======================

boolean ExclusiveMonitorsPass(bits(32) address, integer size)

    // It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the detection of memory aborts happens
    // before or after the check on the local Exclusive Monitor. As a result a failure
    // of the local monitor can occur on some implementations even if the memory
    // access would give a memory abort.

    if address != Align(address, size) then
        UFSR.UNALIGNED = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(UsageFault);
    else
        memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, FindPriv(), TRUE);

    passed = IsExclusiveLocal(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);
    if memaddrdesc.memattrs.shareable then
        passed = passed && IsExclusiveGlobal(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);
    if passed then
        ClearExclusiveLocal(ProcessorID());
    return passed;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The MarkExclusiveGlobal() procedure takes as arguments an address, the processor identifier processorid and the size of the transfer. The procedure records that processor processorid has requested exclusive access covering at least size bytes from the address. The size of region marked as exclusive is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, up to a limit of 2KB, and no smaller than size, and aligned in the address space to the size of the region. It is UNPREDICTABLE whether this causes any previous request for exclusive access to any other address by the same processor to be cleared.

```
MarkExclusiveGlobal(bits(32) address, integer processorid, integer size)
```

The MarkExclusiveLocal() procedure takes as arguments an address, the processor identifier processorid and the size of the transfer. The procedure records in a local record that processor processorid has requested exclusive access to an address covering at least size bytes from the address. The size of the region marked as exclusive is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, and can at its largest cover the whole of memory, but is no smaller than size, and is aligned in the address space to the size of the region. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether this procedure also performs a MarkExclusiveGlobal() using the same parameters.

```
MarkExclusiveLocal(bits(32) address, integer processorid, integer size)
```

The IsExclusiveGlobal() function takes as arguments an address, the processor identifier processorid and the size of the transfer. The function returns TRUE if the processor processorid has marked in a global record an address range as exclusive access requested that covers at least the size bytes from the address. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether it returns TRUE or FALSE if a global record has marked a different address as exclusive access requested. If no address is marked in a global record as exclusive access, IsExclusiveGlobal() returns FALSE.

```
boolean IsExclusiveGlobal(bits(32) address, integer processorid, integer size)
```

The IsExclusiveLocal() function takes as arguments an address, the processor identifier processorid and the size of the transfer. The function returns TRUE if the processor processorid has marked an address range as exclusive access requested that covers at least the size bytes from the address. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether this function returns TRUE or FALSE if the address marked as exclusive access requested does not cover all of the size bytes from the address. If no address is marked as exclusive access requested, then this function returns FALSE. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether this result is ANDed with the result of IsExclusiveGlobal() with the same parameters.

```
boolean IsExclusiveLocal(bits(32) address, integer processorid, integer size)
```

The ClearExclusiveByAddress() procedure takes as arguments an address, the processor identifier processorid and the size of the transfer. The procedure clears the global records of all processors, other than processorid, for which an address region including any of the size bytes starting from the supplied address has had a request for an exclusive access. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the equivalent global record of the processor processorid is also cleared if any of the size bytes starting from the address has had a request for an exclusive access, or if any other address has had a request for an exclusive access.

```
ClearExclusiveByAddress(bits(32) address, integer processorid, integer size)
```

The ClearExclusiveLocal() procedure takes the argument processor identifier processorid. The procedure clears the local record of processor processorid for which an address has had a request for an exclusive access. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether this operation also clears the global record of processor processorid that an address has had a request for an exclusive access.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
ClearExclusiveLocal(integer processorid)
```

B2.2.8 Access permission checking

The following pseudocode describes checking the access permission. Permissions are checked against access control information associated with a region when memory protection is supported and enabled, or against access control attributes associated with the default memory map.

```
// CheckPermission()
// ================

CheckPermission(Permissions perms, bits(32) address, boolean iswrite, boolean ispriv,
                boolean isinstrfetch)

    case perms.ap of
        when '000'  fault = TRUE;
        when '001'  fault = !ispriv;
        when '010'  fault = !ispriv && iswrite;
        when '011'  fault = FALSE;
        when '100'  UNPREDICTABLE;
        when '101'  fault = !ispriv || iswrite;
        when '110'  fault = iswrite;
        when '111'  fault = iswrite;
            else
                UNPREDICTABLE;

    if isinstrfetch then
        if fault || perms.xn then
            MMSR.IACCVIOL = '1';
            MMSR.MMARVALID = '0';
            ExceptionTaken(MemManage);
    elsif fault then
        MMSR.DACCVIOL = '1';
        MMAR = address;
        MMSR.MMARVALID = '1';
        ExceptionTaken(MemManage);
    return;
```

B2.2.9 MPU access control decode

The following pseudocode describes the memory attribute decode that is used when memory protection is enabled. See *MPU pseudocode* on page B3-762 for information on when `DefaultTEXDecode()` is called.

```
// DefaultTEXDecode()
// ==================

MemoryAttributes DefaultTEXDecode(bits(5) texcb, bit S)

    MemoryAttributes memattrs;

    case texcb of
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
        when '00000'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_StronglyOrdered;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.outerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.shareable = TRUE;
        when '00001'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.outerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.shareable = TRUE;
        when "0001x", '00100'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = texcb<1:0>;
            mematttrs.outerattrs = texcb<1:0>;
            mematttrs.shareable = (S == '1');
        when '00110'
            IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED setting of mematttrs;
        when '00111'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '01';  // Write-back write-allocate cacheable
            mematttrs.outerattrs = '01';  // Write-back write-allocate cacheable
            mematttrs.shareable = (S == '1');
        when '01000'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.outerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when "1xxxx"
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = texcb<1:0>;
            mematttrs.outerattrs = texcb<3:2>;
            mematttrs.shareable = (S == '1');
        otherwise
            UNPREDICTABLE;              // reserved cases

    return mematttrs;
```

B2.2.10 Default memory access decode

The following pseudocode describes the default memory attribute decode, when memory protection is disabled, not supported, or cases where the protection control is overridden. See *MPU pseudocode* on page B3-762 for information on when `DefaultMemoryAttributes()` is called.

```
// DefaultMemoryAttributes()
// =========================


MemoryAttributes DefaultMemoryAttributes(bits(32) address)
    MemoryAttributes mematttrs;

    case PA<31:29> of
        when '000'
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '10';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';

        when '001'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '01';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';
        when '010'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';
        when '011'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '01';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';
        when '100'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '10';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';
        when '101'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';
            mematttrs.shareable = '1';
        when '110'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';
            mematttrs.shareable = '0';
        when '111'
            if PA<28:20> = '00000000' then
                mematttrs.type = MemType_StronglyOrdered;
                mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';
                mematttrs.shareable = '1';
            else
                mematttrs.type = MemType_Device;
                mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';
                mematttrs.shareable = '0';

        // Outer attributes are the same as the inner attributes in all cases.
        mematttrs.outerattrs = mematttrs.innerattrs;

    return mematttrs;
```

B2.2.11 MemManage fault handling

Memory access violations are reported as MemManage faults. If the fault is disabled, the fault will escalate to a HardFault exception. See *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-631 and *Fault behavior* on page B1-669 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter B3
System Address Map

This chapter describes the ARMv7-M system address map, including the memory-mapped registers. It contains the following sections:

- *The system address map* on page B3-704
- *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708
- *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-744
- *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-750
- *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.1 The system address map

ARMv7-M supports a predefined 32-bit address space, with subdivision for code, data, and peripherals, and regions for on-chip and off-chip resources, where on-chip refers to resources that are tightly coupled to the processor.The address space supports eight primary partitions of 0.5GB each:

- Code
- SRAM
- Peripheral
- two RAM regions
- two Device regions
- System.

The architecture assigns physical addresses for use as event entry points (vectors), system control, and configuration. The event entry points are all defined relative to a table base address, that is configured to an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED value on reset, and then maintained in an address space reserved for system configuration and control. To meet this and other system needs, the address space `0xE0000000` to `0xFFFFFFFF` is RESERVED for system-level use.

Table B3-1 on page B3-705 shows the ARMv7-M default address map, and the attributes of the memory regions in that map. In this table, and in Table B3-2 on page B3-706.

- XN indicates an Execute Never region. Any attempt to execute code from an XN region faults, generating a MemManage exception.
- The Cache column indicates the cache policy for Normal memory regions, for inner and outer caches, to support system caches. A declared cache type can be demoted but not promoted, as follows:

  WT Write-through. Can be treated as non-cached.

  WBWA Write-back, write allocate, can be treated as write-through or non-cached.
- In the Device column:
  - Shareable indicates that the region supports shared use by multiple agents in a coherent memory domain. These agents can be any mix of processors and DMA agents.
  - SO indicates Strongly-ordered memory. Strongly-ordered memory is always shareable.
- It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED which portions of the address space are designated:
  - read-write
  - read-only, for example Flash memory
  - no-access, typically unpopulated parts of the address map.
- An unaligned or multi-word access that crosses a 0.5GB address boundary is UNPREDICTABLE.

For more information about memory attributes and the memory model see Chapter A2 *Application Level Programmers' Model*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-1 ARMv7-M address map

Address	Name	Device Type	XN?	Cache	Description
0x00000000-0x1FFFFFFF	Code	Normal	-	WT	Typically ROM or flash memory. Memory required from address 0x0 to support the vector table for system boot code on reset.
0x20000000-0x3FFFFFFF	SRAM	Normal	-	WBWA	SRAM region typically used for on-chip RAM.
0x40000000-0x5FFFFFFF	Peripheral	Device	XN	-	On-chip peripheral address space.
0x60000000-0x7FFFFFFF	RAM	Normal	-	WBWA	Memory with write-back, write allocate cache attribute for L2/L3 cache support.
0x80000000-0x9FFFFFFF	RAM	Normal	-	WT	Memory with write-through cache attribute.
0xA0000000-0xBFFFFFFF	Device	Device, shareable	XN	-	Shared device space.
0xC0000000-0xDFFFFFFF	Device	Device, non-shareable	XN	-	Non-shared device space.
0xE0000000-0xFFFFFFFF	System	See *Description*	XN	-	System segment for the PPB and vendor system peripherals, see Table B3-2 on page B3-706.

The System region of the memory map, starting at `0xE0000000`, subdivides as follows:

- the 1MB region at offset +`0x00000000` is reserved as a *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB)
- the region from offset +`0x00100000` is the Vendor system region, Vendor_SYS.

Table B3-2 on page B3-706 shows the subdivision of this region.

In the Vendor_SYS region, ARM recommends that:

- vendor resources start at `0xF0000000`
- the region `0xE0100000-0xEFFFFFFF` is reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-2 Subdivision of the System region of the ARMv7-M address map

Address	Name	Memory type	XN?	Description
System memory region, 0xE0000000-0xFFFFFFFF				
0xE0000000-0xE00FFFFF	PPB	Strongly-ordered	XN	1MB region reserved as the PPB. This supports key resources, including the System Control Space, and debug features.
0xE0100000-0xFFFFFFFF	Vendor_SYS	Device	XN	Vendor system. region, see the ARM recommendations in this section.

Supporting a software model that recognizes unprivileged and privileged accesses requires a memory protection scheme to control the access rights. The *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSAv7) is an optional system-level feature that provides such a scheme, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761. An implementation of PMSAv7 provides a *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU).

Note

- PMSAv7 is a required feature of an ARMv7-R implementation. See *ARMv7-M specific support* on page B3-762 for information about how the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R implementations differ.
- Some ARM documentation describes unprivileged accesses as User accesses, and privileged accesses as Supervisor accesses. These descriptions are based on features of the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles.

The address map shown in Table B3-1 on page B3-705:

- is the only address map supported on a system that does not implement PMSAv7
- is the default map for the memory system when the MPU is disabled
- can be used as a background region for privileged accesses when the MPU is enabled, see the definition of PRIVDEFENA in *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767.
- can be used as a background region for privileged accesses when the MPU is enabled, see the definition of PRIVDEFENA in *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767.

Note

An enabled MPU cannot change the XN property of the System memory region.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.1.1 General rules for PPB register accesses

The general rules for the PPB, address range `0xE0000000` to `0xE0100000`, are:

- The region is defined as Strongly-ordered memory, see *Strongly-ordered memory* on page A3-106 and *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107.
- Register accesses are always little endian, regardless of the endian state of the processor.
- In general, registers support word accesses only, with byte and halfword access UNPREDICTABLE. The priority and fault status registers are concatenations of byte-aligned bit fields affecting different resources. Such a register might be accessible as a byte or halfword register with an appropriate address offset from the 32-bit register base address.

  Note

  A register supports byte and halfword access only if its register description in this manual explicitly states that it supports these accesses.

- Where a bit is defined as being cleared to 0 on a read, the architecture guarantees the following atomic behavior when a read of the bit coincides with an event that sets the bit to 1:
  - If the bit reads as 1, the read operation clears the bit to 0.
  - If the bit reads as 0, the event sets the bit to 1. A subsequent read of the bit returns 1 and clears the bit to 0.
- A reserved register or bit field must be treated as UNK/SBZP.

Unprivileged access to the PPB causes BusFault errors unless otherwise stated. Notable exceptions are:

- Unprivileged accesses can be enabled to the Software Trigger Interrupt Register in the System Control Space by programming a control bit in the Configuration Control Register.
- For debug related resources, see *General rules applying to debug register access* on page C1-816 for exception details.

Note

The architecture defines the *Flash Patch and Breakpoint* (FPB) block as a debug resource, see *Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit* on page C1-904. However, FPB resources can be used as a means of updating software as part of a product maintenance policy. The address remapping behavior of the FPB is not specific to debug operation, but allocating FPB resources to software maintenance reduces Debug functionality.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.2 System Control Space (SCS)

The *System Control Space* (SCS) is a memory-mapped 4KB address space that provides 32-bit registers for configuration, status reporting and control. The SCS registers divide into the following groups:

- system control and identification
- the CPUID processor identification space
- system configuration and status
- fault reporting
- a system timer, SysTick
- a *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC)
- a *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA)
- system debug.

Table B3-3 defines the memory mapping of the SCS register groups.

Table B3-3 SCS address space regions

System Control Space, address range `0xE000E000` **to** `0xE000EFFF`		
Group	**Address range**	**Notes**
System control and ID registers	`0xE000E000-0xE000E00F`	Includes the Interrupt Controller Type and Auxiliary Control registers
	`0xE000ED00-0xE000ED8F`	System control block
	`0xE000EDF0-0xE000EEFF`	Debug registers in the SCS
	`0xE000EF00-0xE000EF8F`	Includes the SW Trigger Interrupt Register
	`0xE000EF90-0xE000EFCF`	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
	`0xE000EFD0-0xE000EFFF`	Microcontroller-specific ID space
SysTick	`0xE000E010-0xE000E0FF`	System Timer, see *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-744
NVIC	`0xE000E100-0xE000ECFF`	External interrupt controller, see *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-750
MPU	`0xE000ED90-0xE000EDEF`	Memory Protection Unit, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7* on page B3-761

The following sections summarize the system control and ID registers:

- *About the System Control Block* on page B3-709
- *System control and ID registers* on page B3-709
- *Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-828.

The following sections summarize the other register groups:

- *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-744

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-750
- *Register support for PMSAv7 in the SCS* on page B3-764.

B3.2.1 About the System Control Block

In an ARMv7-M processor, a *System Control Block* (SCB) in the SCS provides key status information and control features for the processor. The SCB supports:

- Software reset control, at various levels.
- Base address management for the exception model, by controlling table pointers.
- System exception management, including:
  - exception enables
  - showing the status of each exception status, inactive, pending, or active
  - setting the status of an exception to pending, or removing the pending status from an exception
  - setting the priority of the configurable system exceptions
  - providing miscellaneous control functions, and status information.

  This excludes external interrupt handling. The NVIC handles all external interrupts.
- Priority grouping control, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-636.
- The exception number of the currently executing code, and of the highest priority pending exception.
- Miscellaneous control and status features, including coprocessor access support.
- Power management, through sleep support.
- Fault status information, see *Fault behavior* on page B1-669.
- Debug status information. This is supplemented by control and status in the debug-specific register region, see Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug*.

Table B3-4 on page B3-710 lists the SCB registers.

B3.2.2 System control and ID registers

Registers in subregions of the System Control Space provide system control and identification, as shown in:

- Table B3-4 on page B3-710, for registers in the *System Control Block* (SCB)
- Table B3-5 on page B3-711, for additional SCB registers when the processor implements the FP extension
- Table B3-6 on page B3-712, for registers not in the SCB.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

All registers are 32-bits wide, unless described differently in the register description.

Table B3-4 Summary of SCB registers

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED00	CPUID	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*CPUID Base Register* on page B3-713.
0xE000ED04	ICSR	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713.
0xE000ED08	VTOR	RW	0x00000000[a]	*Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-716.
0xE000ED0C	AIRCR	RW	[b]	*Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717.
0xE000ED10	SCR	RW	0x00000000	*System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-718.
0xE000ED14	CCR	RW	0x00000000	*Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720.
0xE000ED18	SHPR1	RW	0x00000000	*System Handler Priority Register 1, SHPR1* on page B3-723.
0xE000ED1C	SHPR2	RW	0x00000000	*System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-723.
0xE000ED20	SHPR3	RW	0x00000000	*System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-724.
0xE000ED24	SHCSR	RW	0x00000000	*System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page B3-725.
0xE000ED28	CFSR	RW	0x00000000	*Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR* on page B3-727. The following describe the subregisters of the CFSR: • *MemManage Status Register, MMFSR* on page B3-728 • *BusFault Status Register, BFSR* on page B3-729 • *UsageFault Status Register, UFSR* on page B3-731.
0xE000ED2C	HFSR	RW	0x00000000	*HardFault Status Register, HFSR* on page B3-732.
0xE000ED30	DFSR	RW	0x00000000[c]	*Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828.
0xE000ED34	MMFAR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MemManage Fault Address Register, MMFAR* on page B3-733.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-4 Summary of SCB registers (continued)

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED38	BFAR	RW	UNKNOWN	*BusFault Address Register, BFAR* on page B3-734.
0xE000ED3C	AFSR	RW	UNKNOWN	*Auxiliary Fault Status Register, AFSR* on page B3-735, IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
0xE000ED40 - 0xE000ED7C	-	-	-	Reserved for CPUID registers, see Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*.
0xE000ED80 - 0xE000ED84	-	-	-	Reserved.
0xE000ED88	CPACR	RW	UNKNOWN	*Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735.
0xE000ED8C	-	-	-	Reserved.

a. See register description for more information.
b. Bits[10:8] reset to 0b000, see register description for more information.
c. Power-on reset only.

Table B3-5 Summary of additional SCB registers for the FP extension

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000EF34	FPCCR	RW	- [a]	*Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737
0xE000EF38	FPCAR	RW	UNKNOWN	*Floating-Point Context Address Register, FPCAR* on page B3-739
0xE000EF3C	FPDSCR	RW	0x00000000	*Floating-Point Default Status Control Register, FPDSCR* on page B3-740
0xE000EF40	MVFR0	RO	0x10110021	*Media and FP Feature Register 0, MVFR0* on page B4-794
0xE000EF44	MVFR1	RO	0x11000011	*Media and FP Feature Register 1, MVFR1* on page B4-796

a. See Table B3-25 on page B3-738

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-6 Summary of system control and ID register not in the SCB

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E000	-	RW	0x00000000	Master Control register, Reserved
0xE000E004	ICTR	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR* on page B3-741
0xE000E008	ACTLR	RW	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Auxiliary Control Register, ACTLR* on page B3-742
0xE000E00C	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000EDF0 - 0xE000EEFC	-	-	-	See *Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-828
0xE000EF00	STIR	WO	-	*Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742
0xE000EF04 - 0xE000EF8C	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000EF90 - 0xE000EFCC	…	…	…	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
0xE000EFD0	PID4	RO	[a]	Peripheral Identification Registers, see Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*
0xE000EFD4	PID5	RO		
0xE000EFD8	PID6	RO		
0xE000EFDC	PID7	RO		
0xE000EFE0	PID0	RO		
0xE000EFE4	PID1	RO		
0xE000EFE8	PID2	RO		
0xE000EFEC	PID3	RO		
0xE000EFF0	CID0	RO	[a]	Component Identification Registers, see Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*
0xE000EFF4	CID1	RO		
0xE000EFF8	CID2	RO		
0xE000EFFC	CID3	RO		

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The remaining subsections of this section describe the SCB registers, and the ICTR, ACTLR, and STIR.

B3.2.3 CPUID Base Register

The CPUID Base Register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides identification information for the processor.

Usage constraints This register is word accessible only.

Software can use the CPUID registers to find more information about the processor, see Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-1 shows the CPUID Base Register bit assignments.

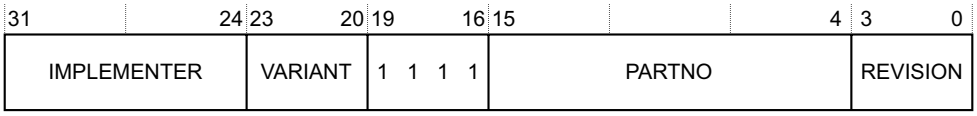


Figure B3-1 CPUID Base Register bit assignments

Table B3-7 shows the CPUID Base Register bit assignments.

Table B3-7 CPUID Base Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	IMPLEMENTER	Implementer code assigned by ARM. Reads as 0x41 for a processor implemented by ARM.
[23:20]	VARIANT	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED variant number.
[19:16]	ARCHITECTURE	Reads as 0xF, see *About the CPUID scheme* on page B4-778.
[15:4]	PARTNO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED part number.
[3:0]	REVISION	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED revision number.

B3.2.4 Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR

The ICSR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides software control of the NMI, PendSV, and SysTick exceptions, and provides interrupt status information.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-2 shows the ICSR bit assignments.

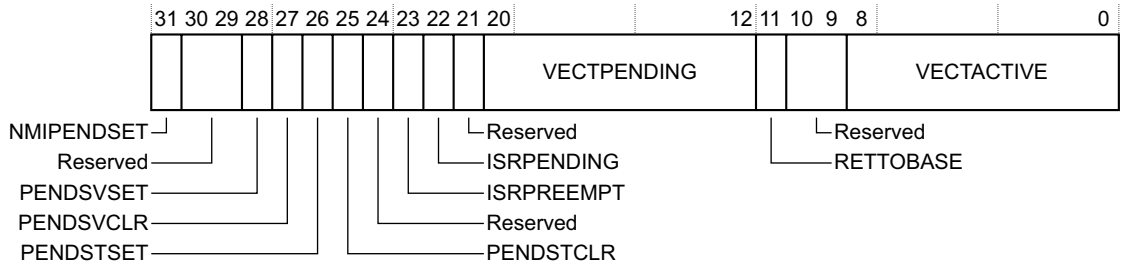


Figure B3-2 ICSR bit assignments

Table B3-8 shows the ICSR bit assignments.

Table B3-8 ICSR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31]	RW	NMIPENDSET	On writes, makes the NMI exception active. On reads, indicates the state of the exception: 0 = On writes, has no effect. On reads, NMI is inactive. 1 = On writes, make the NMI exception active. On reads, NMI is active. Because NMI is higher priority than other exceptions, if the processor is not already executing the NMI handler, it enters the NMI exception handler as soon as it recognizes the write to this bit.
[30:29]	-	-	Reserved.
[28]	RW	PENDSVSET	On writes, sets the PendSV exception as pending. On reads, indicates the current state of the exception: 0 = On writes, has no effect. On reads, PendSV is not pending. 1 = On writes, make PendSV exception pending. On reads, PendSV is pending. Normally, software writes 1 to this bit to request a context switch.
[27]	WO	PENDSVCLR	Removes the pending status of the PendSV exception: 0 = No effect. 1 = Remove pending status.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-8 ICSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[26]	RW	PENDSTSET	On writes, sets the SysTick exception as pending. On reads, indicates the current state of the exception: 0 = On writes, has no effect. On reads, SysTick is not pending. 1 = On writes, make SysTick exception pending. On reads, SysTick is pending.
[25]	WO	PENDSTCLR	Removes the pending status of the SysTick exception: 0 = No effect. 1 = Remove pending status.
[24]	-	-	Reserved.
[23]	RO	ISRPREEMPT	Indicates whether a pending exception will be serviced on exit from debug halt state: 0 = Will not service. 1 = Will service a pending exception.
[22]	RO	ISRPENDING	Indicates whether an external interrupt, generated by the NVIC, is pending: 0 = No external interrupt pending. 1 = External interrupt pending.
[21]	-	-	Reserved.
[20:12]	RO	VECTPENDING	The exception number of the highest priority pending exception. A value of 0 indicates that there is no pending exception.
[11]	RO	RETTOBASE	In Handler mode, indicates whether there is an active exception other than the exception indicated by the current value of the IPSR: 0 = There is an active exception other than the exception shown by IPSR. 1 = There is no active exception other than any exception shown by IPSR. In Thread mode the value of this bit is UNKNOWN. For more information see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624.
[10:9]	-	-	Reserved.
[8:0]	RO	VECTACTIVE	The exception number of the current executing exception. A value of 0 indicates that the processor is in Thread mode.

The effect is unpredictable if a write to the ICSR:

- sets both PENDSVSET and PENDSVCLR to 1
- sets both PENDSTSET and PENDSTCLR to 1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The value of the VECTACTIVE field is the same as the IPSR[8:0], see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624,

B3.2.5 Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR

The VTOR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the vector table address.

Usage constraints One or two of the high-order bits of the TBLOFF field can be implemented as RAZ/WI, reducing the supported address range. For example, if two bits are implemented as RAZ/WI, then TBLOFF[29:7] defines bits [29:7] of the address.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

An implementation can include configuration input signals that determine the reset value of the TBLOFF field, otherwise it resets to zero.

Figure B3-3 shows the VTOR bit assignments.

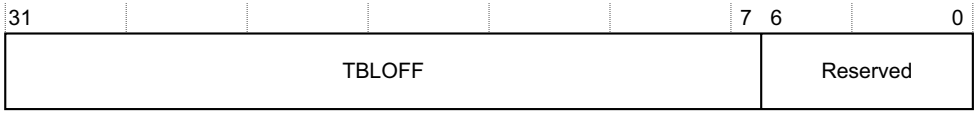


Figure B3-3 VTOR bit assignments

Table B3-9 shows the VTOR bit assignments.

Table B3-9 VTOR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:7]	TBLOFF	Bits [31:7] of the vector table address.[a]
[6:0]	-	Reserved.

a. Older documentation describes this field as the vector table address offset. The description in this manual clarifies the use of this register.

Note

All bits of the Vector table address that are not defined by the VTOR are zero.

Software can write all 1s to the TBLOFF field and then read the register to find the maximum supported offset value.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.2.6 Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR

The AIRCR characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns interrupt control data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710, and the register description.

Figure B3-4 shows the AIRCR bit assignments.

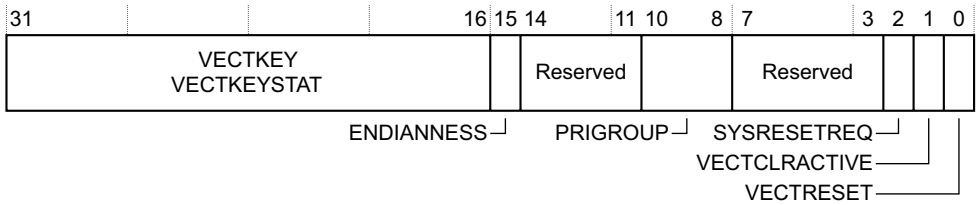


Figure B3-4 AIRCR bit assignments

Table B3-10 shows the AIRCR bit assignments.

Table B3-10 AIRCR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31:16]	RW	Write: VECTKEY Read: VECTKEYSTAT	Vector Key. Register writes must write `0x05FA` to this field, otherwise the write is ignored. On reads, returns `0xFA05`.
[15]	RO	ENDIANNESS	Indicates the memory system endianness: 0 = Little endian 1 = Big endian. This bit is static or configured by a hardware input on reset.
[14:11]	-	-	Reserved
[10:8]	RW	PRIGROUP	Priority grouping, indicates the binary point position. For information about the use of this field see *Priority grouping* on page B1-636. This field resets to 0b000.
[7:3]	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-10 AIRCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[2]	RW	SYSRESETREQ	System Reset Request: 0 = Do not request a reset. 1 = Request reset. Writing 1 to this bit asserts a signal to the external system to request a Local reset. A Local or Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.
[1]	WO	VECTCLRACTIVE	Writing 1 to this bit clears all active state information for fixed and configurable exceptions. This includes clearing the IPSR to zero, see *The IPSR* on page B1-625. The effect of writing a 1 to this bit if the processor is not halted in Debug state is UNPREDICTABLE.
[0]	WO	VECTRESET	Writing 1 to this bit causes a local system reset, see *Reset management* on page B1-679 for more information. This bit self-clears. The effect of writing a 1 to this bit if the processor is not halted in Debug state is UNPREDICTABLE When the processor is halted in Debug state, if a write to the register writes a 1 to both VECTRESET and SYSRESETREQ, the behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.

B3.2.7 System Control Register, SCR

The SCR characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns system control data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-5 on page B3-719 shows the SCR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

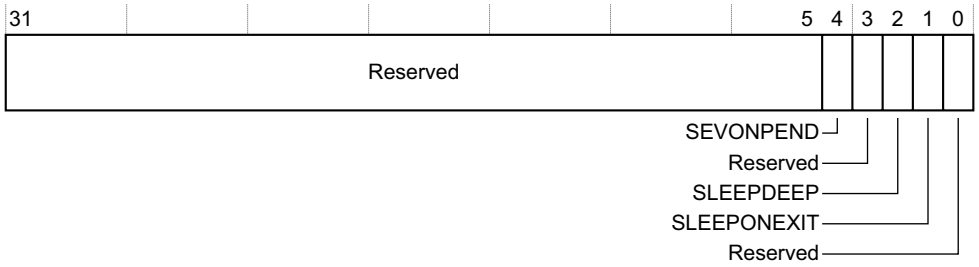


Figure B3-5 SCR bit assignments

Table B3-11 shows the SCR bit assignments.

Table B3-11 SCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved.
[4]	SEVONPEND	Determines whether an interrupt transition from inactive state to pending state is a wakeup event: 0 = Transitions from inactive to pending are not wakeup events. 1 = Transitions from inactive to pending are wakeup events. See *WFE wakeup events* on page B1-682 for more information.
[3]	-	Reserved.
[2]	SLEEPDEEP	Provides a qualifying hint indicating that waking from sleep might take longer. An implementation can use this bit to select between two alternative sleep states: 0 = Selected sleep state is not deep sleep. 1 = Selected sleep state is deep sleep. Details of the implemented sleep states, if any, and details of the use of this bit, are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. If the processor does not implement a deep sleep state then this bit can be RAZ/WI.
[1]	SLEEPONEXIT	Determines whether, on an exit from an ISR that returns to the base level of execution priority, the processor enters a sleep state: 0 = Do not enter sleep state. 1 = Enter sleep state. For more information see *Power management* on page B1-680.
[0]	-	Reserved.

A debugger can read S_SLEEP (see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830) to detect if sleeping.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.2.8 Configuration and Control Register, CCR

The CCR characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns configuration and control data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710, and the register field descriptions.

Figure B3-6 shows the CCR bit assignments.

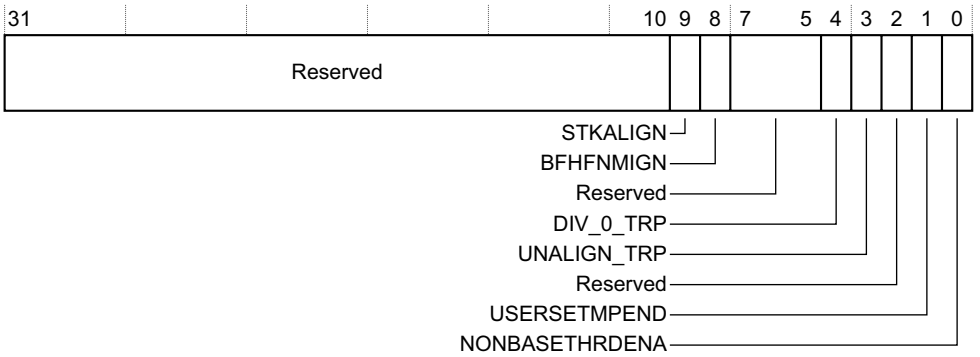


Figure B3-6 CCR bit assignments

Table B3-12 shows the CCR bit assignments.

Table B3-12 CCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:10]	-	Reserved.
[9]	STKALIGN	Determines whether the exception entry sequence guarantees 8-byte stack frame alignment, adjusting the SP if necessary before saving state: 0 = Guaranteed SP alignment is 4-byte, no SP adjustment is performed. 1 = 8-byte alignment guaranteed, SP adjusted if necessary Whether this bit is RO or RW is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. The reset value of this bit is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. ARM recommends that this bit resets to 1. See *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-647 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-12 CCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[8]	BFHFNMIGN	Determines the effect of precise data access faults on handlers running at priority -1 or priority -2: 0 = Precise data access fault causes a lockup, see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674. 1 = Handler ignores the fault.
[7:5]	-	Reserved.
[4]	DIV_0_TRP	Controls the trap on divide by 0: 0 = Trapping disabled. 1 = Trapping enabled.
[3]	UNALIGN_TRP	Controls the trapping of unaligned word or halfword accesses: 0 = Trapping disabled. 1 = Trapping enabled. Unaligned load-store multiples and word or halfword exclusive accesses always fault.
[2]	-	Reserved.
[1]	USERSETMPEND	Controls whether unprivileged software can access the STIR: 0 = Unprivileged software cannot access the STIR. 1 = Unprivileged software can access the STIR. See *Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742 for more information.
[0]	NONBASETHRDENA	Controls whether the processor can enter Thread mode at an execution priority level other than base level: 0 = Any attempt to enter Thread mode at an execution priority level of other than base level faults. 1 = The processor can enter Thread mode at any execution priority level because of a controlled return value. See *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652 for more information.

B3.2.9 About the System Handler Priority Registers

The System Handler Priority Registers control the priority of the handlers for the system faults that have configurable priority. Exception handler numbers match the corresponding exception number, see *Exception number definition* on page B1-633. So exception handler 6 is the handler for exception 6, the UsageFault exception. Exceptions 1, 2, and 3, Reset, NMI, and HardFault, have fixed priorities and

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

therefore do not have associated System Handler Priority Register fields. Therefore, the first defined system handler priority field is PRI_4, that controls the priority of the handler for exception 4, the MemManage exception.

Note

Following the ARM register naming convention, the first System Handler Priority Register would be SHPR0. In the model for these registers, this would hold the priorities for handlers 0-3. But exception 0 is not defined, and exceptions 1-3 have fixed priorities. Therefore, the implemented SHPRs start at SHPR1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.2.10 System Handler Priority Register 1, SHPR1

The SHPR1 Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns priority for system handlers 4-7.

Usage constraints This register is byte, aligned halfword, and word accessible.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-7 shows the SHPR1 bit assignments.

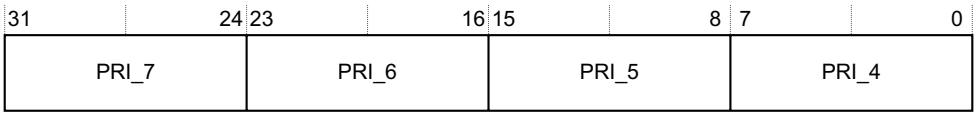


Figure B3-7 SHPR1 Register bit assignments

Table B3-13 shows the SHPR1 bit assignments.

Table B3-13 SHPR1 Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	PRI_7	Reserved for priority of system handler 7
[23:16]	PRI_6	Priority of system handler 6, UsageFault
[15:8]	PRI_5	Priority of system handler 5, BusFault
[7:0]	PRI_4	Priority of system handler 4, MemManage

B3.2.11 System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2

The SHPR2 Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns priority for system handlers 8-11.

Usage constraints This register is byte, aligned halfword, and word accessible.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-8 on page B3-724 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

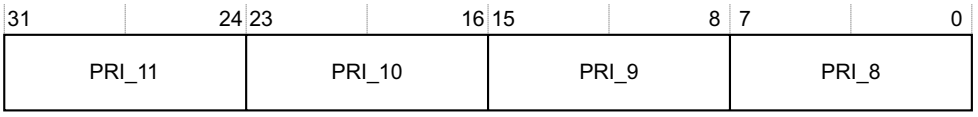


Figure B3-8 SHPR2 Register bit assignments

Table B3-14 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

Table B3-14 SHPR2 Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	PRI_11	Priority of system handler 11, SVCall
[23:16]	PRI_10	Reserved for priority of system handler 10
[15:8]	PRI_9	Reserved for priority of system handler 9
[7:0]	PRI_8	Reserved for priority of system handler 8

B3.2.12 System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3

The SHPR3 Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns priority for system handlers 12-15.

Usage constraints This register is byte, aligned halfword, and word accessible.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-9 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

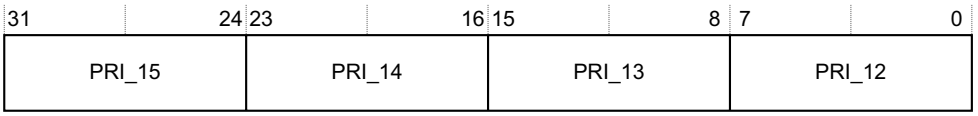


Figure B3-9 SHPR3 Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-15 shows the SHPR3 bit assignments.

Table B3-15 SHPR3 Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	PRI_15	Priority of system handler 15, SysTick
[23:16]	PRI_14	Priority of system handler 14, PendSV
[15:8]	PRI_13	Reserved for priority of system handler 13
[7:0]	PRI_12	Priority of system handler 12, DebugMonitor

B3.2.13 System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR

The SHCSR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls and provides the active and pending status of system exceptions.

Usage constraints Exception processing automatically updates the SHCSR fields. However, software can write to the register to add or remove the pending or active state of an exception. When updating the SHCSR, ARM recommends using a read-modify-write sequence, to avoid unintended effects on the state of the exception handlers.

Removing the active state of an exception can change the current execution priority, and affect the exception return consistency checks. If software removes the active state, causing a change in current execution priority, this can defeat the architectural behavior that prevents an exception from preempting its own handler.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-10 on page B3-726 shows the SHCSR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

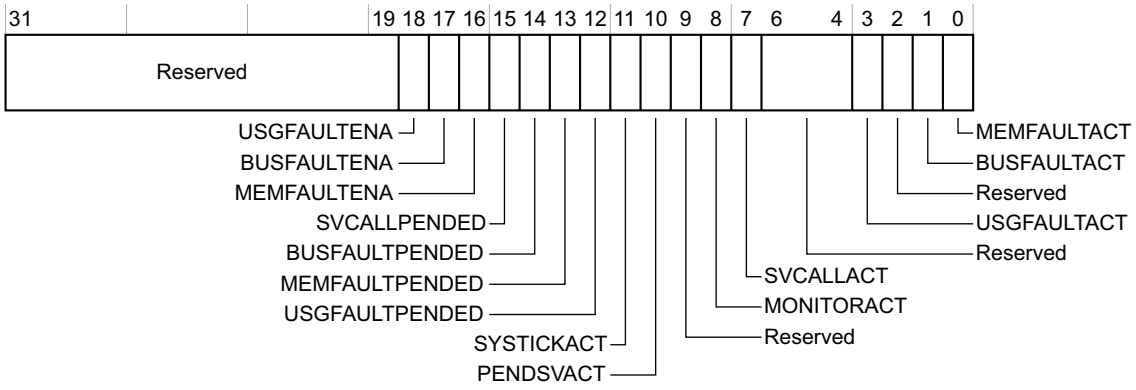


Figure B3-10 SHCSR bit assignments

Table B3-16 shows the SHCSR bit assignments.

Table B3-16 SHCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:19]	-	Reserved.
[18]	USGFAULTENA	0 = Disable UsageFault. 1 = Enable UsageFault.
[17]	BUSFAULTENA	0 = Disable BusFault. 1 = Enable BusFault.
[16]	MEMFAULTENA	0 = Disable MemManage fault. 1 = Enable MemManage fault.
[15]	SVCALLPENDED[a]	0 = SVCall is not pending. 1 = SVCall is pending.
[14]	BUSFAULTPENDED[a]	0 = BusFault is not pending. 1 = BusFault is pending.
[13]	MEMFAULTPENDED[a]	0 = MemManage is not pending. 1 = MemManage is pending.
[12]	USGFAULTPENDED[a]	0 = UsageFault is not pending. 1 = UsageFault is pending.
[11]	SYSTICKACT[b]	0 = SysTick is not active. 1 = SysTick is active.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-16 SHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[10]	PENDSVACT[b]	0 = PendSV is not active. 1 = PendSV is active.
[9]	-	Reserved.
[8]	MONITORACT[b]	0 = Monitor is not active. 1 = Monitor is active.
[7]	SVCALLACT[b]	0 = SVCall is not active. 1 = SVCall is active.
[6:4]	-	Reserved.
[3]	USGFAULTACT[b]	0 = UsageFault is not active. 1 = UsageFault is active.
[2]	-	Reserved.
[1]	BUSFAULTACT[b]	0 = BusFault is not active. 1 = BusFault is active.
[0]	MEMFAULTACT[b]	0 = MemManage is not active. 1 = MemManage is active.

a. Pending state bits are set to 1 when an exception occurs, and are cleared to 0 when the exception becomes active.
b. Active state bits are set to 1 if the associated exception is the current exception or an exception that is nested because of preemption.

B3.2.14 Status registers for configurable-priority faults

The 32-bit CFSR comprises the status registers for the faults that have configurable priority. Software can access the combined CFSR, or use byte or halfword accesses to access the individual Configurable Fault Status Registers. For more information see:

- *Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR*
- *MemManage Status Register, MMFSR* on page B3-728
- *BusFault Status Register, BFSR* on page B3-729
- *UsageFault Status Register, UFSR* on page B3-731.

B3.2.15 Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR

The CFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Contains the three Configurable Fault Status Registers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Usage constraints
- Byte, aligned halfword, and word accessible.
- Write a one to a register bit to clear the corresponding fault.
- The register bits are additive; that is, if more than one fault occurs, all associated bits are set to 1.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-11 shows the CFSR bit assignments.

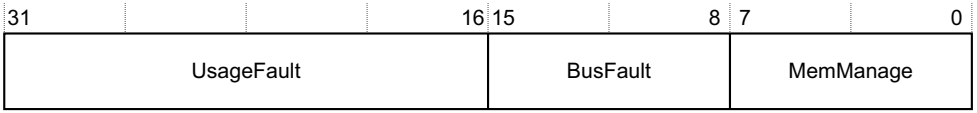


Figure B3-11 CFSR bit assignments

Table B3-17 shows the CFSR bit assignments.

Table B3-17 CFSR bit assignments

Bits	Fault Status register	Function
[31:16]	UsageFault	Provides information on UsageFault exceptions
[15:8]	BusFault	Provides information on BusFault exceptions
[7:0]	MemManage	Provides information on MemManage exceptions

MemManage Status Register, MMFSR

The MMFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows the status of MPU faults.

Usage constraints
- Byte accessible.
- Write a one to a register bit to clear the corresponding fault.
- The register bits are additive; that is, if more than one fault occurs, all associated bits are set to 1.
- The MMFSR is bits [7:0] of the CFSR.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See the CFSR entry in Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-12 on page B3-729 shows the bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

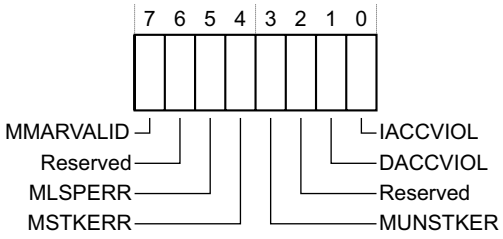


Figure B3-12 MMFSR bit assignments

Table B3-18 shows the MMFSR bit assignments.

Table B3-18 MMFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[7]	MMARVALID	0 = MMAR does not have valid contents. 1 = MMAR has valid contents.
[6]	-	Reserved.
[5]	MLSPERR	0 = No MemManage fault occurred during FP lazy state preservation 1 = A MemManage fault occurred during FP lazy state preservation
[4]	MSTKERR	0 = No derived MemManage fault has occurred. 1 = A derived MemManage fault occurred on exception entry.
[3]	MUNSTKERR	0 = No derived MemManage fault has occurred. 1 = A derived MemManage fault occurred on exception return.
[2]	-	Reserved.
[1]	DACCVIOL	0 = No data access violation has occurred. 1 = Data access violation. The MMAR shows the data address that the load or store tried to access.
[0]	IACCVIOL	0 = No MPU or Execute Never (XN) default memory map access violation has occurred. 1 = MPU or Execute Never (XN) default memory map access violation on an instruction fetch has occurred. The fault is signalled only if the instruction is issued.

BusFault Status Register, BFSR

The BFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows the status of bus errors resulting from instruction prefetches and data accesses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Usage constraints
- Byte accessible.
- Write a one to a register bit to clear the corresponding fault.
- The register bits are additive; that is, if more than one fault occurs, all associated bits are set to 1.
- The BFSR is bits [15:8] of the CFSR.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See the CFSR entry in Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-13 shows the BFSR bit assignments.

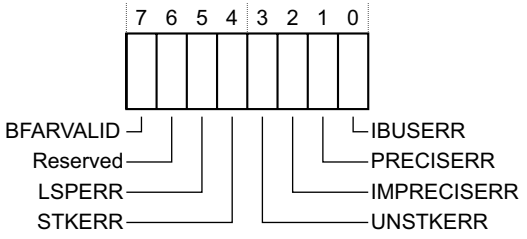


Figure B3-13 BFSR bit assignments

Table B3-19 shows the BFSR bit assignments.

Table B3-19 BFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[7]	BFARVALID	0 = BFAR does not have valid contents. 1 = BFAR has valid contents.
[6]	-	Reserved.
[5]	LSPERR	0 = No bus fault occurred during FP lazy state preservation. 1 = A bus fault occurred during FP lazy state preservation.
[4]	STKERR	0 = No derived bus fault has occurred. 1 = A derived bus fault has occurred on exception entry.
[3]	UNSTKERR	0 = No derived bus fault has occurred. 1 = A derived bus fault has occurred on exception return.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-19 BFSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[2]	IMPRECISERR	0 = No imprecise data access error has occurred. 1 = Imprecise data access error has occurred.
[1]	PRECISERR	0 = No precise data access error has occurred. 1 = A precise data access error has occurred, and the processor has written the faulting address to the BFAR.
[0]	IBUSERR	0 = No bus fault on an instruction prefetch has occurred. 1 = A bus fault on an instruction prefetch has occurred. The fault is signalled only if the instruction is issued.

UsageFault Status Register, UFSR

The UFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Contains the status for some instruction execution faults, and for data access faults.

Usage constraints
- Byte and aligned halfword accessible.
- Write a one to a register bit to clear the corresponding fault.
- The fault bits are additive; that is, if more than one fault occurs, all associated bits are set to 1.
- The UFSR is bits [31:16] of the CFSR.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See the CFSR entry in Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-14 shows the bit assignments.

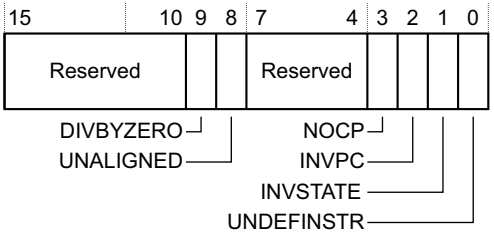


Figure B3-14 UFSR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-20 shows the bit assignments.

Table B3-20 UFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[15:10]	-	Reserved.
[9]	DIVBYZERO	0 = No divide by zero error has occurred. 1 = Divide by zero error has occurred. When `SDIV` or `UDIV` instruction is used with a divisor of 0, this fault occurs if DIV_0_TRP is enabled in the CCR, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720.
[8]	UNALIGNED	0 = No unaligned access error has occurred. 1 = Unaligned access error has occurred. Multi-word accesses always fault if not word aligned. Software can configure unaligned word and halfword accesses to fault, by enabling UNALIGN_TRP in the CCR, see *Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720.
[7:4]	-	Reserved.
[3]	NOCP	0 = No coprocessor access error has occurred. 1 = A coprocessor access error has occurred. This shows that the coprocessor is disabled or not present.
[2]	INVPC	0 = No integrity check error has occurred. 1 = An integrity check error has occurred on EXC_RETURN.
[1]	INVSTATE	0 = EPSR.T bit and EPSR.IT bits are valid for instruction execution. 1 = Instruction executed with invalid EPSR.T or EPSR.IT field.
[0]	UNDEFINSTR	0 = No Undefined Instruction Usage fault has occurred. 1 = The processor has attempted to execute an undefined instruction. This might be an undefined instruction associated with an enabled coprocessor, see *Coprocessor instructions* on page A5-188.

B3.2.16 HardFault Status Register, HFSR

The HFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows the cause of any hard faults.

Usage constraints Write a one to a register bit to clear the corresponding fault.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure B3-15 shows the HFSR bit assignments.

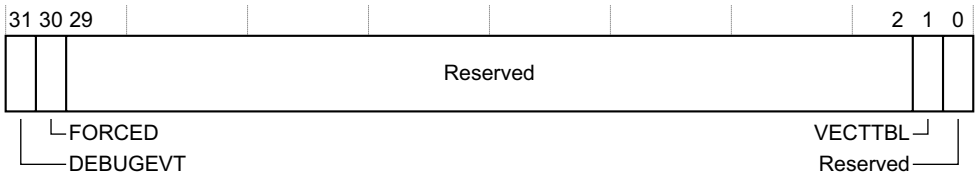


Figure B3-15 HFSR bit assignments

Table B3-21 shows the HFSR bit assignments.

Table B3-21 HFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31]	DEBUGEVT	Indicates when a Debug event has occurred: 0 = No Debug event has occurred. 1 = Debug event has occurred. The Debug Fault Status Register has been updated The processor sets this bit to 1 only when halting debug is disabled and a Debug event occurs, see *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823 for more information.
[30]	FORCED	Indicates that a fault with configurable priority has been escalated to a HardFault exception, because it could not be made active, because of priority or because it was disabled: 0 = No priority escalation has occurred. 1 = Processor has escalated a configurable-priority exception to HardFault. See *Priority escalation* on page B1-640 for more information.
[29:2]	-	Reserved.
[1]	VECTTBL	Indicates when a fault has occurred because of a vector table read error on exception processing: 0 = No vector table read fault has occurred. 1 = Vector table read fault has occurred.
[0]	-	Reserved.

B3.2.17 MemManage Fault Address Register, MMFAR

The MMFAR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows the address of the memory location that caused an MMU fault.

Usage constraints Updated only when an MMU fault occurs on a data access.

Configurations Always implemented.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-16 shows the MMFAR bit assignments.



Figure B3-16 MMFAR bit assignments

Table B3-22 shows the MMFAR bit assignments.

Table B3-22 MMFAR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	ADDRESS	Data address for an MPU fault. This is the location addressed by an attempted load or store access that was faulted. The MemManage Status Register shows the cause of the fault, and whether MMFAR.ADDRESS is valid.When an unaligned access faults, the address is the actual address that faulted. Because an access might be split into multiple parts, each aligned, this address can be any offset in the range of the requested size.

B3.2.18 BusFault Address Register, BFAR

The BFAR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows the address associated with a precise data access fault.

Usage constraints Updated only when a precise data access faults on a data access.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-17 shows the BFAR bit assignments.



Figure B3-17 BFAR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-23 shows the BFAR bit assignments.

Table B3-23 BFAR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	ADDRESS	Data address for a precise bus fault. This is the location addressed by an attempted data access that was faulted. The BFSR shows the reason for the fault and whether BFAR.ADDRESS is valid, see *BusFault Status Register, BFSR* on page B3-729. For unaligned access faults, the value returned is the address requested by the instruction. This might not be the address that faulted.

B3.2.19 Auxiliary Fault Status Register, AFSR

The AFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides implementation-specific fault status information and control.

Usage constraints The contents of this register are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Configurations All properties of this register are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, including whether it is implemented. If not implemented, the register location might be RAZ/WI, or UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

B3.2.20 Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR

The CPACR characteristics are:

Purpose Specifies the access privileges for coprocessors.

Usage constraints If a coprocessor is not implemented, a write of 0b01 or 0b11 to the corresponding CPACR field reads back as 0b00.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710.

Figure B3-18 shows the CPACR bit assignments.

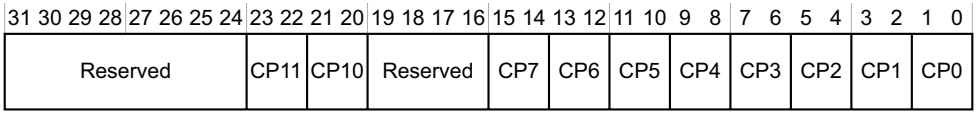


Figure B3-18 CPACR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-24 shows the CPACR bit assignments.

Table B3-24 CPACR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24, 19:16]	-	Reserved, UNK/SBZP.
[2*n*+1:2*n*] for *n* values 0-7, 10 and 11	CP*n*	Access privileges for coprocessor *n*, see Figure B3-18 on page B3-735. The possible values of each field are: 0b00 = Access denied. Any attempted access generates a NOCP UsageFault. 0b01 = Privileged access only. An unprivileged access generates a NOCP UsageFault. 0b10 = Reserved. 0b11 = Full access. Fields CP10 and CP11 together control access to the Floating-point coprocessor, if implemented. For more information see *Enabling access to the Floating-point coprocessor*.

Coprocessors CP8 to CP15 are reserved for use by ARM. Of these, only CP10 and CP11 are implemented in the ARMv7-M architecture profile, see *Enabling access to the Floating-point coprocessor*.

To test whether a coprocessor is implemented, software can write 0b01 to a CP*n* field, and then read the CPACR. If the CP*n* field reads as zero the coprocessor is not implemented.

Enabling access to the Floating-point coprocessor

In a processor that implements the Floating-point coprocessor, software must enable access to that coprocessor by writing the value for the required access level, as defined in Table B3-24, to both CPACR.CP10 and CPACR.CP11. The effect of writing different values to CPACR.CP10 and CPACR.CP11 is UNPREDICTABLE.

Note

Any attempt to execute a floating-point instruction results in a NOCP UsageFault if:

- CPACR.CP10 is zero
- CPACR.CP10 is 0b01, and the current execution mode is not privileged.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.2.21 Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR

The FPCCR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds control data for the floating-point unit.

Usage constraints Accessible only by privileged software. If the FP extension is not implemented, the FPCCR register location is reserved.

Software must not change the value of the ASPEN bit or LSPEN bit while either:

- the CPACR permits access to CP10 and CP11, that give access to the FP extension, see *Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735.
- the CONTROL.FPCA bit is set to 1, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628.

Configurations Implemented only when the implementation includes the FP extension.

Attributes See Table B3-5 on page B3-711 and the field descriptions in Table B3-25 on page B3-738.

Figure B3-19 shows the CPACR bit assignments.

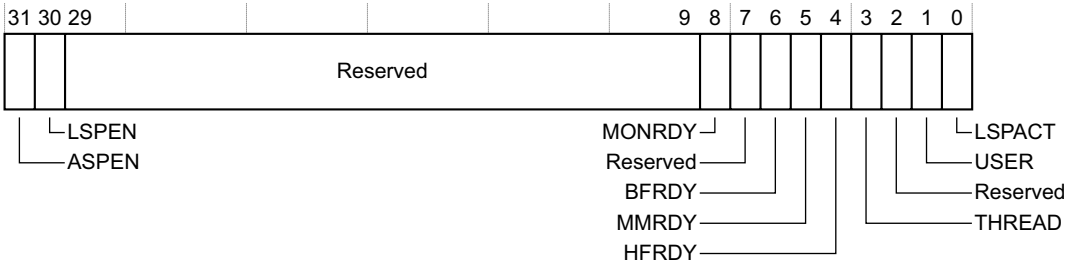


Figure B3-19 FPCCR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-25 shows the FPCCR bit assignments.

Table B3-25 FPCCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Reset	Function
[31]	ASPEN	1	When this bit is set to 1, execution of a floating-point instruction sets the CONTROL.FPCA bit to 1, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628: 0: Executing an FP instruction has no effect on CONTROL.FPCA. 1: Executing an FP instruction sets CONTROL.FPCA to 1. Setting this bit to 1 means the hardware automatically preserves FP context on exception entry and restores it on exception return. For more information see *Context state stacking on exception entry with the FP extension* on page B1-650.
[30]	LSPEN	1	Enables lazy context save of FP state: 0: Disable automatic lazy context save. 1: Enable automatic lazy context save. For more information see *Lazy context save of FP state* on page B1-652.
[29:9]	-	-	Reserved
[8]	MONRDY	UNKNOWN	Indicates whether the software executing when the processor allocated the FP stack frame was able[a] to set the DebugMonitor exception to pending: 0: Not able to set the DebugMonitor exception to pending. 1: Able to set the DebugMonitor exception to pending.
[7]	-	-	Reserved
[6]	BFRDY	UNKNOWN	Indicates whether the software executing when the processor allocated the FP stack frame was able[a] to set the BusFault exception to pending: 0: Not able to set the BusFault exception to pending. 1: Able to set the BusFault exception to pending.
[5]	MMRDY	UNKNOWN	Indicates whether the software executing when the processor allocated the FP stack frame was able[a] to set the MemManage exception to pending: 0: Not able to set the MemManage exception to pending. 1: Able to set the MemManage exception to pending.
[4]	HFRDY	UNKNOWN	Indicates whether the software executing when the processor allocated the FP stack frame was able[a] to set the HardFault exception to pending: 0: Not able to set the HardFault exception to pending. 1: Able to set the HardFault exception to pending.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-25 FPCCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Reset	Function
[3]	THREAD	UNKNOWN	Indicates the processor mode when it allocated the FP stack frame: 0: Handler Mode. 1: Thread Mode. This bit is for fault handler information only and does not interact with the exception model.
[2]	-		Reserved
[1]	USER	UNKNOWN	Indicates the privilege level of the software executing when the processor allocated the FP stack frame. 0: Privileged. 1: Unprivileged.
[0]	LSPACT	0	Indicates whether Lazy preservation of the FP state is active: 0 = Lazy state preservation is not active. 1 = Lazy state preservation is active. For more information see *Lazy context save of FP state* on page B1-652.

a. In this table, *was able* means that this exception was enabled and software was executing with sufficient priority to set the status of the exception to pending. The values of these bits do not indicate whether there was an attempt to set the corresponding exception to pending.

B3.2.22 Floating-Point Context Address Register, FPCAR

The FPCAR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the location of the unpopulated floating-point register space allocated on an exception stack frame. The FPCAR points to the stack location reserved for S0.

Usage constraints Accessible only by privileged software. If the FP extension is not implemented, the FPCAR register location is reserved.

Configurations Implemented only when the implementation includes the FP extension.

Attributes See Table B3-5 on page B3-711 and the field descriptions in Table B3-26 on page B3-740.

Figure B3-20 on page B3-740 shows the FPCAR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

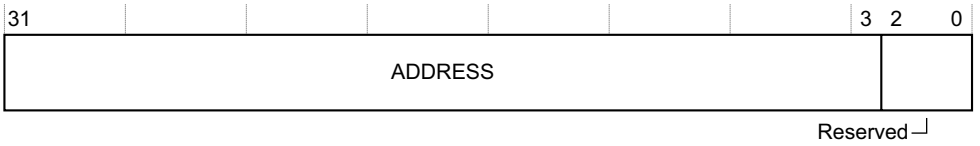


Figure B3-20 FPCAR bit assignments

Table B3-26 shows the FPCAR bit assignments.

Table B3-26 FPCAR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:3]	ADDRESS	The location of the unpopulated floating-point register space allocated on an exception stack frame.
[2:0]	-	Reserved. RAZ/WI.

For more information about the use of the FPCAR see *Lazy context save of FP state* on page B1-652.

B3.2.23 Floating-Point Default Status Control Register, FPDSCR

The FPDSCR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the default values for the floating-point status control data that the processor assigns to the FPSCR when it creates a new floating-point context.

Usage constraints Accessible only by privileged software. If the FP extension is not implemented, the FPCAR register location is reserved.

Provides initial values for the FPCAR, see *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56.

Configurations Implemented only when the implementation includes the FP extension.

Attributes See Table B3-5 on page B3-711.

Figure B3-21 shows the FPDSCR bit assignments.



Figure B3-21 FPDSCR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-27 shows the FPDSCR bit assignments:

Table B3-27 FPDSCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:27]	-	Reserved
[26]	AHP	Default value for FPSCR.AHP
[25]	DN	Default value for FPSCR.DN
[24]	FZ	Default value for FPSCR.FZ
[23:22]	RMode	Default value for FPSCR.RMode
[21:0]	-	Reserved

B3.2.24 Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR

The ICTR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides information about the interrupt controller

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-6 on page B3-712.

Figure B3-22 shows the ICTR bit assignments.

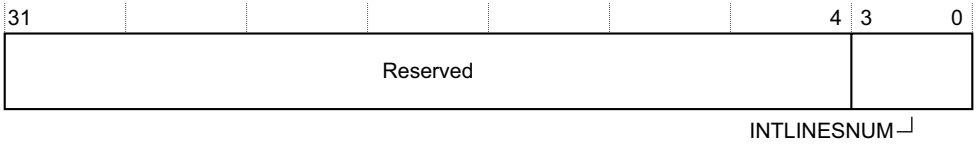


Figure B3-22 ICTR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-28 shows the ICTR bit assignments.

Table B3-28 ICTR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:4]	-	Reserved
[3:0]	INTLINESNUM	The total number of interrupt lines supported by an implementation, defined in groups of 32. That is, the total number of interrupt lines is up to (32*(INTLINESNUM+1)). However, the absolute maximum number of interrupts is 496, corresponding to the INTLINESNUM value 0b1111. The first 32 interrupts, or all interrupts in an implementation that supports fewer than 32 interrupts, are banked in a multi-processor system, with a banked implementation of each interrupt for each processor in the system. INTLINESNUM indicates which registers in the NVIC register map are implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

B3.2.25 Auxiliary Control Register, ACTLR

The ACTLR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED configuration and control options.

Usage constraints The register might have IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented. The contents of this register are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Attributes See Table B3-6 on page B3-712.

B3.2.26 Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR

The STIR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides a mechanism for software to generate an interrupt.

Usage constraints This register applies to implemented external interrupts only.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-6 on page B3-712.

Figure B3-23 shows the STIR bit assignments.

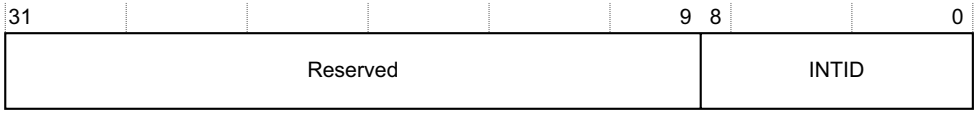


Figure B3-23 STIR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-29 shows the STIR bit assignments.

Table B3-29 STIR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:9]	-	Reserved.
[8:0]	INTID	Indicates the interrupt to be triggered.The value written is (ExceptionNumber - 16), see *Exception number definition* on page B1-633. Writing to this register has the same effect as setting the NVIC ISPR bit corresponding to the interrupt to 1, see *Interrupt Set-Pending Registers, NVIC_ISPR0 - NVIC_ISPR15* on page B3-757.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.3 The system timer, SysTick

An ARMv7-M implementation must include a system timer, SysTick, that provides a simple, 24-bit clear-on-write, decrementing, wrap-on-zero counter with a flexible control mechanism. A system can use this counter in several different ways, including:

- As an RTOS tick timer that fires at a programmable rate, for example 100Hz, and invokes a SysTick routine each time it fires.
- As a high speed alarm timer using the main processor clock.
- As a variable rate alarm or signal timer. The available duration range depends on the reference clock used and the dynamic range of the counter.
- As a simple counter. Software can use this to measure time to completion and time used.
- As an internal clock source control based on missing or meeting durations. Software can use the COUNTFLAG field in the control and status register to determine whether an action completed within a particular duration, as part of a dynamic clock management control loop.

B3.3.1 SysTick operation

The timer consists of four registers:

- A control and status register. This configures the SysTick clock, enables the counter, enables the SysTick interrupt, and indicates the counter status.
- A counter reload value register.This provides the wrap value for the counter.
- A counter current value register.
- A calibration value register. This indicates the preload value required for a 10ms (100Hz) system clock.

When enabled, the timer counts down from the value in SYST_CVR, see *SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-748. When the counter reaches zero, it reloads the value in SYST_RVR on the next clock edge, see *SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-747. It then decrements on subsequent clocks. This reloading when the counter reaches zero is called wrapping.

When the counter transitions to zero, it sets the COUNTFLAG status bit to 1. Reading the COUNTFLAG status bit clears it to 0.

Writing to SYST_CVR clears both the register and the COUNTFLAG status bit to zero. This causes the SysTick logic to reload SYST_CVR from SYST_RVR on the next timer clock. A write to SYST_CVR does not trigger the SysTick exception logic.

Reading SYST_CVR returns the value of the counter at the time the register is accessed.

Writing a value of zero to SYST_RVR disables the counter on the next wrap. The SysTick counter logic maintains this counter value of zero after the wrap.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- Setting SYST_RVR to zero has the effect of disabling the SysTick counter independently of the counter enable bit.
- The SYST_CVR value is UNKNOWN on reset. Before enabling the SysTick counter, software must write the required counter value to SYST_RVR, and then write to SYST_CVR. This clears SYST_CVR to zero. When enabled, the counter reloads the value from SYST_RVR, and counts down from that value, rather than from an arbitrary value.

Software can use the calibration value TENMS to scale the counter to other desired clock rates within the dynamic range of the counter.

When the processor is halted in Debug state, the counter does not decrement.

The timer is clocked by a reference clock. Whether the reference clock is the processor clock or an external clock source is implementation defined. If an implementation uses an external clock, it must document the relationship between the processor clock and the external reference. This is required for system timing calibration, taking account of metastability, clock skew and jitter.

B3.3.2 System timer register support in the SCS

Table B3-30 summarizes the register support provided within the SCS address map. All listed registers are 32-bits wide. See *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708 for more information about the complete SCS address map.

Table B3-30 SysTick register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E010	SYST_CSR	RW	0x0000000x[a]	*SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR* on page B3-746
0xE000E014	SYST_RVR	RW	UNKNOWN	*SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-747
0xE000E018	SYST_CVR	RW	UNKNOWN	*SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-748
0xE000E01C	SYST_CALIB	RO	IMP DEF	*SysTick Calibration value Register, SYST_CALIB* on page B3-748
0xE000E020-0xE000E0FC	-	-	-	Reserved

a. See register description for information about the reset value of SYST_CSR bit[2]. All other bits reset to 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.3.3 SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR

The SYST_CSR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls the system timer and provides status data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-30 on page B3-745, and the description of the CLKSOURCE bit in Table B3-31.

Figure B3-24 shows the SYST_CSR bit assignments.

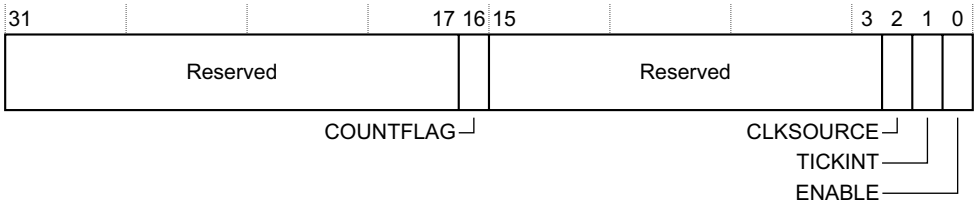


Figure B3-24 SYST_CSR bit assignments

Table B3-31 shows the SYST_CSR bit assignments.

Table B3-31 SYST_CSR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31:17]	-	-	Reserved.
[16]	RO	COUNTFLAG	Indicates whether the counter has counted to 0 since the last read of this register: 0 = Timer has not counted to 0 1 = Timer has counted to 0. COUNTFLAG is set to 1 by a count transition from 1 to 0. COUNTFLAG is cleared to 0 by a read of this register, and by any write to the Current Value register.
[15:3]	-	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-31 SYST_CSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[2]	R/W	CLKSOURCE	Indicates the SysTick clock source: 0 = SysTick uses the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED external reference clock. 1 = SysTick uses the processor clock. If no external clock is provided, this bit reads as 1 and ignores writes.
[1]	R/W	TICKINT	Indicates whether counting to 0 causes the status of the SysTick exception to change to pending: 0 = Count to 0 does not affect the SysTick exception status. 1 = Count to 0 changes the SysTick exception status to pending. Changing the value of the counter to 0 by writing zero to the SysTick Current Value register to 0 never changes the status of the SysTick exception.
[0]	R/W	ENABLE	Indicates the enabled status of the SysTick counter: 0 = Counter is disabled 1 = Counter is operating.

B3.3.4 SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR

The SYST_RVR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the reload value of the SYST_CVR.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-30 on page B3-745.

Figure B3-25 shows the SYST_RVR bit assignments.

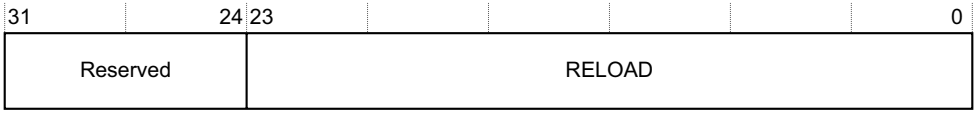


Figure B3-25 SYST_RVR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-32 shows the SYST_RVR bit assignments.

Table B3-32 SYST_RVR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	Reserved, RAZ/WI.
[23:0]	RELOAD	The value to load into the SYST_CVR when the counter reaches 0.

B3.3.5 SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR

The SYST_CVR characteristics are:

Purpose Reads or clears the current counter value.

Usage constraints
- Any write to the register clears the register to zero.
- The counter does not provide read-modify-write protection.
- Unsupported bits are read as zero, see *SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-747.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-30 on page B3-745.

Figure B3-26 shows the SYST_CVR bit assignments.

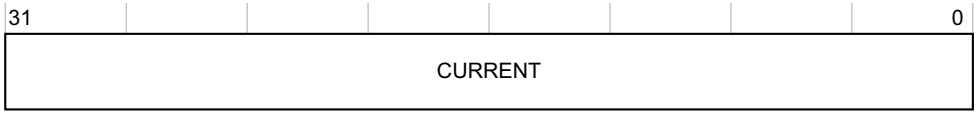


Figure B3-26 SYST_CVR bit assignments

Table B3-33 shows the SYST_CVR bit assignments.

Table B3-33 SYST_CVR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	CURRENT	Current counter value. This is the value of the counter at the time it is sampled.

B3.3.6 SysTick Calibration value Register, SYST_CALIB

The SYST_CALIB Register characteristics are:

Purpose Reads the calibration value and parameters for SysTick.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-30 on page B3-745.

Figure B3-27 shows the SYST_CALIB bit assignments.

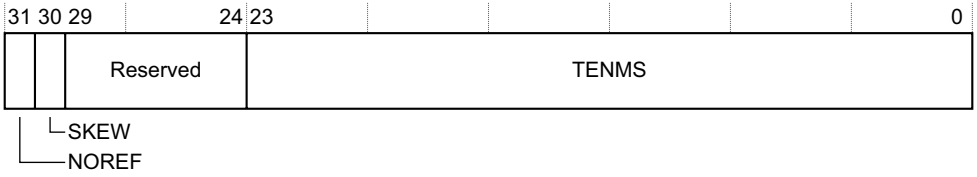


Figure B3-27 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments

Table B3-34 shows the SYST_CALIB bit assignments.

Table B3-34 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31]	NOREF	Indicates whether the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED reference clock is implemented: 0 = The reference clock is implemented. 1 = The reference clock is not implemented. When this bit is 1, the CLKSOURCE bit of the SYST_CSR register is forced to 1 and cannot be cleared to 0.
[30]	SKEW	Indicates whether the 10ms calibration value is exact: 0 = 10ms calibration value is exact. 1 = 10ms calibration value is inexact, because of the clock frequency.
[29:24]	-	Reserved
[23:0]	TENMS	Optionally, holds a reload value to be used for 10ms (100Hz) timing, subject to system clock skew errors. If this field is zero, the calibration value is not known.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.4 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC

ARMv7-M provides an interrupt controller as an integral part of the ARMv7-M exception model. The interrupt controller operation aligns with the ARM *General Interrupt Controller* (GIC) specification, defined for use with other ARMv7 profiles and other architectures.

The ARMv7-M NVIC architecture supports up to 496 interrupts. The number of external interrupt lines supported can be determined from the read-only Interrupt Controller Type Register (ICTR) accessed at address `0xE000E004` in the System Control Space. See *Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR* on page B3-741 for the register detail. The general registers associated with the NVIC are all accessible from a block of memory in the System Control Space as described in Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

B3.4.1 NVIC operation

ARMv7-M supports level-sensitive and pulse-sensitive interrupt behavior. This means that both level-sensitive and pulse-sensitive interrupts can be handled. Pulse interrupt sources must be held long enough to be sampled reliably by the processor clock to ensure they are latched and become pending. A subsequent pulse can add the pending state to an active interrupt, making the status of the interrupt active and pending. However, multiple pulses that occur during the active period only register as a single event for interrupt scheduling.

In summary:

- Pulses held for a clock period act like edge-sensitive interrupts. These can become pending again while the interrupt is active.

  Note

  A pulse must be cleared before the assertion of AIRCR.VECTCLRACTIVE or the associated exception return, otherwise the interrupt signal behaves as a level-sensitive input and the pending bit is asserted again.

- Level-based interrupts become pending, and then make the interrupt active. The *Interrupt Service Routine* (ISR) then accesses the peripheral, causing it to deassert the interrupt. If the interrupt is still asserted on return from the ISR, it becomes pending again.

All NVIC interrupts have a programmable priority value and an associated exception number as part of the ARMv7-M exception model and its prioritization policy.

The NVIC supports the following features:

- NVIC interrupts can be enabled and disabled by writing to their corresponding Interrupt Set-Enable or Interrupt Clear-Enable register bit-field. The registers use a write-1-to-enable and write-1-to-clear policy, both registers reading back the current enabled state of the corresponding (32) interrupts.

  When an interrupt is disabled, interrupt assertion causes the interrupt to become pending, but the interrupt cannot become active. If an interrupt is active when it is disabled, it remains in the active state until this is cleared by a reset or an exception return. Clearing the enable bit prevents any new activation of the associated interrupt.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

An implementation can hard-wire interrupt enable bits to zero if the associated interrupt line does not exist, or hard-wired them to one if the associated interrupt line cannot be disabled.

- Software can set or remove the pending state of NVIC interrupts using a complementary pair of registers, the Set-Pending Register and Clear-Pending Register. The registers use a write-one-to-enable and write-one-to-clear policy, and a read of either register returns the current pending state of the corresponding 32 interrupts. Writing 1 to a bit in the Clear-Pending Register has no effect on the execution status of an active interrupt.

  It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED for each interrupt line supported, whether an interrupt supports either or both setting and clearing of the associated pending state under software control.

- Active bit status is provided to allow software to determine whether an interrupt is inactive, active, pending, or active and pending.

- NVIC interrupts are prioritized by updating an 8-bit field within a 32-bit register (each register supporting four interrupts). Priorities are maintained according to the ARMv7-M prioritization scheme. See *Exception priorities and preemption* on page B1-635.

In addition to an external hardware event or software setting the appropriate bit in the Set-Pending registers, to 1, software can set an external interrupt to the pending state by writing its interrupt number to the STIR, see *Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742.

Note

The interrupt number of an external interrupt is its (ExceptionNumber - 16)

External interrupt input behavior

The following pseudocode describes the relationship between external interrupt inputs and the NVIC behavior:

```
// DEFINITIONS

NVIC[] is an array of active high external interrupt input signals;
    // the type of signal (level or pulse) and its assertion level/sense is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
    // and might not be the same for all inputs

boolean Edge(integer INTNUM);    // Returns true if on a clock edge NVIC[INTNUM]
                                 // has changed from '0' to '1'
boolean NVIC_Pending[INTNUM];    // an array of pending status bits for the external interrupts
integer INTNUM;                  // the external interrupt number


    // The WriteToRegField helper function returns TRUE on a write of '1' event
    // to the field FieldNumber of the RegName register.

boolean WriteToRegField(register RegName, integer FieldNumber)


boolean ExceptionIN(integer INTNUM);   // returns TRUE if exception entry in progress
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
                                        // to activate INTNUM
boolean ExceptionOUT(integer INTNUM);   // returns TRUE if exception return in progress
                                        // from active INTNUM
```

```
// INTERRUPT INTERFACE

sampleInterruptHi = WriteToRegField(AIRCR, VECTCLRACTIVE) || ExceptionOUT(INTNUM);
sampleInterruptLo = WriteToRegField(ICPR, INTNUM);

InterruptAssertion   =  Edge(INTNUM) || (NVIC[INTNUM] && sampleInterruptHi);
InterruptDeassertion =  !NVIC[INTNUM] && sampleInterruptLo;
```

```
// NVIC BEHAVIOR

clearPend = ExceptionIN(INTNUM) || InterruptDeassertion;
setPend   = InterruptAssertion || WriteToRegField(ISPR, INTNUM);

if clearPend && setPend then
    IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] is TRUE or FALSE;
else
    NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] = setPend || (NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] && !clearPend);
```

B3.4.2 NVIC register support in the SCS

The following registers, used with the interrupt controller, are in the system control region of the SCS:

ICTR A read-only register that provides information on the number of external interrupts supported by the implementation, see *Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR* on page B3-741.

STIR A write-only register that software can use to change the status of an external interrupt to pending, see *Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742.

The system control region also includes status and configuration registers that apply to the NVIC as part of the general exception model. For more information about the system control region see *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The remaining registers for the external interrupts are in the NVIC region of the SCS, as Table B3-35 shows. All of these registers are 32-bits wide.

Table B3-35 NVIC register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E100 -0xE000E13C	NVIC_ISER0 -NVIC_ISER15	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Set-Enable Registers, NVIC_ISER0 - NVIC_ISER15* on page B3-755
0xE000E180 -0xE000E1BC	NVIC_ICER0 -NVIC_ICER15	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Clear-Enable Registers, NVIC_ICER0 - NVIC_ICER15* on page B3-756
0xE000E200 -0xE000E23C	NVIC_ISPR0 -NVIC_ISPR15	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Set-Pending Registers, NVIC_ISPR0 - NVIC_ISPR15* on page B3-757
0xE000E280 -0xE000E2BC	NVIC_ICPR0 -NVIC_ICPR15	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Clear-Pending Registers, NVIC_ICPR0 - NVIC_ICPR15* on page B3-758
0xE000E300 -0xE000E37C	NVIC_IABR0 -NVIC_IABR15	RO	0x00000000	*Interrupt Active Bit Registers, NVIC_IABR0 - NVIC_IABR15* on page B3-759
0xE000E380 -0xE000E3FC	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000E400 -0xE000E7EC	NVIC_IPR0 -NVIC_IPR123	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVC_IPR123* on page B3-760
0xE000E7F0 -0xE000ECFC	-	-	-	Reserved

Implemented NVIC registers

The ICTR.INTLINESNUM indicates the maximum number of implemented external interrupts, see *Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR* on page B3-741. This maximum number has a granularity of 32 interrupts, and determines the number of implemented registers in each of the NVIC register types:

- For the NVIC_ISERs, NVIC_ICERs, NVIC_ISPRs, NVIC_ICPRs, and NVIC_IABRs, each register has a bit corresponding to each of 32 interrupts. Taking the NVIC_ISERs as an example, Table B3-36 on page B3-754 shows how ICTR.INTLINESNUM determines the number of implemented registers,

  If the processor implements the maximum of 496 interrupts, register 15 is implemented with bits[31;16] reserved, and bits[15:0] corresponding to interrupts 480-495.

- For the NVIC_IPRs, each register has four 8-bit fields, each corresponding to one interrupt, and Table B3-37 on page B3-754 shows how ICTR.INTLINESNUM determines the number of implemented registers.

- Unimplemented NVIC registers are reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-36 Implemented NVIC registers, except NVIC_IPRs

ICTR.INTLINESNUM	Maximum number of interrupts	Last implemented NVIC_ISER	Corresponding interrupts
0b0000	32	NVIC_ISER0	0 - 31
0b0001	64	NVIC_ISER1	32 - 63
0b0010	96	NVIC_ISER2	64 - 95
0b0011	128	NVIC_ISER3	96 - 127
0b0100	160	NVIC_ISER4	128 - 159
0b0101	192	NVIC_ISER5	160 - 191
0b0110	224	NVIC_ISER6	192 - 223
0b0111	256	NVIC_ISER7	224 - 255
0b1000	288	NVIC_ISER8	256 - 287
0b1001	320	NVIC_ISER9	288 - 319
0b1010	352	NVIC_ISER10	320 - 351
0b1011	384	NVIC_ISER11	352 - 383
0b1100	416	NVIC_ISER12	384 - 415
0b1101	448	NVIC_ISER13	416 - 447
0b1110	480	NVIC_ISER14	448 - 479
0b1111	496	NVIC_ISER15	480 - 495

Table B3-37 Implemented NVIC_IPRs

ICTR.INTLINESNUM	Maximum number of interrupts	Last implemented NVIC_IPR	Corresponding interrupts
0b0000	32	NVIC_IPR7	28 - 31
0b0001	64	NVIC_IPR15	60 - 63
0b0010	96	NVIC_IPR23	92 - 95
0b0011	128	NVIC_IPR31	124 - 127

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-37 Implemented NVIC_IPRs (continued)

ICTR.INTLINESNUM	Maximum number of interrupts	Last implemented NVIC_IPR	Corresponding interrupts
0b0100	160	NVIC_IPR39	156 - 159
0b0101	192	NVIC_IPR47	188 - 191
0b0110	224	NVIC_IPR55	220 - 223
0b0111	256	NVIC_IPR63	252 - 255
0b1000	288	NVIC_IPR71	284 - 287
0b1001	320	NVIC_IPR79	316 - 319
0b1010	352	NVIC_IPR87	348 - 351
0b1011	384	NVIC_IPR95	380 - 383
0b1100	416	NVIC_IPR103	412 - 415
0b1101	448	NVIC_IPR111	444 - 447
0b1110	480	NVIC_IPR119	476 - 479
0b1111	496	NVIC_IPR123	492 - 495

B3.4.3 Interrupt Set-Enable Registers, NVIC_ISER0 - NVIC_ISER15

The NVIC_ISER characteristics are:

Purpose Enables, or reads the enable state of a group of interrupts.

Usage constraints NVIC_ISER*n*[31:0] are the set-enable bits for interrupts (31+(32***n*)) - (32***n*).
When *n*=15, bits [31:16] are reserved.

Configurations At least one register is always implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-28 shows the NVIC_ISER*n* bit assignments.



Figure B3-28 NVIC_ISER*n* Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-38 shows the NVIC_ISER*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-38 NVIC_ISER*n* Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[*m*]	SETENA	For register NVIC_ISER*n*, enables or shows the current enabled state of interrupt (*m*+(32**n*)): **On reads** 0 = Interrupt disabled. 1 = Interrupt enabled. **On writes** 0 = No effect. 1 = Enable interrupt. *m* takes the values from 31 to 0, except for NVIC_ISER15, where: • *m* takes the values from 15 to 0 • register bits[31:16] are reserved, RAZ/WI. Software can enable multiple interrupts in a single write to NVIC_ISER*n*.

B3.4.4 Interrupt Clear-Enable Registers, NVIC_ICER0 - NVIC_ICER15

The NVIC_ICER characteristics are:

Purpose Disables, or reads the enable state of, a group of registers.

Usage constraints NVIC_ICER*n*[31:0] are the clear-enable bits for interrupts (31+(32**n*)) - (32**n*).
When *n*=15, bits [31:16] are reserved.

Configurations At least one register is always implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-29 shows the NVIC_ICER*n* bit assignments.

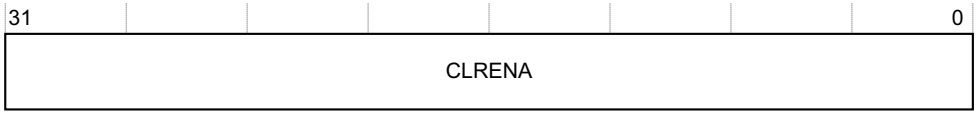


Figure B3-29 NVIC_ICER*n* Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-39 shows the NVIC_ICER*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-39 NVIC_ICER*n* Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[*m*]	CLRENA	For register NVIC_ICER*n*, disables or shows the current enabled state of interrupt (*m*+(32**n*)): **On reads** 0 = Interrupt disabled. 1 = Interrupt enabled. **On writes** 0 = No effect. 1 = Disable interrupt. *m* takes the values from 31 to 0, except for NVIC_ICER15, where: • *m* takes the values from 15 to 0 • register bits[31:16] are reserved, RAZ/WI. Software can disable multiple interrupts in a single write to NVIC_ICER*n*.

B3.4.5 Interrupt Set-Pending Registers, NVIC_ISPR0 - NVIC_ISPR15

The NVIC_ISPR characteristics are:

Purpose For a group of interrupts, changes interrupt status to pending, or shows the current pending status.

Usage constraints NVIC_ISPR*n*[31:0] are the set-pending bits for interrupts (31+(32**n*)) - (32**n*).
When *n*=15, bits [31:16] are reserved.

Configurations At least one register is always implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-30 shows the NVIC_ISPR*n* bit assignments.

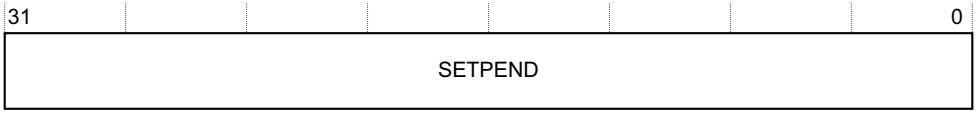


Figure B3-30 NVIC_ISPR*n* Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-40 shows the NVIC_ISPR*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-40 NVIC_ISPR*n* Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[*m*]	SETPEND	For register NVIC_ISPR*n*, changes the state of interrupt (*m*+(32**n*)) to pending, or shows whether the state of the interrupt is pending: **On reads** 0 = Interrupt is not pending. 1 = Interrupt is pending. **On writes** 0 = No effect. 1 = Changes state of interrupt to pending. *m* takes the values from 31 to 0, except for NVIC_ISPR15, where: • *m* takes the values from 15 to 0 • register bits[31:16] are reserved, RAZ/WI. Software can set multiple interrupts to pending state in a single write to NVIC_ISPR*n*.

B3.4.6 Interrupt Clear-Pending Registers, NVIC_ICPR0 - NVIC_ICPR15

The NVIC_ICPR characteristics are:

Purpose For a group of interrupts, clears the interrupt pending status, or shows the current pending status.

Usage constraints NVIC_ICPR*n*[31:0] are the clear-pending bits for interrupts (31+(32**n*)) - (32**n*).
When *n*=15, bits [31:16] are reserved.

Configurations At least one register is always implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-31 shows the NVIC_ICPR*n* bit assignments.

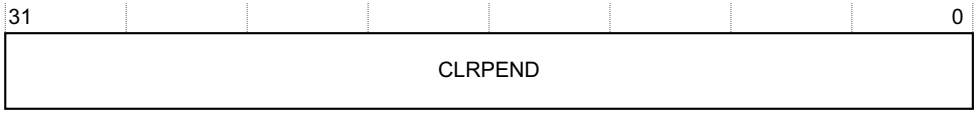


Figure B3-31 NVIC_ICPR*n* Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-41 shows the NVIC_ICPR*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-41 NVIC_ICPR*n* Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[*m*]	CLRPEND	For register NVIC_ICPR*n*, clears the pending state of interrupt (*m*+(32**n*)), or shows whether the state of the interrupt is pending: **On reads** 0 = Interrupt is not pending. 1 = Interrupt is pending. **On writes** 0 = No effect. 1 = Clears the pending state of the interrupt. *m* takes the values from 31 to 0, except for NVIC_ICPR15, where: • *m* takes the values from 15 to 0 • register bits[31:16] are reserved, RAZ/WI. Software can clear the pending state of multiple interrupts in a single write to NVIC_ICPR*n*.

B3.4.7 Interrupt Active Bit Registers, NVIC_IABR0 - NVIC_IABR15

The NVIC_IABR characteristics are:

Purpose For a group of 32 interrupts, shows whether each interrupt is active.

Usage constraints NVIC_IABR*n*[31:0] are the active bits for interrupts (31+(32**n*)) - (32**n*).
When *n*=15, bits [31:16] are reserved.

Configurations At least one register is always implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-32 shows the NVIC_IABR*n* bit assignments.

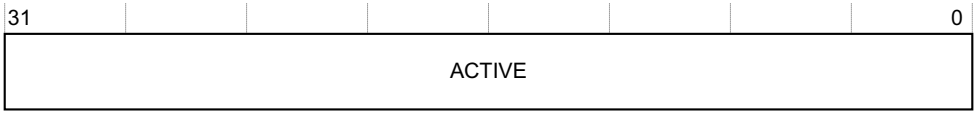


Figure B3-32 NVIC_IABR*n* Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-42 shows the NVIC_IABR*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-42 NVIC_IABRx Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[*m*]	ACTIVE	For register NVIC_IABR*n*, shows whether interrupt (*m*+(32**n*)) is active: 0 = Interrupt not active. 1 = Interrupt active. *m* takes the values from 31 to 0, except for NVIC_IABR15, where: • *m* takes the values from 15 to 0 • register bits[31:16] are reserved, RAZ/WI.

B3.4.8 Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVC_IPR123

The NVIC_IPRx Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or reads interrupt priorities.

Usage constraints The registers are byte, aligned halfword, and word accessible.

Configurations The number of NVIC_IPRs implemented is a multiple of eight, and at least eight registers are implemented, see *Implemented NVIC registers* on page B3-753.

Attributes See Table B3-35 on page B3-753.

Figure B3-33 shows the NVIC_IPR*n* bit assignments.

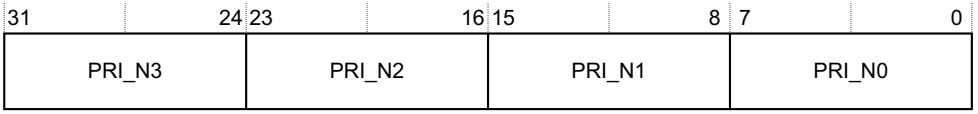


Figure B3-33 NVIC_IPR*n* Register bit assignments

Table B3-43 shows the NVIC_IPR*n* bit assignments.

Table B3-43 NVIC_IPRx Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	PRI_N3	For register NVIC_IPR*n*, priority of interrupt number 4*n*+3.
[23:16]	PRI_N2	For register NVIC_IPR*n*, priority of interrupt number 4*n*+2.
[15:8]	PRI_N1	For register NVIC_IPR*n*, priority of interrupt number 4*n*+1.
[7:0]	PRI_N0	For register NVIC_IPR*n*, priority of interrupt number 4*n*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.5 Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv7

Supporting a model of unprivileged and privileged software execution requires a memory protection scheme that controls the access rights. ARMv7-M supports the *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSAv7). The system address space of a PMSAv7 implementation is protected by a *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU). The MPU divides the memory into regions. The number of supported regions is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. PMSAv7 can support regions as small as 32 bytes, but the limited register resources in the 4GB address space mean the MPU provides an inherently coarse-grained protection scheme. The scheme is completely predictive, with all control information held in registers that are closely-coupled to the processor. Memory accesses are only required for software control of the MPU register interface, see *Register support for PMSAv7 in the SCS* on page B3-764.

MPU support in ARMv7-M is optional. When implemented, its relation to the system memory map described in *The system address map* on page B3-704 as follows:

- MPU support provides control of access rights on physical addresses. It does not perform address translation.
- When the MPU is disabled or not present, the system adopts the default system memory map listed in Table B3-1 on page B3-705. When the MPU is enabled, the enabled regions define the system address map with the following provisos:
  - accesses to the Private Peripheral Bus (PPB) always uses the default system address map
  - exception vector reads from the Vector Address Table always use the default system address map
  - the MPU is restricted in how it can change the default memory map attributes associated with System space (address 0xE0000000 or higher).

    System space is always marked as XN, Execute Never.
  - for the exceptions that execute at a priority less than 0, meaning NMI, HardFault, and exception handlers when FAULTMASK is set to 1, the MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA bit determines whether the exception handlers access memory with the MPU enabled or with the MPU disabled
  - the default system memory map can be configured to provide a background region for privileged accesses
  - accesses with an address match in more than one region use the highest matching region number for the access attributes
  - accesses that do not match all access conditions of a region address match (with the MPU enabled) or a background/default memory map match generate a fault.

B3.5.1 PMSAv7-compliant MPU operation

ARMv7-M only supports a unified memory model with respect to MPU region support. All enabled regions provide support for instruction and data accesses.

The base address, size and attributes of a region are all configurable, with the general rule that all regions are naturally aligned. This can be stated as:

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
RegionBaseAddress[(N-1):0] = 0, where N is log2(SizeofRegion_in_bytes)
```

Memory regions can vary in size as a power of 2. The supported sizes are 2^N, where $5 \le N \le 32$. Where there is an overlap between two regions, the register with the highest region number takes priority.

Sub-region support

For regions of 256 bytes or larger, the region can be divided up into eight sub-regions of size $2^{(N-3)}$. Sub-regions within a region can be disabled on an individual basis (8 disable bits) with respect to the associated region attribute register. When a sub-region is disabled, an access match is required from another region, or background matching if enabled. If an access match does not occur a fault is generated. Region sizes below 256 bytes do not support sub-regions. The sub-region disable field is SBZ/UNP for regions of less than 256 bytes in size.

ARMv7-M specific support

ARMv7-M supports the standard PMSAv7 of the ARMv7-R architecture profile, with the following extensions:

- An optimized two register update model, where software can select the region to update by writing to the MPU Region Base Address Register. This optimization applies to the first sixteen memory regions ($0 \le$ RegionNumber $\le$ `0xF`) only.
- The MPU Region Base Address Register and the MPU Region Attribute and Size Register pairs are aliased in three consecutive dual-word locations. Using the two register update model, software can modify up to four regions by writing the appropriate even number of words using a single `STM` multi-word store instruction.

MPU pseudocode

The following pseudocode defines the operation of an ARMv7-M MPU. The terms used align with the MPU register names and bit field names described in *Register support for PMSAv7 in the SCS* on page B3-764.

```
// ValidateAddress()
// =================

AddressDescriptor ValidateAddress(bits(32) address, boolean ispriv, boolean iswrite,
                                  boolean isinstrfetch)

    boolean isvectortablelookup;        // TRUE if address associated with exception entry
    boolean isPPBaccess;                // TRUE if the address is to the PPB region
    AddressDescriptor result;
    Permissions perms;

    // ARMv7-M PMSA only supports shared (instruction and data) regions
    result.physicaladdress = address;
    perms.ap = '001';                   // initialised value
    perms.xn = '0';                     // initialised value

    if isvectortablelookup OR isPPBaccess then        // bypass MPU for these accesses
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    result.memattrs = DefaultMemoryAttributes(address);
elsif MPU_CTRL.ENABLE == '0' then                 // MPU disabled
    if MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA == '1' then
        UNPREDICTABLE;
    else result.memattrs = DefaultMemoryAttributes(address);

else    // MPU is enabled
    if MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA == '0' AND (ExecutionPriority() < 0) then

        // MPU disabled for HardFault, or FAULTMASK
        result.memattrs = DefaultMemoryAttributes(address);
    else
        // Scan through regions looking for matching ones. If found, the last
        // one matched is used.
        region_found = FALSE;

        for r=0 to MPU_TYPE.DREGION-1
            bits(16) size_enable    = MPU_RASR[r]<15:0>;
            bits(32) base_address   = MPU_RBAR[r];
            bits(16) access_control = MPU_RASR[r]<31:16>;

            if size_enable<0> == '1' then         // Region is enabled
                lsbit = UInt(size_enable<5:1>) + 1;
                if lsbit < 5 then UNPREDICTABLE;

                if lsbit == 32 || address<31:lsbit> == base_address<31:lsbit> then
                    if lsbit >= 8 then            // can have subregions
                        subregion = UInt(address<lsbit-1:lsbit-3>);
                        hit = (size_enable<subregion+8> == '0');
                    else
                        hit = TRUE;

                    if hit then
                        texcb = access_control<5:3,1:0>;
                        S = access_control<2>;
                        perms.ap = access_control<10:8>;
                        perms.xn = access_control<12>;
                        region_found = TRUE;

        // Generate the memory attributes, and also the permissions if no region found.
        if region_found then
            result.memattrs = DefaultTEXDecode(texcb, S);
        else
            if MPU_CTRL.PRIVDEFENA == '0' then
                if isinstrfetch then
                    MMSR.IACCVIOL = '1';
                    MMSR.MMARVALID = '0';
                    ExceptionTaken(MemManage);
                else
                    MMSR.DACCVIOL = '1';
                    MMAR = address;
                    MMSR.MMARVALID = '1';
                    ExceptionTaken(MemManage);
            else
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
                result.memattrs = DefaultMemoryAttributes(address);

            if (((UInt(PA<31:28>) > 9) OR (PA<31:29> == '010')) then
                perms.xn = '1';                    // peripheral regions always Execute-Never

            // Check the permissions.
            CheckPermission(perms, address, iswrite, ispriv, isinstrfetch);

    return result;
```

Access permission checking on page B2-700 defines the `CheckPermission()` function,

MPU fault support

Instruction or data access violations cause a MemManage exception to be generated. See *Fault behavior* on page B1-669 for more details of MemManage exceptions.

B3.5.2 Register support for PMSAv7 in the SCS

Table B3-44 on page B3-765 summarizes the register support for a *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU) in the System Control Space. In common with the general policy, all registers are byte, halfword, and word accessible unless stated otherwise. All MPU register addresses are mapped as little endian.

MPU registers require privileged memory accesses for reads and writes. Any unprivileged access generates a BusFault fault.

There are three general MPU registers:

- The MPU Type Register specified in *MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE* on page B3-766. This register can be used to determine if an MPU exists, and the number of regions supported.
- The MPU Control Register specified in *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767. The MPU Control register includes a global enable bit that must be set to 1 to enable the MPU.
- The MPU Region Number Register specified in *MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-769.

The MPU Region Number Register selects the associated region registers:

- The MPU Region Base Address Register specified in *MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-770.
- The MPU Region Attribute and Size Register to control the region size, sub-region access, access permissions, memory type and other properties of the memory region in *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-771.

Each set of region registers includes its own region enable bit.

If an ARMv7-M implementation does not support PMSAv7, only the MPU Type Register is required. The MPU Control Register is RAZ/WI, and all other registers in this region are reserved, UNK/SBZP.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

All MPU registers are 32-bits wide.

Table B3-44 MPU register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED90	MPU_TYPE	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE* on page B3-766
0xE000ED94	MPU_CTRL	RW	0x00000000	*MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767
0xE000ED98	MPU_RNR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-769
0xE000ED9C	MPU_RBAR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-770
0xE000EDA0	MPU_RASR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-771
0xE000EDA4	MPU_RBAR_A1	RW	-	Alias 1 of MPU_RBAR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDA8	MPU_RASR_A1	RW	-	Alias 1 of MPU_RASR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDAC	MPU_RBAR_A2	RW	-	Alias 2 of MPU_RBAR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDB0	MPU_RASR_A2	RW	-	Alias 2 of MPU_RASR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDB4	MPU_RBAR_A3	RW	-	Alias 3 of MPU_RBAR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDB8	MPU_RASR_A3	RW	-	Alias 3 of MPU_RASR, see *MPU alias register support* on page B3-775
0xE000EDBC - 0xE000EDEC	-	…	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.5.3 MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE

The MPU_TYPE register characteristics are:

Purpose The MPU Type Register indicates how many regions the MPU support. Software can use it to determine if the processor implements an MPU.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-44 on page B3-765.

Figure B3-34 shows the MPU_TYPE register bit assignments.

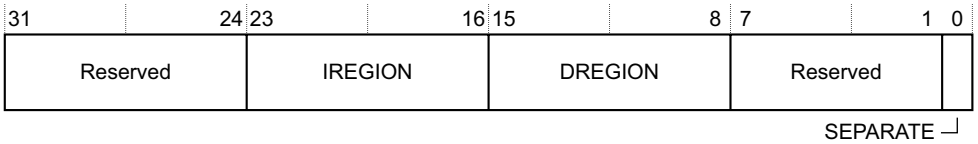


Figure B3-34 MPU_TYPE register bit assignments

Table B3-45 shows the MPU_TYPE register bit assignments.

Table B3-45 MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	Reserved
[23:16]	IREGION	Instruction region. RAZ. ARMv7-M only supports a unified MPU.
[15:8]	DREGION	Number of regions supported by the MPU. If this field reads-as-zero the processor does not implement an MPU.
[7:1]	-	Reserved
[0]	SEPARATE	Indicates support for separate instruction and data address maps. RAZ. ARMv7-M only supports a unified MPU.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B3.5.4 MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL

The MPU_CTRL Register characteristics are:

Purpose Enables the MPU, and when the MPU is enabled, controls whether the default memory map is enabled as a background region for privileged accesses, and whether the MPU is enabled for HardFaults, NMIs, and exception handlers when FAULTMASK is set to 1.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations If the MPU is not implemented, this register is RAZ/WI.

Attributes See Table B3-44 on page B3-765.

Figure B3-35 shows the MPU_CTRL bit assignments.

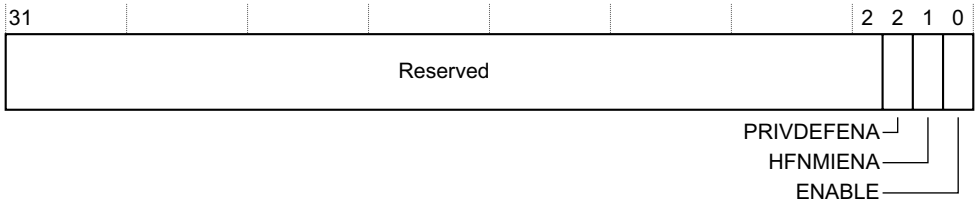


Figure B3-35 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments

Table B3-46 shows the MPU_CTRL bit assignments.

Table B3-46 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:3]	-	Reserved
[2]	PRIVDEFENA	When the ENABLE bit is set to 1, the meaning of this bit is: 0 = Disables the default memory map. Any instruction or data access that does not access a defined region faults. 1 = Enables the default memory map as a background region for privileged access. The background region acts as region number -1. All memory regions configured in the MPU take priority over the default memory map. *The system address map* on page B3-704 describes the default memory map. When the ENABLE bit is set to 0, the processor ignores the PRIVDEFENA bit. If no regions are enabled and the PRIVDEFENA and ENABLE bits are set to 1, only privileged code can execute from the system address map.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-46 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[1]	HFNMIENA	When the ENABLE bit is set to 1, controls whether handlers executing with priority less than 0 access memory with the MPU enabled or with the MPU disabled. This applies to HardFaults, NMIs, and exception handlers when FAULTMASK is set to 1: 0 = Disables the MPU for these handlers. 1 = Use the MPU for memory accesses by these handlers. If HFNMIENA is set to 1 when ENABLE is set to 0, behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.
[0]	ENABLE	Enables the MPU: 0 = The MPU is disabled. 1 = The MPU is enabled.

Disabling the MPU, by setting the ENABLE bit to 0, means that privileged and unprivileged accesses use the default memory map.

Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions

The Thumb instruction set includes instructions that, when executed by privileged software, perform unprivileged memory accesses:

- the following sections describe instructions that perform unprivileged register loads:
  - *LDRBT* on page A7-299
  - *LDRHT* on page A7-315
  - *LDRSBT* on page A7-323
  - *LDRSHT* on page A7-331
  - *LDRT* on page A7-332
- the following sections describe instructions that perform unprivileged register stores:
  - *STRBT* on page A7-481
  - *STRHT* on page A7-493
  - *STRT* on page A7-494.

Table B3-47 on page B3-769 shows how the MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA and MPU_CTRL.ENABLE bits affect the handling of these instructions when issued by an exception handler for HardFault, or NMI, or for another exception when FAULTMASK is set to 1, and when this is different for other privileged software.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-47 Effect of MPU_CTRL settings on unprivileged instructions

MPU_CTRL		Effect on unprivileged load or store instructions from	
HFNMIENA	ENABLE	Specified handlers[a]	Other privileged software
0	0	MPU disabled. Unprivileged access, using default memory map.	
0	1	MPU disabled for these handlers. Unprivileged access, using default memory map.	Unprivileged access, using MPU.
1	0	UNPREDICTABLE. Software must not use this configuration.	
1	1	MPU enabled. Unprivileged access, using MPU.	

a. HardFault or NMI handler, or other exception handler when FAULTMASK is set to 1,

Table B3-47 shows whether the MPU configuration or the default memory map determines the attributes for the address accessed by the unprivileged load or store instruction. Handling of the instruction access then depends on those attributes. If the attributes do not permit an unprivileged access then the memory system generates a fault. If the access is from the NMI or HardFault handler, or when execution priority is -1 because FAULTMASK is set to 1, then this fault causes a lockup.

B3.5.5 MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR

The MPU_RNR characteristics are:

Purpose Selects the region currently accessed by MPU_RBAR and MPU_RSAR.

Usage constraints Used with MPU_RBAR and MPU_RSAR, see *MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-770, and *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-771.

If an implementation supports *N* regions then the regions number from 0 to (*N*-1), and the effect of writing a value of *N* or greater to the REGION field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-44 on page B3-765.

Figure B3-36 shows the MPU_RNR bit assignments.

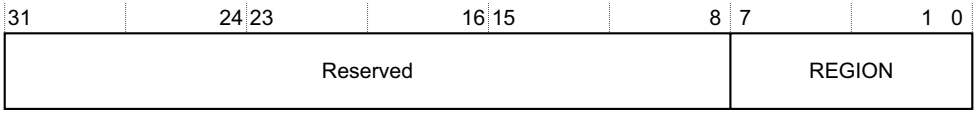


Figure B3-36 MPU_RNR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-48 shows the MPU_RNR bit assignments.

Table B3-48 MPU_RNR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	REGION	Indicates the memory region accessed by MPU_RBAR and MPU_RSAR.

Normally, software must write the required region number to MPU_RNR to select the required memory region, before accessing MPU_RBAR or MPU_RSAR. However, the MPU_RBAR.VALID bit gives an alternative way of writing to MPU_RBAR to update a region base address without first writing the region number to MPU_RNR, see *MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR*.

B3.5.6 MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR

The MPU_RBAR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the base address of the region identified by MPU_RNR. On a write, can also be used to update the base address of a specified region, in the range 0 to 15, updating MPU_RNR with the new region number.

Usage constraints

- Normally, used with MPU_RBAR, see *MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-769.
- The minimum region alignment required by an MPU_RBAR is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See the register description for more information about permitted region sizes.
- If an implementation supports *N* regions then the regions number from 0 to (*N*-1). If *N* is less than 16 the effect of writing a value of *N* or greater to the REGION field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-44 on page B3-765.

Figure B3-37 shows the MPU_RBAR bit assignments.

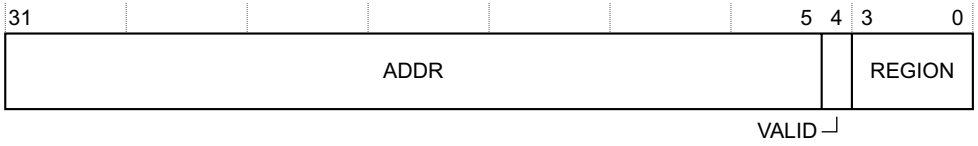


Figure B3-37 MPU_RBAR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-49 shows the MPU_RBAR bit assignments.

Table B3-49 MPU_RBAR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	ADDR	Base address of the region.
[4]	VALID	On writes to the register, indicates whether the write must update the base address of the region identified by the REGION field. updating the MPU_RNR to indicate this new region: 0 = Update the base address of the region indicated by MPU_RNR, ignoring the value of the REGION field. 1 = Update the least-significant four bits of the MPU_RNR.REGION field with MPU_RBAR.REGION field value. writing 0b0000 to bits [7:4] of the MPU_RBAR.REGION field, and update the base address of that region. This bit reads as zero.
[3:0]	REGION	On writes, can specify the number of the region to update, see VALID field description. On reads, returns bits [3:0] of MPU_RNR.

Software can find the minimum size of region supported by an MPU region by writing all ones to MPURBAR[31:5] for that region, and then reading the register to find the value saved to bits [31:5]. The number of trailing zeros in this bit field indicates the minimum supported alignment and therefore the supported region size. An implementation must support all region size values from the minimum supported to 4GB, see the description of the MPU_RASR.SIZE field in *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR*.

Software must ensure that the value written to the ADDR field aligns with the size of the selected region.

B3.5.7 MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR

The MPU_RASR characteristics are:

Purpose Defines the size and access behavior of the region identified by MPU_RNR, and enables that region.

Usage constraints
- Used with MPU_RBAR, see *MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-769.
- Writing a SIZE value greater than the maximum size supported by the corresponding MPU_RBAR has an UNPREDICTABLE effect.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-44 on page B3-765.

Figure B3-38 on page B3-772 shows the MPU_RASR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

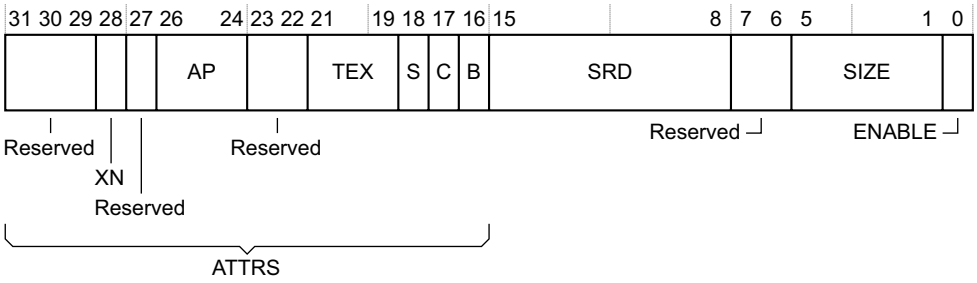


Figure B3-38 MPU_RASR bit assignments

Table B3-50 shows the MPU_RASR bit assignments.

Table B3-50 MPU_RASR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:16]	ATTRS	The MPU Region Attribute field, This field has the following subfields, defined in *Region attribute control* on page B3-773: **XN** MPU_RASR[28] **AP[2:0]** MPU_RASR[26:24] **TEX[2:0]** MPU_RASR[21:19] **S** MPU_RASR[18] **C** MPU_RASR[17] **B** MPU_RASR[16]
[15:8]	SRD	Subregion Disable. For regions of 256 bytes or larger, each bit of this field controls whether one of the eight equal subregions is enabled, see *Memory region subregions* on page B3-773: 0 = Subregion enabled. 1 = Subregion disabled.
[7:6]	-	Reserved
[5:1]	SIZE	Indicates the region size. The region size, in bytes, is $2^{(SIZE+1)}$. SIZE field values less than 4 are reserved, because the smallest supported region size is 32 bytes.
[0]	ENABLE	Enables this region: 0 = When the MPU is enabled, this region is disabled. 1 = When the MPU is enabled, this region is enabled. Enabling a region has no effect unless the MPU_CTRL.ENABLE bit is set to 1, to enable the MPU.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Memory region subregions

For any region of 256 bytes or larger, the MPU divides the region into eight equally-sized subregions. Setting a bit in the SRD field to 1 disables the corresponding subregion:

- The least significant bit of the field, MPU_RASR[8], controls the subregion with the lowest address range.
- The most significant bit of the field, MPU_RASR[15], controls the subregion with the highest address range.

For region sizes of 32, 64, and 128 bytes, the effect of setting one or more bits of the SRD field to 1 is UNPREDICTABLE.

See *Sub-region support* on page B3-762 for more information.

Region attribute control

The MPU_RASR.ATTRS field defines the memory type, and where necessary the cacheable, shareable, and access and privilege properties of the memory region. Figure B3-38 on page B3-772 shows the subfields of this field, where:

- The TEX[2:0], C, and B bits together indicate the memory type of the region, and:
  - for Normal memory, the cacheable properties of the region
  - for Device memory, whether the region is shareable.

  See Table B3-51 for the encoding of these bits.
- For Normal memory regions, the S bit indicates whether the region is shareable, see Table B3-51. For Strongly-ordered and Device memory, the S bit is ignored.
- The AP[2:0] bits indicate the access and privilege properties of the region, see Table B3-53 on page B3-775.
- The XN bit is an Execute Never bit, that indicates whether the processor can execute instructions from the region, see *Execute Never encoding* on page B3-775.

Table B3-51 TEX, C, B, and S Encoding

TEX	C	B	Memory type	Description, or Normal region cacheability	Shareable?
000	0	0	Strongly-ordered	Strongly ordered	Shareable
000	0	1	Device	Shared device	Shareable
000	1	0	Normal	Outer and inner write-through, no write allocate	S bit[a]
000	1	1	Normal	Outer and inner write-back, no write allocate	S bit[a]
001	0	0	Normal	Outer and inner Non-cacheable	S bit[a]

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B3-51 TEX, C, B, and S Encoding (continued)

TEX	C	B	Memory type	Description, or Normal region cacheability	Shareable?
001	0	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
001	1	0	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
001	1	1	Normal	Outer and inner write-back; write and read allocate	S bit[a]
010	0	0	Device	Non-shared device	Not shareable
010	0	1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
010	1	X	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
011	X	X	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
1BB	A	A	Normal	Cached memory, with AA and BB indicating the inner and outer cacheability rules that must be exported on the bus. See Table B3-52 for the cacheability policy encoding. BB = Outer policy, AA == Inner policy.	S bit[a]

a. Shareable if the S bit is set to 1, Non-shareable if the S bit is set to 0

Table B3-52 Cache policy encoding

AA or BB subfield of {TEX,C,B} encoding	Cacheability policy
00	Non-cacheable
01	Write-back, write and read allocate
10	Write-through, no write allocate
11	Write-back, no write allocate

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The AP bits, AP[2:0], are used for access permissions. These are shown in Table B3-53.

Table B3-53 Access permissions field encoding

AP[2:0]	Privileged access	Unprivileged access	Notes
000	No access	No access	Any access generates a permission fault
001	Read/Write	No access	Privileged access only
010	Read/Write	Read-only	Any unprivileged write generates a permission fault
011	Read/Write	Read/Write	Full access
100	UNPREDICTABLE	UNPREDICTABLE	Reserved
101	Read-only	No access	Privileged read-only
110	Read-only	Read-only	Privileged and unprivileged read-only
111	Read-only	Read-only	Privileged and unprivileged read-only

Execute Never encoding

The XN bit provides an Execute Never capability. For the processor to execute an instruction, the instruction must be in a memory region with:

- read access, indicated by the AP bits, for the appropriate privilege level
- the XN bit set to 0.

Otherwise, the processor generates a MemManage fault when it issues the instruction for execution. Therefore, Table B3-54 shows the encoding of the XN bit:

Table B3-54 Execute Never encoding

XN	Description
0	Execution of an instruction fetched from this region permitted
1	Execution of an instruction fetched from this region not permitted

B3.5.8 MPU alias register support

The MPU_RBAR and MPU_RSAR form a pair of words in the address range `0xE000ED9C-0xE000EDA3`. An ARMv7-M processor implements aliases of this address range at offsets of +8 bytes, +16 bytes, and +24 bytes from the MPU_RBAR address of `0xE000ED9C`, as Table B3-44 on page B3-765 shows. Using these register aliases with the MPU_RBAR.REGION field, and the MPU.RBAR.VALID field set to 1, software can use a stream of word writes to update efficiently up to four regions, provided all the regions accessed are in the range region 0 to region 15.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter B4
The CPUID Scheme

This chapter describes the ARMv7-M implementation of the CPUID scheme. This scheme provides registers that identify the architecture version and many features of the processor implementation. This chapter also describes the registers that identify the implemented floating-point features, if any. It contains the following sections:

- *About the CPUID scheme* on page B4-778
- *Processor Feature ID Registers* on page B4-780
- *Debug Feature ID register* on page B4-781
- *Auxiliary Feature ID register* on page B4-782
- *Memory Model Feature Registers* on page B4-783
- *Instruction Set Attribute Registers* on page B4-785.
- *Floating-point feature identification registers* on page B4-794.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.1 About the CPUID scheme

The CPUID scheme provides a description of the features of an ARM processor implementation. It defines a common set of registers for all profiles of the ARMv7 architecture, see the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition.*

Specifying an architecture variant of `0xF` in the Main ID Register indicates use of the CPUID scheme. In the ARMv7-M profile, the Main ID Register is called the CPUID Base Register, see *CPUID Base Register* on page B3-713.

The ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R profiles permit many implementation options. Therefore, in those profiles, many CPUID field values are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, and can take a range of values. In the ARMv7-M profile, the ARMv7-M base architecture, and any implemented architecture extensions, define the CPUID field values.

The CPUID registers are read-only, and privileged access only. The processor ignores privileged writes, and any unprivileged data access causes a BusFault error.

B4.1.1 Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions

The CPUID options in the ARMv7-M profile are a subset of those in the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R profiles, and therefore some fields in the registers cannot have a value in the ARMv7-M profile. In this manual, the descriptions of the ARMv7 CPUID register fields use the following terms:

ARMv7-M reserved The field is reserved in the ARMv7-M profile but defined in the other profiles.

Reserved The field is reserved in all ARMv7 profiles.

Reserved fields, and ARMv7-M reserved fields, are *Read-as-Zero* (RAZ).

In any field description, any field values not listed are reserved.

If a possible value for a field is shown as ARMv7-M reserved it means ARMv7-M implementations cannot use that field value.

B4.1.2 Summary of the CPUID registers

Table B4-1 shows the CPUID registers. These registers are in the System Control Space.

Table B4-1 Processor Feature ID register support in the SCS

Address	Type	Reset	Description
`0xE000ED00`	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*CPUID Base Register* on page B3-713
`0xE000ED40`	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Processor Feature Register 0, ID_PFR0* on page B4-780
`0xE000ED44`	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Processor Feature Register 1, ID_PFR1* on page B4-780
`0xE000ED48`	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Debug Feature Register 0, ID_DFR0* on page B4-781

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B4-1 Processor Feature ID register support in the SCS (continued)

Address	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED4C	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Auxiliary Feature Register 0, ID_AFR0* on page B4-782
0xE000ED50	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Memory Model Feature Register 0, ID_MMFR0* on page B4-783
0xE000ED54	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Memory Model Feature Register 1, ID_MMFR1* on page B4-783
0xE000ED58	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Memory Model Feature Register 2, ID_MMFR2* on page B4-784
0xE000ED5C	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Memory Model Feature Register 3, ID_MMFR3* on page B4-784
0xE000ED60	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 0, ID_ISAR0* on page B4-787
0xE000ED64	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 1, ID_ISAR1* on page B4-788
0xE000ED68	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 2, ID_ISAR2* on page B4-789
0xE000ED6C	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 3, ID_ISAR3* on page B4-790
0xE000ED70	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 4, ID_ISAR4* on page B4-792
0xE000ED74	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	ID_ISAR5: Reserved, RAZ
0xE000ED78	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	Reserved, RAZ
0xE000ED7C	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	Reserved, RAZ

See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for general information about the field descriptions used in these registers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.2 Processor Feature ID Registers

The following sections describe the Processor Feature ID Registers. See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for information about the field descriptions.

B4.2.1 Processor Feature Register 0, ID_PFR0

The ID_PFR0 fields are:

Bits[31:16] Reserved,

State3, bits[15:12] ARMv7-M reserved.

State2, bits[11:8] ARMv7-M reserved.

State1, bits[7:4] Thumb instruction set support:

- **0-2** ARMv7-M reserved.
- **3** Support for Thumb encoding including Thumb-2 technology, with all basic 16-bit and 32-bit instructions.

State0, bits[3:0] ARM instruction set support:

- **0** The processor does not support the ARM instruction set.
- **1** ARMv7-M reserved.

B4.2.2 Processor Feature Register 1, ID_PFR1

The ID_PFR1 fields are:

Bits[31:12] Reserved.

M profile programmers' model, bits[11:8]

- **0** ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Reserved.
- **2** Two-stack programmers' model supported.

Bits[7:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.3 Debug Feature ID register

The following section describes the Debug Feature ID register, that gives a top-level view of the debug implementation. The Debug implementation includes registers that give more information about the features of the implementation, see Chapter C1 *ARMv7-M Debug*. See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for information about the field descriptions.

B4.3.1 Debug Feature Register 0, ID_DFR0

The ID_DFR0 fields are:

Bits [31:24] Reserved.

Debug model, M profile, bits [23:20]

Support for memory-mapped debug model for M profile processors:

0 Not supported.

1 Support for M profile Debug architecture, with memory-mapped access.

Bits [19:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.4 Auxiliary Feature ID register

The following section gives the architectural description of the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED Auxiliary Feature ID register. See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for information about the field descriptions.

B4.4.1 Auxiliary Feature Register 0, ID_AFR0

The ID_AFR0 can provide information about the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED features of a processor implementation. Its fields are:

Bits [31:16] Reserved.

Bits [15:12] IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Bits [11:8] IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Bits [7:4] IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Bits [3:0] IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

ID_AFR0 has four IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED fields, These fields are defined by the implementer of the design, as identified by the Implementer field of the CPUID Base Register, see *CPUID Base Register* on page B3-713.

Field definitions in the ID_AFR0 might:

- differ between different implementers
- be subject to change
- migrate over time, for example if they are incorporated into the main architecture.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.5 Memory Model Feature Registers

The *Memory Model Feature Registers* (MMFRs) give general information about the memory model and memory management support. See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for information about the field descriptions. The following sections describe the MMFRs:

- *Memory Model Feature Register 0, ID_MMFR0*
- *Memory Model Feature Register 1, ID_MMFR1*
- *Memory Model Feature Register 2, ID_MMFR2* on page B4-784
- *Memory Model Feature Register 3, ID_MMFR3* on page B4-784.

B4.5.1 Memory Model Feature Register 0, ID_MMFR0

The ID_MMFR0 fields are:

Bits [31:24] ARMv7-M reserved.

Auxiliary registers, bits [23:20]

Indicates the support for Auxiliary registers:

- **0** Not supported.
- **1** Support for Auxiliary Control Register only.
- **2** ARMv7-M reserved.

Bits [19:16] ARMv7-M reserved.

Shareability levels, bits [15:12]

Indicates the number of shareability levels implemented:

- **0** One level of shareability implemented.
- **1** ARMv7-M reserved.

Outermost shareability, bits [11:8]

Indicates the outermost shareability domain implemented:

- **0** Implemented as Non-cacheable.
- **1** ARMv7-M reserved.
- **15** Shareability ignored.

PMSA support, bits [7:4]

Indicates support for a PMSA.

- **0** Not supported.
- **1, 2** ARMv7-M reserved.
- **3** PMSAv7, providing support for a base region and subregions.

Bits [3:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

B4.5.2 Memory Model Feature Register 1, ID_MMFR1

The ID_MMFR1 fields are:

Bits [31:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.5.3 Memory Model Feature Register 2, ID_MMFR2

The ID_MMFR2 fields are:

Bits [31:28] ARMv7-M reserved.

WFI stall, bits [27:24]

Indicates the support for Wait For Interrupt (WFI) stalling:

0 Not supported.

1 Support for WFI stalling.

Bits [23:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

B4.5.4 Memory Model Feature Register 3, ID_MMFR3

The ID_MMFR3 fields are:

Bits [31:28] ARMv7-M reserved.

Bits [27:24] Reserved.

Bits [23:20] ARMv7-M reserved.

Bits [19:16] Reserved.

Bits [15:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.6 Instruction Set Attribute Registers

The *Instruction Set Attribute Registers* (ISARs), provide information about the instruction set supported by the processor. See *Convention for CPUID attribute descriptions* on page B4-778 for information about the field descriptions.

For the ISAR descriptions, the instruction set divides into:

- The basic instructions for the Thumb instruction set. An ARMv7-M implementation must include all of these instructions.
- The non-basic instructions for the Thumb instruction set. The ISARs indicate which of these instructions are implemented.

About the Instruction Set Attribute Register descriptions gives information about how the ISARs represent the instruction set.

The following sections describe the ISARs:

- *Instruction Set Attribute Register 0, ID_ISAR0* on page B4-787
- *Instruction Set Attribute Register 1, ID_ISAR1* on page B4-788
- *Instruction Set Attribute Register 2, ID_ISAR2* on page B4-789
- *Instruction Set Attribute Register 3, ID_ISAR3* on page B4-790
- *Instruction Set Attribute Register 4, ID_ISAR4* on page B4-792.

B4.6.1 About the Instruction Set Attribute Register descriptions

This section gives information about the instructions that form the basic instruction set, and about the allocation of instructions to the different attribute fields in the Instruction Set Attribute registers.

The basic instruction set

These instructions only depend on an instruction encoding attribute in the CPUID registers. This means that, if an instruction encoding is present, all basic instructions that have encodings in that instruction set must be implemented. Since an ARMv7-M implementation must include the Thumb instruction set it must include all of the basic instructions in the Thumb instruction set.

General rules

The rules about an instruction being basic do not guarantee that it is available in any particular instruction set. For example, `MOV R0,#123456789` is a basic instruction by the rules given in this section, but is not available in any implementation of the Thumb instruction set.

Being conditional or unconditional never makes any difference to whether an instruction is a basic instruction.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Q flag support

The APSR implements the Q flag when:

(ID_ISAR2.MultS_instrs >1) OR (ID_ISAR3.Saturate_instrs >0) OR (ID_ISAR3.SIMD_instrs >0)

MOV instructions

These are in the basic instruction set if the source operand is an immediate or an unshifted register.

If their second operand is a shifted register, treat them as instead being an `ASR`, `LSL`, `LSR`, `ROR` or "`RRX`" instruction, as described in the following section.

Non-MOV data-processing instructions

These are `ADC`, `ADD`, `AND`, `ASR`, `BIC`, `CMN`, `CMP`, `EOR`, `LSL`, `LSR`, `MVN`, `NEG`, `ORN`, `ORR`, `ROR`, `RRX`, `RSB`, `RSC`, `SBC`, `SUB`, `TEQ`, and `TST`.

These instructions are in the basic instruction set for ARMv7-M if the second source operand, or only source operand for `MVN`, is an immediate or an unshifted register.

If this condition is false, they are non-basic instructions, controlled by the PSR_instrs attribute and/or the WithShifts_instrs attribute.

Multiply instructions

`MUL` instructions are always basic; all other multiply instructions and all multiply-accumulate instructions are non-basic.

Branches

All `B` and `BL` instructions are basic instructions.

Load single and Store single instructions

These are `LDR`, `LDRB`, `LDRH`, `LDRSB`, `LDRSH`, `STR`, `STRB`, `STRH`.

These instructions are in the basic instruction set if the addressing mode is of one of the following forms:

```
[Rn, #immediate]
[Rn, #-immediate]
[Rn, Rm]
[Rn, -Rm]
```

A load/store single instruction with any other addressing mode is under the control of one or more of the attributes WithShifts_instrs, Writeback_instrs or Unpriv_instrs.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

These are LDM<mode>, STM<mode>, PUSH, POP, where <mode> is any of IA Rn, IA Rn!, DB Rn, or DB Rn!, or their corresponding FD or EA synonyms.

They are basic because they are fundamental to good code generation. In particular, PUSH has the implied addressing mode DB R13!, and POP has the implied addressing mode IA R13!. These instructions are essential for good procedure prologues and epilogues. The other addressing modes listed can make a considerable difference to the code density of structure copy, load and store, and also to their performance on low-end implementations.

B4.6.2 Instruction Set Attribute Register 0, ID_ISAR0

The ID_ISAR0 fields are:

Bits [31:28] Reserved.

Divide_instrs, bits [27:24]

Indicates the supported Divide instructions:

- **0** None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for the SDIV and UDIV instructions.

Debug_instrs, bits [23:20]

Indicates the supported Debug instructions:

- **0** None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for the BKPT instruction.

Coproc_instrs, bits [19:16]

Indicates the supported Coprocessor instructions:

- **0** None supported, except for separately attributed architectures, for example the Floating-point extension.
- **1** Adds support for generic CDP, LDC, MCR, MRC, and STC instructions.
- **2** As for 1, and adds support for generic CDP2, LDC2, MCR2, MRC2, and STC2 instructions.
- **3** As for 2, and adds support for generic MCRR and MRRC instructions,
- **4** As for 3, and adds support for generic MCRR2 and MRRC2 instructions.

CmpBranch_instrs, bits [15:12]

Indicates the supported combined Compare and Branch instructions:

- **0** None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for the CBNZ and CBZ instructions.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Bitfield_instrs, bits [11:8]

Indicates the supported BitField instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the BFC, BFI, SBFX, and UBFX instructions.

BitCount_instrs, bits [7:4]

Indicates the supported Bit Counting instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the CLZ instruction.

Bits [3:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

B4.6.3 Instruction Set Attribute Register 1, ID_ISAR1

The ID_ISAR1 fields are:

Bits [31:28] ARMv7-M reserved.

Interwork_instrs, bits [27:24]

Indicates the supported Interworking instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the BX instruction, and the T bit in the PSR.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the BLX instruction, and PC loads have BX-like behavior.

3 ARMv7-M reserved.

Immediate_instrs, bits [23:20]

Indicates the support for data-processing instructions with long immediates:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the ADDW, MOVW, MOVT, and SUBW instructions.

IfThen_instrs, bits [19:16]

Indicates the supported IfThen instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the IT instructions, and for the IT bits in the PSRs.

Extend_instrs, bits [15:12]

Indicates the supported Extend instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the SXTB, SXTH, UXTB, and UXTH instructions.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the SXTAB, SXTAB16, SXTAH, SXTB16, UXTAB, UXTAB16, UXTAH, and UXTB16 instructions.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- The shift options on these instructions are supported only when the value of ID_ISAR4.WithShifts is greater than 2.
- the SXTAB16, SXTB16, UXTAB16, and UXTB16 instructions are supported only if both:
  - this field is greater than 1
  - the ID_ISAR3.SIMD_instrs field is greater than 2.

Bits [11:0] ARMv7-M reserved.

B4.6.4 Instruction Set Attribute Register 2, ID_ISAR2

The ID_ISAR2 fields are:

Reversal_instrs, bits [31:28]

Indicates the supported Reversal instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the REV, REV16, and REVSH instructions, ARMv7-M reserved.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the RBIT instruction.

Bits [27:24] ARMv7-M reserved.

MultU_instrs, bits [23:20]

Indicates the supported advanced unsigned Multiply instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the UMULL and UMLAL instructions.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the UMAAL instruction.

MultS_instrs, bits [19:16]

Indicates the supported advanced signed Multiply instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the SMULL and SMLAL instructions.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the SMLABB, SMLABT, SMLALBB, SMLALBT, SMLALTB, SMLALTT, SMLATB, SMLATT, SMLAWB, SMLAWT, SMULBB, SMULBT, SMULTB, SMULTT, SMULWB, and SMULWT instructions.

Also adds support for the Q bit in the PSRs. ARMv7-M reserved.

3 As for 2, and adds support for the SMLAD, SMLADX, SMLALD, SMLALDX, SMLSD, SMLSDX, SMLSLD, SMLSLDX, SMMLA, SMMLAR, SMMLS, SMMLSR, SMMUL, SMMULR, SMUAD, SMUADX, SMUSD, and SMUSDX instructions.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Mult_instrs, bits [15:12]

Indicates the supported additional Multiply instructions:

0 None supported. This means only `MUL` is supported. ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the `MLA` instruction, ARMv7-M reserved.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the `MLS` instruction.

MultiAccessInt_instrs, bits [11:8]

Indicates the support for multi-access interruptible instructions:

0 None supported. This means the `LDM` and `STM` instructions are not interruptible. ARMv7-M reserved.

1 `LDM` and `STM` instructions are restartable.

2 `LDM` and `STM` instructions are continuable.

MemHint_instrs, bits [7:4]

Indicates the supported Memory Hint instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 or 2 Adds support for the `PLD` instruction.
These two values are identical in meaning. Both are ARMv7-M reserved.

3 As for 1 or 2, and adds support for the `PLI` instruction.

LoadStore_instrs, bits [3:0]

Indicates the supported additional load and store instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the `LDRD` and `STRD` instructions.

B4.6.5 Instruction Set Attribute Register 3, ID_ISAR3

The ID_ISAR3 fields are:

Bits [31:28] ARMv7-M reserved.

TrueNOP_instrs, bits [27:24]

Indicates the support for a true `NOP` instruction:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the true `NOP` instruction.

ThumbCopy_instrs, bits [23:20]

Indicates the supported non flag-setting `MOV` instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for encoding T1 of the `MOV` (register) instruction copying from a low register to a low register.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

TabBranch_instrs, bits [19:16]

Indicates the supported Table Branch instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the TBB and TBH instructions.

SynchPrim_instrs, bits [15:12]

Must be interpreted with the ID_ISAR4.SynchPrim_instrs_frac field to determine the supported Synchronization Primitives, see *Support for Synchronization Primitives* on page B4-793.

SVC_instrs, bits [11:8]

Indicates the supported SVC instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the SVC instruction.

SIMD_instrs, bits [7:4]

Indicates the supported SIMD instructions:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the SSAT and USAT instructions, and for the Q bit in the PSRs.

2 Reserved.

3 As for 1, and adds support for the PKHBT, PKHTB, QADD16, QADD8, QASX, QSUB16, QSUB8, QSAX, SADD16, SADD8, SASX, SEL, SHADD16, SHADD8, SHASX, SHSUB16, SHSUB8, SHSAX, SSAT16, SSUB16, SSUB8, SSAX, SXTAB16, SXTB16, UADD16, UADD8, UASX, UHADD16, UHADD8, UHASX, UHSUB16, UHSUB8, UHSAX, UQADD16, UQADD8, UQASX, UQSUB16, UQSUB8, UQSAX, USAD8, USADA8, USAT16, USUB16, USUB8, USAX, UXTAB16, and UXTB16 instructions.

Also adds support for the GE[3:0] bits in the PSRs.

Note

This value adds the SXTAB16, SXTB16, UXTAB16, and UXTB16 instructions only if the ID_ISAR1.Extend_instrs attribute is 2 or greater.

Saturate_instrs, bits [3:0]

Indicates the supported Saturate instructions:

0 None supported.

1 Adds support for the QADD, QDADD, QDSUB, and QSUB instructions, and for the Q bit in the PSRs.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.6.6 Instruction Set Attribute Register 4, ID_ISAR4

The ID_ISAR4 fields are:

Bits [31:28] ARMv7-M reserved.

PSR_M_instrs, bits [27:24]

Indicates the supported M profile instructions to modify the PSRs:

- **0** None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for the M-profile forms of the `CPS`, `MRS` and `MSR` instructions, to access the PSRs.

SynchPrim_instrs_frac, bits [23:20]

Must be interpreted with the ID_ISAR3.SynchPrim_instrs field to determine the supported Synchronization Primitives, see *Support for Synchronization Primitives* on page B4-793.

Barrier_instrs, bits [19:16]

Indicates the supported Barrier instructions:

- **0** None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for the `DMB`, `DSB`, and `ISB` barrier instructions.

Bits [15:12] ARMv7-M reserved.

Writeback_instrs, bits [11:8]

Indicates the support for Writeback addressing modes:

- **0** Basic support. Only the `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH`, and `POP` instructions support writeback addressing modes. ARMv7-M reserved.
- **1** Adds support for all of the writeback addressing modes defined in the ARMv7-M architecture.

WithShifts_instrs, bits [7:4]

Indicates the support for instructions with shifts:

- **0** Nonzero shifts supported only in `MOV` and shift instructions.
- **1** Adds support for shifts of loads and stores over the range LSL 0-3.
- **2** Reserved.
- **3** As for 1, and adds support for other constant shift options, on loads, stores, and other instructions.
- **4** ARMv7-M reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- Additions to the basic support indicated by the value 0 apply only to encodings that support them.
- MOV instructions with shift options are treated as ASR, LSL, LSR, ROR or RRX instructions, see *Non-MOV data-processing instructions* on page B4-786.

Unpriv_instrs, bits [3:0]

Indicates the supported unprivileged instructions. These are the instruction variants indicated by a T suffix:

0 None supported, ARMv7-M reserved.

1 Adds support for the LDRBT, LDRT, STRBT, and STRT instructions.

2 As for 1, and adds support for the LDRHT, LDRSBT, LDRSHT, and STRHT instructions.

Support for Synchronization Primitives

The ID_ISAR3.SynchPrim_instrs and ID_ISAR4.SynchPrim_instrs_frac together indicate the supported Synchronization Primitives, as Table B4-2 shows.

Table B4-2 Supported Synchronization Primitives

SynchPrim_instrs[a]	SynchPrim_instrs_frac[b]	Supported Synchronization Primitives
0	0	None supported.
1	0	Adds support for the LDREX and STREX instructions.
1	3	As for [1, 0], and adds support for the CLREX, LDREXB, LDREXH, STREXB, and STREXH instructions.
2	0	ARMv7-M reserved.

a. In ID_ISAR3.
b. In ID_ISAR4.

All combinations of ID_ISAR3.SynchPrim_instrs and ID_ISAR4.SynchPrim_instrs_frac not shown in Table B4-2 are reserved.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B4.7 Floating-point feature identification registers

When an implementation includes the optional Floating-point extension, the feature identification registers for the extension are implemented as memory-mapped registers in the *System Control Block* (SCB), see Table B3-5 on page B3-711 in the section *System control and ID registers* on page B3-709.

Note

The ARMv7-M implementation of the FP feature identification registers is in the memory-mapped SCB is in contrast to the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R profiles, where these registers are implemented in CP10 and CP11 extension system registers space.

The following sections describe the FP feature identification registers:

- *About the Media and FP Feature registers*
- *Media and FP Feature Register 0, MVFR0*
- *Media and FP Feature Register 1, MVFR1* on page B4-796.

B4.7.1 About the Media and FP Feature registers

The Media and FP Feature registers describe the features provided by the FP extension, when an implementation includes this extension. In the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R profiles, these are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED and RO in an implementation, but in the ARMv7-M profile, they are architecturally defined. See the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition* for the defined range of values.

B4.7.2 Media and FP Feature Register 0, MVFR0

The MVFR0 characteristics are:

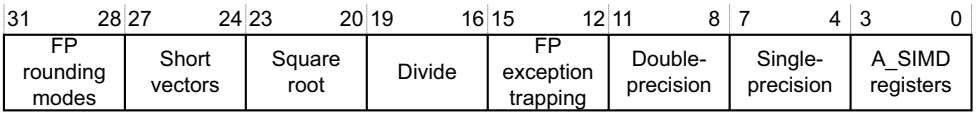
Purpose Describes the features provided by the Floating-point extension.

Usage constraints Must be interpreted with MVFR1.

Configurations Implemented only when an implementation includes the FP extension.

Attributes See Table B3-5 on page B3-711 and the register field descriptions.

The MVFR0 bit assignments are:



FP rounding modes, bits[31:28]

Indicates the rounding modes supported by the FP floating-point hardware. The value of this field is:

0b0001 All rounding modes supported.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Short vectors, bits[27:24]

Indicates the hardware support for FP short vectors. The value of this field is:

0b0000 Not supported in ARMv7-M.

Square root, bits[23:20]

Indicates the hardware support for FP square root operations. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Supported.

Note

the `VSQRT.F32` instruction also requires the single-precision FP attribute, bits[7:4]

Divide, bits[19:16]

Indicates the hardware support for FP divide operations. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Supported.

Note

the `VDIV.F32` instruction also requires the single-precision FP attribute, bits[7:4]

FP exception trapping, bits[15:12]

Indicates whether the FP hardware implementation supports exception trapping. The value of this field is:

0b0000 Not supported in ARMv7-M.

Double-precision, bits[11:8]

Indicates the hardware support for FP double-precision operations. The value of this field is:

0b0000 Not supported in ARMv7-M.

Single-precision, bits[7:4]

Indicates the hardware support for FP single-precision operations. The value of this field is:

0b0010 Supported.

FP adds an instruction to load a single-precision floating-point constant, and conversions between single-precision and fixed-point values.

A value of 0b0010 indicates support for all FP single-precision instructions, except that, in addition:

- `VSQRT.F32` is only available if the Square root field is 0b0001
- `VDIV.F32` is only available if the Divide field is 0b0001
- conversion between double-precision and single-precision is only available if the double-precision field is nonzero.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A_SIMD registers, bits[3:0]

Indicates the size of the FP register bank. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Supported, 16 x 64-bit registers.

B4.7.3 Media and FP Feature Register 1, MVFR1

The MVFR1 characteristics are:

Purpose Describes the features provided by the Floating-point extension.

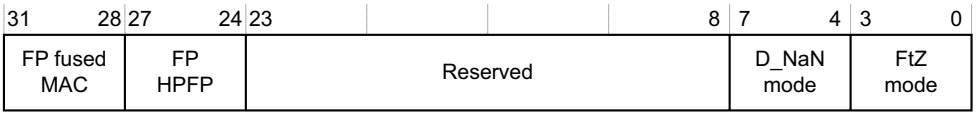
Usage constraints Must be interpreted with MVFR0.

Configurations Implemented only when an implementation includes the FP extension.

In the generic MVFR1 definition, MVFR1[23:8] holds fields that describe Advanced SIMD features. In the ARMv7-M implementation these bits are reserved, RAZ.

Attributes See Table B3-5 on page B3-711 and the register field descriptions.

The MVFR1 bit assignments are:



FP fused MAC Bits[31:28]

Indicates whether the FP supports fused multiply accumulate operations. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Supported.

FP HPFP, bits[27:24]

Indicates whether the FP supports half-precision floating-point conversion operations. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Supported.

Bits[23:8] Reserved, RAZ

D_NaN mode, bits[7:4]

Indicates whether the FP hardware implementation supports only the Default NaN mode. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Hardware supports propagation of NaN values.

FtZ mode, bits[3:0]

Indicates whether the FP hardware implementation supports only the Flush-to-Zero mode of operation. The value of this field is:

0b0001 Hardware supports full denormalized number arithmetic.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Chapter B5
System Instruction Details

This chapter describes the ARMv7-M system instructions. It contains the following sections:

- *About the ARMv7-M system instructions* on page B5-798
- *ARMv7-M system instruction descriptions* on page B5-800.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B5.1 About the ARMv7-M system instructions

As stated in part A of this manual, ARMv7-M only executes instructions in Thumb state. *Alphabetical list of ARMv7-M Thumb instructions* on page A7-216 lists all the supported instructions. To support reading and writing the special-purpose registers under software control, ARMv7-M provides three system instructions, `CPS`, `MRS`, and `MSR`.

Special register encodings used in ARMv7-M system instructions describes the encodings used for the `<spec_reg>` argument of the `MSR` and `MRS` instructions, and *ARMv7-M system instruction descriptions* on page B5-800 describes each of the system instructions.

B5.1.1 Special register encodings used in ARMv7-M system instructions

The syntax for the `MSR` and `MRS` system instructions includes a `<spec_reg>` argument, that compiles to a numeric value in the SYSm field of the instruction encodings. Table B5-1 lists the possible values of the `<spec_reg>` argument, and shows their encodings in the SYSm field.

Table B5-1 Special register field encoding

Special register	Contents	SYSm value[a]
`APSR`, on reads `APSR_<bits>`, on writes	The flags from previous instructions. See Table B5-2 on page B5-799 for information about the `_<bits>` qualifier.	0 = 0b00000:000
`IAPSR`, on reads `IAPSR_<bits>`, on writes	A composite of IPSR and APSR. See Table B5-2 on page B5-799 for information about the `_<bits>` qualifier.	1 = 0b00000:001
`EAPSR`, on reads `EAPSR_<bits>`, on writes	A composite of EPSR and APSR. See Table B5-2 on page B5-799 for information about the `_<bits>` qualifier.	2 = 0b00000:010
`XPSR`, on reads `XPSR_<bits>`, on writes	A composite of all three PSR registers. See Table B5-2 on page B5-799 for information about the `_<bits>` qualifier.	3 = 0b00000:011
`IPSR`	The Interrupt status register.	5 = 0b00000:101
`EPSR`	The execution status register. This is RAZ/WI.	6 = 0b00000:110
`IEPSR`	A composite of IPSR and EPSR.	7 = 0b00000:111
`MSP`	The Main stack pointer.	8 = 0b00001:000
`PSP`	The Process stack pointer.	9 = 0b00001:001
`PRIMASK`	Register to mask out configurable exceptions.	16 = 0b00010:000
`BASEPRI`	The base priority register.	17 = 0b00010:001
`BASEPRI_MAX`	On reads, acts as an alias of BASEPRI. On writes, can raise BASEPRI but is ignored if it would reduce it.	18 = 0b00010:010

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B5-1 Special register field encoding (continued)

Special register	Contents	SYSm value[a]
FAULTMASK	Register to raise priority to the HardFault level	19 = 0b00010:011
CONTROL	The special-purpose control register	20 = 0b00010:100

a. Binary value shown split into the fields used in the instruction operation pseudocode, SYSm<7:3>:SYSm<2:0>.

On special register writes that update the APSR, software must qualify the special register specifier with a _<bits> parameter that specifies the APSR bits to be updated. The mask field of the MSR instruction encodes this qualifier. Table B5-2 shows the possible _<bits> values, and their encodings.

Table B5-2 <bits> encoding on MSR APSR writes

_<bits>	Effect	mask encoding	Notes
_nzcvq	Write the N, Z, C, V, Q bits, APSR[31:27]	10	Always supported
_g	Write the GE[3:0] bits, APSR[19:16]	01	Supported only if the processor includes the DSP extension
_nzcvqg	Write the N, Z, C, V, Q, and GE[3:0] bits	11	

ARM deprecates using MSR APSR without a _<bits> qualifier as an alias for MSR APSR_nzcvq.

The following sections give more information about the special registers and their functions:

- *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624, for APSR, IAPSR, EAPSR, XPSR, IPSR, EPSR, and IEPSR
- *The SP registers* on page B1-623, for MSP and PSP
- *The special-purpose mask registers* on page B1-627, for PRIMASK, BASEPRI, BASEPRI_MAX, and FAULTMASK
- *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628, for CONTROL.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B5.2 ARMv7-M system instruction descriptions

The following subsections define the ARMv7-M system instructions:

- *CPS* on page B5-801
- *MRS* on page B5-803
- *MSR* on page B5-805.

Note

- In other ARMv7 profiles `MSR` (immediate) is a valid instruction In ARMv7-M, the `MSR` (immediate) encoding is UNDEFINED.
- In other ARMv7 profiles, the `VMRS` and `VMSR` instructions have additional system-level uses. In the ARMv7-M profile, all of their uses are available at the application-level, see *VMRS* on page A7-592 and *VMSR* on page A7-593.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B5.2.1 CPS

Change Processor State changes one or more of the special-purpose register PRIMASK and FAULTMASK values.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M. Not allowed in IT block.

```
CPS<effect> <iflags>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	im	(0)	(0)	I	F

```
enable = (im == '0');  disable = (im == '1');
affectPRI = (I == '1');  affectFAULT = (F == '1');
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
CPS<effect><q> <iflags>
```

where:

`<effect>` Specifies the effect required on PRIMASK and FAULTMASK. This is one of:

- `IE` Interrupt Enable. This sets the specified bits to 0.
- `ID` Interrupt Disable. This sets the specified bits to 1.

`<q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207. A `CPS` instruction must be unconditional.

`<iflags>` Is a sequence of one or more of the following, specifying which masks are affected:

- `i` PRIMASK. Raises the execution priority to 0 when set to 1. This is a 1-bit register, that supports privileged access only.
- `f` FAULTMASK. Raises the execution priority to `-1` (the same as HardFault) when it is set to 1. This is a 1-bit register, that can only be set to 1 by privileged code with a lower priority than `-1`. The register clears to 0 on return from any exception other than NMI.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Operation

```
EncodingSpecificOperations();
if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
    if enable then
        if affectPRI then PRIMASK<0> = '0';
        if affectFAULT then FAULTMASK<0> = '0';
    if disable then
        if affectPRI then PRIMASK<0> = '1';
        if affectFAULT && ExecutionPriority() > -1 then FAULTMASK<0> = '1';
```

Exceptions

None.

Notes

Privilege Any unprivileged code attempt to write the masks is ignored.

Masks and `CPS`

The `CPSIE` and `CPSID` instructions are equivalent to using an `MSR` instruction:

- The `CPSIE i` instruction is equivalent to writing a 0 into PRIMASK
- The `CPSID i` instruction is equivalent to writing a 1 into PRIMASK
- The `CPSIE f` instruction is equivalent to writing a 0 into FAULTMASK
- The `CPSID f` instruction is equivalent to writing a 1 into FAULTMASK.

Visibility of changes in execution priority resulting from executing a `CPS` instruction

If execution of a `CPS` instruction:

- increases the execution priority, the `CPS` execution serializes that change to the instruction stream
- decreases the execution priority, the architecture guarantees only that the new priority is visible to instructions executed after either executing an `ISB`, or performing an exception entry or exception return.

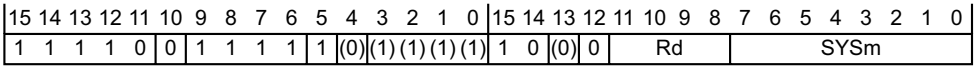
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B5.2.2 MRS

Move to Register from Special Register moves the value from the selected special-purpose register into a general-purpose register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M.

```
MRS<c> <Rd>,<spec_reg>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);
if d IN {13,15} || !(UInt(SYSm) IN {0..3,5..9,16..20}) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MRS<c><q>  <Rd>, <spec_reg>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rd>` Specifies the destination register, that receives the special register value.

`<spec_reg>` Encoded in SYSm, see *Special register encodings used in ARMv7-M system instructions* on page B5-798.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    R[d] = 0;
    case  SYSm<7:3> of
        when ‘00000’                            /* xPSR accesses */
            if SYSm<0> == ‘1’ then
                R[d]<8:0> = IPSR<8:0>;
            if SYSm<1> == ‘1’ then
                R[d]<26:24> = ‘000’;            /* EPSR reads as zero */
                R[d]<15:10> = ‘000000’;
            if SYSm<2> == ‘0’ then
                R[d]<31:27> = APSR<31:27>;
                if HaveDSPext() then
                    R[d]<19:16> = APSR<19:16>;
        when ‘00001’                            /* SP access     */
            if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
                case SYSm<2:0> of
                    when ‘000’
                        R[d] = MSP;
                    when ‘001’
                        R[d] = PSP;
        when ‘00010’                            /* Priority mask or CONTROL access */
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
case SYSm<2:0> of
    when '000'
        R[d]<0> = if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
            PRIMASK<0> else '0';
    when '001'
        R[d]<7:0> = if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
            BASEPRI<7:0> else '00000000';
    when '010'
        R[d]<7:0> = if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
            BASEPRI<7:0> else '00000000';
    when '011'
        R[d]<0> = if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
            FAULTMASK<0> else '0';
    when '100'
        if HaveFPExt() then
            R[d]<2:0> = CONTROL<2:0>
        else
            R[d]<1:0> = CONTROL<1:0>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Notes

Privilege If unprivileged code attempts to read any stack pointer or the IPSR, the read returns 0s.

EPSR None of the EPSR bits are readable during normal execution. They all read as 0 when read using `MRS`.

Halting debug can read the EPSR bits using the register transfer mechanism.

Bit positions *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624 defines the PSR bit positions.

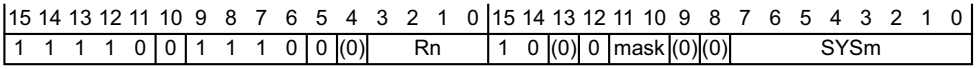
Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B5.2.3 MSR

Move to Special Register from ARM Register moves the value of a general-purpose register to the selected special-purpose register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M.

```
MSR<c> <spec_reg>,<Rn>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);
if mask == '00' || (mask != "10" && !(UInt(SYSm) IN {0..3})) then UNPREDICTABLE;
if n IN {13,15} || !(UInt(SYSm) IN {0..3,5..9,16..20}) then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MSR<c><q>  <spec_reg>, <Rn>
```

where:

`<c><q>` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A7-207.

`<Rn>` Is the general-purpose register holding the value to transfer to the special register.

`<spec_reg>` Encoded in SYSm, and for arguments that update the APSR, in mask, see *Special register encodings used in ARMv7-M system instructions* on page B5-798.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    case SYSm<7:3> of
        when '00000'                            /* xPSR accesses */
            if SYSm<2> == '0' then              /* Include APSR  */
                if mask<0> == '1' then          /* GE[3:0] bits  */
                    if !HaveDSPExt() then
                        UNPREDICTABLE
                    else
                        APSR<19:16> = R[n]<19:16>;
                if mask<1> == '1' then          /* N, Z, C, V, Q bits */
                    APSR<31:27> = R[n]<31:27>;
        when '00001'                            /* SP access     */
            if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
                case SYSm<2:0> of
                    when '000'
                        MSP = R[n];
                    when '001'
                        PSP = R[n];
        when '00010'                            /* Priority mask or CONTROL access */
            case SYSm<2:0> of
                when '000'
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then PRIMASK<0> = R[n]<0>;
when '001'
    if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then BASEPRI<7:0> = R[n]<7:0>;
when '010'
    if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() &&
    (R[n]<7:0> != '00000000') &&
    (R[n]<7:0> < BASEPRI<7:0> || BASEPRI<7:0> == '00000000') then
        BASEPRI<7:0> = R[n]<7:0>;
when '011'
    if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() &&
    (ExecutionPriority() > -1) then
        FAULTMASK<0> = R[n]<0>;
when '100'
    if CurrentModeIsPrivileged() then
        CONTROL.nPRIV = R[n]<0>;
        If CurrentMode == Mode_Thread then
            CONTROL.SPSEL = R[n]<1>;
        if HaveFPExt() then CONTROL.FPCA = R[n]<2>;
```

Exceptions

None.

Notes

Privilege The processor ignores writes from unprivileged Thread mode to any stack pointer, the EPSR, the IPSR, the masks, or CONTROL. If privileged Thread mode software writes a 1 to the CONTROL.nPRIV bit, the processor switches to unprivileged Thread mode execution, and ignores any further writes to special-purpose registers.

After any Thread mode transition from privileged to unprivileged execution, software must issue an `ISB` instruction to ensure instruction fetch correctness.

IPSR The IPSR fields are read-only. The processor ignores any attempt by privileged software to write to them.

EPSR The EPSR fields are read-only. The processor ignores any attempt by privileged software to write to them.

Bit positions *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624 defines how the fields of each of the PSRs map onto the composite xPSR.

Visibility of changes in execution priority resulting from executing an `MSR` instruction

If execution of a `MSR` instruction:

- increases the execution priority, the `MSR` execution serializes that change to the instruction stream
- decreases the execution priority, the architecture guarantees only that the new priority is visible to instructions executed after either executing an `ISB`, or performing an exception entry or exception return.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Part C
Debug Architecture

Chapter C1
ARMv7-M Debug

This chapter describes the ARMv7-M debug architecture. It contains the following sections:

- *Introduction to ARMv7-M debug* on page C1-810
- *The Debug Access Port* on page C1-815
- *Overview of the ARMv7-M debug features* on page C1-819
- *Debug and reset* on page C1-822
- *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823
- *Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-828
- *The Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* on page C1-843
- *The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit* on page C1-856
- *Embedded Trace Macrocell support* on page C1-896
- *Trace Port Interface Unit* on page C1-897
- *Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit* on page C1-904.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.1 Introduction to ARMv7-M debug

This section describes the debug architecture for the ARMv7-M architecture profile. This includes several debug features that are supported only in the M profile.

Debug support is a key element of the ARM architecture. ARMv7-M supports a range of invasive and non-invasive debug mechanisms.

Invasive debug mechanisms are:

- The ability to halt the processor, for example at a breakpoint. This provides a run-stop debug model.
- Debug code that uses the DebugMonitor exception. This provides less intrusive debug than halting the processor.

Non-invasive debug techniques are:

- application trace by writing to the *Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* (ITM), causing a very low level of intrusion
- non-intrusive hardware support for trace and profiling.

Debug software normally accesses the debug features of the processor using the DAP, see *The Debug Access Port* on page C1-815. This provides access to debug resources when the processor is running, halted, or held in reset. When a processor is halted, it is in Debug state.

The ARMv7-M debug architecture supports the following software-based and non-intrusive hardware debug features:

- High-level trace and logging using the ITM.
- Profiling a variety of system events, including associated timing information. This can include monitoring processor clock counts associated with interrupt and sleep functions.
- PC sampling and event counts associated with load and store operations, instruction folding, and performance statistics based on *cycles-per-instruction* (CPI) counts.
- Data tracing.
- Instruction trace, using an *Embedded Trace Macrocell* (ETM).

In the ARMv7-M system address map, debug resources are in the *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB) region. Except for the resources in the *System Control Space* (SCS), each debug component occupies a fixed 4KB address region. The resources are:

- Debug resources in the SCS:
  - the *Debug Control Block* (DCB)
  - debug controls in the *System Control Block* (SCB).

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- Debug components:
  - The *Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* (ITM), for profiling software. This uses non-blocking register accesses, with a fixed low-intrusion overhead, and can be added to a *Real-Time Operating System* (RTOS), application, or exception handler. If necessary, product code can retain the register access instructions, avoiding probe effects.
  - The *Debug Watchpoint and Trace* (DWT) block. This provides watchpoint support, program counter sampling for performance monitoring, and embedded trace trigger control
  - The *Flash Patch and Breakpoint* (FPB) block. This block can remap sections of ROM, typically Flash memory, to regions of RAM, and can set breakpoints on code in ROM. This block can be used for debug, and to provide a code or data patch to an application that requires a field updates to a product ROM.
  - The optional *Embedded Trace Macrocell* (ETM). This provides instruction tracing.
  - The optional *Trace Port Interface Unit* (TPIU). This provides the external interface for the ITM, DWT and ETM.
- The ROM table. A table of entries providing a mechanism to identify the debug infrastructure supported by the implementation.

Note

An implementation might not include all the listed debug features, see *Debug support in ARMv7-M* on page C1-812.

Table C1-1 shows the addresses of the debug resources.

Table C1-1 PPB debug related regions

Debug resource	Address range	See
Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM)	0xE0000000-0xE0000FFF	*The Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* on page C1-843
Data Watchpoint and Trace (DWT) block	0xE0001000-0xE0001FFF	*The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit* on page C1-856
Flash Patch and Breakpoint (FPB) block	0xE0002000-0xE0002FFF	*Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit* on page C1-904
SCS	0xE000ED00-0xE000EFFF	*System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-708
System Control Block (SCB)	0xE000ED00-0xE000ED8F	*About the System Control Block* on page B3-709
Debug Control Block (DCB)	0xE000EDF0-0xE000EEFF	*Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-828
Trace Port Interface Unit (TPIU)[a]	0xE0040000-0xE0040FFF	*Trace Port Interface Unit* on page C1-897

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-1 PPB debug related regions (continued)

Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM)	0xE0041000-0xE0041FFF	*Embedded Trace Macrocell support* on page C1-896
ROM table	0xE00FF000-0xE00FFFFF	*The Debug Access Port* on page C1-815

a. Might be implemented as a shared resource, in which case this region of the memory map is reserved.

Appendix D *Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol* describes the protocol used for ITM and DWT output, and the *ETM Architecture Specification* describes the protocol used for ETM output.

A debug implementation that outputs ITM, DWT, or ETM data requires a trace sink, such as a TPIU, to which it exports the trace data from the device, providing one or more of data trace, instruction trace, and profiling. A TPIU can be either the ARMv7-M TPIU implementation shown in Table C1-1 on page C1-811, or an external system resource, usually a CoreSight TPIU. For more information about the CoreSight TPIU see the *CoreSight Components Technical Reference Manual*.

Many debug components are optional, and the debug configuration of an implementation is implementation defined. *Debug support in ARMv7-M* describes how software can determine which debug features are implemented.

C1.1.1 Debug support in ARMv7-M

On any implementation of the ARMv7-M architecture:

- bit [0] of ROM table entries indicates whether the implementation includes the corresponding block, see *The ARMv7-M ROM Table* on page C1-816
- if a block is implemented, debug registers might give additional information about the implemented features of that block.

Table C1-2 on page C1-813 shows the bits that provide this information. For descriptions of the register referred to in the table see:

- *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838
- *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879
- *FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908
- *FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-2 Determining the debug support in an ARMv7-M implementation

ROM table entry	Meaning, and supplementary information
ROMDWT[0]	If 0, there is no DWT support. Otherwise, if DEMCR.TRCENA is 1, then: • if DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT is 1, there is no DWT trace or exception trace support • if DWT_CTRL.NOEXTTRIG is 1, there is no support for external comparator match signals, **CMPMATCH[N]** • if DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT is 1, there is no cycle counter support • if DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is 1, there is no profiling counter support. • the DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP field indicates the number of implemented DWT comparators.
ROMITM[0]	If 0, there is no ITM support.
ROMFPB[0]	If 0, there is no FPB support. Otherwise: • if FP_REMAP[29] is 0 the FPB only supports breakpoint functionality • the FP_CTRL.NUM_CODE and FP_CTRL.NUM_LIT fields indicate the number of implemented FPB comparators.
ROMETM[0]	If 0, there is no ETM support.

If ROMDWT[0] and ROMITM[0] are both 0, indicating that the implementation includes neither a DWT block nor an ITM block, then DEMCR.TRCENA is UNK/SBZP.

Recommended levels of debug

ARM recommends that ARMv7-M debug is implemented at one of the following levels:

- a minimum level that only supports the DebugMonitor exception
- a basic level that requires a DAP and adds some halting debug support
- a comprehensive level that includes the above with fully-featured ITM, DWT and FPB support.

The minimum level of debug in ARMv7-M only supports processor access, without a DAP, and the DebugMonitor exception with:

- The `BKPT` instruction.

  Note

  If software disables the DebugMonitor exception, this escalates to a HardFault exception.

- Monitor stepping.
- Monitor entry from **EDBGRQ**.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

ARM defines the following configuration, when added to the minimum level of debug, as a basic level of debug support:

- Support of a DAP and halting debug.
- No ITM support.

  Note

  Writes to the ITM stimulus ports must not cause a BusFault exception when the ITM feature is disabled or not present. This ensures the feature is transparent to application code, see *ITM operation* on page C1-843.

- FPB support for two breakpoints, with no remapping support.
- DWT support for one watchpoint, with no trace support, and no implementation of external match signals, **CMPMATCH[N]**.
- Debug monitor support of the minimum level debug features, including the listed FPB and DWT events.

A comprehensive level of debug support requires:

- Support for the DebugMonitor exception and halting debug.
- Implementation of the ITM block, with support for at least 8 Stimulus Port registers.
- Implementation of the DWT block, with support for
  - at least 1 watchpoint
  - all DWT trace features
  - cycle counting
  - profiling counters.

  If the implementation includes an ETM then the DWT block must support **CMPMATCH[N]**, otherwise whether it supports this signalling is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- Implementation of the FPB unit with support for:
  - at least 2 breakpoints
  - remapping.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.2 The Debug Access Port

The *Debug Access Port* (DAP), an implementation of the *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* (ADIv5), provides access to the debug features of an ARMv7-M implementation. A DAP uses either a *JTAG Debug Port* (JTAG-DP) or a *Serial Wire Debug Port* (SW-DP). The ADIv5 specification defines how software can:

- interrogate the ARMv7-M system to determine what debug resources are available
- access any implemented ARMv7-M device.

Software identifies the implemented resources by accessing the ARMv7-M ROM table, see *The ARMv7-M ROM Table* on page C1-816.

The typical sequence of events for software to enable ARMv7-M debug using the DAP is:

1. Enable the power-on bits for the debug logic in the DAP Debug Port control register.
2. Configure the appropriate DAP Memory Access Port control register for word accesses.
3. To configure the system for halting debug, set the DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN bit to 1, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830

   To halt the target immediately:

   a. Set the DHCSR.C_HALT bit to 1

   b. Read back the DHCSR.S_HALT bit, to confirm the target is halted, and therefore in Debug state.

   Otherwise, to configure the system for monitor debug, enable DebugMonitor exceptions in the DEMCR.

   Note

   For Debug Monitor exceptions to occur, DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN must be set to 0. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 1, halting debug behavior overrides DebugMonitor exceptions.

4. To use the watchpoint and trace features, set the DEMCR.TRCENA bit to 1, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

See the *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* for more information about the DAP.

Warning

Accesses through the DAP can change system control and configuration fields, in particular registers in the SCB, while software is executing. For example, the accesses can modify resources intended for dynamic updates. This can have undesirable side-effects if both the application and debugger update the same or related resources. The architecture cannot give any guarantees about the consequences of updating a running system through a DAP, and the effect of such updates on system behavior can be worse than UNPREDICTABLE. ARM strongly recommends that, in general, debuggers do not perform MPU or FPB address remapping while software is running, to avoid possible context problems.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.2.1 General rules applying to debug register access

The Private Peripheral Bus (PPB), address range `0xE0000000` to `0xE0100000`, supports the following general rules:

- The region is defined as Strongly-ordered memory, see *Strongly-ordered memory* on page A3-106 and *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-107.
- Registers are always accessed little-endian regardless of the endian state of the processor.
- Debug registers can only be accessed as a word access. Byte and halfword accesses are UNPREDICTABLE.
- A reserved register or bit field has the value UNK/SBZP.

Unprivileged access to the PPB causes BusFault errors unless otherwise stated. Exceptions to this include:

- Software can set a bit in the Configuration Control Register to 1 to enable unprivileged accesses to the Software Trigger Interrupt Register.
- The behavior of unprivileged accesses to the ITM. For more information see *ITM operation* on page C1-843.

C1.2.2 The ARMv7-M ROM Table

A valid ARMv7-M system includes a ROM table, that indicates the implemented debug components, and the position of those components in the memory map. Table C1-3 shows the format of a ROM table entry, and Table C1-4 on page C1-817 shows the format of the ROM table.

Table C1-3 ROM table entry format

Bits	Name	Description
[31:12]	Address offset	Signed base address offset of the component relative to the ROM base address
[11:2]	Reserved	-
[1]	Format	Reads-as-one when a valid table entry
[0]	Entry present	1: valid table entry 0, when bits [31:1] are not all zero: null entry, ignore this table entry

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

For an ARMv7-M ROM table all address offsets are negative. The entry 0x00000000 is the end of table marker.

Table C1-4 ARMv7-M DAP accessible ROM table

Offset	Value	Name	Description
0x000	0xFFF0F003	ROMSCS	Points to the SCS at 0xE000E000.
0x004	0xFFF02002 or 0xFFF02003	ROMDWT	Points to the Data Watchpoint and Trace block at 0xE0001000. Bit [0] is set to 1 if a DWT is fitted.
0x008	0xFFF03002 or 0xFFF03003	ROMFPB	Points to the Flash Patch and Breakpoint block at 0xE0002000. Bit [0] is set to 1 if an FPB is fitted.
0x00C	0xFFF01002 or 0xFFF01003	ROMITM[a]	Points to the Instrumentation Trace block at 0xE0000000. Bit [0] is set to 1 if an ITM is fitted.
0x010	0xFFF41002 or 0xFFF41003	ROMTPIU[b]	Points to the Trace Port Interface Unit. Bit [0] is set to 1 if a TPIU is fitted and accessible to the processor on its PPB.
0x014	0xFFF42002 or 0xFFF42003	ROMETM[b]	Points to the Embedded Trace Macrocell block. Bit [0] is set to 1 if an ETM is fitted and accessible to the processor on its PPB.
0x018	0x00000000	End	End-of-table marker. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the table is extended with pointers to other system debug resources. The table entries always terminate with a null entry.
0x020-0xEFC		Not Used	Reserved for additional ROM table entries.
0xF00-0xFC8		Reserved	Reserved, must not be used for ROM table entries.
0xFCC	0x00000001	MEMTYPE	Bit [0] set to 1 indicates that resources other than those listed in the ROM table are accessible in the same 32-bit address space, using the DAP. Bits [31:1] of the MEMTYPE entry are UNKNOWN.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-4 ARMv7-M DAP accessible ROM table (continued)

Offset	Value	Name	Description
0xFD0	IMP DEF	PID4	CIDx values are fully defined for the ROM table, and are CoreSight compliant. PIDx values should be CoreSight compliant or RAZ. See Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs* for more information. CoreSight is the ARM system debug architecture
0xFD4	0	PID5	
0xFD8	0	PID6	
0xFDC	0	PID7	
0xFE0	IMP DEF	PID0	
0xFE4	IMP DEF	PID1	
0xFE8	IMP DEF	PID2	
0xFEC	IMP DEF	PID3	
0xFF0	0x0000000D	CID0	
0xFF4	0x00000010	CID1	
0xFF8	0x00000005	CID2	
0xFFC	0x000000B1	CID3	

a. Accesses cannot cause a non-existent memory exception.
b. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a shared resource is managed by the local processor or a different resource.

A debugger can use a DAP interface to interrogate a system for memory access ports (MEM-APs). The BASE register in a memory access port provides the address of the ROM table, or the first of a series of ROM tables in a ROM table hierarchy. The memory access port can then be used to fetch the ROM table entries. See *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.3 Overview of the ARMv7-M debug features

ARMv7-M defines a debug model specifically designed for the profile. The ARMv7-M debug model has control and configuration integrated into the memory map. The Debug Access Port defined in the *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* provides the interface to a host debugger. Debug resources within ARMv7-M are as listed in Table C1-1 on page C1-811.

ARMv7-M supports the following debug related features:

- A Local reset, see *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-631. This resets the processor and supports debug of reset events.
- Processor halt. Control register support to halt the processor. This can occur asynchronously by assertion of an external signal, execution of a `BKPT` instruction, or from a debug event. A debugger can configure a debug event to occur, for example, on reset, or on exit from or entry to an ISR.
- Step, with or without interrupt masking.
- Run, with or without interrupt masking.
- Register access. The DCB supports reading and writing core registers when software execution is halted.
- Access to exception-related information through the SCS resources. Examples are the currently executing exception (if any), the active list, the pended list, and the highest priority pending exception.
- Software breakpoints. The `BKPT` instruction is supported.
- Hardware breakpoints, hardware watchpoints, and support for remapping of code memory locations.
- Access to all memory through the DAP.
- Support of profiling. Support for PC sampling is provided.
- Support of instruction tracing and the ability to add other system debug features such as a bus monitor or cross-trigger facility. Using ETM instruction trace increases the required trace bandwidth, and an implementation that supports ETM instruction trace typically uses a TPIU with a parallel trace port output.
- Application and data trace, typically supported through either a low pin-count *Serial Wire Viewer* (SWV) or a parallel trace port.

Note

CoreSight is the name of the ARM system debug architecture, incorporating a range of debug control, capture and system interface blocks. ARMv7-M does not require CoreSight compliance. The register definitions and address space allocations for the DWT, ITM, TPIU and FPB blocks in this specification are compatible. ARMv7-M allows these blocks to add support for CoreSight topology detection and operation as appropriate by extending them with CoreSight ID and management registers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.3.1 Debug authentication

ARMv7 supports two generic signals for debug enable and to control invasive versus non-invasive debug as described in Table C1-5.

Table C1-5 ARMv7 debug authentication signals

DBGEN	NIDEN	Invasive debug permitted	Non-invasive debug permitted
LOW	LOW	No	No
LOW	HIGH	No	Yes
HIGH	X	Yes	Yes

For ARMv7-M, the provision of **DBGEN** and **NIDEN** as actual signals is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. It is acceptable for **DBGEN** to be considered permanently enabled (**DBGEN** = HIGH), with control deferred to other enable bits within the profile-specific debug architecture.

Note

ARMv7-M does not support the **SPIDEN** and **SPNIDEN** signals. These signals form part of the secure debug authentication scheme as used by ARMv6K with the Security Extensions and the ARMv7-A profile.

C1.3.2 External debug request

The **EDBGRQ** input is asserted by an external agent to signal an external debug request. An external debug request can cause a debug event, that causes either:

- entry to Debug state
- a DebugMonitor exception.

For more information see *Debug event behavior* on page C1-823. The DFSR.EXTERNAL status bit indicates the debug event, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828

When the processor is in Debug state, it asserts the **HALTED** output signal. **HALTED** reflects the DHCSR.S_HALT bit, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830. The signal can be used as a debug acknowledge for **EDBGRQ**.

EDBGRQ and **HALTED** assert HIGH. The processor ignores **EDBGRQ** when it is in Debug state.

C1.3.3 External restart request

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether multiprocessing support is provided in the ARMv7-M Debug Extension. A system with multiprocessing debug must support the linked restarting of multiple processors. Two signals are required to support the multiprocessing restart mechanism, a **DBGRESTART** input and a **DBGRESTARTED** output, as described in *DBGRESTART and DBGRESTARTED* on page C1-821.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

In this section, multiprocessing support refers to any system that supports debug of more than one processor, whether the multiple processors are within a single device, or heterogeneous processors in a more complex system, for example an integrated system providing debug support for:

- an ARMv7-M processor and an ARMv7-A processor
- an ARMv7-M processor and a DSP.

DBGRESTART and DBGRESTARTED

DBGRESTART and **DBGRESTARTED** form a four-phase handshake, as shown in Figure C1-1.

Asserting **DBGRESTART** HIGH causes the processor to exit from Debug state. Once **DBGRESTART** is asserted, it must be held HIGH until **DBGRESTARTED** is deasserted. **DBGRESTART** is ignored unless **HALTED** and **DBGRESTARTED** are asserted.

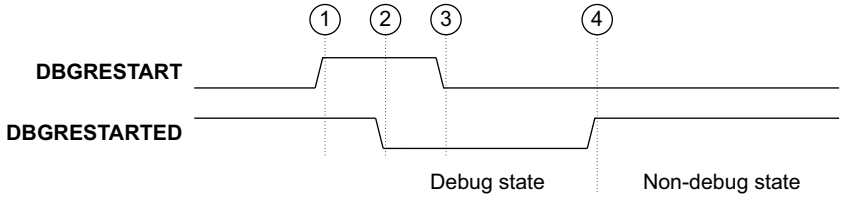


Figure C1-1 Handshake between DBGRESTART and DBGRESTARTED

Figure C1-1 is diagrammatic only, and no timings are implied. The numbers in Figure C1-1 have the following meanings:

1. If **DBGRESTARTED** is asserted HIGH the peripheral asserts **DBGRESTART** HIGH and waits for **DBGRESTARTED** to go LOW

2. The processor drives **DBGRESTARTED** LOW to deassert the signal and waits for **DBGRESTART** to go LOW

3. The peripheral drives **DBGRESTART** LOW to deassert the signal. This is the event that indicates to the processor that it can start the transition phase from Debug to Non-debug state.

4. The processor leaves Debug state and asserts **DBGRESTARTED** HIGH.

In the process of leaving Debug state the processor clears the **HALTED** signal to LOW. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED when this change occurs relative to the HIGH to LOW change in **DBGRESTART** and the LOW to HIGH change in **DBGRESTARTED**.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.4 Debug and reset

ARMv7-M defines two levels of reset as stated in *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-631:

- a Power-on reset
- a Local reset.

Reset management on page B1-679 describes how software can initiate a reset. *Entering debug state on leaving reset state* describes how software can configure the processor to enter Debug state when it comes out of reset.

The following bit fields are reset by a Power-on reset but not by a Local reset:

- fault flags in the DFSR, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828.
- debug control in the DHCSR, see the notes associated with *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830.
- DEMCR.TRCENA and the vector catch configuration bits, DEMCR[10:4,0], see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

Note

ARMv7-M does not provide a means to:

- debug a Power-on reset
- differentiate a Power-on reset from a Local reset.

The relationship with the debug logic reset and power control signals described in the *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

C1.4.1 Entering debug state on leaving reset state

To force the processor to enter Debug state as soon as it comes out of reset, a debugger set DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN to 1, to enable halting debut, and sets DEMCR.VC_CORERESET to 1 to enable vector catch on the Reset exception. When the processor comes out of reset it sets DHCSR.C_HALT to 1, and enters Debug state. For more information see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830 and *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.5 Debug event behavior

An event triggered for debug reasons is known as a debug event. A debug event causes one of the following to occur:

- Entry to Debug state. If halting debug is enabled, a debug event halts the processor in Debug state.

  Setting the DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN bit to 1 enables halting debug, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830.

- A DebugMonitor exception. If halting debug is disabled and the debug monitor is enabled, a debug event causes a DebugMonitor exception when the group priority of the DebugMonitor exception is greater than the current execution priority.

  Halting debug is disabled when the DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN bit is set to 0, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830, and the debug monitor is enabled when the DEMCR.MON_EN bit is set to 1, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

  If the DebugMonitor group priority is less than or equal to the current execution priority:

  — The processor escalates a breakpoint debug event generated by executing a `BKPT` instruction to a HardFault.

  — Whether the processor escalates a breakpoint generated by the FPB to a HardFault, or ignores FPB breakpoints, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. However the processor can ignore an FPB breakpoint only if the breakpointed instruction shows its architectural behavior.

  — The processor ignores the other debug events. This means it ignores watchpoints and external debug requests.

  Note

  Software can set the DEMCR.MON_PEND to 1 at any time to make the DebugMonitor exception pending. When DEMCR.MON_PEND is set to 1, the processor takes the DebugMonitor exception according to the exception prioritization rules, regardless of the value of the DEMCR.MON_EN bit.

- A HardFault exception. If both halting debug and the monitor are disabled, a breakpoint debug event escalates to a HardFault and the processor ignores the other debug events.

  Note

  A breakpoint debug event that causes a HardFault or lockup is considered as unrecoverable.

The DFSR contains a status bit for each debug event, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828. These bits are set to 1 when a debug event causes the processor to halt or generate an exception, and are then write-one-to-clear. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the bits are updated when an event is ignored.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-6 lists the halting and debug monitor events.

Table C1-6 Debug events

Event cause	Exception support	DFSR bit	Notes
Internal halt request	Halt and DebugMonitor	HALTED	Step command, processor halt request, and similar.
Breakpoint	Halt and DebugMonitor	BKPT	Breakpoint from `BKPT` instruction or match in FPB
Watchpoint	Halt and DebugMonitor	DWTTRAP	Watchpoint match in DWT, including PC match watchpoint
Vector catch	Halt only	VCATCH	One or more DEMCR.VC_xxx bits set to 1, and the processor took the corresponding exception.
External	Halt and DebugMonitor	EXTERNAL	**EDBGRQ** asserted

For a description of the vector catch feature, see *Vector catch support* on page C1-842.

If a breakpoint occurs in an NMI or HardFault exception handler when halting debug is disabled, the system locks up with an unrecoverable error. For more information see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674. The breakpoint can be due to a `BKPT` instruction or generated by the FPB, see *Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit* on page C1-904.

Note

Whether the FPB generates breakpoint debug events when both DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0 and DEMCR.MON_EN is set to 0 is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

C1.5.1 Debug stepping

ARMv7-M supports debug stepping in both halting debug and monitor debug, see:

- *Halting debug stepping*
- *Debug monitor stepping* on page C1-826.

Halting debug stepping

A debugger controls stepping in halting debug by writing to the DHCSR.C_STEP and DHCSR.C_HALT bits, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830.

When DHCSR.C_STEP is set to 1, and DHCSR.C_HALT is cleared to 0 in the same or a subsequent register write, the system:

1. Exits Debug state.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

2. Performs one of the following:
   - Executes the next instruction. This is called instruction stepping.
   - Performs an exception entry sequence that stacks the next instruction context. The processor enters the exception handler according to the exception priority and late-arrival rules, and halts on the first instruction of the handler.
   - Executes the next instruction, at which point the exception model causes a change from the expected program flow:
     — The processor performs an exception entry sequence, according to the exception priority and late-arrival rules. The processor halts ready to execute the first instruction of the exception handler taken.
     — If the executed instruction is an exception return instruction, tail-chaining can cause entry to a new exception handler. The processor halts ready to execute the first instruction of the exception handler of the tail-chained exception.

Note

The exception entry behavior is not recursive. Only a single `PushStack()` update can occur in a step sequence.

3. Sets the DFSR.HALTED bit to 1 and returns to Debug state.

Note

A read of the DFSR.HALTED bit performed by an instruction executed by stepping returns an UNKNOWN value.

The debugger can optionally set the DHCSR.C_MASKINTS bit to 1 to prevent PendSV, SysTick, and external configurable interrupts from occurring. This is described as masking these interrupts. When DHCSR.C_MASKINTS is set to 1, if a permitted exception becomes active, the processor executes the associated exception handler, in addition to the stepped instruction. Table C1-7 summarizes instruction stepping control.

Table C1-7 Debug stepping control using the DHCSR

DHCSR write[a]			Effect
C_HALT	C_STEP	C_MASKINTS[b]	
0	0	0	Exit Debug state and start instruction execution. Exceptions can become active[c].
0	0	1	Exit Debug state and start instruction execution. PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts are disabled, otherwise exceptions can become active[c].

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-7 Debug stepping control using the DHCSR (continued)

DHCSR write[a]			Effect
C_HALT	C_STEP	C_MASKINTS[b]	
0	1	0	Exit Debug state, step an instruction and halt. Exceptions can become active[c].
0	1	1	Exit Debug state, step an instruction and halt. PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts are disabled, otherwise exceptions can become active[c].
1	x	x	Remain in Debug state

a. Assumes DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN and DHCSR.S_HALT are both set to 1 when the write occurs, meaning the system is halted.
b. However, the effect of a write to DHCSR that changes the C_MASKINTS bit is UNPREDICTABLE if either, before the write, the value of the C_HALT bit is 0, or the same write to DHCSR changes the value of the C_HALT bit from 1 to 0. To set C_MASKINTS to 1 and C_HALT to 0 a processor must first write to DHCSR to set CMASKINTS to 1, and then write to DHCSR again to set C_HALT to 0.
c. That is, exceptions become active, based on their configuration, according to the exception priority rules.

When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is 1 and DHCSR.S_HALT is 0, meaning the system is running with halting debug support enabled, the effect of modifying DHCSR.C_STEP or DHCSR.C_MASKINTS is UNPREDICTABLE.

When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is 0, the processor ignores the values of DHCSR.C_HALT, DHCSR.C_STEP and DHCSR.C_MASKINTS, and these values are UNKNOWN on DHCSR reads.

Note

If software clears DHCSR.C_HALT to 0 when the processor is in Debug state, a subsequent read of the DHCSR that returns 1 for both C_HALT and S_HALT indicates that the processor has re-entered Debug state because it has detected a new debug event.

Debug monitor stepping

A debugger can use debug monitor stepping to return from the DebugMonitor exception handler, execute a single instruction, and the re-enter the DebugMonitor exception handler. Debug monitor stepping is enabled when all of the following apply:

- DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, halting debug disabled, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830
- DEMCR.MON_EN is set to 1, monitor debug enabled, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- DEMCR.MON_STEP is set to 1, monitor stepping enabled
- execution priority is below the priority of the DebugMonitor exception.

When debug monitor stepping is enabled, the processor performs a debug monitor step as follows:

1. Either:
   - Execute the next instruction.
   - Perform an exception entry sequence to a pending exception with a priority below that of the DebugMonitor exception. In this case, the processor does not execute an instruction in this step.
2. Set the DEMCR.MON_PEND bit to 1.
3. Take any pending exception of sufficient priority.

If, during this process, any exceptions other than the DebugMonitor exception are pending, the normal rules for exception prioritization apply. This means that another exception with higher priority than the DebugMonitor exception might preempt execution. If this happens, the debug monitor stepping process continues when execution priority falls back below the priority of the DebugMonitor exception.

Otherwise, step 3 of this process results in the DebugMonitor exception preempting execution, returning control to the DebugMonitor handler. Unless that handler clears DEMCR.MON_STEP to 0, returning from the handler performs the next debug monitor step.

Note

If the instruction execution performed at step 1 of the debug monitor step explicitly causes the execution priority to become higher than the priority of the DebugMonitor exception, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the processor sets DEMCR.MON_PEND to 1 as part of the debug monitor step.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.6 Debug register support in the SCS

The debug provision in the *System Control Block* (SCB) comprises:

- Two handler-related flag bits, ICSR.ISRPREEMPT and ICSR.ISRPENDING, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713
- The DFSR, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR*. Although the DFSR is a SCB register, it is described in this section, with the other debug registers.

The architecture defines additional debug registers in the Debug Control Block. Table C1-8 shows these registers in address order. All registers are 32-bits wide. See the register descriptions for details of the reset values of the RW registers.

Table C1-8 Debug register summary

Address	Name	Type	Function
0xE000EDF0	DHCSR	RW	*Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830
0xE000EDF4	DCRSR	WO	*Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-834
0xE000EDF8	DCRDR	RW	*Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-836
0xE000EDFC	DEMCR	RW	*Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838
0xE000EE00 to 0xE000EEFF	-	-	Reserved for debug extensions

C1.6.1 Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR

The DFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Shows, at the top level, why a debug event occurred.

Usage constraints Writing 1 to a register bit clears the bit to 0.

A read of the HALTED bit by an instruction executed by stepping returns an UNKNOWN value, For more information see *Debug stepping* on page C1-824.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-710. A Power-on reset clears the defined register bits to 0. A Local reset does not affect the value of the register.

Figure C1-2 on page C1-829 shows the DFSR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

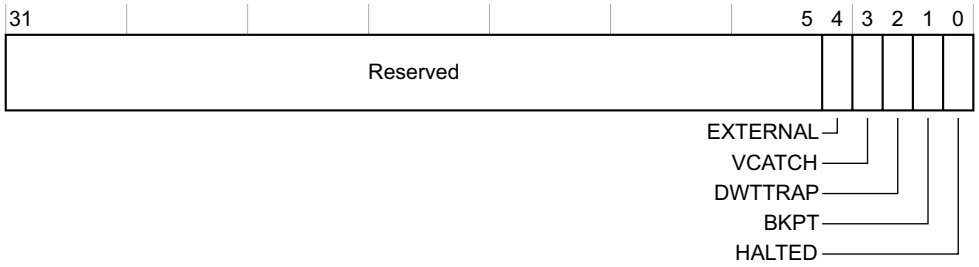


Figure C1-2 DFSR bit assignments

Table C1-9 shows the DFSR bit assignments.

Table C1-9 DFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved
[4]	EXTERNAL	Indicates a debug event generated because of the assertion of **EDBGRQ**: 0 = No **EDBGRQ** debug event. 1 = **EDBGRQ** debug event.
[3]	VCATCH	Indicates triggering of a Vector catch: 0 = No Vector catch triggered. 1 = Vector catch triggered. The corresponding FSR shows the primary cause of the exception.
[2]	DWTTRAP	Indicates a debug event generated by the DWT: 0 = No current debug events generated by the DWT. 1 = At least one current debug event generated by the DWT.
[1]	BKPT	Indicates a debug event generated by `BKPT` instruction execution or a breakpoint match in FPB: 0 = No current breakpoint debug event. 1 = At least one current breakpoint debug event.
[0]	HALTED	Indicates a debug event generated by either: • a C_HALT or C_STEP request, triggered by a write to the DHCSR, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830 • a step request triggered by setting DEMCR.MON_STEP to 1, see *Debug monitor stepping* on page C1-826. 0 = No active halt request debug event. 1 = Halt request debug event active.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.6.2 Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR

The DHCSR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls halting debug.

Usage constraints

- The effect of modifying the C_STEP or C_MASKINTS bit when the system is running with halting debug enabled is UNPREDICTABLE. Halting debug is enabled when C_DEBUGEN is set to 1. The system is running when S_HALT is set to 0.
- When C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the values of all other bits in this register.
- For more information about the use of DHCSR see *Debug stepping* on page C1-824.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-828, and the field descriptions in Table C1-10.

Figure C1-3 shows the DHCSR bit assignments.

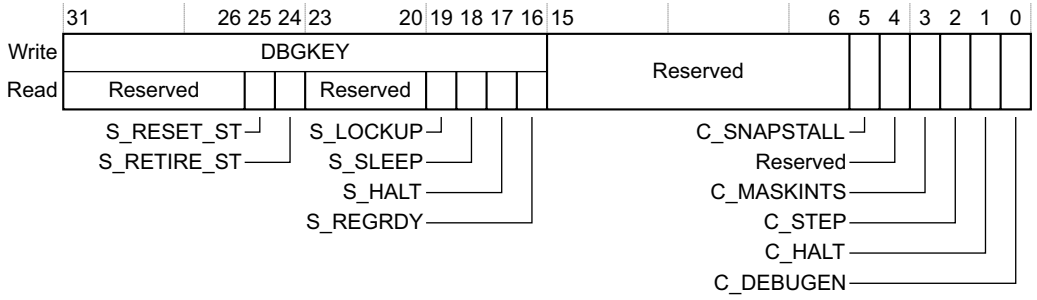


Figure C1-3 DHCSR bit assignments

Table C1-10 shows the DHCSR bit assignments.

Table C1-10 DHCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[31:16]	DBGKEY	WO	Debug key: Software must write `0xA05F` to this field to enable write accesses to bits [15:0], otherwise the processor ignores the write access.
[31:26]	-	RO	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-10 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[25]	S_RESET_ST	RO	Indicates whether the processor has been reset since the last read of DHCSR: 0 = No reset since last DHCSR read. 1 = At least one reset since last DHCSR read. This is a sticky bit, that clears to 0 on a read of DHCSR.
[24]	S_RETIRE_ST	RO	Indicates whether the processor has completed the execution of an instruction since the last read of DHCSR: 0 = No instruction retired since last DHCSR read. 1 = At least one instruction retired since last DHCSR read. This is a sticky bit, that clears to 0 on a read of DHCSR. A debugger can check this bit to determine if the processor is stalled on a load, store or fetch access. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on or Local reset, but then is set to 1 as soon as the processor executes and retires an instruction.
[23:20]	-	-	Reserved
[19]	S_LOCKUP	RO	Indicates whether the processor is locked up because of an unrecoverable exception: 0 = Not locked up 1 = Locked up See *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-674 for more information. This bit can only be read as 1 by a remote debugger, using the DAP. The value of 1 indicates that the processor is running but locked up. The bit clears to 0 when the processor enters Debug state.
[18]	S_SLEEP	RO	Indicates whether the processor is sleeping: 0 = Not sleeping. 1 = Sleeping. The debugger must set the C_HALT bit to 1 to gain control, or wait for an interrupt or other wakeup event to wakeup the system.
[17]	S_HALT	RO	Indicates whether the processor is in Debug state: 0 = Not in Debug state. 1 = In Debug state.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-10 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[16]	S_REGRDY	RO	A handshake flag for transfers through the DCRDR: • Writing to DCRSR clears the bit to 0. • Completion of the DCRDR transfer then sets the bit to 1. For more information about DCRDR transfers see *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-836. 0 = There has been a write to the DCRDR, but the transfer is not complete 1 = The transfer to or from the DCRDR is complete. This bit is valid only when the processor is in Debug state, otherwise the bit is UNKNOWN.
[15:6]	-	-	Reserved
[5]	C_SNAPSTALL	RW	If the processor is stalled on a load or store operation, a debugger can set this bit to 1 to attempt to break the stall. The effect of this bit is: 0 = No action 1 = Attempt to force any stalled load or store instruction to complete. The effect of setting this bit to 1 is UNPREDICTABLE unless the DHCSR write also sets C_DEBUGEN and C_HALT to 1. This means that if the processor is not already in Debug state[a] it enters Debug state when the stalled instruction completes. Writing 1 to this bit makes the state of the memory system UNPREDICTABLE. Therefore, if a debugger writes 1 to this bit it must reset the processor before leaving Debug state. **Note** • A debugger can write to the DHCSR to clear this bit to 0. However, this does not remove the UNPREDICTABLE state of the memory system caused by setting C_SNAPSTALL to 1. • The architecture does not guarantee that setting this bit to 1 will force a stalled load or store operation to complete. A Power-on reset sets this bit to 0.
[4]	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-10 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[3]	C_MASKINTS	RW	When debug is enabled, the debugger can write to this bit to mask PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts: 0 = Do not mask. 1 = Mask PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts. The effect of any attempt to change the value of this bit is UNPREDICTABLE unless both: • before the write to DHCSR, the value of the C_HALT bit is 1 • the write to the DHCSR that changes the C_MASKINTS bit also writes 1 to the C_HALT bit. This means that a single write to DHCSR cannot set the C_HALT to 0 and change the value of the C_MASKINTS bit. The bit does not affect NMI. When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the value of this bit is UNKNOWN. For more information about the use of this bit see *Halting debug stepping* on page C1-824. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.
[2]	C_STEP	RW	Processor step bit. The effects of writes to this bit are: 0 = No effect. 1 = Step the processor. For more information about the use of this bit see Table C1-7 on page C1-825. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.
[1]	C_HALT	RW	Processor halt bit. The effects of writes to this bit are: 0 = No effect. 1 = Halt the processor. Table C1-7 on page C1-825 shows the effect of writes to this bit when the processor is in Debug state. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset
[0]	C_DEBUGEN	RW	Halting debug enable bit: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. If a debugger writes to DHCSR to change the value of this bit from 0 to 1, it must also write 0 to the C_MASKINTS bit, otherwise behavior is UNPREDICTABLE. This bit can only be set to 1 from the DAP, it cannot be set to 1 under software control. This bit is 0 after a Power-on reset.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

a. ARM strongly recommends that software never writes 1 to C_SNAPSTALL when the processor is in Debug state.

See *Debug stepping* on page C1-824 for more information about the use of this register, including information on how a debugger can force the processor to enter Debug state as soon as it comes out of reset.

C1.6.3 Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR

The DCRSR characteristics are:

Purpose With the DCRDR, see *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-836, the DCRSR provides debug access to the ARM core registers, special-purpose registers, and Floating-point extension registers. A write to DCRSR specifies the register to transfer, whether the transfer is a read or a write, and starts the transfer.

Usage constraints Only accessible in Debug state

For information about using this register see *Use of DCRSR and DCRDR* on page C1-837.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-828.

Figure C1-4 shows the DCRSR bit assignments.

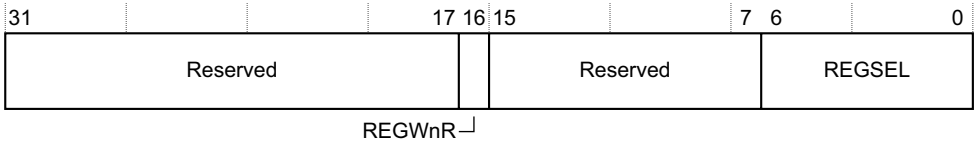


Figure C1-4 DCRSR bit assignments

Table C1-11 shows the DCRSR bit assignments.

Table C1-11 DCRSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:17]	-	Reserved
[16]	REGWnR	Specifies the access type for the transfer: 0 = Read 1 = Write
[15:7]	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-11 DCRSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[6:0]	REGSEL	Specifies the ARM core register, special-purpose register, or Floating-point extension register, to transfer: **0b0000000-0b0001100** ARM core registers R0-R12. For example, 0b0000000 specifies R0, and 0b0000101 specifies R5. **0b0001101** The current SP. See also values 0b0010001 and 0b0010010. **0b0001110** LR. **0b0001111** DebugReturnAddress, see *The DebugReturnAddress value* on page C1-836. **0b0010000** xPSR. **0b0010001** Main stack pointer, MSP. **0b0010010** Process stack pointer, PSP. **0b0010100** **Bits [31:24]** CONTROL **Bits [23:16]** FAULTMASK **Bits [15:8]** BASEPRI **Bits [7:0]** PRIMASK. In each field, the valid bits are packed with leading zeros. For example, FAULTMASK is always a single bit, DCRDR[16], and DCRDR[23:17] is 0b0000000. **0b0100001** Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR **0b1000000-0b1011111** FP registers S0-S31. For example, 0b1000000 specifies S0, and 0b1000101 specifies S5. All other values are Reserved. If the processor does not implement the FP extension the REGSEL field is bits [4:0], and bits [6:5] are Reserved, SBZ.

Note

When the processor is in Debug state, the debugger must preserve the Exception number bits in the ISR, otherwise behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.

For more information about the use of the DCRSR see *Use of DCRSR and DCRDR* on page C1-837.

For more information about the values that a debugger can transfer through the DCRSR see:

- *The ARM core registers* on page B1-623, for information about R0-R12, SP, and LR
- *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624
- *The special-purpose mask registers* on page B1-627, for information about FAULTMASK, BASEBRI, and PRIMASK

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628, for information about CONTROL
- *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56
- *The FP extension registers* on page A2-53, for information about S0-S31.

The DebugReturnAddress value

DebugReturnAddress is the address of the first instruction to be executed on exit from Debug state. This address indicates the point in the execution stream where the debug event was invoked. For a hardware or a software breakpoint, this is the address of the breakpointed instruction. For all other debug events, including PC match watchpoints, DebugReturnAddress is the address of the first instruction that both:

- in a simple sequential execution of the program, executes after the instruction that caused the debug event
- has not been executed.

Before entering Debug state, the processor has executed all instructions that are earlier in a simple sequential execution of the program than the instruction indicated by DebugReturnAddress.

Bit [0] of a DebugReturnAddress value is RAZ/SBZ. When writing a DebugReturnAddress, writing bit [0] of the address does not affect the EPSR.T bit, see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624.

C1.6.4 Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR

The DCRDR characteristics are:

Purpose

- With the DCRSR, see *Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-834, the DCRDR provides debug access to the ARM core registers, special-purpose registers, and Floating-point extension registers. The DCRDR is the data register for these accesses.
- Used on its own, the DCRDR provides a message passing resource between an external debugger and a debug agent running on the processor.

Note

The architecture does not define any handshaking mechanism for this use of DCRDR.

Usage constraints See *Use of DCRSR and DCRDR* on page C1-837 for constraints that apply to particular transfers using the DCRSR and DCRDR.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-828. The reset value of DCRDR is UNKNOWN.

Figure C1-5 on page C1-837 shows the DCRDR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

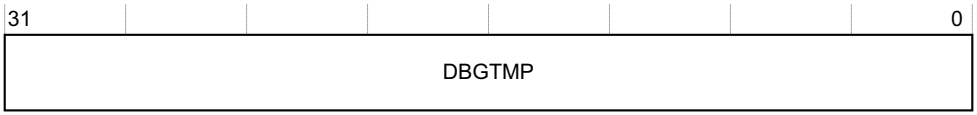


Figure C1-5 DCRDR bit assignments

Table C1-12 shows the DCRDR bit assignments.

Table C1-12 DCRDR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	DBGTMP	Data temporary cache, for reading and writing the ARM core registers, special-purpose registers, and Floating-point extension registers. The value of this register is UNKNOWN: • on reset • if the processor is in Debug state, the debugger has written to DCRSR since entering Debug state and DHCSR.S_REGRDY is set to 0.

Use of DCRSR and DCRDR

In Debug state, writing to DCRSR clears the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit to 0, and the processor then sets the bit to 1 when the transfer between the DCRDR and the ARM core register, special-purpose register, or Floating-point extension register completes. For more information about the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830.

This means that:

- To transfer a data word to an ARM core register, special-purpose register, or Floating-point extension register, a debugger:
  1. Writes the required word to DCRDR.
  2. Writes to the DCRSR, with the REGSEL value indicating the required register, and the REGWnR bit as 1 to indicate a write access.
     This write clears the DHCSR S_REGRDY bit to 0.
  3. If required, polls DHCSR until DHCSR.S_REGRDY reads-as-one. This shows that the processor has transferred the DCRDR value to the selected register.
- To transfer a data word from an ARM core register, special-purpose register, or Floating-point extension register, a debugger:
  1. Writes to the DCRSR, with the REGSEL value indicating the required register, and the REGWnR bit as 0 to indicate a read access.
     This write clears the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit to 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

2. Polls DHCSR until DHCSR.S_REGRDY reads-as-one. This shows that the processor has transferred the value of the selected register to DCRDR.
3. Reads the required value from DCRDR.

When using this mechanism to write to the ARM core registers, special-purpose registers, or Floating-point extension registers:

- All bits of the xPSR registers are fully accessible. The effect of writing an illegal value is UNPREDICTABLE.

  Note

  This differs from the behavior of `MSR` and `MRS` instruction accesses to the xPSR, where some bits RAZ, and some bits are ignored on writes.

- The debugger can write to the EPSR.IT bits. If it does this, it must write a value consistent with the instruction to be executed on exiting Debug state, otherwise instruction execution will be UNPREDICTABLE. See *ITSTATE* on page A7-210 for more information. The IT bits must be zero on exit from Debug state if the instruction indicated by DebugReturnAddress is outside an `IT` block.
- The debugger can write to the EPSR.ICI bits, and on exiting Debug state any interrupted `LDM` or `STM` instruction will use these new values. Clearing the ICI bits to zero will cause the interrupted `LDM` or `STM` instruction to restart instead of continue. For more information see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-658.
- The debugger can write to the DebugReturnAddress, and on exiting Debug state the processor starts executing from this updated address. The debugger must ensure the EPSR.IT bits and EPSR.ICI bits are consistent with the new DebugReturnAddress, as described in this list.
- The debugger can always set FAULTMASK to 1, and doing so might cause unexpected behavior on exit from Debug state.

  Note

  An `MSR` instruction cannot set FAULTMASK to 1 when the execution priority is -1 or higher, see *MSR* on page B5-805

C1.6.5 Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR

The DEMCR characteristics are:

Purpose Manages vector catch behavior and DebugMonitor handling when debugging.

Usage constraints
- Bits [23:16] provide DebugMonitor exception control.
- Bits [15:0] provide Debug state, halting debug, control.

Configurations Always implemented.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-828, and also:

- A Power-on reset resets all register bits to zero.
- A Local reset resets only the bits related to the DebugMonitor to zero. These are bits [19:16]. *Reset behavior* on page B1-641 defines Local reset.

Figure C1-6 shows the DEMCR bit assignments.

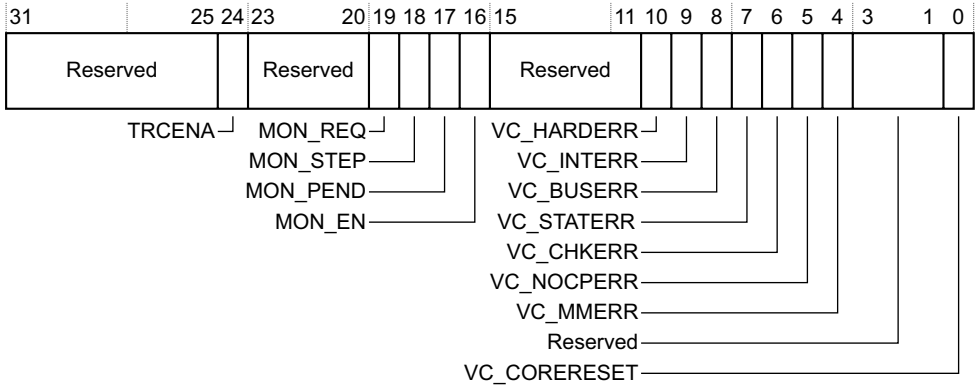


Figure C1-6 DEMCR bit assignments

Table C1-13 shows the DEMCR bit assignments.

Table C1-13 DEMCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:25]	-	Reserved
[24]	TRCENA	Global enable for all DWT and ITM features: 0 = DWT and ITM blocks disabled. 1 = DWT and ITM blocks enabled. If the DWT and ITM blocks are not implemented, this bit is UNK/SBZP. When TRCENA is set to 0: • DWT registers return UNKNOWN values on reads. Whether the processor ignores writes to the DWT unit is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. • ITM registers return UNKNOWN values on reads. Whether the processor ignores writes to the ITM unit is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Setting this bit to 0 might not stop all events. To ensure all events are stopped, software must set all DWT and ITM feature enable bits to 0, and then set this bit to 0. The effect of this bit on the TPIU, ETM, and other system trace components is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-13 DEMCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[23:20]	-	Reserved.
[19]	MON_REQ	DebugMonitor semaphore bit. The processor does not use this bit. The monitor software defines the meaning and use of this bit.
[18]	MON_STEP	When MON_EN is set to 0, this feature is disabled and the processor ignores MON_STEP. When MON_EN is set to 1, the meaning of MON_STEP is: 0 = Do not step the processor. 1 = Step the processor. Setting this bit to 1 makes the step request pending. The request becomes active when the processor returns from the DebugMonitor handler to the code being debugged. The effect of setting this bit to 1 is UNPREDICTABLE if the code being debugged is executing at an execution priority that is lower than the priority of the DebugMonitor exception. For more information see *Debug monitor stepping* on page C1-826. **Note** This is the debug monitor equivalent of DHCSR.C_STEP in Debug state.
[17]	MON_PEND	Sets or clears the pending state of the DebugMonitor exception: 0 = Clear the status of the DebugMonitor exception to not pending. 1 = Set the status of the DebugMonitor exception to pending. When the DebugMonitor exception is pending it becomes active subject to the exception priority rules. A debugger can use this bit to wakeup the monitor using the DAP. The effect of setting this bit to 1 is not affected by the value of the MON_EN bit. A debugger can set MON_PEND to 1, and force the processor to take a DebugMonitor exception, even when MON_EN is set to 0.
[16]	MON_EN	Enable the DebugMonitor exception: 0 = DebugMonitor exception disabled. 1 = DebugMonitor exception enabled, If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 1, the processor ignores the value of this bit. See *ARMv7-M exception model* on page B1-631 for more information about the DebugMonitor exception.
[15:11]	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-13 DEMCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[10]	VC_HARDERR	Enable halting debug trap on a HardFault exception. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[9]	VC_INTERR	Enable halting debug trap on a fault occurring during exception entry or exception return. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[8]	VC_BUSERR	Enable halting debug trap on a BusFault exception. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[7]	VC_STATERR	Enable halting debug trap on a UsageFault exception caused by a state information error, for example an Undefined Instruction exception. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[6]	VC_CHKERR	Enable halting debug trap on a UsageFault exception caused by a checking error, for example an alignment check error. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[5]	VC_NOCPERR	Enable halting debug trap on a UsageFault caused by an access to a Coprocessor. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[4]	VC_MMERR	Enable halting debug trap on a MemManage exception. 0 = Halting debug trap disabled. 1 = Halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-13 DEMCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[3:1]	-	Reserved
[0]	VC_CORERESET	Enable Reset Vector Catch. This causes a Local reset to halt a running system. 0 = Reset Vector Catch disabled. 1 = Reset Vector Catch enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.

Fault behavior on page B1-669 lists all the faults and their assignment to vector catch enable bits.

Vector catch support

Vector catch is the mechanism for generating a debug event and entering Debug state when a particular exception occurs. Vector catching is only supported by halting debug.

The conditions for a vector catch are:

- DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 1, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830
- at least one of DEMCR[10:4,0], the vector catch enable bits, is set to 1, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838
- the associated exception becomes active.

When these conditions are met, the processor halts execution on the first instruction of the exception handler and enters Debug state.

Note

- Exception entry sets fault status bits to 1. A debugger can use these bits to help determine the source of the error. For more information see *Status registers for configurable-priority faults* on page B3-727, *HardFault Status Register, HFSR* on page B3-732 and *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828.
- The vector catch mechanism guarantees that the processor enters Debug state without executing any instruction after the instruction that caused the exception. However, saved context might include information on a lockup situation, or on a higher priority pending exception, for example a pending NMI exception detected on reset.

Late arrival and derived exceptions can occur, postponing when the processor halts. For more information see *Late-arriving exceptions* on page B1-662 and *Derived exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-663.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.7 The Instrumentation Trace Macrocell

The *Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* (ITM) provides a memory-mapped register interface that applications can use to write logging or event words to a trace sink, for example to the optional external *Trace Port Interface Unit* (TPIU). The ITM also provides control of timestamp packets, and generation of Local timestamp packets.

The ITM forms event words and timestamp information into packets, using the packet protocol described in Appendix D *Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol*, and multiplexes them with hardware event packets from the *Data Watchpoint and Trace* (DWT) block. See *How the ITM relates to other debug components* on page C1-848 for more information.

C1.7.1 ITM operation

The ITM consists of:

- up to 256 stimulus registers, see *Stimulus Port registers, ITM_STIM0 - ITM_STIM255* on page C1-849
- up to eight enable registers, see *Trace Enable Registers, ITM_TER0 - ITM_TER7* on page C1-850
- an access control register, see *Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852
- a general control register, see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852.

The number of Stimulus Port registers is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED multiple of eight. Software can find the number of supported stimulus ports by writing all ones to the Trace Privilege Register, and then reading how many bits are set to 1.

If the ITM is disabled or not implemented, a write to a stimulus port must not cause a BusFault exception. This ensures the ITM is transparent to application software.

The Trace Privilege Register defines whether each group of eight Stimulus Port registers, and their corresponding Trace Enable Register bits, can be written by an unprivileged access. Unprivileged code can always read the Stimulus Port registers.

Stimulus Port registers are 32-bit registers that support the following word-aligned accesses:

- byte accesses, to access register bits [7:0]
- halfword accesses, to access register bits [15:0]
- word accesses, to access register bits [31:0].

Non-word-aligned accesses are UNPREDICTABLE.

ITM_TCR.ITMENA is a global enable bit for the ITM. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0, disabling the ITM. The ITM_TERs provide an enable bit for each stimulus port.

When software writes to an enabled stimulus port, the ITM combines the identity of the port, the size of the write access, and the data written, into a packet that it writes to a FIFO. The ITM transmits packets from the FIFO to a trace sink, such as a TPIU.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The ITM must implement at least a single-entry stimulus port output buffer, shared by all the Stimulus Port registers. The size of this output buffer is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. When the stimulus port output buffer is full, if software writes to any stimulus port, the ITM ignores the write, and generates an Overflow packet.

Reading the Stimulus Port register of any enabled stimulus port indicates the output buffer status. Reading a Stimulus Port register when the ITM is disabled, or when the individual stimulus port is disabled in the corresponding Stimulus Port Enable register, returns the value indicating that the output buffer is full.

Packets generated by the DWT block use a separate output buffer. Therefore, the output buffer status obtained by reading a Stimulus Port register is not affected by trace generated by the DWT block.

Note

To ensure system correctness, a software polling scheme might use exclusive accesses to ensure there is space in the output buffer before performing a stimulus port write.

Stimulus port access permissions

The access permissions for the stimulus ports are:

- Unprivileged and privileged software can read all ITM registers at all times.
- For privileged write accesses to all ITM registers, the ITM:
  - ignores the access if ITM_TCR.ITMENA is set to 0
  - accepts the access if ITM_TCR.ITMENA is set to 1.
- For unprivileged write accesses:
  - the ITM always ignores accesses to the Trace Control and Trace Privilege Registers
  - for each stimulus port, the setting in the appropriate Trace Privilege Register determines whether the ITM accepts or ignores an access to the corresponding Stimulus Port or Trace Enable Register, see *Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852.

Timestamp support

Timestamps provide information on the timing of event generation with respect to their visibility at a trace output port. An ARMv7-M processor can implement either or both of the following types of timestamp:

Local timestamps

These provide delta timestamp values, meaning each local timestamp indicates the elapsed time since generating the previous local timestamp. The ITM generates these from timestamp clock in the ITM block. Each time it generates a Local timestamp packet it resets this clock, to provide the delta functionality. For more information see *Local timestamping* on page C1-845.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Global timestamps

These provide absolute timestamp values, based on a system global timestamp clock. They provide synchronization between different trace sources in the system. For more information see *Global timestamping* on page C1-846.

Local timestamping

The following features of local timestamp generation by the ITM are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED:

- The timestamp counter size.
- The available clocking modes, that is, whether the local timestamp counter can be driven using:

  Synchronous clocking

  The local timestamp counter is driven by the processor clock.

  Asynchronous clocking

  The local timestamp counter is driven by an asynchronous clock signal from the TPIU.
- When asynchronous clocking is implemented, whether the incoming clock signal can be divided before driving the local timestamping counter.

For more information about the timestamp clocking options see *Local timestamp clocking options* on page C1-846.

The ITM_TCR register controls timestamping, see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852:

- ITM_TCR.TSENA enables Local timestamp packet generation,
- If the implementation supports both synchronous and asynchronous clocking of the local timestamp counter, ITM_TCR.SWOENA selects the clocking mode
- If the implementation supports division of the incoming asynchronous clock signal, ITM_TCR.TSPrescale sets the prescaler divide value.

Local timestamping is differential, meaning each timestamp gives the time since the previous local timestamp. When local timestamping is enabled and a DWT or ITM event transfers a packet to the appropriate output FIFO, and the timestamp counter is non-zero, the ITM:

- generates a Local timestamp packet
- resets the timestamp counter to zero.

If the timestamp counter overflows, it continues counting from zero and the ITM generates an Overflow packet and transmits an associated Local timestamp packet at the earliest opportunity. If higher priority trace packets delay transmission of this Local timestamp packet, the timestamp packet has the appropriate non-zero local timestamp value.

The ITM can generate a Local timestamp packet relating to a single event packet, or to a stream of back-to-back packets if multiple events generate a packet stream without any idle time. Local timestamp packets include status information that indicates any delay in one or both of:

- transmission of the timestamp packet relative to the corresponding event packet
- transmission of the corresponding event packet relative to the event itself.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If the ITM cannot generate a Local timestamp packet synchronously with the corresponding event, the timestamp count continues until the ITM can sample it and deliver a Local timestamp packet to the FIFO. Local timestamp packets support a maximum count field of 28 bits. The ITM compresses the count value by removing leading zeroes, and transmits the minimum-sized packet that can hold the required count value. For more information see *Local timestamp packets* on page AppxD-936.

Local timestamp clocking options

The supported clocking options are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. This section assumes all options are implemented.

When software selects the synchronous clocking option, when local timestamping is enabled, the system clock drives the timestamp counter, and the counter increments on each clock cycle. With this clocking option, whether local timestamps are generated in Debug state is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, but ARM recommends that entering Debug state disables local timestamping, regardless of the value of the ITM_TCR.TSENA bit.

When software selects the asynchronous clocking option, and enables local timestamping, a lineout clock signal from the TPIU interface drives the timestamp counter, through a configurable prescalar. With this clocking option:

- When the TPIU asynchronous interface is idle, it holds the timestamp counter in reset. This means that the ITM does not generate a local timestamp on the first packet after an idle on the asynchronous interface.
- Because the timestamp reference clock, before division by the prescaler, is the lineout clock from the TPIU asynchronous interface, its rate depends on the output encoding scheme, NRZ or Manchester, used by the interface. For more information see *Trace Port Interface Unit* on page C1-897.

Whether an implementation supports asynchronous clocking of local timestamps is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Support requires appropriate functionality in the TPIU. The ARMv7-M TPIU can provide this support, see *Trace Port Interface Unit* on page C1-897.

Global timestamping

When an implementation includes global timestamping, the ITM includes:

- An external ITM timestamp interface, providing:
  - a 48-bit global timestamp count value
  - a clock change signal that the system asserts if there is a change in the ratio:
    (global timestamp clock frequency):(processor clock frequency).

Note

The protocol defined in Appendix D *Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol* supports a maximum global timestamp size of 48 bits. If implemented with a global timestamp counter that is larger than 48 bits, the DWT timestamp packets must carry the least-significant bits of the timestamp values.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- A signal from the DWT block that the block can assert to request generation of a full 48-bit global timestamp. The DWT synchronization timer drives this signal, see *The synchronization packet timer* on page C1-874. This request remains pending until the ITM transmits the requested timestamp.
- The ITM_TCR.GTSFREQ field, to set the frequency of generating global timestamps, or disable global timestamping. For more information see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852.

To output a full 48-bit global timestamp the ITM generates two Global timestamp packets, with different formats. The first packet holds the value of timestamp bits [25:0], and the second packet holds the value of bits [47:26]. It does this:

- when software enables global timestamping, by setting ITM_TCR.GTSFREQ to a nonzero value
- when the system asserts the clock ratio change signal in the external ITM timestamp interface
- in response to a request from the DWT block, see *The synchronization packet timer* on page C1-874
- if, when it has to generate a global timestamp, it detects that the value of bits [47:26] has changed.

Otherwise, it generates only a single Global timestamp packet, compressing the packet by omitting unchanged significant bits if possible.

For more information about the Global timestamp packets and their formats see *Global timestamp packets* on page AppxD-939.

The ITM generates a global timestamp only when the ITM or DWT generates a trace packet that is accepted immediately by the appropriate FIFO. It then outputs the timestamp only if it is not generating or receiving another trace packet. This means a Global timestamp packet always follows immediately after a trace packet that has not been delayed. Following the prioritization scheme described in *Arbitration between packets from different sources* on page C1-848, the ITM never generates a global timestamp if any trace source is stalled.

When the ITM must generate a full 48-bit global timestamp, it first generates the packet with timestamp bits [25:0], with the Wrap bit in that packet set to 1 to indicate that the high-order bits of the timestamp have also changed. This is the packet that the ITM transmits immediately after a non-delayed trace packet. Because of packet prioritization, the ITM might have to transmit other trace packets before it can transmit the packet containing the high-order bits of the global timestamp value. It might also have to transmit another Global timestamp packet. If so, it transmits only a packet with low-order bits, with the Wrap bit again set to 1.

Synchronization support

Synchronization packets are independent of timestamp packets. An external debugger uses Synchronization packets to recover bit-to-byte alignment information in a serial data stream. The following implementations require the ITM to insert Synchronization packets in the data stream:

- a parallel trace port that is dedicated to an ARMv7-M processor
- a system that formats multiple trace streams into a single output.

If software enables Synchronization packets, the ITM generates them regularly, and they can be used as a system heartbeat.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If a system is using an asynchronous serial trace port, ARM recommends it disables Synchronization packets to reduce the data stream bandwidth.

The ITM_TCR.SYNCENA bit enables generation of synchronization packets, see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852. The DWT_CTRL.SYNCTAP field controls the frequency of generation, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

For more information about synchronization and trace formatting see the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

How the ITM relates to other debug components

The ITM combines the following packets into a single trace stream:

- ITM data packets
- Overflow packets
- Local and Global timestamp packets
- Synchronization packets
- DWT data packets, see *The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit* on page C1-856.

Figure C1-7 shows how the ITM relates to other debug components.

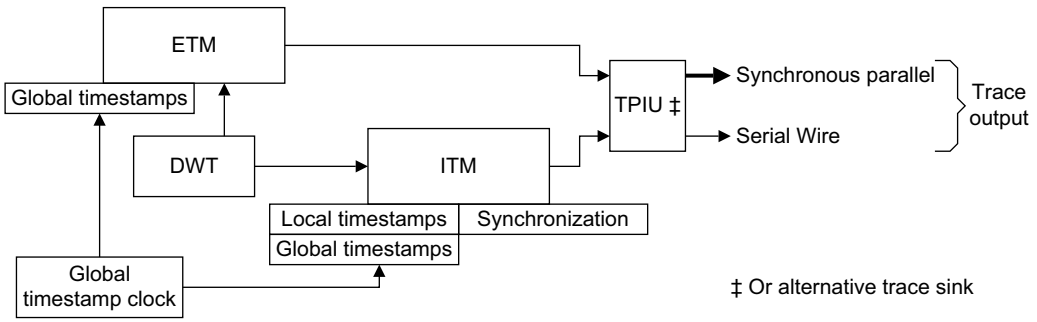


Figure C1-7 Relationship between ITM and other debug components

Arbitration between packets from different sources

When multiple sources are generating data at the same time, the ITM arbitrates using the following priorities:

Synchronization, when required
: Priority level -1, highest

ITM
: Priority level 0

DWT
: Priority level 1

Local timestamps
: Priority level 2

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Global timestamps

Priority level 3, lowest. GST1 packets have higher priority than GST2 packets, see *Global timestamp packets* on page AppxD-939.

This guarantees the highest quality of service for ITM output. The ITM prioritizes this over hardware-generated DWT event packets. The ITM transmits timestamps only when the other source queues are empty.

C1.7.2 ITM register summary

Table C1-14 shows the ITM registers in address order. All registers are 32-bits wide.

Table C1-14 Register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset[a]	Description
0xE0000000-0xE00003FC	ITM_STIMx	RW	UNKNOWN[b]	*Stimulus Port registers, ITM_STIM0 - ITM_STIM255*
0xE0000E00-0xE0000E1C	ITM_TERx	RW	0x00000000	*Trace Enable Registers, ITM_TER0 - ITM_TER7* on page C1-850
0xE0000E40	ITM_TPR	RW	0x00000000	*Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852
0xE0000E80	ITM_TCR	RW	-[b]	*Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852
0xE0000FB4	ITM_LSR	RO	0x00000000	Lock Status Register, required for CoreSight compliance. See Table A-2 on page AppxA-915
0xE0000FD0-0xE0000FFC	-	-	-	ID space, see Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs* for more information.

a. Reset values apply to Power-on reset only, not to Local reset.
b. See register description for more information.

C1.7.3 Stimulus Port registers, ITM_STIM0 - ITM_STIM255

The ITM_STIMx register characteristics are:

Purpose Provide the interface for generating instrumentation messages.

Usage constraints

- Accessible by word-aligned byte, halfword, and word accesses.
- The number of ITM_STIM registers is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED multiple of eight, see *Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852.
- When DEMCR.TRCENA is 0, the ITM_STIM registers are UNKNOWN on reads and ignore writes.

Configurations Always implemented.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Attributes See Table C1-14 on page C1-849, and the register field descriptions. The address of ITM_STIM*n* is (0xE0000000 + 4*n*).

Figure C1-8 shows the ITM_STIMx bit assignments.

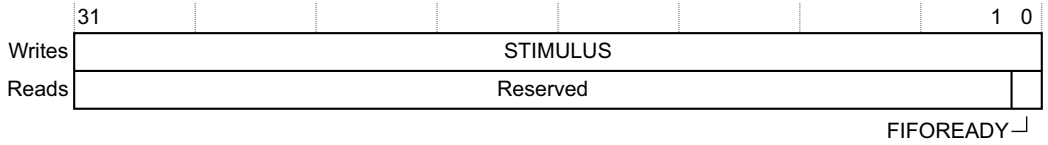


Figure C1-8 ITM_STIMx register bit assignments

Table C1-15 shows the ITM_STIMx bit assignments.

Table C1-15 ITM_STIMx register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[31:0]	STIMULUS	WO	Data write to the stimulus port FIFO, for forwarding as a software event packet.
[31:1]	-	RO	Reserved.
[0]	FIFOREADY	RO	Indicates whether the stimulus port FIFO can accept data. 0: Stimulus port FIFO full, or port disabled. 1: Stimulus port FIFO can accept at least one word. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.

C1.7.4 Trace Enable Registers, ITM_TER0 - ITM_TER7

The ITM_TERx characteristics are:

Purpose Provide an individual enable bit for each ITM_STIM register.

Usage constraints
- Each ITM_TER provides enable bits for 32 ITM_STIM registers.
- Bits corresponding to unimplemented ITM_STIM registers are RAZ/WI. See *Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852 for information about the number of implemented ITM_STIM registers.
- The processor ignores any unprivileged write to an ITM_TERx bit if the corresponding ITM_TPR.PRIVMASK bit is set to 1, see *Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-14 on page C1-849.

Figure C1-9 on page C1-851 shows the ITM_TERx bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

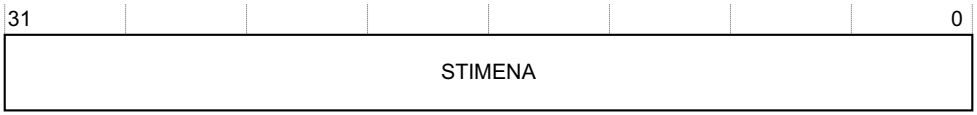


Figure C1-9 ITM_TERx bit assignments

Table C1-16 shows the ITM_TERx bit assignments.

Table C1-16 ITM_TER*x* bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	STIMENA	For bit STIMENA[*n*], in register ITM_TER*x*: 0 = Stimulus port (32*x* + *n*) disabled 1 = Stimulus port (32*x* + *n*) enabled

Table C1-17 Mapping between ITM_TERs, stimulus ports, and ITM_STIMs

ITM_TER	Stimulus ports	ITM_STIMs
ITM_TER0	0 - 31	ITM_STIM0 - ITM_STIM31
ITM_TER1	32 - 63	ITM_STIM32 - ITM_STIM63
ITM_TER2	64 - 95	ITM_STIM64 - ITM_STIM95
ITM_TER3	96 - 127	ITM_STIM96 - ITM_STIM127
ITM_TER4	128 - 159	ITM_STIM128 - ITM_STIM159
ITM_TER5	160 - 191	ITM_STIM160 - ITM_STIM191
ITM_TER6	192 - 223	ITM_STIM192 - ITM_STIM223
ITM_TER7	224 - 255	ITM_STIM224 - ITM_STIM255

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.7.5 Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR

The ITM_TPR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls which stimulus ports can be accessed by unprivileged code.

Usage constraints
- Each register bit controls access to eight stimulus ports.
- The number of implemented stimulus ports is a multiple of eight. Implemented stimulus ports number consecutively from 0.
- Bits corresponding to unimplemented stimulus ports are RAZ/WI.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-14 on page C1-849.

Figure C1-10 shows the ITM_TPR bit assignments.



Figure C1-10 ITM_TPR bit assignments

Table C1-18 shows the ITM_TPR bit assignments.

Table C1-18 ITM_TPR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	PRIVMASK	Bit mask to enable unprivileged access to ITM stimulus ports. Bit [*n*] of PRIVMASK controls stimulus ports 8*n* to 8*n*+7: 0 = Unprivileged access permitted. 1 = Privileged access only.

See *ITM operation* on page C1-843 for a description of using ITM_TPR to determine the number of implemented stimulus ports.

C1.7.6 Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR

The ITM_TCR characteristics are:

Purpose Configures and controls transfers through the ITM interface.

Usage constraints For information about constraints that apply in a system that supports multiple trace streams see *CoreSight requirements for the TraceBusID field* on page C1-855.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-14 on page C1-849, and the field descriptions in Table C1-19.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure C1-11 shows the ITM_TCR bit assignments.

Note

Early versions of this specification called the ITM_TCR.TXENA bit the DWTENA bit. The new name more accurately indicates the effect of setting this bit to 1.

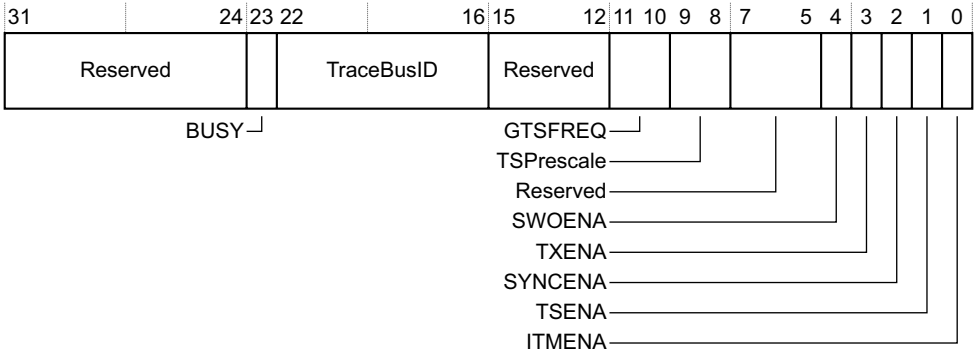


Figure C1-11 ITM_TCR bit assignments

Table C1-19 shows the ITM_TCR bit assignments.

Table C1-19 ITM_TCR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	-	Reserved
[23]	RO	BUSY	Indicates whether the ITM is currently processing events: 0: ITM is not processing any events. 1: ITM events present and being drained.
[22:16]	RW	TraceBusID	Identifier for multi-source trace stream formatting. If multi-source trace is in use, the debugger must write a non-zero value to this field. For more information see *CoreSight requirements for the TraceBusID field* on page C1-855. On a Power-on reset, the value of this field is UNKNOWN.
[15:12]	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-19 ITM_TCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[11:10]	RW	GTSFREQ	Global timestamp frequency. Defines how often the ITM generates a global timestamp, based on the global timestamp clock frequency, or disables generation of global timestamps. The possible values are: 00: Disable generation of global timestamps. 01: Generate timestamp request whenever the ITM detects a change in global timestamp counter bits [47:7]. This is approximately every 128 cycles. 10: Generate timestamp request whenever the ITM detects a change in global timestamp counter bits [47:13]. This is approximately every 8192 cycles. 11: Generate a timestamp after every packet, if the output FIFO is empty. For more information see *Global timestamping* on page C1-846. A Power-on reset clears this field to zero. If the implementation does not support global timestamping then these bits are reserved, RAZ/WI.
[9:8]	RW	TSPrescale	Local timestamp prescaler, used with the trace packet reference clock. The possible values are: 00: No prescaling. 01: Divide by 4. 10: Divide by 16. 11: Divide by 64. If implemented, a Power-on reset clears this field to zero. If the processor does not implement the timestamp prescaler then these bits are reserved, RAZ/WI.
[7:5]	-	-	Reserved
[4]	RW	SWOENA	Enables asynchronous clocking of the timestamp counter: 0: Timestamp counter uses the processor system clock. 1: Timestamp counter uses asynchronous clock from the TPIU interface. The timestamp counter is held in reset while the output line is idle. Which clocking modes are implemented is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. If the implementation does not support both modes this bit is either RAZ or RAO, to indicate the implemented mode. When this is a RW bit, on a Power-on reset, the value of this bit is UNKNOWN
[3]	RW	TXENA	Enables forwarding of hardware event packet from the DWT unit to the TPIU: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-19 ITM_TCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[2]	RW	SYNCENA	Enables Synchronization packet transmission for a synchronous TPIU: 0: Disabled. 1: Enabled. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0. **Note** If a debugger sets this bit to 1 it must also configure DWT_CTRL.SYNCTAP for the correct synchronization speed, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.
[1]	RW	TSENA	Enables Local timestamp generation: 0: Disabled. 1: Enabled. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.
[0]	RW	ITMENA	Enables the ITM: 0: Disabled. 1: Enabled. This is the master enable for the ITM block. A debugger must set this bit to 1 to permit writes to all Stimulus Port registers. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.

For more information about ITM operation and the ITM_TCR fields see *ITM operation* on page C1-843.

CoreSight requirements for the TraceBusID field

If a system supports multiple trace streams, the debugger must write a nonzero value to the ITM_TCR.TraceBusID field. For information about permitted values for this field in a CoreSight-compliant implementation, see the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*. The system uses this value to identify the ITM and DWT trace stream. To avoid trace stream corruption, before modifying the ITM_TCR.TraceBusID a debugger must:

1. Clear the ITM_TCR.ITMENA bit to 0, to disable the ITM.
2. Poll the ITM_TCR.BUSY bit until it returns 0, indicating that the ITM is inactive.

An example of a system with multiple trace streams is an ARMv7-M core with ETM. In this case, the debugger must program the ETM TraceBusID register with a different nonzero identifier for the ETM trace stream. See the *Embedded Trace macrocell Architecture Specification* for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8 The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit

The *Data Watchpoint and Trace* (DWT) unit provides the following:

- comparators, that support:
  - watchpoints, that cause the processor to enter Debug state or take a DebugMonitor exception
  - data tracing
  - signalling for use with an external resource, for example an ETM
  - PC value tracing
  - cycle count matching.
- additional PC sampling:
  - PC sample trace output as a result of a cycle count event
  - external PC sampling using a PC sample register.
- exception trace
- performance profiling counters.

Which DWT features are supported is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See *Debug support in ARMv7-M* on page C1-812 for information on how to determine the level of DWT support in an implementation.

Many DWT operations generate DWT trace data, using the packet protocol described in Appendix D *Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol*. The DWT forwards these packets to the ITM for transmission, see *How the ITM relates to other debug components* on page C1-848. Software must set the ITM_TCR.TXENA bit to 1 to enable transmission of these DWT packets, see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852.

Note

Transmission of packets generated by the ITM or the DWT unit requires the processor to implement and enable the cycle counter, indicated by DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT being RAZ, and DWT_CTRL.CYCCNTENA being set to 1, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

The following sections describe the operation of the different features of the DWT block:

- *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857
- *Exception trace support* on page C1-871
- *CYCCNT cycle counter and related timers* on page C1-871
- *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875
- *Exception trace support* on page C1-871

DWT register summary on page C1-878 summarizes the DWT unit registers, and the remaining subsections in this section describe each of the DWT registers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.1 The DWT comparators

The DWT unit can include between 0 and 15 comparators. The DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP field indicates the number of implemented comparators, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

When a DWT implementation includes one or more comparators, which comparator features are supported is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. *Checking the implemented features of the DWT comparators* on page C1-870 describes how software can find which features are supported. The remainder of this summary describes an implementation that includes all features.

A DWT comparator compares one of the following with the value held in its DWT_COMP register:

- a data address
- an instruction address
- a data value
- the cycle count value, for comparator 0 only.

For address matching, the comparator can use a mask, so it matches a range of addresses.

On a successful match, the comparator generates one of the following:

- One or more DWT Data trace packets, containing one or more of:
  - the address of the instruction that caused a data access
  - an address offset, bits[15:0] of the data access address
  - the matched data value.
- A watchpoint debug event, on either the PC value or the accessed data address.
- A **CMPMATCH[N]** event, that signals the match outside the DWT unit.

A watchpoint debug event either generates a DebugMonitor exception, or causes the processor to halt execution and enter Debug state.

For each implemented comparator, a set of registers define the comparator operation. For comparator *n*:

- DWT_COMP*n* holds a value for comparison, see *Comparator registers, DWT_COMPn* on page C1-891.
- For address comparisons, DWT_MASK*n* holds a mask for use when comparing with the value of DWT_COMP*n*, see *Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892. Using a mask means the comparator matches on a range of addresses, defined by the unmasked most-significant bits of the address.
- DWT_FUNCTION*n* defines the operation of the comparator, see *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893. This definition includes:
  - Whether the comparison is an access address comparison, a data value comparison, or, for comparator 0 only, a cycle count comparison.
  - For a data value comparison, the size of the data unit to compare, byte, halfword, or word.
  - Whether this comparator is linked with another comparator, to define a more complex comparison, for example a comparison of both the instruction address and the associated data value.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— For implemented comparators up to and including comparator 3, whether a successful address comparison generates a DWT Data trace packet. See *Data trace packets discriminator IDs 8-23* on page AppxD-947 for more information about these packets.

— The comparator function. That is, the type of comparison to make and the action to take if the comparison succeeds. For more information see *Summary of DWT comparator functions*.

When multiple comparator matches occur on execution of an instruction, the DWT always generates any required watchpoint event or **CMPMATCH[N]** event. However it is UNPREDICTABLE whether it generates Data trace packets.

If a comparator match requires the DWT to generate a Data trace packet, but it cannot do so because the DWT output buffer is full, the ITM generates an Overflow packet, see *Overflow packet* on page AppxD-935.

Summary of DWT comparator functions

The DWT_FUNCTION register defines the required operation of the comparator. The following fields together define the required function:

- DATAVMATCH, bit [8]
- CYCMATCH, bit [7]. On all comparators except comparator 0, the CYCMATCH bit is UNK/SBZP.
- FUNCTION, bits [3:0].

For some functions, other fields in the DWT_FUNCTION register give more information about the required operation. shows how the DATAVMATCH and CYCMATCH fields define the required comparison type, and the use of the corresponding DWT_MASK and DWT_COMP registers, and references subsections that describe how the FUNCTION field defines the supported comparisons of that type.

Table C1-20 DWT_FUNCTION register comparison type definition

DWT_FUNCTION bits:		Comparison type and DWT_COMP use	DWT_MASK use	Functions
DATAVMATCH	CYCMATCH			
0	0	Address	Mask value	See *Address comparison functions* on page C1-859
0	1 [a]	Cycle count	SBZ	See *Cycle count comparison functions* on page C1-863
1 [b]	0	Data value	SBZ	See *Data value comparison functions* on page C1-864
1 [b]	1 [a]	-	-	Operation is UNPREDICTABLE

a. On comparator 0 only, and only if the implementation supports cycle count comparison, otherwise, DWT_FUNCTION.CYCMATCH is UNK/SBZP.
b. Only if the comparator supports data value matching, otherwise, DWT_FUNCTION.DATVMATCH is RAZ/WI.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Address comparison functions

Software selects these functions by setting DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVMATCH to 0 and, for comparator 0, DWT_FUNCTION0.CYCMATCH to 0.

For these functions:

- The DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION field defines the required access types to be compared:
  - — data accesses, or instruction accesses
  - — read accesses, write accesses, or read and write accesses.

  It also defines the action performed on a successful match.
- For some functions, the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.EMITRANGE bit affects the action performed on a successful match
- The comparator compares the address of each memory access of the type specified by the FUNCTION field with the value held in the corresponding DWT_COMP register. If the values match it performs the specified operation.
- Software can program a comparator to match on a range of addresses by:
  - — programming DWT_COMP with the most significant address bits required for the match, with the least significant bits programmed as zeros
  - — programming DWT_MASK with a corresponding mask size, to be applied to the access address when making the comparison.

  For example, to match on a 16-byte block of addresses software must:
  - — program DWT_COMP bits [31:4] with the value of the most significant bits of the required addresses, and bits [3:0] as 0b0000.
  - — program DWT_MASK with a value of four, to mask address bits [3:0] from the comparison.
- The DWT_FUNCTION*n* DATAVADDR1, DATAVADDR0, and DATAVSIZE fields are all SBZ. Operation is UNPREDICTABLE if software programs any of these fields to a non-zero value.

Table C1-21 on page C1-860 shows the supported address comparison functions. In this table, in the *Compared accesses* column:

- Daddr indicates that the comparator compares the address for data accesses
- Iaddr indicates that the comparator compares the address for instruction fetches
- RO indicates that the comparator compares the address only for read accesses
- WO indicates that the comparator compares the address only for read accesses
- RW indicates that the comparator compares the address for read and write accesses.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-21 DWT address comparison functions

DWT_FUNCTION*n* fields		Compared accesses		Action on successful match
FUNCTION	EMITRANGE			
0000	x	-	-	Comparator disabled, or part of a LinkAddr[a] comparison
0001	0	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace PC value packet[b]
	1	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace address offset packet[b]
0010	0	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace data value packet[b]
	1	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace address offset and data value packets[b]
0011	0	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace PC value and data value packets[b]
	1	Daddr	RW	Generate Data trace address offset and data value packets[b]
0100	x	Iaddr	-	Generate PC watchpoint debug event[c]
0101	x	Daddr	RO	Generate watchpoint debug event[c]
0110	x	Daddr	WO	Generate watchpoint debug event[c]
0111	x	Daddr	RW	Generate watchpoint debug event[c]
1000	x	Iaddr	-	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[d]
1001	x	Daddr	RO	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[d]
1010	x	Daddr	WO	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[d]
1011	x	Daddr	RW	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[d]
1100	0	Daddr	RO	Generate Data trace data value packet[b]
	1	Daddr	RO	Generate Data trace address offset packet[b]
1101	0	Daddr	WO	Generate Data trace data value packet[b]
	1	Daddr	WO	Generate Data trace address offset packet[b]

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-21 DWT address comparison functions (continued)

DWT_FUNCTION*n* fields		Compared accesses		Action on successful match
FUNCTION	EMITRANGE			
1110	0	Daddr	RO	Generate Data trace PC value and data value packets[b]
	1	Daddr	RO	Generate Data trace address offset and data value packets[b]
1111	0	Daddr	WO	Generate Data trace PC value and data value packets[b]
	1	Daddr	WO	Generate Data trace address offset and data value packets[b]

a. For more information see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. In this case, this comparator compares the data access address, and the linked data value comparator defines the action taken when both comparators match.
b. For more information, see *Data trace packet generation* on page C1-869.
c. For more information, see *Watchpoint debug event generation* on page C1-869.
d. For more information, see *CMPMATCH[N] event generation* on page C1-870.

Comparator behavior for instruction address matching

All comparators support instruction address matching. Comparator operation is UNPREDICTABLE unless:

- if masking is not used, the DWT_COMP*n* value is halfword aligned
- if masking is used, the DWT_COMP*n* value is the masked address for comparison.

If software sets a match on the address of a `NOP` or `IT` instruction, whether the event occurs or not is UNPREDICTABLE.

The following pseudocode shows the comparator behavior for instruction address matching:

```
// InstructionAddressMatch()
// =========================

boolean InstructionAddressMatch(integer N, bits(32) Iaddr)

    if DWT_FUNCTION[N]<3:0> == '0100' then                // condition for selecting Iaddr
        // UNPREDICTABLE if COMP does not meet alignment and masking conditions
        mask = ZeroExtend(Ones(UInt(DWT_MASK[N]<4:0>)), 32);
        if !IsZero(DWT_COMP[N] AND mask) || !IsZero(DWT_COMP[N]<0>) then UNPREDICTABLE;
        match = (Iaddr AND NOT(mask) == DWT_COMP[N]);
    else
        match = FALSE;
    return match;
```

Comparator behavior for data address matching

A data address comparison can be linked to a data value comparison, see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. If so, a match occurs only if both the data address comparison and the data value comparison succeed, and this subsection defines only the behavior of the data address comparison.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

For a data address comparison, the implementation must address test all memory accesses of the specified type, RO, WO, or RW, for which the range of watched addresses lies between the start address of the transaction and the next word aligned address. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the comparison matches some or all unaligned memory accesses that access a watched location across a word boundary.

The following pseudocode shows the comparator behavior for data address matching:

```
enumeration sizeofaccess (byte, halfword, word);
boolean validDaddr;       // conditions for selecting Daddr from
                          // ...configuraton of the relevant DWT_FUNCTIONx register
if validDaddr then
    match = DataAddressMatch(N, Daddr, Dsize);
    return match;


// DataAddressMatch()
// ==================

boolean DataAddressMatch(integer N, bits(32) address, sizeofaccess size)

    // UNPREDICTABLE if the base compare address is not properly aligned
    mask = ZeroExtend(Ones(UInt(DWT_MASK[N]<4:0>)), 32);

    // compute start and end addresses of compared region
    comp_start = DWT_COMP[N]<31:0>;
    if !IsZero(comp_start AND mask) then UNPREDICTABLE;
    comp_end = comp_start + mask;

    // compute start and end addresses of access
    access_start = address;
    case size of
        when word
            access_end = access_start + 3;
        when halfword
            access_end = access_start + 1;
        when byte
            access_end = access_start;

    // Implementations can terminate matching on a word aligned address boundary > access_start
    if (IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED condition) then
        temp = ((access_end + 1) & ~3) - 1;
        if (temp > access_start) then
            access_end = temp;

    match = (access_start >= comp_start && access_start <= comp_end) ||
            (access_end   >= comp_start && access_end   <= comp_end) ||
            (access_start <= comp_start && access_end   >= comp_end);
    return match;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Cycle count comparison functions

Comparator 0 supports cycle count comparisons only if the DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT bit is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879. Other comparators never support cycle count comparisons.

When comparator 0 supports cycle count comparisons, software selects these functions by setting DWT_FUNCTION0.DATAVMATCH to 0 and DWT_FUNCTION0.CYCMATCH to 1.

For these functions:

- The DWT_FUNCTION0.FUNCTION field defines action performed on a successful match.
- For each instruction committed for execution, the comparator compares the current cycle count value with the value in the DWT_COMP0 register. If the values match it performs the required function.
- The DWT_FUNCTION0 DATAVADDR1, DATAVADDR0, DATAVSIZE, and EMITRANGE fields are all SBZ. Operation is UNPREDICTABLE if software programs any of these fields to a non-zero value and a match occurs.
- The DWT_MASK register is SBZ. Operation is UNPREDICTABLE if software programs this register to a non-zero value and a match occurs.

Table C1-22 shows the cycle count comparison functions.

When DWT_FUNCTION0.DATAVMATCH is set to 0 and DWT_FUNCTION0.CYCMATCH is set to 1, software must programs the FUNCTION field to a value with an effect, as shown in Table C1-22, that is not UNPREDICTABLE.

Table C1-22 DWT cycle count comparison functions

DWT_FUNCTION0.FUNCTION	Action on successful match
0000	Comparator disabled
0001	Generate Data trace PC value packet[a]
001x	UNPREDICTABLE
0100	Generate watchpoint debug event[b]
0101	UNPREDICTABLE
011x	UNPREDICTABLE
1000	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[c]
1001	UNPREDICTABLE

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-22 DWT cycle count comparison functions (continued)

DWT_FUNCTION0.FUNCTION	Action on successful match
101x	UNPREDICTABLE
11xx	UNPREDICTABLE

a. For more information, see *Data trace packet generation* on page C1-869.
b. For more information, see *Watchpoint debug event generation* on page C1-869.
c. For more information, see *CMPMATCH[N] event generation* on page C1-870.

Comparator behavior for cycle count matching

The following pseudocode shows the comparator behavior for cycle count matching:

Note

The DWT_CRTRL.NOCYCCNT bit field is RAO when the implementation does not support cycle counter comparison. In this case `validCYCMATCH` is always FALSE.

```
boolean validCYCMATCH; // conditions for selecting CYCCNT from
                       // ... configuration of the DWT_FUNCTION0 register
if validCYCMATCH then
    match = (CYCCNT == DWT_COMP0);
    return match;
```

Data value comparison functions

Software selects these functions by setting DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVMATCH to 1 and, for comparator 0, DWT_FUNCTION0.CYCMATCH to 0. Not all comparators support data value comparisons. If a comparator does not support data value comparison, DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVMATCH is RAZ/WI.

The registers that support data value comparisons, if any, must be sequentially-numbered comparators starting at comparator 0.

For these functions:

- The DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION field defines whether the comparison is made for read accesses, write accesses, or read and write accesses. It also defines the action performed on a successful match.
- The DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATASIZE field specifies the size of the required data comparison, word, halfword, or byte:
  - software must program DWT_COMP*n* with the required data match value, in little-endian order
  - for halfword comparisons software must program the required match value into both halfwords of DWT_COMP*n*

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— for byte comparisons software must program the required match value into each byte of DWT_COMP*n*.

- The comparator compares the value memory accesses of the type specified by the FUNCTION field with the value held in the corresponding DWT_COMP register. If the values match it performs the specified operation.

  Software can use the LinkAddr feature to restrict data value comparison to particular memory addresses, see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. Otherwise, the comparator tests the data value for all data accesses of the specified type.

  LinkAddr support on page C1-868 also describes how DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA indicates the programming options for the DATAVADDR0 and DATAVADDR1 fields.

- The DWT_FUNCTION*n*.EMITRANGE bit is SBZ. Operation is UNPREDICTABLE if software programs this bit to 1 and a match occurs.

- The DWT_MASK*n* register is SBZ. Operation is UNPREDICTABLE if software programs this register to a non-zero value and a match occurs.

Table C1-21 on page C1-860 shows the supported data value comparison functions. In the *Compared accesses* column of this table:

- RO indicates that the comparator compares the address only for read accesses
- WO indicates that the comparator compares the address only for read accesses
- RW indicates that the comparator compares the address for read and write accesses.

Table C1-23 DWT data value comparison functions

DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION	Compared accesses	Action on successful match
0000	-	Disabled
00x1	-	UNPREDICTABLE
001x	-	UNPREDICTABLE
0100	-	UNPREDICTABLE
0101	RO	Generate watchpoint debug event[a]
0110	WO	Generate watchpoint debug event[a]
0111	RW	Generate watchpoint debug event[a]
1000	-	UNPREDICTABLE
1001	RO	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[b]

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-23 DWT data value comparison functions (continued)

DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION	Compared accesses	Action on successful match
1010	WO	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[b]
1011	RW	Generate **CMPMATCH[N]** event[b]
11xx	-	UNPREDICTABLE

a. For more information, see *Watchpoint debug event generation* on page C1-869.
b. For more information, see *CMPMATCH[N] event generation* on page C1-870.

Comparator behavior for data value matching

Data value matching generates a match where the data value in the DWT_COMP*n* register is the same as the data access value, or is a partial match if the size of the data access is larger than that specified in the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVSIZE field.

A data value comparison can be linked to an address comparison, see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. If it is, whether the data value matching is exact on the data address is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. If matching is exact, a match is generated only if the data value in DWT_COMP*n* precisely matches the value in memory at the address specified in the linked address comparator DWT_COMP*m*. In an implementation that permits inexact matches, the conditions that generate an inexact match are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
Example C1-1 shows the difference between exact and inexact matching.

Example C1-1 Exact and inexact dependence on a linked address comparison

If DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVSIZE specifies a halfword comparison, and linked address comparator DWT_COMP*m* defines a halfword-aligned address with DWT_MASK*m* specifying a 1-bit address mask, then:

- An exact match matches only an access where the halfword at address DWT_COMP*m* is accessed with the value DWT_COMP*n*.
- An inexact match can match a word access that:
  - accesses either or both bytes of [DWT_COMP*m*]:[(DWT_COMP*m*)+1]
  - transfers a value in which bits [15:0], bits [23:8], or bits [31:16] match DWT_COMP*n*, even if this value is not the value at memory address DWT_COMP*m*.

The following pseudocode shows the comparator behavior for inexact data matching:

```
boolean validVMATCH;    // conditions for selecting data value matching from
                        //  ... configuration of the relevant DWT_FUNCTIONx register

if validVMATCH then
   addrmatch1 = addrmatch2 = FALSE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
doaddrmatch1 = (DWT_FUNCTION[N].LNK1ENA == '1' && UInt(DWT_FUNCTION[N].DATAVADDR1) != N);
addrmatch1 = doaddrmatch1 && DataAddressMatch(UInt(DWT_FUNCTION[N].DATAVADDR1), Daddr, Dsize);

doaddrmatch2 = (UInt(DWT_FUNCTION[N].DATAVADDR0) != N);
addrmatch2 = doaddrmatch2 && DataAddressMatch(UInt(DWT_FUNCTION[N].DATAVADDR0), Daddr, Dsize);

bits(8*Dsize) data = MemU[Daddr, Dsize];
case DWT_FUNCTION[N]<11:10> of
     when '00'
         case Dsize of
             when 1
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<7:0>);
             when 2
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<7:0> ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<15:8>);
             when 4
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<7:0>   ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<15:8>  ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<23:16> ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<7:0> == data<31:24>);

     when '01'
         case Dsize of
             when 1
                 data_match = FALSE;
             when 2
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<15:0> == data<15:0>);
             when 4
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<15:0> == data<15:0>  ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<15:0> == data<23:8>  ||
                               DWT_COMP[N]<15:0> == data<31:16>);

     when '10'
         case Dsize of
             when 1
                 data_match = FALSE;
             when 2
                 data_match = FALSE;
             when 4
                 data_match = (DWT_COMP[N]<31:0> == data<31:0>);

     when '11'
         data_match = UNKNOWN;

 if (doaddressmatch1 || doaddressmatch2) then
     match = (addrmatch1 || addrmatch2) && data_match;
 else
     match = data_match;
 return match;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

LinkAddr support

If a comparator supports and is configured for data value comparisons, it has two options for when it tests for a match:

- On all data accesses, or all read or write accesses if it is configured for RO or WO comparisons.
- Only if the address of the access matches the address specified by another comparator, or in either of two other comparators. This is the LinkAddr option.

If comparator *n* is a comparator that supports and is configured for a data value comparison, software can set the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 field to specify the number of a comparator that defines an address match to use with the data match. Only if both comparators match does the DWT block perform the action specified by the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION field.

In addition, if the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA bit is RAO, software can set the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR1 field to specify the number of another comparator that defines a second address match to use with the data match. In this case the DWT block perform the action specified by the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.FUNCTION field if the data comparator matches and either of the address comparators matches.

Note

For a comparator that supports data address comparison, DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA is a RO bit. For any other comparator, DWT_FUNCTION*m*.LNK1ENA is RAZ/WI.

If *m* is a comparator that defines a linked address comparison for use with a data value comparison, software must program the DWT_FUNCTION*m*.FUNCTION field to zero. It can also program DWT_MASK*m*.MASK to a non-zero value, so that the linked address comparator matches on a range of address values.

When comparator *n* supports and is configured for a data value comparison, and the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA bit is RAZ, the programming options are:

To match on any access of the specified type, RO, WO, or RW

Program DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 to *n*.

To match on an access of the specified type only if an address comparison also matches

Program DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 to *m*, the number of the comparator that specifies the required address match.

When comparator *n* supports and is configured for a data value comparison, and the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA bit is RAO, the programming options are:

To match on any access of the specified type, RO, WO, or RW

Program both DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 and DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR1 to *n*.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

To match on an access of the specified type only if a single address comparison also matches

Program both DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 and DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR1 to *m*, the number of the comparator that specifies the required address match.

To match on an access of the specified type if either of two address comparisons also matches

Program DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR0 to *m*, the number of the comparator that specifies the first possible address match.

Program DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVADDR1 to *p*, the number of the comparator that specifies the second possible address match.

See *Comparator behavior for data address matching* on page C1-861 for more information.

Data trace packet generation

Some DWT comparator functions program the comparator to generate one or more Data trace packets on a successful comparison.*Data trace packets discriminator IDs 8-23* on page AppxD-947 describes the format of these packets. When DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT is RAO, the effect of a successful comparison by a comparator configured to generate a Data trace packet is UNPREDICTABLE.

When a comparator function generates a Data trace PC value packet, the PC value returned in the packet is the address of the instruction that made the access.

When a comparator function generates a Data trace address offset packet, the packet holds bits [15:0] of the matched data address.

Watchpoint debug event generation

When a successful comparison match generates a watchpoint debug event this either:

- Generates a DebugMonitor exception.
- Halts execution, causing the processor to enter Debug state. The address of the next instruction to execute on exiting Debug state, the DebugReturnAddress, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, but must be an instruction that, in a simple sequential execution of the program, the processor would execute after the instruction that triggered the watchpoint. For more information see *Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-834

Note

If both halting debug and the debug monitor are disabled, the processor ignores the watchpoint debug event.

A PC or data address watchpoint occurs on comparing the PC value or data address with the DWT_COMP*n* value, and can use a DWT_MASK*n* value to match on a range of addresses. A data value watchpoint matches only on a specific value of the specified size, and cannot use DWT_MASK*n*.

A watchpoint debug event is asynchronous to the instruction that caused it. The exception model treats debug watchpoint events in the same way it treats interrupts.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

CMPMATCH[N] event generation

Generating a **CMPMATCH[N]** event means the DWT unit uses **CMPMATCH[N]** to signal the event. If the implementation includes an ETM then **CMPMATCH[N]** is an input to the ETM. Other than its connection to an ETM, use of **CMPMATCH[N]** is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, and an implementation might provide external **CMPMATCH[N]** pins. If DWT_CTRL.NOEXTTRIG is RAO, the effect of a successful comparison by a comparator configured to generate a **CMPMATCH[N]** event is UNPREDICTABLE.

Checking the implemented features of the DWT comparators

Most features of the DWT comparators are optional. This section summarizes how software can check what features the implemented comparators support.

Implementation of comparators, and number of comparators

The DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP field indicates the number of implemented comparators. The value is zero if the DWT block does not support comparators.

Note

All implemented comparators must support address comparisons.

Support for cycle count comparison, comparator 0 only

The DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT bit indicates whether comparator 0 supports cycle count comparisons. If this bit is RAZ, comparator 0 supports cycle count comparisons.

Note

Cycle count comparison is possible only when the cycle counter is enabled. Software sets DWT_CTRL.CYCCNTENA to 1 to enable the cycle counter.

Support for data value comparison

To check whether comparator *n* supports data value comparison, software must write 1 to the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.DATAVMATCH bit, and then read the DWT_FUNCTION*n* register and check whether the bit reads as 1. If it does, the comparator supports data value comparison.

The comparators that support data value comparison, if any, start at comparator 0 and number upwards sequentially.

Number of linked address comparators, for a comparator that supports data value comparison

If comparator *n* supports data value comparison, the DWT_FUNCTION*n*.LNK1ENA bit indicates whether the comparator supports one or two linked address comparators:

- If LNK1ENA is 0, the comparator supports only one linked address comparator, specified by the DATAVADDR0 field. The DATAVADDR1 field is RAZ/WI.
- If LNK1ENA is 1, the comparator supports two linked address comparators, specified by the DATAVADDR0 and DATAVADDR1 fields.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Maximum size of the address comparison mask

To find the maximum size of the address comparison mask for comparator *n*, software must write 0b11111 to the DWT_MASK*n*.MASK field, and then read the DWT_MASK*n* register. The value returned in the MASK field is the maximum mask size.

Generation of Data trace packets

The DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT bit indicates whether the DWT supports generation of Data trace packets. If this bit is 0, the DWT can generate these packets. The comparators can generate Data trace packets only if the cycle counter is implemented and enabled, indicated by DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT being RAZ and DWT_CTRL.CYCCNTENA being set to 1.

In addition, the ITM transmits DWT trace packets only if software sets the ITM_TCR.TXENA bit to 1.

Generation of CMPMATCH[N] events

The DWT_CTRL.NOEXTTRIG bit indicates whether the DWT supports generation of **CMPMATCH[N]** events. If this bit is RAZ, the DWT can generate these events.

For descriptions of the registers referred to in this subsection see:

- *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879
- *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893
- *Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892
- *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852.

C1.8.2 Exception trace support

Exception trace support is an optional debug feature. The DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT bit is RAZ if the implementation includes exception trace support, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879

If it is supported, software enables exception tracing by setting the DWT_CTRL.EXCTRCENA bit to 1, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879. When exception tracing is enabled, the DWT generates an Exception trace packet when any of the following occurs:

- The processor enters an exception handler, from Thread mode or by preemption of a thread or handler. See *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643.
- The processor exits an exception handler with an EXC_RETURN vector. See *Exception return behavior* on page B1-652.
- The processor returns from an exception, re-entering a preempted thread or handler code sequence.

For more information about the exception trace packet see *Exception trace packets, discriminator ID1* on page AppxD-945.

C1.8.3 CYCCNT cycle counter and related timers

CYCCNT is an optional free-running 32-bit cycle counter. If the DWT unit implements CYCCNT then the DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT bit is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

When implemented and enabled, CYCCNT increments on each cycle of the processor clock. When the counter overflows it wraps to zero, transparently.

CYCCNT does not increment when the processor is halted in Debug state.

The DWT_CTRL.CYCCNTENA bit enables the CYCCNT counter. Software can access the DWT_CYCCNT register to read the current value of CYCCNT, or to set the CYCCNT value, see *Cycle Count register, DWT_CYCCNT* on page C1-884.

The DWT unit obtains two other timers from CYCCNT, see:

- *The POSTCNT timer*
- *The synchronization packet timer* on page C1-874.

Note

Software that uses the CYCCNT counter for profiling must be aware that:

- when CYCCNT overflows it wraps transparently to zero
- disabling or enabling CYCCNT, or changing its value, affects the POSTCNT and synchronization packet timers.

The POSTCNT timer

POSTCNT is a 4-bit countdown counter derived from CYCCNT, that acts as a timer for periodic generation of Periodic PC sample packets or Event counter packets, when these packets are enabled.

Note

Periodic PC sample packets are not the same as the Data trace PC value packets that are generated by the DWT comparators. For the differences in the packet formats, see:

- *Periodic PC sample packets, discriminator ID2* on page AppxD-946
- *Data trace PC value packet format* on page AppxD-949.

The DWT does not support generation of Periodic PC sample packets or Event counter packets if:

- it does not implement the CYCCNT timer
- DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT is RAO, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

The DWT_CTRL.CYCTAP bit selects the CYCCNT tap bit for POSTCNT, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879. Table C1-28 on page C1-878 shows the effect of this bit:

Table C1-24 CYCCNT tap bit for POSTCNT timer

CYCTAP bit	CYCCNT tap at	POSTCNT clock rate
0	Bit [6]	(Processor clock)/64
1	Bit [10]	(Processor clock)/1024

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

When software enables use of the POSTCNT timer, the processor loads the initial POSTCNT value from the DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field.

Subsequently whenever the CYCCNT tap bit transitions, either from 0 to 1 or from 1 to 0:

- if POSTCNT holds a nonzero value, POSTCNT decrements by 1
- if POSTCNT is zero, the DWT unit:
  - reloads POSTCNT from DWT_CTRL.POSTPRESET
  - generates the required Periodic PC sample packets or Event counter packet.

The DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA enables Periodic PC sample packets, or DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA enables POSTCNT underflow Event counter packets. Table C1-25 summarizes how these bits control the operation of the POSTCNT counter.

Table C1-25 Effect of a CYCCNT tap bit transition when POSTCNT is zero

DWT_CTRL bit		
PCSAMPLENA	**CYCEVTENA**	**Action**
0	0	POSTCNT disabled.
0	1	On writing these bit values to DWT_CTRL when the bits were previously both 0, load POSTCNT from DWT_POSTINIT, and start POSTCNT counting. Subsequently, whenever POSTCNT underflows from zero: • Reload POSTCNT from POSTPRESET. • Generate Event counter packet with the Cyc bit set to 1, see *Event counter packet, discriminator ID0* on page AppxD-944.
1	0	On writing these bit values to DWT_CTRL when the bits were previously both 0, load POSTCNT from DWT_POSTINIT, and start POSTCNT counting. Subsequently, whenever POSTCNT underflows from zero: • Reload POSTCNT from POSTPRESET. • Generate Periodic PC sample packet, see *Periodic PC sample packets, discriminator ID2* on page AppxD-946
1	1	ARM deprecates the use of this combination of DWT_CTRL bit values. In early ARMv7-M implementations, setting both PCSAMPLENA and CYCEVTENA to 1 has the same effect as setting PCSAMPLENA to 1 and CYCEVTENA to 0. ARM does not guarantee future ARMv7-M implementations will behave in this way.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

- The enable bit for the POSTCNT counter underflow event is DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA. There is no overflow event for the CYCCNT counter. When CYCCNT overflows it wraps to zero transparently.
- Software cannot access the POSTCNT value directly, or change this value.

Software must write to DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT to define the required initial value of the POSTCNT counter, and then perform a second write to DWT_CTRL to set either the PCSAMPLENA bit or the CYCEVTENA bit to 1, to enable the POSTCNT counter. For more information see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

Disabling CYCCNT stops POSTCNT. Enabling CYCCNT also loads POSTCNT from the DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field.

The synchronization packet timer

A tap on the CYCCNT counter provides a timer signal for generation of periodic Synchronization packets by the ITM. The DWT_CTRL.SYNCTAP field determines the position of this tap, and therefore the Synchronization packet rate. Table C1-26 shows the effect of this field:

Table C1-26 CYCCNT tap bit for synchronization packet timer

SYNCTAP field	CYCCNT tap at	Synchronization packet rate
0b00	-	Synchronization packet timer disabled
0b01	Bit [24]	(Processor clock)/16M
0b10	Bit [26]	(Processor clock)/64M
0b11	Bit [28]	(Processor clock)/256M

The ITM generates periodic Synchronization packets only if both:

- DWT_CTRL.SYNCTAP is non-zero, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879
- ITM_TCR.SYNCENA is set to 1, see *Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852.

When DWT_CTRL.SYNCTAP is non-zero, the synchronization packet timer generates a pulse every time the CYCCNT tap bit transitions, either from 1 to 0 or from 0 to 1. When this happens:

- if ITM_TCR.SYNCENA is set to 1, the ITM generates a Synchronization packet
- if the processor implements global timestamps, the DWT signals a request for a full 48-bit timestamp, see *Global timestamping* on page C1-846.

For more information about Synchronization packets see *Synchronization support* on page C1-847 and *Synchronization packet* on page AppxD-934.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.4 Profiling counter support

Profiling counter support is an optional debug feature. The DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT bit is RAZ if these counters are implemented.

If the implementation includes profiling counter support, the DWT unit provides the following 8-bit event counters, for software profiling:

DWT_CPICNT

A general counter for instruction cycle count estimation. This counter increments on each additional cycle required to execute a multi-cycle instruction, except for those instructions recorded by DWT_LSUCNT. It does not count the first cycle required to execute any instruction. The counter also increments on each cycle of any instruction fetch stall.

See *CPI Count register, DWT_CPICNT* on page C1-885.

DWT_EXCCNT

The exception overhead counter. The counter increments on each cycle associated with exception entry or return.That is, it counts the cycles associated with entry stacking, return unstacking, preemption, and other exception-related processes.

See *Exception Overhead Count register, DWT_EXCCNT* on page C1-886.

DWT_SLEEPCNT

The sleep overhead counter. The counter increments on each cycle associated with power saving, whether initiated by a `WFI` or `WFE` instruction, or by the sleep-on-exit functionality. For more information, see *Power management* on page B1-680.

See *Sleep Count register, DWT_SLEEPCNT* on page C1-887.

DWT_LSUCNT

The load-store counter. This counter increments on each additional cycle required to execute a multi-cycle load-store instruction. It does not count the first cycle required to execute any instruction.

See *LSU Count register, DWT_LSUCNT* on page C1-888.

DWT_FOLDCNT

The folded instruction counter. The counter increments on any instruction that executes in zero cycles.

See *Folded-instruction Count register, DWT_FOLDCNT* on page C1-889.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A counter overflows on every 256th cycle counted. When this happens, the counter wraps to 0, and if the appropriate counter overflow event is enabled in the DWT_CTRL register, the DWT outputs an Event counter packet with the appropriate counter flag set to 1, Table C1-27 shows the DWT_CTRL counter overflow event enable bit for each of the counters. Setting one of these bits to 1 also clears the corresponding counter to zero. For more information, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

Table C1-27 DWT_CTRL profile counter overflow event enable bits

Counter	DWT_CTRL counter overflow event enable bit
DWT_CPICNT	CPIEVTENA, bit [17]
DWT_EXCCNT	EXCEVTENA, bit [18]
DWT_SLEEPCNT	SLEEPEVTENA, bit [19]
DWT_LSUCNT	LSUEVTENA, bit [20]
DWT_FOLDCNT	FOLDEVTENA, bit [21]

For more information about the Event counter packet see *Event counter packet, discriminator ID0* on page AppxD-944.

Profiling counter accuracy

The counters provide approximately accurate performance count information, but to keep the implementation and validation cost low, the architecture accepts a reasonable degree of inaccuracy in the counts is acceptable. The architecture does not define a reasonable degree of inaccuracy, but ARM gives the following guidelines:

- Under normal operating conditions, the counters present an accurate value of the overall system cycle counts.
- Although the counters can be used with halting debug, they are intended for non-intrusive operation. Entry to or exit from Debug state can be a source of inaccuracy. Counters do not increment when the processor is halted. In Debug state, the overhead associated with STEP and RUN commands from and to the halt condition is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- ARM strongly recommends that, when an instruction is used to enter or exit an exception or sleep state, the cycle count associated with the instruction is minimal, and the remaining cycles are associated with the exception overhead or with the energy-saving state. However, the exact division is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Examples of the instructions this refers to are `SVC` and `WFI`.
- In superscalar implementations FOLD counts can be very high, affecting profiling statistics. Profile data validity normally improves when aggregated over a longer time, with a large working set of data and instructions.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

The fact that the architecture permits inaccuracy limits the possible uses of the performance counters. In particular, the architecture does not define the point in a pipeline where a particular instruction increments a performance counter, relative to the point where software can read the performance counter. Therefore, pipeling can add some imprecision. Profile counter size and the DWT event generation model are designed for non-intrusive operation, where the DWT generates information for remote tracing, processing and analysis, without the system overhead of software reads and processing by the processor itself.

An implementation must document any scenarios where significant inaccuracies are expected.

C1.8.5 Program counter sampling support

The DWT_PCSR is an optional component of an ARMv7-M debug implementation, see *Program Counter Sample register, DWT_PCSR* on page C1-890. If an implementation does not include the DWT_PCSR, the DWT_PCSR location is RAZ/WI.

Note

DWT_PCSR program counter sampling is independent of the PC sampling provided by:

- Periodic PC sample packets, described in *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872
- Data trace PC value packets generated as a result of a DWT comparator match, see *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857

A debugger can read DWT_PCSR without changing the behavior of any code executing on the processor. This provides a mechanism for coarse-grained non-intrusive profiling of software execution. When DWT_PCSR is implemented, a read of the register returns one of the following:

- The address of an instruction recently executed by the processor
- `0xFFFFFFFF` if the processor is in Debug state, or in a state and mode that do not permit non-invasive debug.

Note

- The architecture does not define recently executed, and does not define the delay between an instruction being executed by the processor and its address appearing in the DWT_PCSR. For example, if code reads the DWT_PCSR of the processor it is running on, the architecture does not guarantee any relationship between the value returned by the DWT_PSCSR read and the program counter value corresponding to that piece of code. The DWT_PCSR is intended for use only by an external agent to provide statistical information for code profiling. A read of the DWT_PCSR by the processor can return an UNKNOWN value.
- A debug agent must not rely on a return value of `0xFFFFFFFF` to indicate that the processor is halted. It must interrogate the S_HALT bit in the DHCSR for this purpose, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

When DWT_PCSR returns a value other than 0xFFFFFFFF, the returned value always references an instruction that has been committed for execution. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether an instruction that failed its condition codes is considered as a committed instruction, but ARM recommends that these instructions are considered as committed instructions. A read of DWT_PSCR must not return the address of an instruction that has been fetched but not committed for execution.

When DWT_PCSR is implemented, it must be able to sample references to branch targets. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether it can sample references to other instructions. ARM recommends that it can sample a reference to any instruction.

The branch target for a conditional branch that fails its condition code is the instruction that immediately follows the conditional branch instruction.

When DEMCR.TRCENA is set to 0, any read of DWT_PCSR returns an UNKNOWN value. For more information see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

Note

The DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA bit does not affect PC sampling by DWT_PCSR.

C1.8.6 DWT register summary

Table C1-28 shows the DWT registers in address order. An entry of IMP DEF in the *Reset* column indicates that the reset value of the register is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See the register description for more information, All registers are 32-bits wide.

Table C1-28 DWT register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE0001000	DWT_CTRL	RW	IMP DEF	*Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.
0xE0001004	DWT_CYCCNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*Cycle Count register, DWT_CYCCNT* on page C1-884.
0xE0001008	DWT_CPICNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*CPI Count register, DWT_CPICNT* on page C1-885.
0xE000100C	DWT_EXCCNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*Exception Overhead Count register, DWT_EXCCNT* on page C1-886.
0xE0001010	DWT_SLEEPCNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*Sleep Count register, DWT_SLEEPCNT* on page C1-887.
0xE0001014	DWT_LSUCNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*LSU Count register, DWT_LSUCNT* on page C1-888.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-28 DWT register summary (continued)

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE0001018	DWT_FOLDCNT	RW	UNKNOWN	*Folded-instruction Count register, DWT_FOLDCNT* on page C1-889.
0xE000101C	DWT_PCSR	RO	UNKNOWN	*Program Counter Sample register, DWT_PCSR* on page C1-890.
The block of registers addressed at 0xE0001020-0xE000102C repeat for each comparator, starting at comparator 0. *n* takes each value from 0 to (DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP-1).				
0xE0001020 +16*n*	DWT_COMP*n*	RW	UNKNOWN	*Comparator registers, DWT_COMPn* on page C1-891.
0xE0001024 +16*n*	DWT_MASK*n*	RW	UNKNOWN	*Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892.
0xE0001028 +16*n*	DWT_FUNCTION*n*	RW	See *Description*	*Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893.
0xE000102C +16*n*	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE0001FB4	DWT_LSR	RO	IMP DEF	Optional, but required for CoreSight compliance, see Table A-2 on page AppxA-915.
0xE0001FD0-0xE0001FFC	-	RO	IMP DEF	ID space. For more information see Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs*.

C1.8.7 Control register, DWT_CTRL

The DWT_CTRL register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides configuration and status information for the DWT block, and used to control features of the block

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878 and the field descriptions in Table C1-29 on page C1-880.

Figure C1-12 on page C1-880 shows the DWT_CTRL register bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

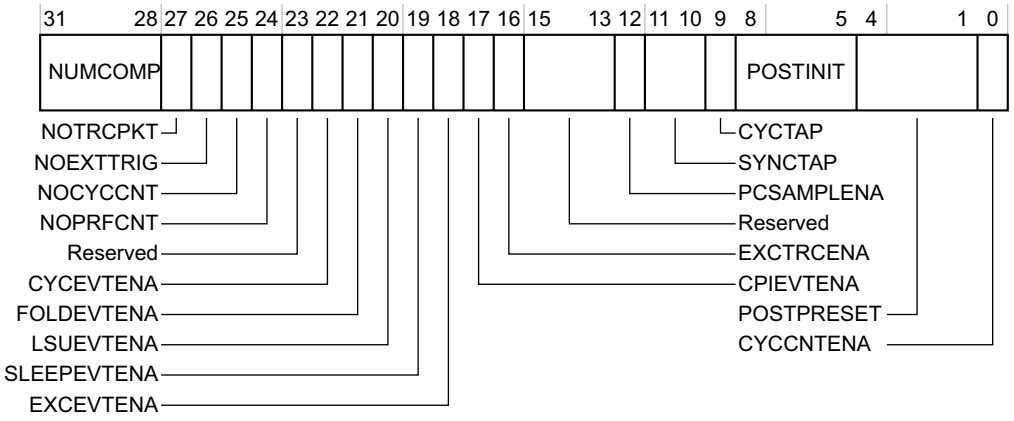


Figure C1-12 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments

Table C1-29 shows the DWT_CTRL register bit assignments. An entry of IMP DEF in the *Reset* column means the reset value of the field is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Table C1-29 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Type	Reset	Function
[31:28]	NUMCOMP	RO	IMP DEF	Number of comparators implemented. A value of zero indicates no comparator support.
[27]	NOTRCPKT	RO	IMP DEF	Shows whether the implementation supports trace sampling and exception tracing: 0 = Trace sampling and exception tracing supported. 1 = Trace sampling and exception tracing not supported. If this bit is RAZ, the NOCYCCNT bit must also RAZ.
[26]	NOEXTTRIG	RO	IMP DEF	Shows whether the implementation includes external match signals, **CMPMATCH[N]**: 0 = **CMPMATCH[N]** supported. 1 = **CMPMATCH[N]** not supported.
[25]	NOCYCCNT	RO	IMP DEF	Shows whether the implementation supports a cycle counter: 0 = Cycle counter supported. 1 = Cycle counter not supported. For more information see *CYCCNT cycle counter and related timers* on page C1-871.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-29 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Type	Reset	Function
[24]	NOPRFCNT	RO	IMP DEF	Shows whether the implementation supports the profiling counters: 0 = Supported. 1 = Not supported. For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.
[23]	-	-	-	Reserved.
[22]	CYCEVTENA	RW	0	Enables POSTCNT underflow Event counter packets generation: 0 = No POSTCNT underflow packets generated. 1 = POSTCNT underflow packets generated, if PCSAMPLENA set to 0. See *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872 for more information. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOTRCPKT bit is RAO or the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.
[21]	FOLDEVTENA	RW	0	Enables generation of the Folded-instruction counter overflow event: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOPRFCNT bit is RAO.
[20]	LSUEVTENA	RW	0	Enables generation of the LSU counter overflow event. 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOPRFCNT bit is RAO.
[19]	SLEEPEVTENA	RW	0	Enables generation of the Sleep counter overflow event. 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOPRFCNT bit is RAO.
[18]	EXCEVTENA	RW	0	Enables generation of the Exception overhead counter overflow event: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOPRFCNT bit is RAO.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-29 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Type	Reset	Function
[17]	CPIEVTENA	RW	0	Enables generation of the CPI counter overflow event: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOPRFCNT bit is RAO.
[16]	EXCTRCENA	RW	0	Enables generation of exception trace: 0 = Disabled. 1 = Enabled. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOTRCPKT bit is RAO.
[15:13]	-	-	-	Reserved.
[12]	PCSAMPLENA	RW	0	Enables use of POSTCNT counter as a timer for Periodic PC sample packet generation: 0 = No Periodic PC sample packets generated. 1 = Periodic PC sample packets generated. See *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872 for more information. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOTRCPKT bit is RAO or the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.
[11:10]	SYNCTAP	RW	UNKNOWN	Selects the position of the synchronization packet counter tap on the CYCCNT counter. This determines the Synchronization packet rate: 00 = Disabled. No Synchronization packets. 01 = Synchronization counter tap at CYCCNT[24] 10 = Synchronization counter tap at CYCCNT[26] 11 = Synchronization counter tap at CYCCNT[28] For more information see *The synchronization packet timer* on page C1-874. This field is UNK/SBZP if the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.
[9]	CYCTAP	RW	UNKNOWN	Selects the position of the POSTCNT tap on the CYCCNT counter: 0 = POSTCNT tap at CYCCNT[6] 1 = POSTCNT tap at CYCCNT[10] For more information see *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872. This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-29 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Type	Reset	Function
[8:5]	POSTINIT	RW	UNKNOWN	Initial value for the POSTCNT counter. For more information see *Enabling POSTCNT, and behavior of accesses to the DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field* and *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872. This field is UNK/SBZP if the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO. **Note** This field was previously called POSTCNT. The changed name gives a better indication of its function.
[4:1]	POSTPRESET	RW	UNKNOWN	Reload value for the POSTCNT counter. For more information see *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872. This field is UNK/SBZP if the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.
[0]	CYCCNTENA	RW	0	Enables CYCCNT: 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled This bit is UNK/SBZP if the NOCYCCNT bit is RAO.

Enabling POSTCNT, and behavior of accesses to the DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field

Before enabling the POSTCNT counter, software must write the required initial value of the counter to the DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field. Then it must perform a second write to DWT_CTRL, to set either DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA or DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA to 1, to enable the POSTCNT counter.

The processor ignores any write to DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT field if the POSTCNT counter is enabled. That is, it ignores a write to this field unless, before the write, DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA and DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA are both 0.

For any write to the DWT_CTRL register that changes the values of DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA and DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA bits, other than a change from both bits being zero to exactly one of the bits being one, it is UNPREDICTABLE whether POSTCNT is reloaded from DWT_CTRL.POSTINIT or left unchanged.

Note

This UNPREDICTABLE behavior does not matter when setting both DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA and DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA to zero, to disable POSTCNT, because it does not affect the behavior on re-enabling POSTCNT.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.8 Cycle Count register, DWT_CYCCNT

The DWT_CYCCNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Shows or sets the value of the processor cycle counter, CYCCNT.

Usage constraints The DWT unit suspends CYCCNT counting when the processor is in Debug state.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

When DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT is RAO no cycle counter is implemented and this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-13 shows the DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments.

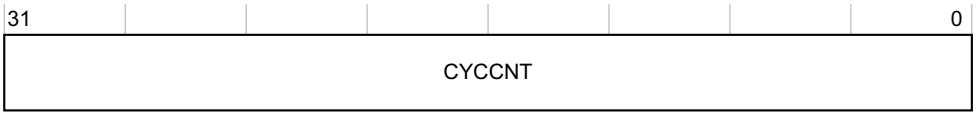


Figure C1-13 DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments

Table C1-30 shows the DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-30 DWT_CYCCNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	CYCCNT	Incrementing cycle counter value. When enabled, CYCCNT increments on each processor clock cycle. On overflow, CYCCNT wraps to zero.

For more information see *CYCCNT cycle counter and related timers* on page C1-871.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.9 CPI Count register, DWT_CPICNT

The DWT_CPICNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Counts additional cycles required to execute multi-cycle instructions and instruction fetch stalls.

Usage constraints The counter initializes to 0 when software enables its counter overflow event by setting the DWT_CTRL.CPIEVTENA bit to 1.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

If DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAO, indicating that the implementation does not include the profiling counters, this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-15 on page C1-886 shows the DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments.

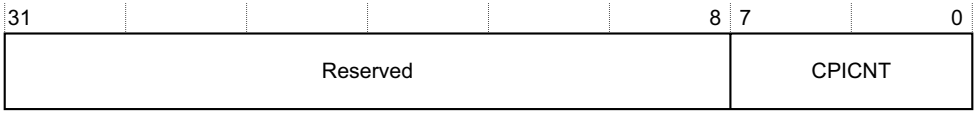


Figure C1-14 DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments

Table C1-31 shows the DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-31 DWT_CPICNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved.
[7:0]	CPICNT	The base CPI counter. Counts additional cycles required to execute multi-cycle instructions, except those recorded by DWT_LSUCNT, and counts any instruction fetch stalls.

For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.10 Exception Overhead Count register, DWT_EXCCNT

The DWT_EXCCNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Counts the total cycles spent in exception processing

Usage constraints The counter initializes to 0 when software enables its counter overflow event by setting the DWT_CTRL.EXCEVTENA bit to 1.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

If DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAO, indicating that the implementation does not include the profiling counters, this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-15 shows the DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments.

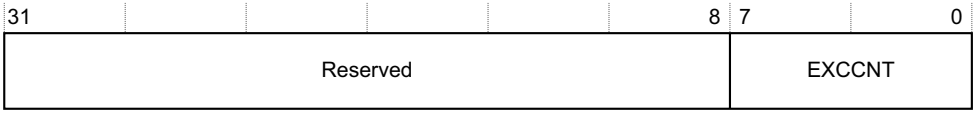


Figure C1-15 DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments

Table C1-32 shows the DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-32 DWT_EXCCNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	EXCCNT	The exception overhead counter. Counts the total cycles spent in exception processing.

For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.11 Sleep Count register, DWT_SLEEPCNT

The DWT_SLEEPCNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Counts the total number of cycles that the processor is sleeping.

Usage constraints The counter initializes to 0 when software enables its counter overflow event by setting the DWT_CTRL.SLEEPEVTENA bit to 1.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

If DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAO, indicating that the implementation does not include the profiling counters, this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-16 shows the DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments.

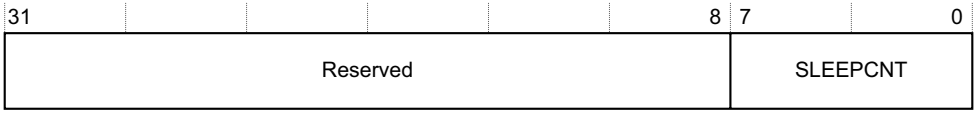


Figure C1-16 DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments

Table C1-33 shows the DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-33 DWT_SLEEPCNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	SLEEPCNT	Sleep counter. Counts the total number of cycles that the processor is sleeping.

ARM recommends that this counter counts all cycles when the processor is sleeping, regardless of whether a `WFI` or `WFE` instruction, or the sleep-on-exit functionality, caused the entry to sleep mode. However, all sleep features are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED and therefore when this counter counts is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.12 LSU Count register, DWT_LSUCNT

The DWT_LSUCNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Increments on the additional cycles required to execute all load or store instructions

Usage constraints The counter initializes to 0 when software enables its counter overflow event by setting the DWT_CTRL.LSUEVTENA bit to 1.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

If DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAO, indicating that the implementation does not include the profiling counters, this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-17 shows the DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments.

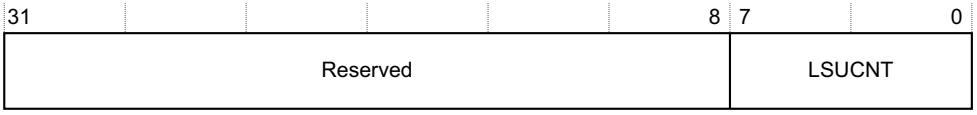


Figure C1-17 DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments

Table C1-34 shows the DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-34 DWT_LSUCNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	LSUCNT	Load-store counter. Increments on any additional cycles required to execute load or store instructions.

For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.13 Folded-instruction Count register, DWT_FOLDCNT

The DWT_FOLDCNT register characteristics are:

Purpose Increments on each instruction that takes 0 cycles.

Usage constraints
- The counter initializes to 0 when software enables its counter overflow event by setting the DWT_CTRL.FOLDEVTENA bit to 1.
- If an implementation includes profiling counters but does not support instruction folding, this counter can be RAZ/WI.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAZ, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

If DWT_CTRL.NOPRFCNT is RAO, indicating that the implementation does not include the profiling counters, this register is UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-18 shows the DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments.

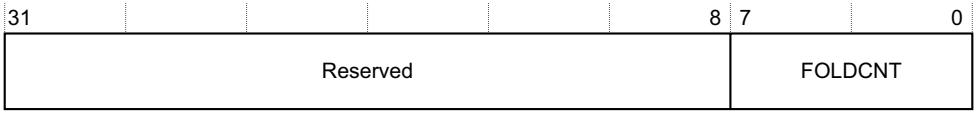


Figure C1-18 DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments

Table C1-35 shows the DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments.

Table C1-35 DWT_FOLDCNT register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	FOLDCNT	Folded-instruction counter. Increments on each instruction that takes 0 cycles.

For more information see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.14 Program Counter Sample register, DWT_PCSR

The DWT_PCSR characteristics are:

Purpose Samples the current value of the program counter.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Note

Bit [0] of any sampled value is RAZ and does not reflect instruction set state as it does in a PC sample on the ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R architecture profiles.

Configurations An optional feature. Register is RAZ/WI if not implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-19 shows the DWT_PCSR bit assignments.

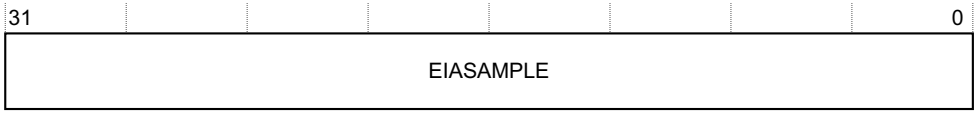


Figure C1-19 DWT_PCSR bit assignments

Table C1-36 shows the DWT_PCSR bit assignments.

Table C1-36 DWT_PCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	EIASAMPLE	Executed Instruction Address sample value

For more information see *Program counter sampling support* on page C1-877.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.15 Comparator registers, DWT_COMP*n*

The DWT_COMP*n* register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides a reference value for use by comparator *n*.

Usage constraints The operation of comparator *n* depends also on the registers DWT_MASK*n* and DWT_FUNCTION*n*, see *Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892 and *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is nonzero, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_COMP*n* registers. Implemented DWT_COMP*n* registers number from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-20 shows the DWT_COMP*n* register bit assignments.

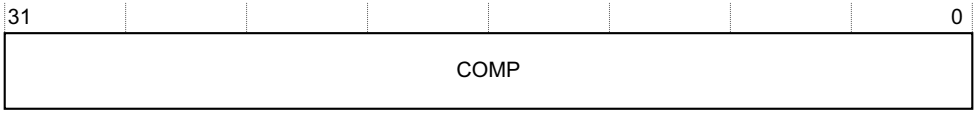


Figure C1-20 DWT_COMP*n* register bit assignments

Table C1-37 shows the DWT_COMP*n* bit assignments.

Table C1-37 DWT_COMP*n* register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	COMP	Reference value for comparison.

For more information see *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.16 Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASK*n*

The DWT_MASK*n* register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides the size of the ignore mask applied to the access address for address range matching by comparator *n*.

Usage constraints The operation of comparator n depends also on the registers DWT_COMP*n* and DWT_FUNCTION*n*, see *Comparator registers, DWT_COMPn* on page C1-891 and *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is nonzero, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_MASK*n* registers. Implemented DWT_MASK*n* registers number from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878.

Figure C1-21 shows the DWT_MASK*n* register bit assignments.

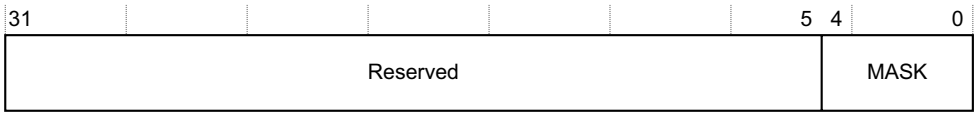


Figure C1-21 DWT_MASK*n* register bit assignments

Table C1-38 shows the DWT_MASK*n* register bit assignments.

Table C1-38 DWT_MASK*n* register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved
[4:0]	MASK	The size of the ignore mask, 0-31 bits, applied to address range matching. The maximum mask size is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. A debugger can write 0b11111 to this field and then read the register back to determine the maximum mask size supported.

See *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.8.17 Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTION*n*

The DWT_FUNCTION*n* register characteristics are:

Purpose Controls the operation of comparator *n*.

Usage constraints The operation of comparator *n* depends also on the registers DWT_COMP*n* and DWT_MASK*n*, see *Comparator registers, DWT_COMPn* on page C1-891 and *Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892.

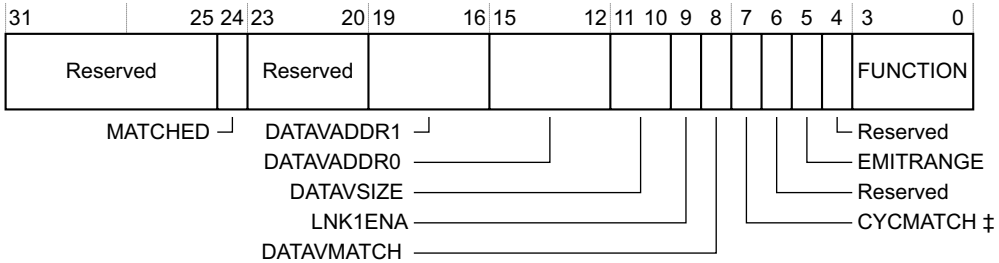
Reading this register clears some fields to zero. See the field descriptions in Table C1-39 on page C1-894 for more information, and for the usage constraints of individual fields.

Configurations Implemented only when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is nonzero, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_FUNCTION*n* registers. Implemented DWT_FUNCTION*n* registers number from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-28 on page C1-878. See the field descriptions in Table C1-39 on page C1-894 for information about the values of the RO bits in the register.

Figure C1-22 shows the DWT_FUNCTION*n* register bit assignments.



‡ DWT_FUNCTION0 only, bit [7] is Reserved in all other DWT_FUNCTION*n* registers.

Figure C1-22 DWT_FUNCTION*n* register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-39 shows the DWT_FUNCTION*n* register bit assignments.

Table C1-39 DWT_FUNCTION*n* register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Type	Function
[31:25]	-	-	Reserved
[24]	MATCHED	RO	Comparator match: 0 = No match. 1 = Match. A value of 1 indicates that the operation defined by the FUNCTION field occurred since the last read of the register Reading the register clears this bit to 0.
[23:20]	-	RW	Reserved
[19:16]	DATAVADDR1	RW	When the DATAVMATCH and LNK1ENA bits are both 1, this field can hold the comparator number of a second comparator to use for linked address comparison. For more information see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. The DWT unit ignores the value of this field unless the LNK1ENA bit is RAO and the DATAVMATCH bit is set to 1. If LNK1ENA is RAZ, this field is RAZ/WI.
[15:12]	DATAVADDR0	RW	When the DATAVMATCH bit is set to 1 this field can hold the comparator number of a comparator to use for linked address comparison. For more information see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. The DWT unit ignores the value of this field if the DATAVMATCH bit is set to 0.
[11:10]	DATAVSIZE	RW	For data value matching, specifies the size of the required data comparison: 00 = Byte 01 = Halfword 10 = Word. The value 0b11 is reserved. Using this value means behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.
[9]	LNK1ENA	RO	Indicates whether the implementation supports use of a second linked comparator: 0 = Second linked comparator not supported. 1 = Second linked comparator supported. When LNK1ENA is RAO, the DATAVADDR1 field specifies the comparator to use as the second linked comparator.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-39 DWT_FUNCTION*n* register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Type	Function
[8]	DATAVMATCH	RW	Enables data value comparison, if supported: 0 = Perform address comparison. 1 = Perform data value comparison. For comparator 0, when the CYCMATCH is set to 1, DATAVMATCH must be set to 0 for it to perform cycle count comparison. See LNK1ENA, DATAVSIZE, DATAVADDR0 and DATAVADDR1 for related information. If the implementation does not support data value comparison this bit is RAZ/WI.
[7]	CYCMATCH	RW	DWT_FUNCTION0 only. If the implementation supports cycle counting, enable cycle count comparison for comparator 0: 0 = No comparison is performed. 1 = Compare DWT_COMP0 with the cycle counter, DWT_CYCCNT. If DWT_CTRL.NOCYCCNT is RAZ then this bit is UNK/SBZP.
[7]	-	-	DWT_FUNCTION*n*, for all values of *n* other than 0. Reserved, UNK/SBZP.
[6]			Reserved
[5]	EMITRANGE	-	If the implementation supports trace sampling, enables generation of Data trace address offset packets, that hold Daddr[15:0]: 0 = Data trace address offset packets disabled 1 = Enable Data trace address offset packet generation. For more information see *Address comparison functions* on page C1-859. If DWT_CTRL.NOTRCPKT is RAZ then this bit is UNK/SBZP.
[4]		-	Reserved
[3:0]	FUNCTION	RW	Selects action taken on comparator match: 0000 = Disabled or LinkAddr(), see *LinkAddr support* on page C1-868. For non-zero values: • If DATAVMATCH is set to 1, see Table C1-23 on page C1-865 • If DATAVMATCH is set to 0 then: — If CYCMATCH is set to 0, see Table C1-21 on page C1-860 — If CYCMATCH is set to 1, see Table C1-22 on page C1-863. This field resets to zero.

For more information see *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.9 Embedded Trace Macrocell support

An *Embedded Trace Macrocell* (ETM) is an optional feature of an ARMv7-M implementation. Where it is implemented, the device must implement a Trace Port Interface Unit that can format the combined output packet stream from:

- the ETM
- the DWT and ITM.

An ETM implementation must comply with the ETM architecture v3.4 or later, see the *Embedded Trace Macrocell Architecture Specification*. The associated TPIU implementation must be CoreSight compliant, see the *CoreSight Architecture Specification* and comply with the TPIU architecture, for compatibility with ARM and other CoreSight-compatible debug solutions.

When an ARMv7-M implementation includes an ETM:

- The **CMPMATCH[N]** signals from the DWT block are available as control inputs to the ETM block. For more information see *CMPMATCH[N] event generation* on page C1-870.
- An implementation can use the DEMCR.TRCENA bit as an enable signal for the ETM block, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

  Note

  Whether the TRCENA bit enables the ETM with is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. This functionality might be inappropriate if the ETM unit is a shared resource in a complex system.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.10 Trace Port Interface Unit

The ITM block multiplexes hardware event packets from the DWT block with its own Instrumentation packets, Synchronization packets, and timestamp packets, into a single packet stream.This packet stream might:

- terminate in the processor
- be visible externally through a trace buffer
- be visible externally through a trace interface connection.

Which option is implemented is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

If a system implements a trace buffer, ARM strongly recommends that this is a CoreSight-compliant *Embedded Trace Buffer* (ETB), as described in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

To provide external visibility, an implementation typically includes a *Trace Port Interface Unit* (TPIU). This can be either the ARMv7-M TPIU described in this section, or the full CoreSight TPIU. The ARMv7-M TPIU provides one or both:

- an asynchronous *Serial Wire Output* (SWO)
- a parallel trace port with a single or multi-pin data path, a clock pin, and optionally a control pin.

Note

The combination of the DWT and ITM packet stream and a SWO is called a *Serial Wire Viewer* (SWV).

The minimum TPIU support for ARMv7-M provides an output path for the packet stream from the ITM. This is described as TPIU support for debug trace with the TPIU operating in pass-through mode. For more information about ETMs, and other CoreSight options, see the *Embedded Trace Macrocell Architecture Specification* and the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

A TPIU parallel trace port supports a data path width from 1 to 32 bits.

A TPIU asynchronous serial port can be:

- A low-speed asynchronous port using NRZ encoding. This operates as a traditional UART.
- A medium-speed asynchronous port using Manchester encoding.

If an implementation supports a parallel interface and an asynchronous serial interface, the TPIU_SPPR register selects the active interface, see *Selected Pin Protocol Register, TPIU_SPPR* on page C1-901.

ARM recommends that the TPIU provides both parallel and asynchronous serial ports, for maximum flexibility with external capture devices. Whether the trace port clock is synchronous to the processor clock.is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. The TPIU includes a prescale counter for the asynchronous port, as part of the clock generation scheme for asynchronous operation.

C1.10.1 TPIU registers summary

This section defines the registers that the minimum ARMv7-M TPIU configuration must include.

An implementation can use the DEMCR.TRCENA bit as an enable signal for the TPIU block, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Note

ARM recommends using DEMCR.TRCENA as the TPIU enable signal in the minimum TPIU implementation. However, the TPIU enable mechanism is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, and using DEMCR.TRCENA might be inappropriate where the TPIU unit is a shared resource in a complex system.

Table C1-40 shows the required TPIU registers, in address order. All registers are 32-bits wide. An entry of IMP DEF in the *Reset* column means the reset value is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Table C1-40 Required TPIU registers

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE0040000	TPIU_SSPSR	RO	IMP DEF	*Supported Parallel Port Sizes Register, TPIU_SSPSR*
0xE0040004	TPIU_CSPSR	RW	IMP DEF	*Current Parallel Port Size Register, TPIU_CSPSR* on page C1-899
0xE0040010	TPIU_ACPR	RW	0x00000000	*Asynchronous Clock Prescaler Register, TPIU_ACPR* on page C1-900
0xE00400F0	TPIU_SPPR	RW	IMP DEF	*Selected Pin Protocol Register, TPIU_SPPR* on page C1-9011
0xE0040FB4[a]	-	RO	IMP DEF	See Table A-2 on page AppxA-915 in Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs*
0xE0040FC8	TPIU_TYPE	RO	IMP DEF	*TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902
0xE0040FD0-0xE0040FFC	-	RO	-	ID space, see Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs* for more information.

a. CoreSight compliance for the lock status register is required.

C1.10.2 Supported Parallel Port Sizes Register, TPIU_SSPSR

The TPIU_SSPSR characteristics are:

Purpose Indicates the supported parallel trace port sizes.

Usage constraints No usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

If TPIU_TYPE.PTINVALID is RAO, this register is UNK. For more information see *TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902.

Attributes See Table C1-40.

Figure C1-23 on page C1-899 shows the TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

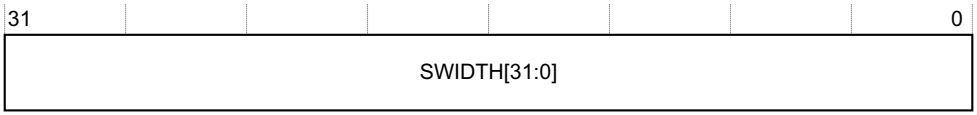


Figure C1-23 TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments

Table C1-41 shows the TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments.

Table C1-41 TPIU_SSPSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	SWIDTH[31:0]	SWIDTH[N] represents a trace port width of (N+1). The meaning of each bit is: 0 = Width (N+1) not supported. 1 = Width (N+1) supported.

C1.10.3 Current Parallel Port Size Register, TPIU_CSPSR

The TPIU_CSPSR characteristics are:

Purpose Defines the width of the current parallel trace port.

Usage constraints Has the same format as the TPIU_SSPSR, but:

- only one bit is set to 1, all others must be zero
- the effect of writing a value with more than one bit set to 1 is UNPREDICTABLE
- the effect of a write to an unsupported bit is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Always implemented.

If TPIU_TYPE.PTINVALID is RAO, this register is UNK/SBZP. For more information see *TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902.

Attributes See Table C1-40 on page C1-898. The register resets to the value for the smallest supported parallel trace port size.

Figure C1-24 shows the TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments.

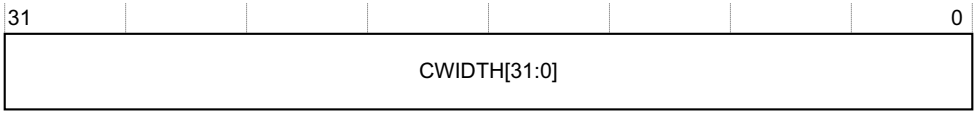


Figure C1-24 TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-42 shows the TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments.

Table C1-42 TPIU_CSPSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	CWIDTH[31:0]	CWIDTH[N] represents a trace port width of (N+1). The meaning of each bit is: 0 = Width (N+1) is not the current trace port width. 1 = Width (N+1) is the current trace port width.

C1.10.4 Asynchronous Clock Prescaler Register, TPIU_ACPR

The TPIU_ACPR characteristics are:

Purpose Defines a prescaler value for the baud rate of the *Serial Wire Output* (SWO).

Usage constraints Writing to the register automatically updates the prescale counter, immediately affecting the baud rate of the serial data output. If a debugger changes the register value while the TPIU is transmitting data, the effect on the output stream is UNPREDICTABLE and the required recovery process is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Configurations Always implemented:

- If the MANCVALID and NRZVALID bits of TPIU_TYPE are both RAZ, this register is UNK/SBZP. For more information see *TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902.
- Whether the prescale counter is preset and counts down, or reset and counts up, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- The supported scaler value range is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, to a maximum scalar value of 0xFFFF. Unused bits of the SWOSCALAR field are RAZ/WI.

Attributes See Table C1-40 on page C1-898.

Figure C1-25 shows the TPIU_ACPR bit assignments.

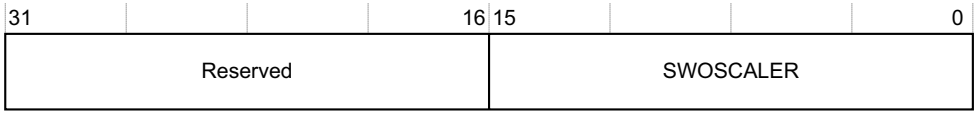


Figure C1-25 TPIU_ACPR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-43 shows the TPIU_ACPR bit assignments.

Table C1-43 TPIU_ACPR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:16]	-	Reserved
[15:0]	SWOSCALER	SWO baud rate prescaler value. SWO output clock = Asynchronous_Reference_Clock/(SWOSCALAR +1)

C1.10.5 Selected Pin Protocol Register, TPIU_SPPR

The TPIU_SPPR characteristics are:

Purpose Selects the protocol used for trace output.

Usage constraints
- If a debugger changes the register value while the TPIU is transmitting data, the effect on the output stream is UNPREDICTABLE and the required recovery process is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- Bits [11:9] of the TPIU_TYPE register define the trace output protocols supported by the implementation, see *TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902. The effect of selecting an unsupported mode is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-40 on page C1-898.

Figure C1-26 shows the TPIU_SPPR bit assignments.

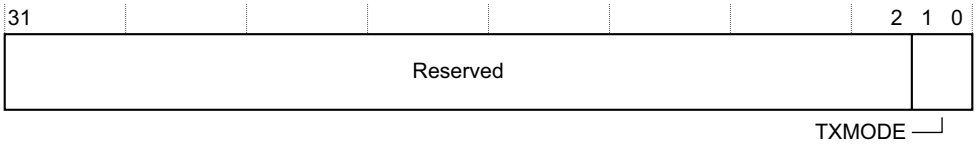


Figure C1-26 TPIU_SPPR bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-44 shows the TPIU_SPPR bit assignments.

Table C1-44 TPIU_SPPR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:2]	-	Reserved
[1:0]	TXMODE	Specified the protocol for trace output from the TPIU. Permitted values are: 00 = Parallel trace port mode. 01 = Asynchronous SWO, using Manchester encoding. 10 = Asynchronous SWO, using NRZ encoding. The value 0b11 is reserved. The effect of selecting a reserved value, or a mode that the implementation does not support, is UNPREDICTABLE.

C1.10.6 TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE

The TPIU_TYPE register characteristics are:

Purpose Defines the SWO options supported by the TPIU

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-40 on page C1-898.

Figure C1-27 shows the TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments.

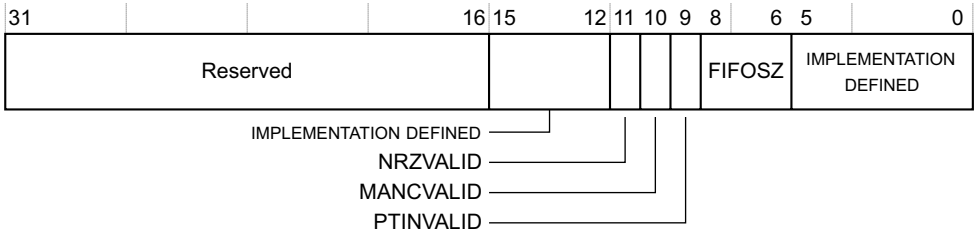


Figure C1-27 TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments

Table C1-45 on page C1-903 shows the TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-45 TPIU_TYPE register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:16]	-	Reserved
[15:12]	-	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
[11]	NRZVALID	Indicates support for SWO using UART/NRZ encoding: 0 = Not supported. 1 = Supported.
[10]	MANCVALID	Indicates support for SWO using Manchester encoding: 0 = Not supported. 1 = Supported.
[9]	PTINVALID	Indicates support for parallel trace port operation. 0 = Supported. 1 = Not supported.
[8:6]	FIFOSZ	Indicated the minimum implemented size of the TPIU output FIFO for trace data. Minimum FIFO size is $2^{FIFOSIZE}$. For example, a value of 0b011 indicates a FIFO size of at least $2^3 = 8$ bytes.
[5:0]	-	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.11 Flash Patch and Breakpoint unit

The *Flash Patch and Breakpoint* (FPB) unit can support:

- remapping specific literal locations from the Code region of system memory to addresses in the SRAM region
- remapping specific instruction addresses from the Code region of system memory to addresses in the SRAM region
- breakpoint functionality on instruction fetches.

See *The system address map* on page B3-704 for more information about address regions.

The number of supported literal address and instruction address comparators is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Software can read the number of comparators from the FP_CTRL register, see *FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906. The valid combinations of support are:

- no comparator support
- one or more instruction address comparators with breakpoint support only
- one or more instruction address comparators with breakpoint and remapping support
- the full feature set, supporting instruction address and literal address comparators.

Note

The ARMv7-M architecture does not restrict the FPB to debug use. The FPB can be used to provide product updates, as its behavior under normal code execution conditions is identical to the behavior described in this section.

C1.11.1 FPB unit operation

The FPB includes the following register types:

- a general control register FP_CTRL. see *FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906
- a remap address register FP_REMAP, see *FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908
- FlashPatch comparator registers, see *FlashPatch Comparator register, FP_COMPn* on page C1-909.

The FPB uses separate comparators for instruction address comparison and for literal address comparison.

FP_CTRL provides a global enable bit for the FPB, and ID fields that indicate the numbers of instruction address comparison and literal comparison registers implemented.

Software programs the FP_REMAP Register with the base address for the remap vectors, Remap_Base. Comparator *n* remaps to address (Remap_Base + 4*n*) when it is configured for remapping and a match occurs. Software can read FP_REMAP[29] to determine if the implementation supports remapping, of instruction or data addresses.

Software can configure an instruction address comparator to remap the instruction, or to generate a breakpoint. The literal address comparators only support remapping of data read accesses. Each comparator has its own enable bit that enables operation of the comparator only when the global enable bit is also set to 1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

All comparators match word-aligned addresses in the Code memory region, by ignoring bits [1:0] of each access address. They only operate on read accesses. The comparators ignore data writes. Writes always access the location originally addressed by the instruction.

Note

The Code memory region is the first 1GB of the memory map.

When configured for remapping, instruction address matching performs instruction address comparisons at a word granularity. A match causes the matching instruction or instruction halfwords to be fetched from the remapped location. If the instruction at the remapped location reads the PC, then the value returned is calculated from the original instruction address, and not the remapped location address.

When configured for breakpoint debug event generation, instruction address matching can compare the upper halfword, lower halfword, or both halfwords, subject to the restrictions described later in this section.

Note

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the FPB generates breakpoint debug events when debug is disabled, that is when DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is 0 and DEMCR.MON_EN is 0, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830 and *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838. When the breakpoint is not generated, the matched instruction exhibits its normal architectural behavior.

Literal address matching can compare word, halfword or byte data units. A match fetches the appropriate-sized data item from the remapped location.

The following restrictions apply:

- How remapping affects unaligned literal accesses is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
- When an MPU is enabled, it performs its checks on the original address, and applies the attributes for that address to the remapped location. The MPU does not check the remapped address.
- The FPB can remap a Load exclusive accesses, but whether the remapped access is performed as an exclusive access is UNPREDICTABLE.
- When an instruction address matching comparator is configured for breakpoint generation, a match on the address of a 32-bit instruction must be configured to match the first halfword or both halfwords of the instruction. It is UNPREDICTABLE whether a match on only the address of the second halfword of a 32-bit instruction generates a debug event.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.11.2 FPB register summary

Table C1-46 shows the FPB registers, in address order. All registers are 32-bits wide.

Table C1-46 Flash Patch and Breakpoint register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE0002000	FP_CTRL	RW	[a]	*FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL*.
0xE0002004	FP_REMAP	RW	UNKNOWN	*FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908.
0xE0002008-0xE0002008+4*n*	FP_COMP0-FP_COMP*n*	RW	UNKNOWN[a]	*FlashPatch Comparator register, FP_COMPn* on page C1-909.
0xE0002FB4	FP_LSR[b]	RO	-	See Table A-2 on page AppxA-915 in Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs*.
0xE0002FD0-0xE0002FFC	-	RO	-	ID space, see Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs* for more information.

a. See register description for more information.
b. CoreSight compliance for the lock status register is required.

C1.11.3 FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL

The FP_CTRL Register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides FPB implementation information, and the global enable for the FPB unit.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-46.

Figure C1-28 shows the FP_CTRL register bit assignments.

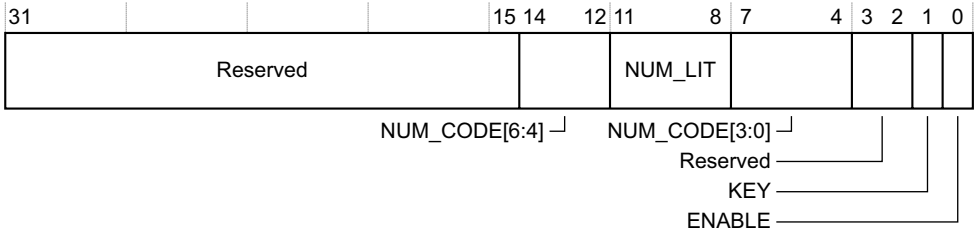


Figure C1-28 FP_CTRL register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-47 shows the FP_CTRL register bit assignments.

Table C1-47 FP_CTRL register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Type	Function
[31:15]	-	-	Reserved
[14:12]	NUM_CODE[6:4]	RO	The most significant bits of NUM_CODE, the number of instruction address comparators, see bits [7:4].
[11:8]	NUM_LIT	RO	The number of literal address comparators supported. If this field is zero, the implementation does not support literal comparators.
[7:4]	NUM_CODE[3:0]	RO	The least significant bits of NUM_CODE, the number of instruction address comparators. If NUM_CODE[6:0] is zero, the implementation does not support any instruction address comparators.
[1]	KEY	RW	On any write to FP_CTRL, the FPB unit ignores the write unless this bit is 1. This bit is RAZ.
[0]	ENABLE	RW	Enable bit for the FPB: 0 = FPB disabled 1 = FPB enabled. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.

If implemented:

- The instruction address comparators start at FP_COMP0. This means the last instruction address comparator is FP_COMP*n*, where *n* = (NUM_CODE-1). The maximum number of instruction address comparators is 127.
- The literal address comparators start at FP_COMP*m*, where *m*=NUM_CODE. This means the last literal address comparator is at FP_COMP*p*, where *p*=(NUM_CODE+NUM_LIT-1). The maximum number of literal address comparators is 15.

The total number of implemented comparators is (NUM_CODE+NUM_LIT), giving a maximum of 142 comparators.

For more information see *FlashPatch Comparator register, FP_COMPn* on page C1-909

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.11.4 FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP

The FP_REMAP register characteristics are:

Purpose Indicates whether the implementation supports flash patch remap, and if it does, holds the SRAM address for remap.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table C1-46 on page C1-906.

Figure C1-29 shows the FP_REMAP register bit assignments.

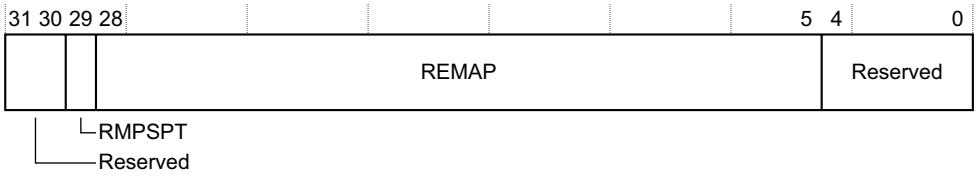


Figure C1-29 FP_REMAP register bit assignments

Table C1-48 shows the FP_REMAP register bit assignments.

Table C1-48 FP_REMAP register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Type	Function
[31:30]	-	-	Reserved.
[29]	RMPSPT	RO	Indicates whether the FPB unit supports flash patch remap: 0 = Remapping not supported. The FPB only supports breakpoint functionality. 1 = Hard-wired remap to SRAM region.
[28:5]	REMAP	RW	If the FPB supports flash patch remap, this field: • holds bits [28:5] of the base address in SRAM to which the FPB remaps the address • has an UNKNOWN value on reset. If the FPB only supports breakpoint functionality this field is UNK/SBZP.
[4:0]	-	-	Reserved.

The remap base address must be aligned to the number of words required to support the implemented comparators, that is to (NUM_CODE+NUM_LIT) words, with a minimum alignment of 8 words. Because remap is into the SRAM memory region, `0x20000000-0x3FFFFFFF`, bits [31:29] of the remap address are 0b001.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C1.11.5 FlashPatch Comparator register, FP_COMP*n*

The FP_COMP*n* register characteristics are:

Purpose Holds an address for comparison with addresses in the Code memory region, see *The system address map* on page B3-704. The effect of a match depends on whether the comparator is an instruction address comparator or a literal address comparator:

Instruction address comparators

Either:

- defines an instruction address to remap to an address based on the address specified in the FP_REMAP register
- defines a breakpoint address.

Literal address comparators

Defines a literal address to remap to an address based on the address specified in the FP_REMAP register,

The FP_CTRL register determines which comparators are instruction address comparators and which are literal address comparators, see *FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906.

For more information about address remapping see *FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908.

Usage constraints To enable a comparator, both the FP_CTRL.ENABLE bit and the required FP_COMP*n*.ENABLE bit must be set to 1.

Configurations Always implemented. see *FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906 for information about the number of implemented FlashPatch comparator registers.

Attributes See Table C1-46 on page C1-906.

Figure C1-30 shows the FP_COMP*n* register bit assignments.

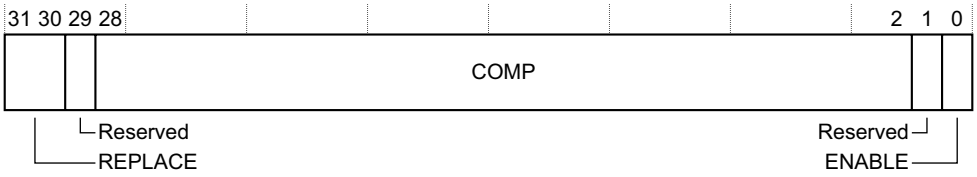


Figure C1-30 FP_COMP*n* register bit assignments

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table C1-49 shows the FP_COMP*n* register bit assignments.

Table C1-49 FP_COMP*n* register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:30]	REPLACE	**For an instruction address comparator:** Defines the behavior when the COMP address is matched: 00 = Remap to remap address, see *FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908[a]. 01 = Breakpoint on lower halfword, upper is unaffected 10 = Breakpoint on upper halfword, lower is unaffected 11 = Breakpoint on both lower and upper halfwords. The reset value of this field is UNKNOWN. **For a literal address comparator:** Field is UNK/SBZP.
[29]	-	Reserved.
[28:2]	COMP	Bits [28:2] of the address to compare with addresses from the Code memory region, see *The system address map* on page B3-704. Bits [31:29] and [1:0] of the address for comparison are zero. If a match occurs: • for an instruction address comparator, the REPLACE field defines the required action • for a literal address comparator, the FPB remaps the access, see *FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908. The reset value of this field is UNKNOWN.
[1]	-	Reserved.
[0]	ENABLE	Enable bit for this comparator: 0 = Comparator disabled. 1 = Comparator enabled. A Power-on reset clears this bit to 0.

a. When the comparators are enabled in the FP_CTRL register, if the implementation does not support remapping, the effect of an instruction address match with an enabled comparator with REPLACE programmed to 0b00 is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Part D
Appendices

Appendix A
ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs

This appendix describes the ARMv7-M implementation of the CoreSight Infrastructure IDs. It contains the following section:

- *CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv7-M implementation* on page AppxA-914.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A.1 CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv7-M implementation

ARMv7-M implementations support SCS, FPB, DWT and ITM blocks along with a ROM table as illustrated in Table C1-4 on page C1-817. The *CoreSight Architecture Specification* defines the CoreSight architecture programmers' model. This defines a 4KB register space for each CoreSight component. Each 4KB register block subdivides into the following sections:

- A component ID. at offsets `0xFF0` to `0xFFF`
- A peripheral ID, at offsets `0xFD0` to `0xFEF`
- CoreSight management registers, at offsets `0xF00` to `0xFCF`
- Device specific registers, at offsets `0x000` to `0xEFF`.

For ARMv7-M, the component ID registers are required for the ROM table, and the CoreSight management lock access mechanism is defined for the DWT, ITM, FPB and TPIU blocks. Otherwise all ID and management registers are reserved, with the recommendation that they are CoreSight compliant or RAZ to encourage commonality of support across debug toolchains.

Note

The lock mechanism only applies to software access from the processor to the affected block. DAP access is always allowed, meaning the lock status register must RAZ from the DAP.

To determine the topology of the ARMv7-M debug infrastructure, ROM table entries indicate whether a block is present. Presence of a block guarantees support of the ARMv7-M programming requirements for DWT, ITM, FPB and TPIU. Additional functionality requires additional support, where CoreSight is the recommended framework.

The CPUID support in the SCS should be used to determine details of the architecture variant and features supported by the processor.

Table A-1 shows the Component ID and Peripheral ID register formats.

Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats

Address offset	Value[a]	Name	Description	Reference
`0xFFC`	`0x000000B1`	CID3	Component ID3	Preamble
`0xFF8`	`0x00000005`	CID2	Component ID2	Preamble
`0xFF4`	`0x000000X0`	CID1	Component ID1	Bits [7:4] Component Class Bits [3:0] Preamble
`0xFF0`	`0x0000000D`	CID0	Component ID0	Preamble
`0xFEC`	`0x000000YY`	PID3	Peripheral ID3	Bits [7:4] RevAnd, minor revision field Bits [3:0] if non-zero indicate a customer-modified block

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats (continued)

Address offset	Value[a]	Name	Description	Reference
0xFE8	0x000000YX	PID2	Peripheral ID2	bits [7:4] Revision bit [3] == 1: JEDEC assigned ID fields bits [2:0] JEP106 ID code [6:4]
0xFE4	0x000000XY	PID1	Peripheral ID1	bits [7:4] JEP106 ID code [3:0] bits [3:0] Part Number [11:8]
0xFE0	0x000000YY	PID0	Peripheral ID0	Part Number [7:0]
0xFDC	0x00000000	PID7	Peripheral ID7	Reserved
0xFD8	0x00000000	PID6	Peripheral ID6	Reserved
0xFD4	0x00000000	PID5	Peripheral ID5	Reserved
0xFD0	0x000000YX	PID4	Peripheral ID4	bits [7:4] 4KB count bits [3:0] JEP106 continuation code

a. For entries in the Value column, bits identified as X are defined by the CoreSight Architecture Specification, and bits identified as Y are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

In ARMv7-M, all CoreSight registers are accessed as words. Any 8-bit or 16-bit registers defined in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification* are accessed as zero-extended words.

For more information about the registers and their bit fields, see the CoreSight programmers' model in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

Note

The JEDEC defined fields refer to the JEDEC JEP106 code of the block designer. The combination of part number, designer and component class fields must be unique.

Table A-2 lists the CoreSight management lock mechanism registers.

Table A-2 ARMv7-M and CoreSight management registers

Component class[a]	Address offset	Type	Register name	Notes
-	0xFB8-0xFCF	-	Reserved	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table A-2 ARMv7-M and CoreSight management registers (continued)

Component class[a]	Address offset	Type	Register name	Notes
0x9	0xFB4	RO	Lock Status (LSR)	Optional in ARMv7-M. Location is RAZ if not implemented.
0x9	0xFB0	WO	Lock Access (LAR)	Optional in ARMv7-M, reads UNKNOWN
	0xF00-0xFAF		Reserved	

a. For information on component classes, see the Component ID register description in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

ARM recommends that all reserved register space is CoreSight compliant or RAZ.

See the *CoreSight Architecture Specification* for the complete description of the CoreSight management registers.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix B
Legacy Instruction Mnemonics

This appendix describes the legacy mnemonics in the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set and their *Unified Assembler Language* (UAL) equivalents. It contains the following sections:

- *Thumb instruction mnemonics* on page AppxB-918
- *Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP* on page AppxB-922
- *Pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics* on page AppxB-923.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B.1 Thumb instruction mnemonics

The following table shows the pre-UAL assembly syntax used for Thumb instructions before the introduction of Thumb-2 technology and the equivalent UAL syntax for each instruction. It can be used to translate correctly-assembling pre-UAL Thumb assembler code into UAL assembler code.

This table is not intended to be used for the reverse translation from UAL assembler code to pre-UAL Thumb assembler code.

In this table, 3-operand forms of the equivalent UAL syntax are used, except in one case where a 2-operand form needs to be used to ensure that the same instruction encoding is selected by a UAL assembler as was selected by a pre-UAL Thumb assembler.

Table B-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
ADC <Rd>, <Rm>	ADCS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
ADD <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	-
ADD <Rd>, #<imm>	ADDS <Rd>, #<imm>	-
ADD <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	-
ADD <Rd>, SP	ADD <Rd>, SP, <Rd>	-
ADD <Rd>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rm> ADD <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	If <Rd> and <Rm> are both R0-R7. Otherwise. <Rm> is not SP.
ADD <Rd>, PC, #<imm> ADR <Rd>, <label>	ADD <Rd>, PC, #<imm> ADR <Rd>, <label>	ADR form preferred where possible.
ADD <Rd>, SP, #<imm>	ADD <Rd>, SP, #<imm>	-
ADD SP, #<imm>	ADD SP, SP, #<imm>	-
AND <Rd>, <Rm>	ANDS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
ASR <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	ASRS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	-
ASR <Rd>, <Rs>	ASRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	-
B<cond> <label>	B<cond> <label>	-
B <label>	B <label>	-
BIC <Rd>, <Rm>	BICS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
BKPT <imm>	BKPT <imm>	-
BL <label>	BL <label>	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
BLX <Rm>	BLX <Rm>	<Rm> can be a high register.
BX <Rm>	BX <Rm>	<Rm> can be a high register.
CMN <Rn>, <Rm>	CMN <Rn>, <Rm>	-
CMP <Rn>, #<imm>	CMP <Rn>, #<imm>	-
CMP <Rn>, <Rm>	CMP <Rn>, <Rm>	<Rd> and <Rm> can be high registers.
CPS<effect> <iflags>	CPS<effect> <iflags>	-
CPY <Rd>, <Rm>	MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	-
EOR <Rd>, <Rm>	EORS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
LDMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	LDMIA <Rn>, <registers> LDMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	If <Rn> listed in <registers>. Otherwise.
LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	<Rn> can be SP.
LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
LDR <Rd>, [PC, #<imm>] LDR <Rd>, <label>	LDR <Rd>, [PC, #<imm>] LDR <Rd>, <label>	<label> form preferred where possible.
LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	-
LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	-
LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
LDRSB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRSB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
LDRSH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRSH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
LSL <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	MOVS <Rd>, <Rm> LSLS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	If <imm> == 0. Otherwise.
LSL <Rd>, <Rs>	LSLS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	-
LSR <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	LSRS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	-
LSR <Rd>, <Rs>	LSRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	-
MOV <Rd>, #<imm>	MOVS <Rd>, #<imm>	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rm>, #0 MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	If <Rd> and <Rm> are both R0-R7. Otherwise.
MUL <Rd>, <Rm>	MULS <Rd>, <Rm>, <Rd>	-
MVN <Rd>, <Rm>	MVNS <Rd>, <Rm>	-
NEG <Rd>, <Rm>	RSBS <Rd>, <Rm>, #0	-
ORR <Rd>, <Rm>	ORRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
POP <registers>	POP <registers>	<registers> can include PC.
PUSH <registers>	PUSH <registers>	<registers> can include LR.
REV <Rd>, <Rn>	REV <Rd>, <Rn>	-
REV16 <Rd>, <Rn>	REV16 <Rd>, <Rn>	-
REVSH <Rd>, <Rn>	REVSH <Rd>, <Rn>	-
ROR <Rd>, <Rs>	RORS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	-
SBC <Rd>, <Rm>	SBCS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	-
STMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	STMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	-
STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	<Rn> can be SP.
STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	-
STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	-
STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	-
SUB <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	SUBS <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	-
SUB <Rd>, #<imm>	SUBS <Rd>, #<imm>	-
SUB <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	SUBS <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	-
SUB SP, #<imm>	SUB SP, SP, #<imm>	-
SWI <imm>	SVC <imm>	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
SXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	SXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	-
SXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	SXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	-
TST <Rn>, <Rm>	TST <Rn>, <Rm>	-
UXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	UXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	-
UXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	UXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	-

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B.2 Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP

In pre-UAL assembler code, `NOP` is a pseudo-instruction, equivalent to `MOV R8,R8` in Thumb code.

Assembling the `NOP` mnemonic as UAL will not change the functionality of the code, but will change:

- the instruction encoding selected
- the architecture variants on which the resulting binary will execute successfully, because the Thumb version of the `NOP` instruction was introduced in ARMv6T2.

To avoid the change in Thumb code, replace `NOP` in the assembler source code with `MOV R8,R8`, before assembling as UAL.

Note

The pre-UAL pseudo-instruction is different for ARM code where it is equivalent to `MOV R0,R0`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

B.3 Pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics

Table B-2 lists the UAL equivalents of pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics.

Table B-2 UAL equivalents of pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics

Pre-UAL assembler mnemonic	UAL equivalent	See
FABSD, FABSS	VABS	*VABS* on page A7-565
FADDD, FADDS	VADD	*VADD* on page A7-566
FCMP, FCMPE, FCMPEZ, FCMPZ	VCMP{E}	*VCMP, VCMPE* on page A7-567
FCONSTD, FCONSTS	VMOV	*VMOV (immediate)* on page A7-585
FCPYD, FCPYS	VMOV	*VMOV (register)* on page A7-586
FDIVD, FDIVS	VDIV	*VDIV* on page A7-575
FLDD	VLDR	*VLDR* on page A7-581
FLDMD, FLDMS	VLDM, VPOP	*VLDM* on page A7-579 *VPOP* on page A7-599
FLDMX	FLDMX	*FLDMX, FSTMX* on page AppxB-925
FLDS	VLDR	*VLDR* on page A7-581
FMACD, FMACS	VMLA	*VMLA, VMLS* on page A7-583
FMDHR, FMDLR	VMOV	*VMOV (ARM core register to scalar)* on page A7-587
FMDRR	VMOV	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register)* on page A7-591
FMRDH, FMRDL	VMOV	*VMOV (scalar to ARM core register)* on page A7-588
FMRRD	VMOV	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and a doubleword register)* on page A7-591
FMRRS	VMOV	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers)* on page A7-590
FMRS	VMOV	*VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)* on page A7-589
FMRX	VMRS	*VMRS* on page A7-592
FMSCD, FMSCS	VNMLS	*VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL* on page A7-597

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B-2 UAL equivalents of pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics (continued)

Pre-UAL assembler mnemonic	UAL equivalent	See
FMSR	VMOV	*VMOV (between ARM core register and single-precision register)* on page A7-589
FMSRR	VMOV	*VMOV (between two ARM core registers and two single-precision registers)* on page A7-590
FMSTAT	VMRS	*VMRS* on page A7-592
FMULD, FMULS	VMUL	*VMUL* on page A7-594
FMXR	VMSR	*VMSR* on page A7-593
FNEGD, FNEGS	VNEG	*VNEG* on page A7-595
FNMACD, FNMACS	VMLS	*VMLA, VMLS* on page A7-583
FNMSCD, FNMSCS	VNMLA	*VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL* on page A7-597
FNMULD, FNMULS	VNMUL	*VNMLA, VNMLS, VNMUL* on page A7-597
FSHTOD, FSHTOS	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
FSITOD, FSITOS	VCVT	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
FSLTOD, FSLTOS	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
FSQRTD, FSQRTS	VSQRT	*VSQRT* on page A7-603
FSTD	VSTR	*VSTR* on page A7-607
FSTMD, FSTMS	VSTM, VPUSH	*VSTM* on page A7-605 *VPUSH* on page A7-601
FSTMX	FSTMX	*FLDMX, FSTMX* on page AppxB-925
FSTS	VSTR	*VSTR* on page A7-607
FSUBD, FSUBS	VSUB	*VSUB* on page A7-609
FTOSHD, FTOSHS	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
FTOSI{Z}D, FTOSI{Z}S	VCVT{R}	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
FTOSL, FTOUH	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table B-2 UAL equivalents of pre-UAL floating-point instruction mnemonics (continued)

Pre-UAL assembler mnemonic	UAL equivalent	See
FTOUI{Z}D, FTOUI{Z}S	VCVT{R}	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
FTOULD, FTOULS, FUHTOD, FUHTOS	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571
FUITOD, FUITOS	VCVT	*VCVT, VCVTR (between floating-point and integer)* on page A7-569
FULTOD, FULTOS	VCVT	*VCVT (between floating-point and fixed-point)* on page A7-571

B.3.1 FLDMX, FSTMX

Encoding T1 of the VLDM, VPOP, VPUSH, and VSTM instructions contain an imm8 field that is set to twice the number of doubleword registers to be transferred. ARM deprecates use of these encodings with an odd value in imm8, and there is no UAL syntax for them.

The pre-UAL mnemonics FLDMX and FSTMX result in the same instructions as FLDMD respectively, except that imm8 is equal to twice the number of doubleword registers plus one:

- FLDMD results in VLDM.64 or VPOP.64
- FSTMD results in VSTM.64 or VPUSH.64.

ARM deprecates use of FLDMX and FSTMX, except for disassembly purposes, and for reassembly of disassembled code.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix C
Deprecated Features in ARMv7-M

This appendix identifies deprecated features in the ARMv7-M architecture. It contains the following section:

- *Deprecated features of the ARMv7-M architecture* on page AppxC-928.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C.1 Deprecated features of the ARMv7-M architecture

This appendix describes features that are present in the ARMv7-M architecture for backwards compatibility. These features might not be supported in future versions of the ARM architecture. ARM strongly recommends that software does not use or rely on these features.

C.1.1 Deprecated architectural features

This subsection identifies deprecated features of the ARMv7-M architecture. See also *Deprecated feature of the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set* on page AppxC-929.

Four-byte stack alignment

Note

Whether an ARMv7-M implementation supports 4-byte stack alignment is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Some ARMv7-M implementations support 4-byte stack alignment, controlled by the CCR.STKALIGN bit. ARM deprecates any use of 4-byte stack alignment. For more information see.*Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-647.

Context switch optimization by not stacking LR

In some situations a context switch mechanism might not stack the LR, to achieve a small saving in context switch time. ARM deprecates any use of this optimization. For more information see *Saving context on process switch* on page B1-649.

Setting both DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA and DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA to 1

Software can configure use of the POSTCNT timer either for:

- generating PC sample packets, by setting DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA to 1
- generating Event counter packets, by setting DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA to 1.

On early ARMv7-M implementations, setting both DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA and DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA to 1, simultaneously, has the same effect as setting DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA to 1 and DWT_CTRL.CYCEVTENA to 0. ARM deprecates setting both of these bits to 1, and strongly recommends that software only either:

- sets both bits to 0, to disable use of the POSTCNT timer
- sets one bit to 1, and the other to 0, to enable a particular use of the POSTCNT timer.

For more information see *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

C.1.2 Deprecated feature of the ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set

The ARMv7-M Thumb instruction set is a version of a single ARMv7 Thumb instruction set. Some features of that instruction set are deprecated in ARMv7. Deprecated features of the instructions supported by ARMv7-M are:

- use of the PC as `<Rd>` or `<Rm>` in a 16-bit `ADD` (SP plus register) instruction
- use of the SP as `<Rm>` in:
  - a 16-bit `ADD` (SP plus register) instruction
  - a 16-bit `CMP` (register) instruction
- use of `MOV` (register) instructions in which both `<Rd>` and `<Rm>` are the SP or PC.
- use of `<Rn>` as the lowest-numbered register in the register list of a 16-bit `STM` instruction with base register write-back.
- Use of `APSR`, without a `_<bits>` qualifier, as an argument to the `MSR` instruction, as an alias for `APSR_nzcvq`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix D
Debug ITM and DWT Packet Protocol

This appendix describes the protocol for the packets used to send the data generated by the Debug ITM and DWT to an external debugger. It contains the following sections:

- *About the ITM and DWT packets* on page AppxD-932
- *Packet descriptions* on page AppxD-934
- *DWT use of Hardware source packets* on page AppxD-944,

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.1 About the ITM and DWT packets

The following sections give an overview of the ITM and DWT packets and how the TPIU transmits them:

- *Uses of ITM and DWT packets*
- *ITM and DWT protocol packet categories*
- *Packet transmission by the TPIU* on page AppxD-933.

Note

This appendix describes packet transmission by a TPIU. However, the ITM can send packets to any suitable trace sink. Regardless of the actual trace sink used, the ITM formats the packets as described in this appendix.

D.1.1 Uses of ITM and DWT packets

The ITM sends a packet to the TPIU when:

- software writes to a stimulus register
- the hardware generates a Local or Global timestamp, or any other protocol packet
- the hardware generates a Synchronization packet
- it receives a packet from the DWT, for forwarding to the TPIU.

The DWT sends a packet to the ITM for forwarding to the TPIU when:

- a data trace event triggers
- it samples the PC
- one of the performance profile counters wraps.

This appendix describes the packet protocol used.

D.1.2 ITM and DWT protocol packet categories

The first byte of a packet is the packet header, and indicates the packet type. For some packet types, the packet can includes one or more bytes of payload.

Table D-1 ITM and DWT protocol packet categories

Header	Payload, bytes	Packet category	Description
0b00000000	At least 6	Synchronization	See *Synchronization packet* on page AppxD-934
0bxxxxxx00, not 0b00000000	0-4	Protocol	See *Protocol packets* on page AppxD-935
0bxxxxxxSS, SS not 0b00	1, 2, or 4	Source	See *Source packets* on page AppxD-941

Except for the Synchronization packet, packets are 1-5 bytes long.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.1.3 Packet transmission by the TPIU

The TPIU either:

- forms the packets into frames, as required by the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*
- transmits the packets over a serial port.

For each packet, the TPIU transmits:

- the header byte first, followed by any payload bytes
- each byte of the packet *least significant bit* (LSB) first.

Figures in this chapter show the LSB of each byte to the right, and the *most significant bit* (MSB) to the left. Figure D-1 shows this convention, and how it relates to data transmission, for a packet with a header byte and two bytes of payload.

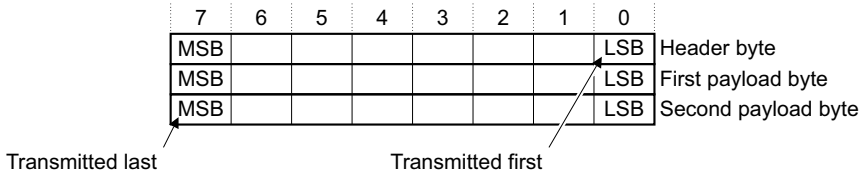


Figure D-1 Convention for packet descriptions

The ITM merges the packets from the ITM and DWT with the Local and Global timestamp, Synchronization, and other protocol packets, and forwards them to the TPIU as a single data stream. For more information see *How the ITM relates to other debug components* on page C1-848. The TPIU then merges this data stream with the data from the ETM.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.2 Packet descriptions

ITM and DWT protocol packet categories on page AppxD-932 summarized the packet categories. The following sections give more information about the protocol and source categories, and describes each packet type:

- *Synchronization packet*
- *Protocol packets* on page AppxD-935
- *Source packets* on page AppxD-941.

D.2.1 Synchronization packet

A Synchronization packet provides a unique pattern in the bit stream. Trace capture hardware can identify this pattern and use it to identify the alignment of packet bytes in the bitstream. A Synchronization packet is at least forty-seven 0 bits followed by single 1 bit. Figure D-2 shows the format of the smallest possible Synchronization packet.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 2
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 3
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 4
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 5
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Byte 6

Figure D-2 Minimum Synchronization packet format

The Synchronization packet definition is the same in other ARM trace protocols, including the Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM) and Program Flow Trace (PFT) protocols.

Note

- If the ITM connects to a parallel trace port interface, it must generate periodic Synchronization packets. An ITM connected to an asynchronous serial trace port interface can generate Synchronization packets.
- The definition of the Synchronization packet does not require the packet size to be a multiple of eight bits. For example, a Synchronization packet might comprise fifty 0 bits followed by a single 1 bit.

Whenever the ITM transmits a Synchronization packet, it clears the stimulus port Page register to zero. See *Instrumentation packet* on page AppxD-942 for more information.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.2.2 Protocol packets

A protocol packet has a header byte of 0bxxxxxx00, but not 0b00000000, see *ITM and DWT protocol packet categories* on page AppxD-932. This is followed by 0-4 payload bytes. Table D-2 shows the protocol packets.

Table D-2 ITM and DWT protocol packet formats

Description	Header	Payload [a]	Remarks
Overflow	0b01110000	0	See *Overflow packet*
Local timestamp	0bCDDD0000, DDD not 0b000 or 0b111	0 to 4 bytes	D = Data, C = Continuation. See *Local timestamp packets* on page AppxD-936.
Extension	0bCDDD1S00	0 to 4 bytes	S = Source, D = Data, C = Continuation. See *Extension packet* on page AppxD-940.
Global timestamp	0b10T10100	1 to 4 bytes	T = Global timestamp packet type. See *Global timestamp packets* on page AppxD-939.
Reserved	0b0xxx0100 0bx1110000 0b10x00100 0b11xx0100	-	-

a. See *Continuation bits in protocol packets* for more information.

Continuation bits in protocol packets

In the ITM and DWT protocol, the maximum packet size is 5 bytes.

In protocol packets, bit[7] of each byte, including the header byte, but not including the last byte of a 5-byte packet, is a continuation bit, C. The meaning of this bit is:

0 This is the last byte of the packet.

1 This is not the last byte of the packet.

D.2.3 Overflow packet

The ITM outputs an Overflow packet if:

- software writes to a Stimulus Port register when the stimulus port output buffer is full
- the DWT attempts to generate a Hardware source packet when the DWT output buffer is full
- the Local timestamp counter overflows.

The Overflow packet comprises a header with no payload. Figure D-3 on page AppxD-936 shows the packet format.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	Header

Figure D-3 Overflow packet format

D.2.4 Local timestamp packets

A Local timestamp packet encodes timestamp information, for generic control and synchronization, based on a timestamp counter in the ITM. To reduce the trace bandwidth:

- The local timestamping scheme uses delta timestamps, meaning each local timestamp value gives the interval since the generation of the previous Local timestamp packet.
- The Local timestamp packet length, 1-5 bytes, depends on the required timestamp value.

Whenever the ITM outputs a Local timestamp packet, it clears its timestamp counter to zero.

Note

The ITM can also support global timestamping, that provides correlation with other trace sources in the system. For more information see *Global timestamping* on page C1-846 and *Global timestamp packets* on page AppxD-939. Global timestamps use absolute timestamp values from a system timestamp clock.

If the ITM outputs the Local timestamp synchronously to the corresponding ITM or DWT data, and the required timestamp value is in the range 1-6, it uses a format that comprises only a Local timestamp header, see *Local timestamp packet format 2, single byte* on page AppxD-938.

Local timestamp packet format 1, two to five bytes

Local timestamp packet format 1 is a multi-byte packet, meaning the C bit of the packet header is 1. Figure D-4 shows the packet format.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
1	1	TC[1:0]		0	0	0	0	Header
C	TS[6:0]							Payload byte 0
C	TS[13:7]							Payload byte 1, if required
C	TS[20:14]							Payload byte 2, if required
0	TS[27:21]							Payload byte 3, if required

Figure D-4 Local timestamp packet format 1

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In this format, bit [6] of the header is 1. The encoding of the rest of the packet is:

C Continuation bits, see *Continuation bits in protocol packets* on page AppxD-935.

TC[1:0] Indicates the relationship between the generation of the Local timestamp packet and the corresponding ITM or DWT data packet. The possible values are:

00 The local timestamp value is synchronous to the corresponding ITM or DWT data. The value in the TS field is the timestamp counter value when the ITM or DWT packet is generated.

01 The local timestamp value is delayed relative to the ITM or DWT data. The value in the TS field is the timestamp counter value when the Local timestamp packet is generated.

Note

The local timestamp value corresponding to the previous ITM or DWT packet is UNKNOWN, but must be between the previous and current local timestamp values.

10 Output of the ITM or DWT packet corresponding to this Local timestamp packet is delayed relative to the associated event. The value in the TS field is the timestamp counter value when the ITM or DWT packets is generated.

This encoding indicates that the ITM or DWT packet was delayed relative to other trace output packets.

11 Output of the ITM or DWT packet corresponding to this Local timestamp packet is delayed relative to the associated event, and this Local timestamp packet is delayed relative to the ITM or DWT data. This is a combination of the conditions indicated by values 0b01 and 0b10.

TS[N:0] The local timestamp value. This is the interval since the previous Local timestamp packet. The required timestamp value determines whether N is 6, 13, 20, or 27, see *Local timestamp value compression* on page AppxD-938 for more information.

Note

- If higher priority trace data uses all the trace output bandwidth, the ITM cannot output timestamp packets, see *Arbitration between packets from different sources* on page C1-848. In this case timestamp packets can be lost, resulting in trace data without any corresponding timestamp information. Timing information remains uncertain until the ITM next outputs a timestamp packet.
- Because the ITM resets the timestamp counter to zero only when it outputs a Local timestamp packet, unless the timestamp counter overflows the timestamps always indicate the time since the previous packet. If the timestamp counter overflows the ITM outputs an Overflow packet, see *Overflow packet* on page AppxD-935.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Local timestamp value compression

The Local timestamp packet uses only the number of payload bytes required to output the current Local timestamp value. For example, to output a value of 0b11001001, it uses two payload bytes, as Figure D-5 shows.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
1	1	TC[1:0]		0	0	0	0	Header
1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	Payload byte 0, bits[6:0] are TS[6:0]
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	Payload byte 1, bits[6:0] are TS[13:7]

Figure D-5 Local timestamp packet for a Local timestamp value of 0b11001001

Local timestamp packet format 2, single byte

Local timestamp packet format 2 is a single byte packet, comprising only a packet header. This means the C bit of the header is 0. Figure D-6 shows the packet format.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	TS[2:0]			0	0	0	0	Header

Figure D-6 Local timestamp packet format 2

The encoding of this format is:

TS[2:0] Local timestamp value, in the range 0b001 to 0b110.

Note

The protocol does not permit the following TS[2:0] values:

- 0b000, see *Synchronization packet* on page AppxD-934
- 0b111, see *Overflow packet* on page AppxD-935.

The ITM outputs this packet only when both:

- The required Local timestamp value is in the range 1-6.
- The Local timestamp is synchronous to the corresponding ITM or DWT data. This is the same condition as the TC[1:0]==0b00 case in Local timestamp packet format 1.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.2.5 Global timestamp packets

If an implementation supports global timestamping, the ITM generates Global timestamp packets based on a global timestamp clock. A full global timestamp is a 48-bit value. This means global timestamping uses two timestamp packet formats:

- GTS1 packets transmit bits [25:0] of the timestamp value, and the ITM compresses these by not transmitting high-order bytes that are unchanged from the previous timestamp value. This compression scheme is similar to the compression used for local timestamps, see *Local timestamp value compression* on page AppxD-938.
- GTS2 packets transmit bits [47:26] of the timestamp values, and when a GTS2 packet is required the ITM always transmits it in full, as a five-byte packet.

For more information about global timestamping see *Global timestamping* on page C1-846.

When the ITM must transmit a complete global timestamp value, using both a GTS1 and a GTS2 packet, it transmits the GTS1 packet first, and queues the GTS2 packet for transmission when bandwidth is available. It might have to transmit one or more additional GTS1 packets before it can transmit the GTS2 packet. Whenever timestamp bits [47:26] have changed since the last transmitted GTS2 packet, the ITM transmits any required GTS1 packets with the Wrap bit set to 1. When the ITM finally transmits the GTS2 packet, the packet contains the TS[47:26] bits for the most recently transmitted GTS1 packet.

Figure D-7 shows the GTS1 packet format.

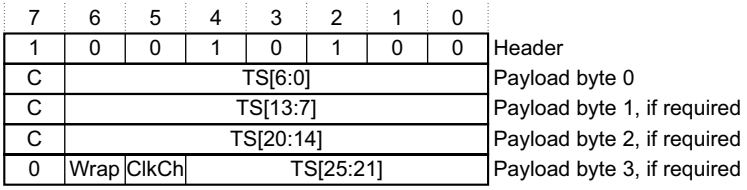


Figure D-7 GTS1 Global timestamp packet format

In this format, bit [5] of the header is 0. The encoding of the rest of the packet is:

C Continuation bits, see *Continuation bits in protocol packets* on page AppxD-935.

TS[N:0] The low-order bits of the global timestamp value, obtained from the global timestamp clock. The required low-order timestamp value determines whether N is 6, 13, 20, or 25, see *Local timestamp value compression* on page AppxD-938 for more information.

ClkCh This bit is set to 1 if the system has asserted the clock change input to the processor since the last time the ITM generated a Global timestamp packet. When this signal is asserted, the ITM must output a full 48-bit global timestamp value.

Otherwise, this bit is set to 0.

Wrap This bit is set to 1 if the value of global timestamp bits TS[47:26] has changed since the last GTS2 packet output by the ITM. Otherwise this bit is set to 0.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure D-8 shows the GTS2 packet format. The ITM always transmits this packet as a 5-byte packet.

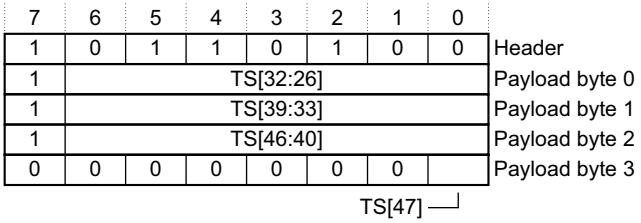


Figure D-8 GTS2 Global timestamp packet format

In this format:

- bit [5] of the header is 1
- in the header and in payload bytes 0-2, bit [7] is a continuation bit, set to 1 to indicate that the packet has additional bytes, see *Continuation bits in protocol packets* on page AppxD-935.

The encoding of the rest of the packet is:

TS[47:26] The high-order bits of the global timestamp value, obtained from the global timestamp clock.

D.2.6 Extension packet

An Extension packet provides additional information about the identified source. The amount of information required determines the number of payload bytes, 0-4. Figure D-9 shows the packet format.

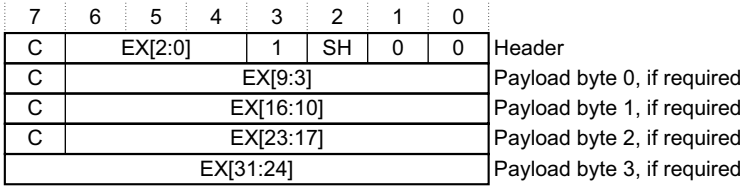


Figure D-9 Extension packet format

In the Extension packet header, bit [3] is 1, and bits [1:0] are 0b00. The encoding or the rest of the packet is:

C Continuation bits, see *Continuation bits in protocol packets* on page AppxD-935.

SH Information source bit.

EX[N:0] The extension information. The amount of information determines the number of payload bytes required, and that determines whether N is 2, 9, 16, 23, or 31.

The ARMv7-M ITM and DWT packet protocol uses Extension packets only to provide additional information for the decoding of Instrumentation packets, as described in, see *Extension packet for the stimulus port page number* on page AppxD-941

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Extension packet for the stimulus port page number

The ITM uses a single-byte Extension packet to transmit the stimulus port page number for subsequent Instrumentation packets. Figure D-10 shows the packet format.

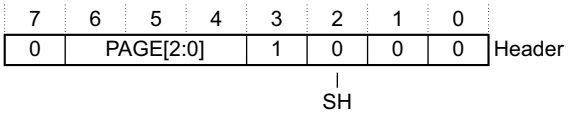


Figure D-10 Extension packet format for stimulus port page number

In this use, the encoding of this packet is:

SH Source. RAZ, indicating that this is an Extension packet for Instrumentation packets.

PAGE[2:0] Stimulus port page number, 0-7.

The ITM writes the PAGE value to a Page register for use with subsequent Stimulus port writes. See *Instrumentation packet* on page AppxD-942 for the use of this page number.

When the ITM issues a Synchronization packet it clears the value of the Page register to 0.

D.2.7 Source packets

An Instrumentation packet or Hardware source packet has a header byte of 0bxxxxxxSS, where SS is not 0b00, see *ITM and DWT protocol packet categories* on page AppxD-932. This is followed by 1, 2, or 4 payload bytes. Table D-2 on page AppxD-935 shows the source packets.

Table D-3 ITM and DWT Instrumentation and Hardware source packet formats

Description	Value	Payload	Category	Remarks
Instrumentation	0bAAAAA0SS, SS not 0b00	1, 2 or 4 bytes	Software source, application	SS = size of payload AAAAA = Source Address
Hardware source	0bAAAAA1SS, SS not 0b00	1, 2 or 4 bytes	Hardware source, diagnostics	SS = size of payload AAAAA = Packet type discriminator ID

The SS bits indicates the payload size, using the following encoding:

01 1-byte payload, 2-byte packet

10 2-byte payload, 3-byte packet

11 4-byte payload, 5-byte packet.

Note

The protocol does not permit an SS value of 0b00, see *Synchronization packet* on page AppxD-934.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.2.8 Instrumentation packet

A software write to an ITM stimulus port generates an Instrumentation packet. Figure D-11 shows the packet format.

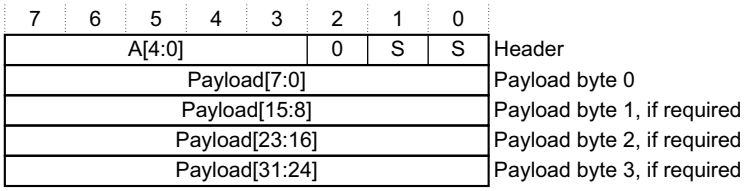


Figure D-11 Instrumentation packet format

The SS bits indicate the payload size, 1, 2, or 4 bytes, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941. The encoding of the rest of the packet is:

A[4:0] The port number, 0-31, see *Encoding of the stimulus port number* on page AppxD-943 for more information.

Payload[N:0] Instrumentation data. This is the value written to the ITM stimulus port. Table D-4 shows how the value of the SS bits indicate the value of N.

Table D-4 SS value and payload size

SS value	Payload	Packet size
0b01	Payload[7:0]	2 bytes
0b10	Payload[15:0]	3 bytes
0b11	Payload[31:0]	5 bytes

The size of the write transaction determines the size of the Instrumentation packet generated by the ITM. For example, if software writes `0x03A1` as a halfword access, the ITM generates a 3-byte Instrumentation packet, as Figure D-12 shows:

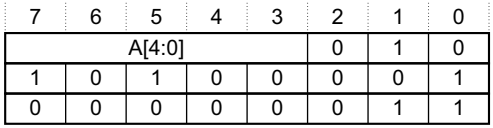


Figure D-12 Instrumentation packet for a halfword write of `0x03A1`

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Encoding of the stimulus port number

If an ITM implementation supports more than 32 stimulus ports, the ITM uses paging to indicate the stimulus port number, and an Extension packet to issue the page number, 0-7, for subsequent Instrumentation packets, see *Extension packet for the stimulus port page number* on page AppxD-941. The stimulus port number is:

Stimulus port number = (Page number x 32) + A[4:0]

Note

Whenever a debugger receives an Instrumentation packet, it uses the page number from the last Extension packet it received, or a page number of 0 if it has not received an Extension packet since it last received a Synchronization packet.

D.2.9 Hardware source packet

The DWT unit generates Hardware source packets, that it forwards to the ITM for prioritization and transmission. Figure D-13 shows the packet format.

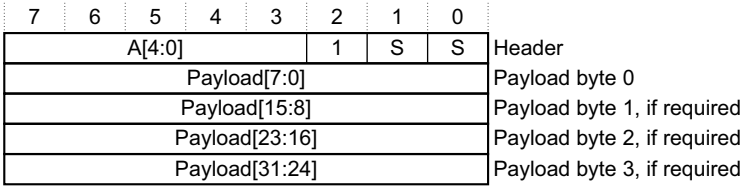


Figure D-13 Hardware source packet format

The SS bits indicate the payload size, 1, 2, or 4 bytes, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941. The encoding of the rest of the packet is:

A[4:0] The packet type discriminator ID, see *DWT use of Hardware source packets* on page AppxD-944.

Payload[N:0] DWT data. Table D-4 on page AppxD-942 shows how the value of the SS bits indicate the value of N.

DWT use of Hardware source packets on page AppxD-944 gives more information about the encoding and use of these packets.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

D.3 DWT use of Hardware source packets

The DWT generates packets using the Hardware source packet format, see *Hardware source packet* on page AppxD-943. It uses the A[4:0] field to hold a *discriminator ID*, and ARMv7-M defines the following discriminator IDs:

0 Event counter wrapping, see *Event counter packet, discriminator ID0*.

1 Exception tracing.

2 PC sampling.

8-23 Data tracing.

Note

ARMv7-M does not define any Extension packets for Hardware source packets.

D.3.1 Event counter packet, discriminator ID0

The DWT unit generates an Event counter packet when a counter value wraps round to zero, that is, when:

- a countup, or incrementing, counter overflows
- a countdown, or decrementing, counter underflows.

The packet has a single payload byte, containing a set of bits that show which counters have wrapped. Typically a single counter wraps, however the DWT can generate this packet with multiple payload bits set to 1, indicating a combination of counters wrapping to zero.

Figure D-14 shows the Event counter packet format:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Header
(0)	(0)	Cyc	Fold	LSU	Sleep	Exc	CPI	Payload

Figure D-14 Event packet format

The Event counter packet header encoding is:

Bits[7:3] A[4:0] field. Discriminator ID, 0.

Bit[2] RAO. Indicates a Hardware source packet.

Bits[1:0] SS bits. Indicate the payload size. 0b01, one-byte payload, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table D-5 shows the payload bit assignments.

Table D-5 Event counter packet payload bit assignments

Bit	Name	Counter overflow bit
[7:6]	-	Reserved
[5]	Cyc	POSTCNT, see *The POSTCNT timer* on page C1-872
[4]	Fold	FOLDCNT, see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875
[3]	LSU	LSUCNT, see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875
[2]	Sleep	SLEEPCNT, see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875
[1]	Exc	EXCCNT, see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875
[0]	CPI	CPICNT, see *Profiling counter support* on page C1-875

D.3.2 Exception trace packets, discriminator ID1

The DWT unit can generate an Exception trace packet whenever the processor enters, exits, or returns to an exception. The packet has two payload bytes, that indicate the exception number and the action, associated with that exception, that the processor has taken

See *Exception number definition* on page B1-633 for information about the ExceptionNumber values returned.

Figure D-15 shows the Exception trace packet format.

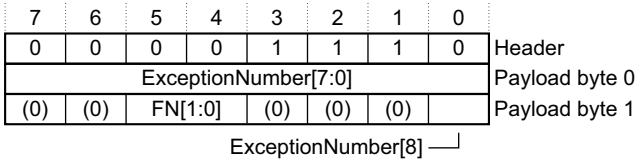


Figure D-15 Exception trace packet format

The Exception trace packet header encoding is:

Bits[7:3] A[4:0] field. Discriminator ID, 1.

Bit[2] RAO. Indicates a Hardware source packet.

Bits[1:0] SS bits. Indicate the payload size. 0b10, two-byte payload, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table D-5 on page AppxD-945 shows the payload bit assignments.

Table D-6 Exception trace packet payload bit assignments

Byte	Bit	Name	Description
0	[7:0]	ExceptionNumber[7:0]	Bits [7:0] of the exception number, see *Exception number definition* on page B1-633.
1	[7:6]	-	Reserved.
	[5:4]	FN[1:0]	Function. The action taken by the processor. One of: 0b01 = Entered exception indicated by ExceptionNumber field. 0b10 = Exited exception indicated by ExceptionNumber field. 0b11 = Returned to exception indicated by ExceptionNumber field. The value 0b00 is reserved.
	[3:1]	-	Reserved.
	[0]	ExceptionNumber[8]	Bit [8] of the exception number.

D.3.3 Periodic PC sample packets, discriminator ID2

The DWT unit generates PC samples at fixed time intervals, with an accuracy of one clock cycle. The POSTCNT counter period determines the PC sampling interval, and software configures the DWT_CTRL.CYCTAP field to determine how POSTCNT relates to the processor cycle counter, CYCCNT. The DWT_CTRL.PCSAMPLENA bit enables PC sampling. For more information see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879.

A full Periodic PC sample packet has four bytes of payload. However, if the processor is in a sleep mode the DWT unit generates a Periodic PC sleep packet with a single payload byte.

Figure D-16 shows the full Periodic PC sample packet format.

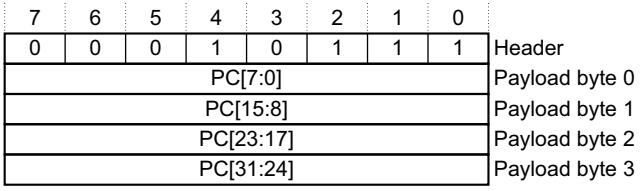


Figure D-16 Periodic PC sample packet format

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Figure D-17 shows the Periodic PC sleep packet format.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	Header
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Payload

Figure D-17 Periodic PC sleep packet format

The Periodic PC sample packet header encoding is:

Bits[7:3] A[4:0] field. Discriminator ID, 2.

Bit[2] RAO. Indicates a Hardware source packet.

Bits[1:0] SS bits. Indicate the payload size, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941:

- for a full Periodic PC sample packet, 0b11, indicating a four-byte payload
- for a Periodic PC sleep packet, 0b01, indicating a one-byte payload.

The payload encoding is:

Full Periodic PC sample packet

The four payload bytes hold the PC value, PC[31:0]. The ITM transmits the packet least-significant byte first, see Figure D-16 on page AppxD-946.

Note

Because a PC value must be halfword aligned, bit [0] of payload byte 0 is 0.

Periodic PC sleep packet

The single payload byte is a zero byte.

D.3.4 Data trace packets discriminator IDs 8-23

The DWT unit generates a Data trace packet when a comparison with a DWT comparator matches, and the configuration of that comparator in the corresponding DWT_FUNCTION*n* register requires data capture on a match. For more information see:

- *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893
- *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857.

Note

The Data trace packet protocol only supports data capture for comparators 0 to 3, that is, for registers DWT_FUNCTION0 - DWT_FUNCTION3.

A single DWT comparator match can generate one of the following single packets or packet combinations:

- a single packet, holding a PC value
- a single packet, holding a data address offset
- a single packet, holding a data value, whether it was read or written, and the transfer size

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- two packets, a PC value followed by data value
- two packets, a data address offset followed by data value.

In Data trace packets, the discriminator ID field encodes:

- the Data trace packet type
- the number of the DWT comparator that matched, and therefore required the data capture
- for Data trace data value packets, whether the associated access was a read or a write.

Figure D-18 shows the Data trace packet header format.

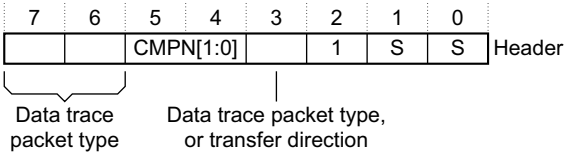


Figure D-18 Data trace packet header format

The Data trace packet header encoding is:

Bits[7:3] A[4:0] field, Discriminator ID, encoded as:

Bits[7:6] Data trace packet type:

01 PC value or address offset, see bit[3].

10 Data value, see *Data trace data value packet format* on page AppxD-950.

Values of 0b00 and 0b11 are reserved.

Bits[5:4] CMPN[1:0]. The number of the comparator that generated the data.

Bit[3] When bits[7:6] are 0b01:

0 Data trace PC value packet, see *Data trace PC value packet format* on page AppxD-949.

1 Data trace address offset packet, see *Data trace address offset packet format* on page AppxD-949.

When bits[7:6] are 0b10:

0 Read access.

1 Write access.

Bit[2] RAO. Indicates a Hardware source packet.

Bits[1:0] SS bits. Indicate the payload size, see *Source packets* on page AppxD-941.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table D-7 shows how the encoding of the Data trace packet heading assigns discriminator IDs to the different packet types.

Table D-7 Discriminator IDs for Data trace packets

Header bit					Data trace packet type	Discriminator IDs	Payload
[7]	[6]	[5]	[4]	[3]			
0	1	CMPN[1:0]		0	PC value packet	8, 10, 12, 14	4 bytes
0	1	CMPN[1:0]		1	Address offset packet	9, 11, 13, 15	2 bytes
1	0	CMPN[1:0]		0	Data value packet, read access	16, 18, 20, 22	1, 2, or 4 bytes
1	0	CMPN[1:0]		1	Data value packet, write access	17, 19, 21, 23	

Data trace PC value packet format

Figure D-19 shows the format of a Data trace packet containing the PC value for the instruction that caused the successful address comparison.

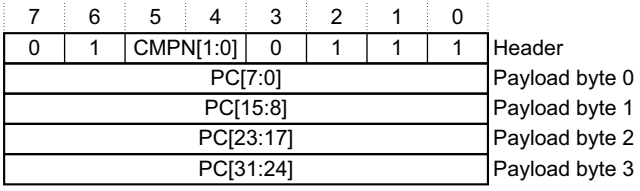


Figure D-19 Data trace PC value packet format, IDs 8, 10, 12, or 14

Data trace address offset packet format

Figure D-20 shows the format of a Data trace packet containing an address offset. The DWT generates a Data trace address offset packet when an address comparison is successful and the corresponding DWT_FUNCTION.EMITRANGE bit is set to 1. For more information see *The DWT comparators* on page C1-857 and *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893.

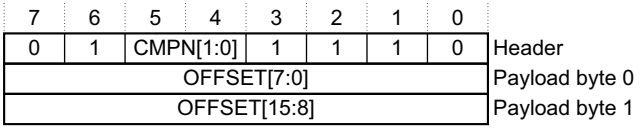


Figure D-20 Data trace address offset packet format, IDs 9, 11, 13, or 15

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Data trace data value packet format

Figure D-21 shows the format of a Data trace packet containing a data value.

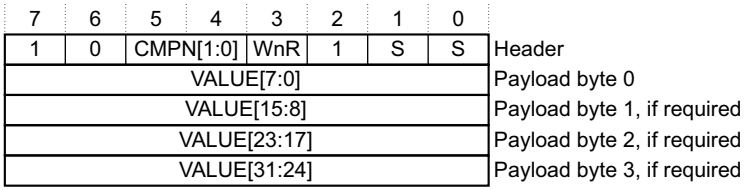


Figure D-21 Data trace data value packet format, IDs 16-23

The transfer size determines the payload size:

Byte One-byte payload, VALUE[7:0], SS is 0b01.

Halfword Two-byte payload, VALUE[15:0], SS is 0b10.

Word Four-byte payload, VALUE[31:0], SS is 0b11.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix E
ARMv7-R Differences

This appendix compares the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, identifying their similarities and differences, It contains the following sections:

- *About the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R architecture profiles* on page AppxE-952
- *Endian support* on page AppxE-953
- *Application level support* on page AppxE-954
- *System level support* on page AppxE-955
- *Debug support* on page AppxE-956.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

E.1 About the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R architecture profiles

While Thumb-2 technology is common across all the ARMv7 profiles, there are other key similarities between the ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R profiles. By understanding the similarities and differences, developers can minimize the effort required to support software on both profiles, or to generate a system architecture that permits straightforward migration from one profile to the other.

A system tradeoff that must made as part of the profile decision is absolute performance versus interrupt latency.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

E.2 Endian support

ARMv7-R supports instruction fetches in big and little endian formats, with the format determined by the IE bit in the System Control Register. ARMv7-M only supports instruction fetches in little endian format. Where an ARMv7-M implementation requires big endian instruction format, the bus fabric must provide byte swapping within a halfword. The byte swap is required for instruction fetches only and must not occur on data accesses.

By example, for instruction fetches over a 32-bit bus:

```
PrefetchInstr<31:24> -> PrefetchInstr<23:16>
PrefetchInstr<23:16> -> PrefetchInstr<31:24>
PrefetchInstr<15:8> -> PrefetchInstr<7:0>
PrefetchInstr<7:0> -> PrefetchInstr<15:8>
```

ARMv7-M and ARMv7-R both support a configurable endian model for data accesses, see *Endian support* on page A3-85. While ARMv7-R supports dynamic endian control via a control bit in its xPSR and System Control register EE bit, ARMv7-M is statically configured on reset.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

E.3 Application level support

At the application level, ARMv7-M can be considered as a subset of ARMv7-R. All the ARMv7-M application level instructions are supported in ARMv7-R, along with the same flags and general purpose registers. However, the Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions are always restartable in ARMv7-R and do not support the ARMv7-M continuation model that is based on the xPSR.ICI bits. However, privileged software execution exposes the system level differences between the two profiles.

ARMv7-R has additional support for:

- SIMD instructions and saturated arithmetic:
  - the baseline ARMv7-M profile only supports the `SSAT` and `USAT` saturation instructions
  - the ARMv7-M DSP extension adds support for the full range of DSP instructions supported by ARMv7-R.
- ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and interworking between them. ARMv7-M is Thumb only.
- For synchronization, ARMv7-M only supports the byte, halfword, and word versions of the load and store exclusive instructions. ARMv7-R also supports the doubleword versions of these instructions, and the legacy swap instructions.

  Note

  For all architecture profiles, ARM deprecates use of the legacy swap instructions.

Both ARMv7-R and ARMv7-M support the hardware divide instructions, `SDIV` and `UDIV`.

Both ARMv7-R and ARMv7-M support an optional floating-point extension. However:

- The ARMv7-R extension includes double-precision operators that are not supported in ARMv7-M.
- The architectural requirements for the ARMv7-M floating-point extension are much simpler than those for ARMv7-R. In particular, ARMv7-M has no concept of a floating-point subarchitecture, which an ARMv7-R implementation requires.

Note

The ARMv7-R profile can support an Advanced SIMD extension, using NEON technology. ARMv7-M does not support Advanced SIMD.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

E.4 System level support

The programmers' model and exception model are significantly different in the two profiles:

- ARMv7-R supports:
  - a set of operating modes with, for example, a specific mode for handling each class of exception. Core registers are banked between different modes.
  - Fixed entry points (addresses) for exception handling. When handling exceptions, stacking and unstacking is under software control.
  - Control and configuration is through the *System Control Coprocessor* (CP15) interface.
  - Debug control and configuration is through the CP14 coprocessor interface.
- ARMv7-M only banks the stack pointer. It uses a combination of special-purpose registers and memory mapped resources for system configuration and execution management, both for normal operation and for debug. A key feature of ARMv7-M is low-latency exception handling, with automatic stacking and unstacking on exception entry and exit.

  The ARMv7-M floating-point extension provides configurable hardware stacking and unstacking of floating-point registers.

System level instruction support is different, reflecting the different programmers' models. Both profiles support the `CPS`, `MRS`, and `MSR` instructions, but they execute differently. ARMv7 provides additional system level instructions, for example `SRS` and `RFE`. The behavior of Wait For Exception and Wait For Interrupt behavior differs because of the different the exception models.

Both profiles support the ARM *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSAv7). This is:

- required in ARMv7-R
- optional in ARMv7-M.

PMSAv7 provides the same features in both profiles. Although the register access mechanisms are different, the register layouts are generally the same, except for fault handling. When PMSAv7 is not supported or is disabled, both profiles have a default memory map. The two default memory maps provide similar breakdowns of memory into regions with different attributes, but the maps are not identical.

The different exception models mean that the two profiles have significantly different PMSA fault handling.

ARMv7-R is designed for higher performance (higher clock rate) parts and includes support for closely coupled caches. ARMv7-M only supports memory-mapped system caches.

Interrupt control and prioritization is an integral part of the ARMv7-M exception model. This is not part of the ARMv7-R architecture, but the ARM *General Interrupt Controller* (GIC) offers a similar prioritization and interrupt handling model to ARMv7-M. Use of a GIC with an ARMv7-R processor removes many of the exception model differences.

ARMv7-M defines a system timer. A similar timer can be used with ARMv7-R, and its interrupt can be routed through a GIC for maximum compatibility.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

E.5 Debug support

Both profiles support halting and monitor debug. The mechanisms for breakpoint and watchpoint handling are different. There are also different levels of counter support for profiling. Both support an optional trace feature, based on an *Embedded Trace Macrocell* (ETM). ARMv7-M is generally less invasive in its debug support, and offers additional software and hardware event generation trace capabilities as part of the basic architecture.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix F
Pseudocode Definition

This appendix provides a formal definition of the pseudocode used in this manual, and lists the *helper* procedures and functions used by pseudocode to perform useful architecture-specific jobs. It contains the following sections:

- *Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxF-958
- *Limitations of pseudocode* on page AppxF-960
- *Data types* on page AppxF-961
- *Expressions* on page AppxF-965
- *Operators and built-in functions* on page AppxF-967
- *Statements and program structure* on page AppxF-973
- *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxF-978.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.1 Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode

Instruction descriptions in this book contain:

- An Encoding section, containing one or more encoding diagrams, each followed by some encoding-specific pseudocode that translates the fields of the encoding into inputs for the common pseudocode of the instruction, and picks out any encoding-specific special cases.
- An Operation section, containing common pseudocode that applies to all of the encodings being described. The Operation section pseudocode contains a call to the `EncodingSpecificOperations()` function, either at its start or after only a condition check performed by `if ConditionPassed() then`.

An encoding diagram specifies each bit of the instruction as one of the following:

- An obligatory 0 or 1, represented in the diagram as 0 or 1. If this bit does not have this value, the encoding corresponds to a different instruction.
- A *should be* 0 or 1, represented in the diagram as (0) or (1). If this bit does not have this value, the instruction is UNPREDICTABLE.
- A named single bit or a bit within a named multi-bit field.

An encoding diagram matches an instruction if all obligatory bits are identical in the encoding diagram and the instruction.

The execution model for an instruction is:

1. Find all encoding diagrams that match the instruction. It is possible that no encoding diagrams match. In that case, abandon this execution model and consult the relevant instruction set chapter instead to find out how the instruction is to be treated. (The bit pattern of such an instruction is usually reserved and UNDEFINED, though there are some other possibilities. For example, unallocated hint instructions are documented as being reserved and to be executed as NOPs.)
2. If the operation pseudocode for the matching encoding diagrams starts with a condition check, perform that condition check. If the condition check fails, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction as a NOP. (If there are multiple matching encoding diagrams, either all or none of their corresponding pieces of common pseudocode start with a condition check.)
3. Perform the encoding-specific pseudocode for each of the matching encoding diagrams independently and in parallel. Each such piece of encoding-specific pseudocode starts with a bitstring variable for each named bit or multi-bit field within its corresponding encoding diagram, named the same as the bit or multi-bit field and initialized with the values of the corresponding bit(s) from the bit pattern of the instruction.

   In a few cases, the encoding diagram contains more than one bit or field with the same name. When this occurs, the values of all of those bits or fields are expected to be identical, and the encoding-specific pseudocode contains a special case using the `Consistent()` function to specify what happens if this is not the case. This function returns `TRUE` if all instruction bits or fields with the same name as its argument have the same value, and `FALSE` otherwise.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If there are multiple matching encoding diagrams, all but one of the corresponding pieces of pseudocode must contain a special case that indicates that it does not apply. Discard the results of all such pieces of pseudocode and their corresponding encoding diagrams.

There is now one remaining piece of pseudocode and its corresponding encoding diagram left to consider. This pseudocode might also contain a special case (most commonly one indicating that it is UNPREDICTABLE). If so, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction according to the special case.

4. Check the *should be* bits of the encoding diagram against the corresponding bits of the bit pattern of the instruction. If any of them do not match, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction as UNPREDICTABLE.

5. Perform the rest of the operation pseudocode for the instruction description that contains the encoding diagram. That pseudocode starts with all variables set to the values they were left with by the encoding-specific pseudocode.

The `ConditionPassed()` call in the common pseudocode (if present) performs step 2, and the `EncodingSpecificOperations()` call performs steps 3 and 4.

F.1.1 Pseudocode

The pseudocode provides precise descriptions of what instructions do. Instruction fields are referred to by the names shown in the encoding diagram for the instruction.

The pseudocode is described in detail in the following sections.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.2 Limitations of pseudocode

The pseudocode descriptions of instruction functionality have a number of limitations. These are mainly due to the fact that, for clarity and brevity, the pseudocode is a sequential and mostly deterministic language.

These limitations include:

- Pseudocode does not describe the ordering requirements when an instruction generates multiple memory accesses. For a description of the ordering requirements on memory accesses see *Memory access order* on page A3-111.
- Pseudocode does not describe the exact rules when an undefined instruction fails its condition check. In such cases, the `UNDEFINED` pseudocode statement lies inside the `if ConditionPassed() then ...` structure, either directly or within the `EncodingSpecificOperations()` function call, and so the pseudocode indicates that the instruction executes as a NOP. See *Conditional execution of undefined instructions* on page A7-209 for more information.
- The pseudocode statements `UNDEFINED`, `UNPREDICTABLE` and `SEE` indicate behavior that differs from that indicated by the pseudocode being executed. If one of them is encountered:
  - — Earlier behavior indicated by the pseudocode is only specified as occurring to the extent required to determine that the statement is executed.
  - — No subsequent behavior indicated by the pseudocode occurs. This means that these statements terminate pseudocode execution.

  For more information see *Simple statements* on page AppxF-973.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.3 Data types

This section describes:

- *General data type rules*
- *Bitstrings*
- *Integers* on page AppxF-962
- *Reals* on page AppxF-962
- *Booleans* on page AppxF-962
- *Enumerations* on page AppxF-962
- *Lists* on page AppxF-963
- *Arrays* on page AppxF-964.

F.3.1 General data type rules

ARM Architecture pseudocode is a strongly-typed language. Every constant and variable is of one of the following types:

- bitstring
- integer
- boolean
- real
- enumeration
- list
- array.

The type of a constant is determined by its syntax. The type of a variable is normally determined by assignment to the variable, with the variable being implicitly declared to be of the same type as whatever is assigned to it. For example, the assignments `x = 1`, `y = '1'`, and `z = TRUE` implicitly declare the variables `x`, `y` and `z` to have types integer, length-1 bitstring and boolean respectively.

Variables can also have their types declared explicitly by preceding the variable name with the name of the type. This is most often done in function definitions for the arguments and the result of the function.

These data types are described in more detail in the following sections.

F.3.2 Bitstrings

A bitstring is a finite-length string of 0s and 1s. Each length of bitstring is a different type. The minimum allowed length of a bitstring is 1.

The type name for bitstrings of length `N` is `bits(N)`. A synonym of `bits(1)` is `bit`.

Bitstring constants are written as a single quotation mark, followed by the string of 0s and 1s, followed by another single quotation mark. For example, the two constants of type `bit` are `'0'` and `'1'`. Spaces can be included in the bitstring for clarity.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

A special form of bitstring constant with "x" bits is permitted in bitstring comparisons. See *Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxF-967 for details.

Every bitstring value has a left-to-right order, with the bits being numbered in standard *little-endian* order. That is, the leftmost bit of a bitstring of length N is bit N-1 and its rightmost bit is bit 0. This order is used as the most-significant-to-least-significant bit order in conversions to and from integers. For bitstring constants and bitstrings derived from encoding diagrams, this order matches the way they are printed.

Bitstrings are the only concrete data type in pseudocode, in the sense that they correspond directly to the contents of registers, memory locations, instructions, and so on. All of the remaining data types are abstract.

F.3.3 Integers

Pseudocode integers are unbounded in size and can be either positive or negative. That is, they are mathematical integers rather than what computer languages and architectures commonly call integers. Computer integers are represented in pseudocode as bitstrings of the appropriate length, associated with suitable functions to interpret those bitstrings as integers.

The type name for integers is `integer`.

Integer constants are normally written in decimal, such as `0`, `15`, `-1234`. They can also be written in C-style hexadecimal, such as `0x55` or `0x80000000`. Hexadecimal integer constants are treated as positive unless they have a preceding minus sign. For example, `0x80000000` is the integer $+2^{31}$. If -2^{31} needs to be written in hexadecimal, it should be written as `-0x80000000`.

F.3.4 Reals

Pseudocode reals are unbounded in size and precision. That is, they are mathematical real numbers, not computer floating-point numbers. Computer floating-point numbers are represented in pseudocode as bitstrings of the appropriate length, associated with suitable functions to interpret those bitstrings as reals.

The type name for reals is `real`.

Real constants are written in decimal with a decimal point (so `0` is an integer constant, but `0.0` is a real constant).

F.3.5 Booleans

A boolean is a logical true or false value.

The type name for booleans is `boolean`. This is not the same type as `bit`, which is a length-1 bitstring.

Boolean constants are `TRUE` and `FALSE`.

F.3.6 Enumerations

An enumeration is a defined set of symbolic constants, such as:

```
enumeration SRType (SRType_None, SRType_LSL, SRType_LSR,
                    SRType_ASR, SRType_ROR, SRType_RRX);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

An enumeration always contains at least one symbolic constant, and symbolic constants are not allowed to be shared between enumerations.

Enumerations must be declared explicitly, though a variable of an enumeration type can be declared implicitly as usual by assigning one of the symbolic constants to it. By convention, each of the symbolic constants starts with the name of the enumeration followed by an underscore. The name of the enumeration is its type name, and the symbolic constants are its possible constants.

Note

Booleans are basically a pre-declared enumeration:

```
enumeration boolean {FALSE, TRUE};
```

that does not follow the normal naming convention and that has a special role in some pseudocode constructs, such as `if` statements.

F.3.7 Lists

A list is an ordered set of other data items, separated by commas and enclosed in parentheses, such as:

```
(bits(32) shifter_result, bit shifter_carry_out)
```

A list always contains at least one data item.

Lists are often used as the return type for a function that returns multiple results. For example, this particular list is the return type of the function `Shift_C()` that performs a standard ARM shift or rotation, when its first operand is of type `bits(32)`.

Some specific pseudocode operators use lists surrounded by other forms of bracketing than parentheses. These are:

- Bitstring extraction operators, that use lists of bit numbers or ranges of bit numbers surrounded by angle brackets <...>.
- Array indexing, that uses lists of array indexes surrounded by square brackets [...].
- Array-like function argument passing, that uses lists of function arguments surrounded by square brackets [...].

Each combination of data types in a list is a separate type, with type name given by just listing the data types (that is, `(bits(32),bit)` in the above example). The general principle that types can be declared by assignment extends to the types of the individual list items within a list. For example:

```
(shift_t, shift_n) = ('00', 0);
```

implicitly declares `shift_t`, `shift_n` and `(shift_t,shift_n)` to be of types `bits(2)`, `integer` and `(bits(2),integer)` respectively.

A list type can also be explicitly named, with explicitly named elements in the list. For example:

```
type ShiftSpec is (bits(2) shift, integer amount);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

After this definition and the declaration:

```
ShiftSpec abc;
```

the elements of the resulting list can then be referred to as `abc.shift` and `abc.amount`. This sort of qualified naming of list elements is only permitted for variables that have been explicitly declared, not for those that have been declared by assignment only.

Explicitly naming a type does not alter what type it is. For example, after the above definition of `ShiftSpec`, `ShiftSpec` and `(bits(2),integer)` are two different names for the same type, not the names of two different types. In order to avoid ambiguity in references to list elements, it is an error to declare a list variable multiple times using different names of its type or to qualify it with list element names not associated with the name by which it was declared.

An item in a list that is being assigned to may be written as `-` to indicate that the corresponding item of the assigned list value is discarded. For example:

```
(shifted, -) = LSL_C(operand, amount);
```

List constants are written as a list of constants of the appropriate types, like `('00', 0)` in the above example.

F.3.8 Arrays

Pseudocode arrays are indexed by either enumerations or integer ranges. An integer range is represented by the lower inclusive end of the range, then `..`, then the upper inclusive end of the range. For example:

```
enumeration PhysReg {
    PhysReg_R0,    PhysReg_R1,     PhysReg_R2,    PhysReg_R3,
    PhysReg_R4,    PhysReg_R5,     PhysReg_R6,    PhysReg_R7,
    PhysReg_R8,    PhysReg_R9,     PhysReg_R10,   PhysReg_R11,
    PhysReg_R12,   PhysReg_SP_Process,            PhysReg_SP_Main,
    PhysReg_LR,    PhysReg_PC};

array bits(32) _R[PhysReg];

array bits(8) _Memory[0..0xFFFFFFFF];
```

Arrays are always explicitly declared, and there is no notation for a constant array. Arrays always contain at least one element, because enumerations always contain at least one symbolic constant and integer ranges always contain at least one integer.

Arrays do not usually appear directly in pseudocode. The items that syntactically look like arrays in pseudocode are usually array-like functions such as `R[i]`, `MemU[address,size]` or `Element[i,type]`. These functions package up and abstract additional operations normally performed on accesses to the underlying arrays, such as register banking, memory protection, endian-dependent byte ordering, exclusive-access housekeeping and vector element processing.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.4 Expressions

This section describes:

- *General expression syntax*
- *Polymorphism and prototypes of operators and functions* on page AppxF-966
- *Precedence rules* on page AppxF-966.

F.4.1 General expression syntax

An expression is one of the following:

- a constant
- a variable, optionally preceded by a data type name to declare its type
- the word `UNKNOWN` preceded by a data type name to declare its type
- the result of applying a language-defined operator to other expressions
- the result of applying a function to other expressions.

Variable names normally consist of alphanumeric and underscore characters, starting with an alphabetic or underscore character.

Each register described in the text is to be regarded as declaring a correspondingly named bitstring variable, and that variable has the stated behavior of the register. For example, if a bit of a register is stated to read as 0 and ignore writes, then the corresponding bit of its variable reads as 0 and ignore writes.

An expression like `bits(32) UNKNOWN` indicates that the result of the expression is a value of the given type, but the architecture does not specify what value it is and software must not rely on such values. The value produced must not constitute a security hole and must not be promoted as providing any useful information to software. (This was called an UNPREDICTABLE value in previous ARM Architecture documentation. It is related to but not the same as `UNPREDICTABLE`, that says that the entire architectural state becomes similarly unspecified.)

A subset of expressions are assignable. That is, they can be placed on the left-hand side of an assignment. This subset consists of:

- Variables
- The results of applying some operators to other expressions. The description of each language-defined operator that can generate an assignable expression specifies the circumstances under which it does so. (For example, those circumstances might include one or more of the expressions the operator operates on themselves being assignable expressions.)
- The results of applying array-like functions to other expressions. The description of an array-like function specifies the circumstances under which it can generate an assignable expression.

Every expression has a data type. This is determined by:

- For a constant, the syntax of the constant.
- For a variable, there are three possible sources for the type
  - its optional preceding data type name

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

— a data type it was given earlier in the pseudocode by recursive application of this rule

— a data type it is being given by assignment (either by direct assignment to it, or by assignment to a list of which it is a member).

It is a pseudocode error if none of these data type sources exists for a variable, or if more than one of them exists and they do not agree about the type.

- For a language-defined operator, the definition of the operator.
- For a function, the definition of the function.

F.4.2 Polymorphism and prototypes of operators and functions

Operators and functions in pseudocode can be polymorphic, producing different functionality when applied to different data types. Each of the resulting forms of an operator or function has a different prototype definition. For example, the operator + has forms that act on various combinations of integers, reals and bitstrings.

One particularly common form of polymorphism is between bitstrings of different lengths. This is represented by using `bits(N)`, `bits(M)`, and so on, in the prototype definition.

F.4.3 Precedence rules

The precedence rules for expressions are:

1. Constants, variables and function invocations are evaluated with higher priority than any operators using their results.
2. Expressions on integers follow the normal *exponentiation before multiply/divide before add/subtract* operator precedence rules, with sequences of multiply/divides or add/subtracts evaluated left-to-right.
3. Other expressions must be parenthesized to indicate operator precedence if ambiguity is possible, but need not be if all allowable precedence orders under the type rules necessarily lead to the same result. For example, if `i`, `j` and `k` are integer variables, `i > 0 && j > 0 && k > 0` is acceptable, but `i > 0 && j > 0 || k > 0` is not.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.5 Operators and built-in functions

This section describes:

- *Operations on generic types*
- *Operations on booleans*
- *Bitstring manipulation* on page AppxF-968
- *Arithmetic* on page AppxF-971.

F.5.1 Operations on generic types

The following operations are defined for all types.

Equality and non-equality testing

Any two values `x` and `y` of the same type can be tested for equality by the expression `x == y` and for non-equality by the expression `x != y`. In both cases, the result is of type `boolean`.

A special form of comparison with a bitstring constant that includes "`x`" bits as well as `'0'` and `'1'` bits is permitted. The bits corresponding to the "`x`" bits are ignored in determining the result of the comparison. For example, if opcode is a 4-bit bitstring, `opcode == "1x0x"` is equivalent to `opcode<3> == '1' && opcode<1> == '0'`. This special form is also permitted in the implied equality comparisons in `when` parts of `case ... of ...` structures.

Pseudocode distinguishes this special form of constant by enclosing it in "…" quotes instead of '…' quotes, as Table F-1 shows:

Table F-1 Conventions for bitstrings with and without do not care bits

String type	Quotes used	Example
Bitstring	'…'	'1101'
Bitstring with do not care bits	"…"	"1x0x"

Conditional selection

If `x` and `y` are two values of the same type and `t` is a value of type `boolean`, then `if t then x else y` is an expression of the same type as `x` and `y` that produces `x` if `t` is `TRUE` and `y` if `t` is `FALSE`.

F.5.2 Operations on booleans

If `x` is a `boolean`, then `!x` is its logical inverse.

If `x` and `y` are booleans, then `x && y` is the result of ANDing them together. As in the C language, if `x` is `FALSE`, the result is determined to be `FALSE` without evaluating `y`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

If x and y are booleans, then x || y is the result of ORing them together. As in the C language, if x is TRUE, the result is determined to be TRUE without evaluating y.

If x and y are booleans, then x ^ y is the result of exclusive-ORing them together.

F.5.3 Bitstring manipulation

The following bitstring manipulation functions are defined:

Bitstring length and top bit

If x is a bitstring, the bitstring length function Len(x) returns its length as an integer, and TopBit(x) is the leftmost bit of x (= x<Len(x)-1> using bitstring extraction.

Bitstring concatenation and replication

If x and y are bitstrings of lengths N and M respectively, then x:y is the bitstring of length N+M constructed by concatenating x and y in left-to-right order.

If x is a bitstring and n is an integer with n > 0, Replicate(x,n) is the bitstring of length n*Len(x) consisting of n copies of x concatenated together and:

- Zeros(n) = Replicate('0',n)
- Ones(n) = Replicate('1',n)

Bitstring extraction

The bitstring extraction operator extracts a bitstring from either another bitstring or an integer. Its syntax is x<integer_list>, where x is the integer or bitstring being extracted from, and <integer_list> is a list of integers enclosed in angle brackets rather than the usual parentheses. The length of the resulting bitstring is equal to the number of integers in <integer_list>.

In x<integer_list>, each of the integers in <integer_list> must be:

- >= 0
- < Len(x) if x is a bitstring.

The definition of x<integer_list> depends on whether integer_list contains more than one integer. If it does, x<i,j,k,...,n> is defined to be the concatenation:

x<i> : x<j> : x<k> : ... : x<n>

If integer_list consists of just one integer i, x<i> is defined to be:

- if x is a bitstring, '0' if bit i of x is a zero and '1' if bit i of x is a one.
- if x is an integer, let y be the unique integer in the range 0 to 2^(i+1)-1 that is congruent to x modulo 2^(i+1). Then **x<i>** is '0' if y < 2^i and '1' if y >= 2^i.

Loosely, this second definition treats an integer as equivalent to a sufficiently long 2's complement representation of it as a bitstring.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In <integer_list>, the notation i:j with i >= j is shorthand for the integers in order from i down to j, both ends inclusive. For example, instr<31:28> is shorthand for instr<31,30,29,28>.

The expression x<integer_list> is assignable provided x is an assignable bitstring and no integer appears more than once in <integer_list>. In particular, x<i> is assignable if x is an assignable bitstring and 0 <= i < Len(x).

Encoding diagrams for registers frequently show named bits or multi-bit fields. For example, the encoding diagram for the APSR shows its bit<31> as N. In such cases, the syntax APSR.N is used as a more readable synonym for APSR<31>.

Logical operations on bitstrings

If x is a bitstring, NOT(x) is the bitstring of the same length obtained by logically inverting every bit of x.

If x and y are bitstrings of the same length, x AND y, x OR y, and x EOR y are the bitstrings of that same length obtained by logically ANDing, ORing, and exclusive-ORing corresponding bits of x and y together.

Bitstring count

If x is a bitstring, BitCount(x) produces an integer result equal to the number of bits of x that are ones.

Testing a bitstring for being all zero or all ones

If x is a bitstring, IsZero(x) produces TRUE if all of the bits of x are zeros and FALSE if any of them are ones, and IsZeroBit(x) produces '1' if all of the bits of x are zeros and '0' if any of them are ones. IsOnes(x) and IsOnesBit(x) work in the corresponding way. So:

```
IsZero(x)    = (BitCount(x) == 0)

IsOnes(x)    = (BitCount(x) == Len(x))

IsZeroBit(x) = if IsZero(x) then '1' else '0'

IsOnesBit(x) = if IsOnes(x) then '1' else '0'
```

Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring

If x is a bitstring, and N = Len(x):

- LowestSetBit(x) is the minimum bit number of any of its bits that are ones. If all of its bits are zeros, LowestSetBit(x) = N.
- HighestSetBit(x) is the maximum bit number of any of its bits that are ones. If all of its bits are zeros, HighestSetBit(x) = -1.
- CountLeadingZeroBits(x) = N - 1 - HighestSetBit(x) is the number of zero bits at the left end of x, in the range 0 to N.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

- `CountLeadingSignBits(x) = CountLeadingZeroBits(x<N-1:1> EOR x<N-2:0>)` is the number of copies of the sign bit of x at the left end of x, excluding the sign bit itself, and is in the range 0 to N-1.

Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings

If `x` is a bitstring and `i` is an integer, then `ZeroExtend(x,i)` is `x` extended to a length of `i` bits, by adding sufficient zero bits to its left. That is, if `i == Len(x)`, then `ZeroExtend(x,i) = x`, and if `i > Len(x)`, then:

```
ZeroExtend(x,i) = Zeros(i-Len(x)) : x
```

If `x` is a bitstring and `i` is an integer, then `SignExtend(x,i)` is `x` extended to a length of `i` bits, by adding sufficient copies of its leftmost bit to its left. That is, if `i == Len(x)`, then `SignExtend(x,i) = x`, and if `i > Len(x)`, then:

```
SignExtend(x,i) = Replicate(TopBit(x), i-Len(x)) : x
```

It is a pseudocode error to use either `ZeroExtend(x,i)` or `SignExtend(x,i)` in a context where it is possible that `i < Len(x)`.

Converting bitstrings to integers

If `x` is a bitstring, `SInt(x)` is the integer whose 2's complement representation is `x`:

```
// SInt()
// ======

integer SInt(bits(N) x)
    result = 0;
    for i = 0 to N-1
        if x<i> == '1' then result = result + 2^i;
    if x<N-1> == '1' then result = result - 2^N;
    return result;
```

`UInt(x)` is the integer whose unsigned representation is `x`:

```
// UInt()
// ======

integer UInt(bits(N) x)
    result = 0;
    for i = 0 to N-1
        if x<i> == '1' then result = result + 2^i;
    return result;
```

`Int(x, unsigned)` returns either `SInt(x)` or `UInt(x)` depending on the value of its second argument:

```
// Int()
// =====

integer Int(bits(N) x, boolean unsigned)
    result = if unsigned then UInt(x) else SInt(x);
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    return result;
```

F.5.4 Arithmetic

Most pseudocode arithmetic is performed on integer or real values, with operands being obtained by conversions from bitstrings and results converted back to bitstrings afterwards. As these data types are the unbounded mathematical types, no issues arise about overflow or similar errors.

Unary plus, minus and absolute value

If `x` is an integer or real, then `+x` is `x` unchanged, `-x` is `x` with its sign reversed, and `ABS(x)` is the absolute value of `x`. All three are of the same type as `x`.

Addition and subtraction

If `x` and `y` are integers or reals, `x+y` and `x-y` are their sum and difference. Both are of type `integer` if `x` and `y` are both of type `integer`, and `real` otherwise.

Addition and subtraction are particularly common arithmetic operations in pseudocode, and so it is also convenient to have definitions of addition and subtraction acting directly on bitstring operands.

If `x` and `y` are bitstrings of the same length `N = Len(x) = Len(y)`, then `x+y` and `x-y` are the least significant `N` bits of the results of converting them to integers and adding or subtracting them. Signed and unsigned conversions produce the same result:

```
x+y = (SInt(x) + SInt(y))<N-1:0>
    = (UInt(x) + UInt(y))<N-1:0>

x-y = (SInt(x) - SInt(y))<N-1:0>
    = (UInt(x) - UInt(y))<N-1:0>
```

If `x` is a bitstring of length `N` and `y` is an integer, `x+y` and `x-y` are the bitstrings of length `N` defined by `x+y = x + y<N-1:0>` and `x-y = x - y<N-1:0>`. Similarly, if `x` is an integer and `y` is a bitstring of length `M`, `x+y` and `x-y` are the bitstrings of length `M` defined by `x+y = x<M-1:0> + y` and `x-y = x<M-1:0> - y`.

Comparisons

If `x` and `y` are integers or reals, then `x == y`, `x != y`, `x < y`, `x <= y`, `x > y`, and `x >= y` are equal, not equal, less than, less than or equal, greater than, and greater than or equal comparisons between them, producing boolean results. In the case of `==` and `!=`, this extends the generic definition applying to any two values of the same type to also act between integers and reals.

Multiplication

If `x` and `y` are integers or reals, then `x * y` is the product of `x` and `y`, of type `integer` if both `x` and `y` are of type `integer` and otherwise of type `real`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Division and modulo

If x and y are integers or reals, then `x / y` is the result of dividing x by y, and is always of type `real`.

If x and y are integers, then `x DIV y` and `x MOD y` are defined by:

```
x DIV y = RoundDown(x / y)
x MOD y = x - y * (x DIV y)
```

It is a pseudocode error to use any `x / y`, `x MOD y`, or `x DIV y` in any context where y can be zero.

Square root

If x is an integer or a real, `Sqrt(x)` is its square root, and is always of type real.

Rounding and aligning

If x is a real:

- `RoundDown(x)` produces the largest integer n such that `n <= x`.
- `RoundUp(x)` produces the smallest integer n such that `n >= x`.
- `RoundTowardsZero(x)` produces `RoundDown(x)` if `x > 0.0`, `0 if x == 0.0`, and `RoundUp(x) if x < 0.0`.

If x and y are integers, `Align(x,y) = y * (x DIV y)` is an integer.

If x is a bitstring and y is an integer, `Align(x,y) = (Align(UInt(x),y))<Len(x)-1:0>` is a bitstring of the same length as x.

It is a pseudocode error to use either form of `Align(x,y)` in any context where y can be 0. In practice, `Align(x,y)` is only used with y a constant power of two, and the bitstring form used with `y = 2^n` has the effect of producing its argument with its n low-order bits forced to zero.

Scaling

If n is an integer, `2^n` is the result of raising 2 to the power n and is of type `real`.

If x and n are integers, then:

- `x << n = RoundDown(x * 2^n)`
- `x >> n = RoundDown(x * 2^(-n))`.

Maximum and minimum

If x and y are integers or reals, then `Max(x,y)` and `Min(x,y)` are their maximum and minimum respectively. Both are of type `integer` if both x and y are of type `integer` and of type `real` otherwise.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.6 Statements and program structure

This section describes the control statements used in the pseudocode.

F.6.1 Simple statements

The following simple statements must all be terminated with a semicolon, as shown.

Assignments

An assignment statement takes the form:

```
<assignable_expression> = <expression>;
```

Procedure calls

A procedure call takes the form:

```
<procedure_name>(<arguments>);
```

Return statements

A procedure return takes the form:

```
return;
```

and a function return takes the form:

```
return <expression>;
```

where `<expression>` is of the type the function prototype line declared.

UNDEFINED

The statement:

```
UNDEFINED;
```

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode (apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies). The replacement behavior is that the Undefined Instruction exception is taken.

UNPREDICTABLE

The statement:

```
UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode (apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies). The replacement behavior is not architecturally defined and must not be relied upon by software. It must not constitute a security hole or halt or hang the system, and must not be promoted as providing any useful information to software.

SEE...

The statement:

```
SEE <reference>;
```

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode (apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies). The replacement behavior is that nothing occurs as a result of the current pseudocode because some other piece of pseudocode defines the required behavior. The `<reference>` indicates where that other pseudocode can be found.

IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED

The statement:

```
IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED <text>;
```

indicates a special case that specifies that the behavior is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Following text can give more information.

F.6.2 Compound statements

Indentation is normally used to indicate structure in compound statements. The statements contained in structures such as `if ... then ... else ...` or procedure and function definitions are indented more deeply than the statement itself, and their end is indicated by returning to the original indentation level or less.

Indentation is normally done by four spaces for each level.

if ... then ... else ...

A multi-line `if ... then ... else ...` structure takes the form:

```
if <boolean_expression> then
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
elsif <boolean_expression> then
    <statement a>
    <statement b>
    ...
    <statement z>
else
    <statement A>
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
    <statement B>
    ...
    <statement Z>
```

The `else` and its following statements are optional.

```
if <boolean_expression> then
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
elsif <boolean_expression> then
    <statement a>
    <statement b>
    ...
    <statement z>
else
    <statement A>
    <statement B>
    ...
    <statement Z>
```

The block of lines consisting of `elsif` and its indented statements is optional, and multiple such blocks can be used.

The block of lines consisting of `else` and its indented statements is optional.

Abbreviated one-line forms can be used when there are only simple statements in the `then` part and (if present) the `else` part, as follows:

```
if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1>

if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1> else <statement A>

if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1> <statement 2> else <statement A>
```

Note

In these forms, `<statement 1>`, `<statement 2>` and `<statement A>` must be terminated by semicolons. This and the fact that the `else` part is optional are differences from the `if ... then ... else ...` expression.

repeat ... until ...

A `repeat ... until ...` structure takes the form:

```
repeat
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
until <boolean_expression>;
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

while ... do

A `while ... do` structure takes the form:

```
while <boolean_expression> do
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

for ...

A `for ...` structure takes the form:

```
for <assignable_expression> = <integer_expr1> to <integer_expr2>
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

case ... of ...

A `case ... of ...` structure takes the form:

```
case <expression> of
    when <constant values>
        <statement 1>
        <statement 2>
        ...
        <statement n>
    ... more "when" groups ...
    otherwise
        <statement A>
        <statement B>
        ...
        <statement Z>
```

where `<constant values>` consists of one or more constant values of the same type as `<expression>`, separated by commas. Abbreviated one line forms of `when` and `otherwise` parts can be used when they contain only simple statements.

If `<expression>` has a bitstring type, `<constant values>` can also include bitstring constants containing "x" bits. See *Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxF-967 for details.

Procedure and function definitions

A procedure definition takes the form:

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

```
<procedure name>(<argument prototypes>)
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

where the `<argument prototypes>` consists of zero or more argument definitions, separated by commas. Each argument definition consists of a type name followed by the name of the argument.

Note

This first prototype line is not terminated by a semicolon. This helps to distinguish it from a procedure call.

A function definition is similar, but also declares the return type of the function:

```
<return type> <function name>(<argument prototypes>)
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

An array-like function is similar, but with square brackets:

```
<return type> <function name>[<argument prototypes>]
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

An array-like function also usually has an assignment prototype:

```
<function name>[<argument prototypes>] = <value prototypes>
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

F.6.3 Comments

Two styles of pseudocode comment exist:

- `//` starts a comment that is terminated by the end of the line.
- `/*` starts a comment that is terminated by `*/`.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.7 Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions

The functions described in this section are not part of the pseudocode specification. They are *helper* procedures and functions used by pseudocode to perform useful architecture-specific jobs. Each has a brief description and a pseudocode prototype. Some have had a pseudocode definition added.

F.7.1 ArchVersion()

This function returns the major version number of the architecture.

```
integer ArchVersion()
```

F.7.2 BKPTInstrDebugEvent()

This procedure generates a debug event for a `BKPT` instruction.

F.7.3 BreakPoint()

This procedure causes a debug breakpoint to occur.

F.7.4 CallSupervisor()

In the M profile, this procedure causes an SVCall exception.

F.7.5 ConditionPassed()

This function performs the condition test for an instruction, based on:

- the two Thumb conditional branch encodings (encodings T1 andT3 of the B instruction)
- the current values of the xPSR.IT[7:0] bits for other Thumb instructions.

```
boolean ConditionPassed()
```

F.7.6 Coproc_Accepted()

This function determines whether a coprocessor accepts an instruction.

```
boolean Coproc_Accepted(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.7 Coproc_DoneLoading()

This function determines for an `LDC` instruction whether enough words have been loaded.

```
boolean Coproc_DoneLoading(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.7.8 Coproc_DoneStoring()

This function determines for an STC instruction whether enough words have been stored.

```
boolean Coproc_DoneStoring(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.9 Coproc_GetOneWord()

This function obtains the word for an MRC instruction from the coprocessor.

```
bits(32) Coproc_GetOneWord(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.10 Coproc_GetTwoWords()

This function obtains the two words for an MRRC instruction from the coprocessor.

```
(bits(32), bits(32)) Coproc_GetTwoWords(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.11 Coproc_GetWordToStore()

This function obtains the next word to store for an STC instruction from the coprocessor

```
bits(32) Coproc_GetWordToStore(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.12 Coproc_InternalOperation()

This procedure instructs a coprocessor to perform the internal operation requested by a CDP instruction.

```
Coproc_InternalOperation(integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.13 Coproc_SendLoadedWord()

This procedure sends a loaded word for an LDC instruction to the coprocessor.

```
Coproc_SendLoadedWord(bits(32) word, integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.14 Coproc_SendOneWord()

This procedure sends the word for an MCR instruction to the coprocessor.

```
Coproc_SendOneWord(bits(32) word, integer cp_num, bits(32) instr)
```

F.7.15 Coproc_SendTwoWords()

This procedure sends the two words for an MCRR instruction to the coprocessor.

```
Coproc_SendTwoWords(bits(32) word1, bits(32) word2, integer cp_num,
                    bits(32) instr)
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.7.16 DataMemoryBarrier()

This procedure produces a Data Memory Barrier.

```
DataMemoryBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

F.7.17 DataSynchronizationBarrier()

This procedure performs a Data Synchronization Barrier.

```
DataSynchronizationBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

F.7.18 EncodingSpecificOperations()

This procedure invokes the encoding-specific pseudocode for an instruction encoding and checks the 'should be' bits of the encoding, as described in *Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxF-958.

F.7.19 GenerateCoprocessorException()

This procedure raises a UsageFault exception for a rejected coprocessor instruction.

F.7.20 GenerateIntegerZeroDivide()

This procedure raises the appropriate exception for a division by zero in the integer division instructions `SDIV` and `UDIV`.

In the M profile, this is a UsageFault exception.

F.7.21 HaveDSPExt()

This procedure returns TRUE if the implementation includes the DSP extension.

```
boolean HaveDSPExt()
```

F.7.22 HaveFPExt()

This procedure returns TRUE if the implementation includes the Floating-point (FP) extension.

```
boolean HaveFPExt()
```

F.7.23 Hint_Debug()

This procedure supplies a hint to the debug system.

```
Hint_Debug(bits(4) option)
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.7.24 Hint_PreloadData()

This procedure performs a *preload data* hint.

```
Hint_PreloadData(bits(32) address)
```

F.7.25 Hint_PreloadInstr()

This procedure performs a *preload instructions* hint.

```
Hint_PreloadInstr(bits(32) address)
```

F.7.26 Hint_SendEvent()

This procedure performs a *send event* hint.

F.7.27 Hint_Yield()

This procedure performs a *Yield* hint.

F.7.28 InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()

This procedure produces an Instruction Synchronization Barrier.

```
InstructionSynchronizationBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

F.7.29 IntegerZeroDivideTrappingEnabled()

This function returns TRUE if the trapping of divisions by zero in the integer division instructions `SDIV` and `UDIV` is enabled, and FALSE otherwise.

In the M profile, this is controlled by the DIV_0_TRP bit in the Configuration Control register. TRUE is returned if the bit is 1 and FALSE if it is 0.

F.7.30 ProcessorID()

Identifies the executing processor.

F.7.31 ResetSCSRegs()

Restores all registers in the System Control Space (SCS) that have architecturally-defined reset values to those values.

```
ResetSCSRegs()
```


Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

F.7.32 SetPending()

This procedure sets the associated exception state to Pending. For a definition of the different exception states see *Exceptions* on page B1-619.

F.7.33 SerializeVFP()

This procedure ensures that any exceptional conditions in previous floating-point instructions have been detected.

F.7.34 ThisInstr()

This function returns the currently-executing instruction. It is only used on 32-bit instruction encodings.

```
bits(32) ThisInstr()
```

F.7.35 VFPExcBarrier()

This procedure ensures all floating-point exception processing has completed.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix G
Pseudocode Index

This appendix provides an index to pseudocode operators and functions that occur elsewhere in this manual. It contains the following sections:

- *Pseudocode operators and keywords* on page AppxG-984
- *Pseudocode functions and procedures* on page AppxG-988.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

G.1 Pseudocode operators and keywords

Table G-1 lists the pseudocode operators and keywords, and is an index to their descriptions:

Table G-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords

Operator	Meaning	See
-	Unary minus on integers or reals	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxF-971
	Subtraction of integers, reals and bitstrings	*Addition and subtraction* on page AppxF-971
+	Unary plus on integers or reals	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxF-971
	Addition of integers, reals and bitstrings	*Addition and subtraction* on page AppxF-971
(...)	Around arguments of procedure	*Procedure calls* on page AppxF-973, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxF-976
	Around arguments of function	*General expression syntax* on page AppxF-965, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxF-976
.	Extract named member from a list	*Lists* on page AppxF-963
	Extract named bit or field from a register	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxF-968
!	Boolean NOT	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxF-967
!=	Compare for non-equality (any type)	*Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxF-967
	Compare for non-equality (between integers and reals)	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
&&	Boolean AND	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxF-967
*	Multiplication of integers and reals	*Multiplication* on page AppxF-971
/	Division of integers and reals (real result)	*Division and modulo* on page AppxF-972
/*...*/	Comment delimiters	*Comments* on page AppxF-977

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
//	Introduces comment terminated by end of line	*Comments* on page AppxF-977
:	Bitstring concatenation	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxF-968
	Integer range in bitstring extraction operator	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxF-968
[...]	Around array index	*Arrays* on page AppxF-964
	Around arguments of array-like function	*General expression syntax* on page AppxF-965, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxF-976
^	Boolean exclusive-OR	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxF-967
||	Boolean OR	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxF-967
<	*Less than* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
<...>	Extraction of specified bits of bitstring or integer	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxF-968
<<	Multiply integer by power of 2 (with rounding towards -infinity)	*Scaling* on page AppxF-972
<=	*Less than or equal* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
=	Assignment	*Assignments* on page AppxF-973
==	Compare for equality, any type	*Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxF-967
	Compare for equality, between integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
>	*Greater than* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
>=	*Greater than or equal* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxF-971
>>	Divide integer by power of 2 (with rounding towards -infinity)	*Scaling* on page AppxF-972

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
`2^N`	Power of two (real result)	*Scaling* on page AppxF-972
`AND`	Bitwise AND of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxF-969
`array`	Keyword introducing array type definition	*Arrays* on page AppxF-964
`bit`	Bitstring type of length 1	*Bitstrings* on page AppxF-961
`bits(N)`	Bitstring type of length N	*Bitstrings* on page AppxF-961
`boolean`	Boolean type	*Booleans* on page AppxF-962
`case ... of ...`	Control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxF-976
`DIV`	Quotient from integer division	*Division and modulo* on page AppxF-972
`enumeration`	Keyword introducing enumeration type definition	*Enumerations* on page AppxF-962
`EOR`	Bitwise EOR of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxF-969
`FALSE`	Boolean constant	*Booleans* on page AppxF-962
`for ...`	Control structure	*for ...* on page AppxF-976
`if ... then ... else ...`	Expression selecting between two values	*Conditional selection* on page AppxF-967
	Control structure	*if ... then ... else ...* on page AppxF-974
`IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED`	Describes IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED behavior	*IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED* on page AppxF-974
`integer`	Unbounded integer type	*Integers* on page AppxF-962
`MOD`	Remainder from integer division	*Division and modulo* on page AppxF-972
`OR`	Bitwise OR of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxF-969
`otherwise`	Introduces default case in `case ... of ...` control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxF-976
`real`	Real number type	*Reals* on page AppxF-962

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
`repeat ... until ...`	Control structure	*repeat ... until ...* on page AppxF-975
`return`	Procedure or function return	*Return statements* on page AppxF-973
`SEE`	Points to other pseudocode to use instead	*SEE...* on page AppxF-974
`TRUE`	Boolean constant	*Booleans* on page AppxF-962
`UNDEFINED`	Cause Undefined Instruction exception	*UNDEFINED* on page AppxF-973
`UNKNOWN`	Unspecified value	*General expression syntax* on page AppxF-965
`UNPREDICTABLE`	Unspecified behavior	*UNPREDICTABLE* on page AppxF-973
`when`	Introduces specific case in `case ... of ...` control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxF-976
`while ... do ...`	Control structure	*while ... do* on page AppxF-976

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

G.2 Pseudocode functions and procedures

Table G-2 lists the pseudocode functions and procedures used in this manual, and is an index to their descriptions:

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures

Function	Meaning	See
`_Mem[]`	Basic memory accesses	*Basic memory accesses* on page B2-694
`Abs()`	Absolute value of an integer or real	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxF-971
`AddWithCarry()`	Addition of bitstrings, with carry input and carry/overflow outputs	*Pseudocode details of addition and subtraction* on page A2-43
`Align()`	Align integer or bitstring to multiple of an integer	*Rounding and aligning* on page AppxF-972
`ALUWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking for ARM only from ARMv7	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46
`ArchVersion()`	Major version number of the architecture	*ArchVersion()* on page AppxF-978
`ASR_C()`	Arithmetic shift right of a bitstring, with carry output	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40
`ASR()`	Arithmetic shift right of a bitstring	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40
`BigEndian()`	Returns TRUE if data accesses are big-endian	*Pseudocode details of endianness* on page A3-87
`BigEndianReverse()`	Endian-reverse the bytes of a bitstring	*Reverse endianness* on page B2-697
`BitCount()`	Count number of ones in a bitstring	*Bitstring count* on page AppxF-969
`BKPTInstrDebugEvent()`	Generate a debug event for a `BKPT` instruction	*BKPTInstrDebugEvent()* on page AppxF-978
`BLXWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46
`BranchTo()`	Continue execution at specified address	*Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-629

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`BranchWritePC()`	Write value to PC, without interworking	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46
`BXWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking	
`CallSupervisor()`	Generate exception for SVC instruction	*CallSupervisor()* on page AppxF-978
`CheckPermission()`	Memory system check of access permission	*Access permission checking* on page B2-700
`CheckVFPEnabled()`	Generate Undefined Instruction exception if the FP extension is not enabled	*Checks on FP instruction execution* on page B1-686
`ClearEventRegister()`	Clear the Event Register of the current processor	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-682
`ClearExclusiveByAddress()`	Clear local exclusive monitor records for an address range	*Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
`ClearExclusiveLocal()`	Clear global exclusive monitor record for a processor	
`ConditionPassed()`	Returns TRUE if the current instruction passes its condition check	*Pseudocode details of conditional execution* on page A7-209
`Consistent()`	Test identically-named instruction bits or fields are identical	*Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxF-958
`Coproc_Accepted()`	Determine whether a coprocessor accepts an instruction.	*Coproc_Accepted()* on page AppxF-978
`Coproc_DoneLoading()`	Returns TRUE if enough words have been loaded, for an `LDC` or `LDC2` instruction	*Coproc_DoneLoading()* on page AppxF-978
`Coproc_DoneStoring()`	Returns TRUE if enough words have been stored, for an `STC` or `STC2` instruction	*Coproc_DoneStoring()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_GetOneWord()`	Get word from coprocessor, for an `MRC` or `MRC2` instruction	*Coproc_GetOneWord()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_GetTwoWords()`	Get two words from coprocessor, for an `MRRC` or `MRRC2` instruction	*Coproc_GetTwoWords()* on page AppxF-979

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`Coproc_GetWordToStore()`	Get next word to store from coprocessor, for `STC` or `STC2` instruction	*Coproc_GetWordToStore()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_InternalOperation()`	Instruct coprocessor to perform an internal operation, for a `CDP` or `CDP2` instruction	*Coproc_InternalOperation()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_SendLoadedWord()`	Send next loaded word to coprocessor, for `LDC` or `LDC2` instruction	*Coproc_SendLoadedWord()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_SendOneWord()`	Send word to coprocessor, for an `MCR` or `MCR2` instruction	*Coproc_SendOneWord()* on page AppxF-979
`Coproc_SendTwoWords()`	Send two words to coprocessor, for an `MCRR` or `MCRR2` instruction	*Coproc_SendTwoWords()* on page AppxF-979
`CountLeadingSignBits()`	Number of identical sign bits at left end of bitstring, excluding the leftmost bit itself	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxF-969
`CountLeadingZeroBits()`	Number of zeros at left end of bitstring	
`CurrentCond()`	Returns condition for current instruction	*Pseudocode details of conditional execution* on page A7-209
`CurrentModeIsPrivileged()`	Returns TRUE if current software execution is privileged	*Pseudocode details of processor mode* on page B1-619
`D[]`	Doubleword view of the FP extension registers	*Pseudocode details of the FP extension registers* on page A2-54
`DataAddressMatch()`	DWT comparator data address matching	*Comparator behavior for data address matching* on page C1-861
`DataMemoryBarrier()`	Perform a Data Memory Barrier operation	*DataMemoryBarrier()* on page AppxF-980
`DataSynchronizationBarrier()`	Perform a Data Synchronization Barrier operation	*DataSynchronizationBarrier()* on page AppxF-980
`Deactivate()`	Removal of Active state from an exception as part of the exception return	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-652
`DecodeImmShift()`	Decode shift type and amount for an immediate shift	*Shift operations* on page A7-213

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`DefaultMemoryAttributes()`	Determine memory attributes for an address in the default memory map	*Default memory access decode* on page B2-701
`DefaultTEXDecode()`	Determine memory attributes for a set of TEX[2:0], C, B bits	*MPU access control decode* on page B2-700
`DerivedLateArrival()`	Handles a derived late arriving exception	*Derived exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-663
`EncodingSpecificOperations()`	Invoke encoding-specific pseudocode and *should be* checks	*Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxF-958
`EventRegistered()`	Determine whether the Event Register of the current processor is set	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-682
`ExceptionActiveBitCount()`	Counts the number of bits that are set to 1 in the `ExceptionActive[*]` array	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-652
`ExceptionEntry()`	Exception entry behavior	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
`ExceptionIN()`	Determine exception entry status	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-751
`ExceptionOUT()`	Determine exception return status	
`ExceptionReturn()`	Exception return behavior	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-652
`ExceptionTaken()`	Part of `ExceptionEntry()` behavior	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
`ExclusiveMonitorsPass()`	Check whether Store-Exclusive operation has control of exclusive monitors	*Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
`ExecuteFPCheck()`	On FP instruction execution, checks whether FP functionality is enabled, and if so, saves FP state if necessary.	*Checks on FP instruction execution* on page B1-686
`ExecutionPriority()`	Defines the execution priority	*Execution priority* on page B1-639
`FindPriv()`	Determine access privilege	*Interfaces to memory system specific pseudocode* on page B2-694
`FixedToFP()`	Convert integer or fixed-point to floating-point	*FP conversions* on page A2-78

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`FPAbs()`	Floating-point absolute value	*FP negation and absolute value* on page A2-68
`FPAdd()`	Floating-point addition	*FP addition and subtraction* on page A2-74
`FPCompare()`	Floating-point comparison, producing NZCV flag result	*FP comparisons* on page A2-73
`FPDefaultNaN()`	Generate floating-point default NaN	*Generation of specific floating-point values* on page A2-67
`FPDiv()`	Floating-point division	*FP multiplication and division* on page A2-75
`FPHalfToSingle()`	Convert half-precision floating-point to single-precision floating-point	*FP conversions* on page A2-78
`FPInfinity()`	Generate floating-point infinity	*Generation of specific floating-point values* on page A2-67
`FPMaxNormal()`	Generate maximum normalized floating-point value	
`FPMul()`	Floating-point multiplication	*FP multiplication and division* on page A2-75
`FPMulAdd()`	Floating-point multiply accumulate	*FP multiply accumulate* on page A2-76
`FPNeg()`	Floating-point negation	*FP negation and absolute value* on page A2-68
`FPProcessException()`	Process a floating-point exception	*FP exception and NaN handling* on page A2-69
`FPProcessNaN()`	Generate correct result and exceptions for a NaN operand	
`FPProcessNaNs()`	Perform NaN operand checks and processing for a 2-operand floating-point operation	
`FPProcessNaNs3()`	Perform NaN operand checks and processing for a 3-operand floating-point operation	
`FPRound()`	Floating-point rounding	*FP rounding* on page A2-71

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`FPSingleToHalf()`	Convert single-precision floating-point to half-precision floating-point	*FP conversions* on page A2-78
`FPSqrt()`	Floating-point square root	*FP square root* on page A2-77
`FPSub()`	Floating-point subtraction	*FP addition and subtraction* on page A2-74
`FPToFixed()`	Convert floating-point to integer or fixed-point	*FP conversions* on page A2-78
`FPUnpack()`	Produce type, sign bit and real value of a floating-point number	*FP value unpacking* on page A2-68
`FPZero()`	Generate floating-point zero	*Generation of specific floating-point values* on page A2-67
`GenerateCoprocessorException()`	Generate the exception for an unclaimed coprocessor instruction	*GenerateCoprocessorException()* on page AppxF-980
`GenerateIntegerZeroDivide()`	Generate the exception for a trapped divide-by-zero on execution of an integer divide instruction	*GenerateIntegerZeroDivide()* on page AppxF-980
`HighestSetBit()`	Position of leftmost 1 in a bitstring	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxF-969
`HaveDSPExt()`	Returns TRUE if the implementation includes the DSP extension	*HaveDSPExt()* on page AppxF-980
`HaveFPExt()`	Returns TRUE if the implementation includes the FP extension	*HaveFPExt()* on page AppxF-980
`Hint_Debug()`	Perform function of `DBG` hint instruction	*Hint_Debug()* on page AppxF-980
`Hint_PreloadData()`	Perform function of `PLD` memory hint instruction	*Hint_PreloadData()* on page AppxF-981
`Hint_PreloadInstr()`	Perform function of `PLI` memory hint instruction	*Hint_PreloadInstr()* on page AppxF-981
`Hint_SendEvent()`	Perform function of `SEV` hint instruction	*Hint_SendEvent()* on page AppxF-981
`Hint_Yield()`	Perform function of `YIELD` hint instruction	*Hint_Yield()* on page AppxF-981

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`InITBlock()`	Return TRUE if current instruction is in an IT block.	*Pseudocode details of ITSTATE operation* on page A7-211
`InstrAddressMatch()`	DWT comparator instruction address matching	*Comparator behavior for instruction address matching* on page C1-861
`InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()`	Perform an Instruction Synchronization Barrier operation	*InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()* on page AppxF-981
`Int()`	Convert bitstring to integer in argument-specified fashion	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxF-970
`IntegerZeroDivideTrappingEnabled()`	Check whether divide-by-zero trapping is enabled for integer divide instructions	*IntegerZeroDivideTrappingEnabled()* on page AppxF-981
`InterruptAssertion()`	Determine status of an external interrupt	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-751
`IsExclusiveGlobal()`	Check a global exclusive access record	*Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
`IsExclusivelocal()`	Check a local exclusive access record	
`IsOnes()`	Test for all-ones bitstring, Boolean result	*Testing a bitstring for being all zero or all ones* on page AppxF-969
`IsOnesBit()`	Test for all-ones bitstring. bit result	
`IsZero()`	Test for all-zeros bitstring, Boolean result	
`IsZeroBit()`	Test for all-zeros bitstring, bit result	
`ITAdvance()`	Advance the ITSTATE bits to their values for the next instruction	*Pseudocode details of ITSTATE operation* on page A7-211
`LastInITBlock()`	Return TRUE if current instruction is the last instruction in an IT block.	
`LateArrival()`	Late arrival exception handling	*Late-arriving exceptions* on page B1-662
`Len()`	Bitstring length	*Bitstring length and top bit* on page AppxF-968

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`LoadWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46
`LookUpSP()`	Select the current SP	*Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-629
`LowestSetBit()`	Position of rightmost 1 in a bitstring	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxF-969
`LSL_C()`	Logical shift left of a bitstring, with carry output	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40
`LSL()`	Logical shift left of a bitstring	
`LSR_C()`	Logical shift right of a bitstring, with carry output	
`LSR()`	Logical shift right of a bitstring	
`MarkExclusiveLocal()`	Set a local exclusive access record	*Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
`MarkExclusiveGlobal()`	Set a global exclusive access record	
`Max()`	Maximum of integers or reals	*Maximum and minimum* on page AppxF-972
`MemA_unpriv[]`	Memory access that must be aligned, unprivileged	*Aligned memory accesses* on page B2-695
`MemA_with_priv[]`	Memory access that must be aligned, at specified privilege level	
`MemA[]`	Memory access that must be aligned, at current privilege level	
`MemU_unpriv[]`	Memory access without alignment requirement, unprivileged	*Unaligned memory accesses* on page B2-696
`MemU_with_priv[]`	Memory access without alignment requirement, at specified privilege level	
`MemU[]`	Memory access without alignment requirement, at current privilege level	
`Min()`	Minimum of integers or reals	*Maximum and minimum* on page AppxF-972

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`NOT()`	Bitwise inversion of a bitstring	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxF-969
`Ones()`	All-ones bitstring	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxF-968
`PopStack()`	Stack restore sequence on an exception return	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-652
`PreserveFPState()`	Saves FP state to the stack	*Saving FP state* on page B1-687
`ProcessorID()`	Return integer identifying the processor	*ProcessorID()* on page AppxF-981
`PushStack()`	Stack save sequence on exception entry	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
`R[]`	Access the main ARM core register bank	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-46 *Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-629
`Replicate()`	Bitstring replication	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxF-968
`ResetSCSRegs()`	Resets the SCS registers with defined reset values to those values	*ResetSCSRegs()* on page AppxF-981
`ReturnAddress()`	Return address stacked on exception entry	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
`ROR_C()`	Rotate right of a bitstring, with carry output	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40
`ROR()`	Rotate right of a bitstring	
`RoundDown()`	Round real to integer, rounding towards –infinity	*Rounding and aligning* on page AppxF-972
`RoundTowardsZero()`	Round real to integer, rounding towards zero	
`RoundUp()`	Round real to integer, rounding towards +infinity	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`RRX_C()`	Rotate right with extend of a bitstring, with carry output	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-40
`RRX()`	Rotate right with extend of a bitstring	
`S[]`	Single word view of the FP extension registers	*Pseudocode details of the FP extension registers* on page A2-54
`Sat()`	Convert integer to bitstring with specified saturation	*Pseudocode details of saturation* on page A2-44
`SatQ()`	Convert integer to bitstring with specified saturation, with saturated flag output	
`SendEvent()`	Create a WFE wakeup event that sets the Event Register(s) on execution of an `SEV` instruction.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-682
`SerializeVFP()`	Ensure exceptional conditions in preceding floating-point instructions have been detected	*SerializeVFP()* on page AppxF-982
`SetEventRegister()`	Set the Event Register of the current processor	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-682
`SetExclusiveMonitors()`	Set exclusive monitors for a local exclusive operation	*Pseudocode details of operations on exclusive monitors* on page B2-698
`Shift_C()`	Perform a specified shift by a specified amount on a bitstring, with carry output	*Shift operations* on page A7-213
`Shift()`	Perform a specified shift by a specified amount on a bitstring	
`SignedSat()`	Convert integer to bitstring with signed saturation	*Pseudocode details of saturation* on page A2-44
`SignedSatQ()`	Convert integer to bitstring with signed saturation, with saturated flag output	
`SignExtend()`	Extend bitstring to left with copies of its leftmost bit	*Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings* on page AppxF-970
`SInt()`	Convert bitstring to integer in signed (two's complement) fashion	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxF-970

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`SleepOnExit()`	Optionally returns processor to a power-saving mode on return from the only active exception	*Exception return operation* on page B1-654
`Sqrt()`	Calculate a square root	*Square root* on page AppxF-972
`StandardFPSCRValue()`	Returns the FPSCR value that selects ARM standard floating-point arithmetic	*Selection of ARM standard floating-point arithmetic* on page A2-73
`TailChain()`	Tail chaining exception behavior	*Tail-chaining* on page B1-665
`TakePreserveFPException()`	Handles any exception during a `PreserveFPState()` operation	*Exceptions while saving FP state* on page B1-688
`TakeReset()`	Reset behavior	*Reset behavior* on page B1-641
`ThisInstr()`	Returns the bitstring encoding of the current instruction	*ThisInstr()* on page AppxF-982
`ThumbExpandImm()`	Expansion of immediates for Thumb instructions	*Operation of modified immediate constants* on page A5-167
`ThumbExpandImmWithC()`	Expansion of immediates for Thumb instructions, with carry output	
`TopBit()`	Leftmost bit of a bitstring	*Bitstring length and top bit* on page AppxF-968
`UInt()`	Convert bitstring to integer in unsigned fashion	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxF-970
`UnsignedSat()`	Convert integer to bitstring with unsigned saturation	*Pseudocode details of saturation* on page A2-44
`UnsignedSatQ()`	Convert integer to bitstring with unsigned saturation, with saturated flag output	
`UpdateFPCCR()`	Updates the FPCCR when the processor pushes FP state to the stack.	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-643
`ValidateAddress()`	Resolve the permissions and memory attributes for a PMSA memory access	*MPU pseudocode* on page B3-762
`VFPExcBarrier()`	Ensure all outstanding floating-point exception processing has occurred	*VFPExcBarrier()* on page AppxF-982

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table G-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`VFPExpandImm()`	Expansion of immediates for floating-point instructions	*Operation of modified immediate constants in floating-point instructions* on page A6-196
`VFPSmallRegisterBank()`	Always TRUE for ARMv7-M. Indicates implementation of 16 doubleword registers	*Pseudocode details of the FP extension registers* on page A2-54
`WaitForEvent()`	Wait until `WFE` instruction completes	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-682
`WaitForInterrupt()`	Wait until `WFI` instruction completes	*Pseudocode details of Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-684
`WriteToRegField()`	Indicate a write of 1 to a specified field in a system control register	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-751
`ZeroExtend()`	Extend bitstring to left with zero bits	*Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings* on page AppxF-970
`Zeros()`	All-zeros bitstring	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxF-968

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Appendix H
Register Index

This appendix provides an index to the descriptions of the ARM registers in this manual. It includes the ARM core registers and the memory mapped registers, and contains the following sections:

- *ARM core registers* on page AppxH-1002
- *Floating-point extension registers* on page AppxH-1003
- *Memory mapped system registers* on page AppxH-1004
- *Memory-mapped debug registers* on page AppxH-1007.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

H.1 ARM core registers

Table H-1 provides an index to the main descriptions of the ARM core registers defined in ARMv7-M.

Table H-1 ARM core register index

Register	See
R0, R1, R2, R3, R4, R5, R6, R7, R8, R9, R10, R11, R12	*Registers* on page B1-623
SP_main, SP_process	*The SP registers* on page B1-623
LR (R14)	*Registers* on page B1-623
PC (R15)	*Registers* on page B1-623
APSR	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624
IPSR	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624
EPSR	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624
PRIMASK	*The special-purpose mask registers* on page B1-627
FAULTMASK	*The special-purpose mask registers* on page B1-627
BASEPRI	*The special-purpose mask registers* on page B1-627
CONTROL	*The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-628

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

H.2 Floating-point extension registers

The following sections identify the Floating-point extension registers:

- *Floating-point extension system register*
- *Floating-point extension registers*.

The floating-point extension also adds registers in the processor memory-mapped system register space, see *Memory mapped system registers* on page AppxH-1004.

H.2.1 Floating-point extension system register

The Floating-point extension adds a single system register, the FPSCR, in the CP10 and CP11 register space. See *Floating-point Status and Control Register, FPSCR* on page A2-56.

H.2.2 Floating-point extension registers

The Floating-point extension provides two alternative views of its set of data registers:

- the single-precision view sees the registers as 32-bit registers `S0-S31`
- the doubleword view sees the registers as 64-bit registers `D0-D15`.

For more information see *The FP extension registers* on page A2-53.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

H.3 Memory mapped system registers

Table H-2 provides an index to the main descriptions of the memory mapped system control registers defined in ARMv7-M. In the Notes column of the table:

- CPUID indicates that the register is part of the CPUID scheme, see Chapter B4 *The CPUID Scheme*. Every ARMv7-M processor implements these registers.
- FP extension indicates that the register is part of the Floating-point extension. An ARMv7-M processor implements the register only if it includes the Floating-point extension.

Table H-2 Memory-mapped system register index

Register	See	Notes
ACTLR	*Auxiliary Control Register, ACTLR* on page B3-742	-
AFSR	*Auxiliary Fault Status Register, AFSR* on page B3-735	-
AIRCR	*Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-717	-
BFAR	*BusFault Address Register, BFAR* on page B3-734	-
BFSR	*BusFault Status Register, BFSR* on page B3-729	-
CCR	*Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-720	-
CFSR	*Configurable Fault Status Register, CFSR* on page B3-727	-
CPACR	*Coprocessor Access Control Register, CPACR* on page B3-735	-
CPUID	*CPUID Base Register* on page B3-713	-
FPCAR	*Floating-Point Context Address Register, FPCAR* on page B3-739	FP extension
FPCCR	*Floating-Point Context Control Register, FPCCR* on page B3-737	FP extension
FPDSCR	*Floating-Point Default Status Control Register, FPDSCR* on page B3-740	FP extension
HFSR	*HardFault Status Register, HFSR* on page B3-732	-
ICSR	*Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713	-
ICTR	*Interrupt Controller Type Register, ICTR* on page B3-741	-
ID_AFR0	*Auxiliary Feature Register 0, ID_AFR0* on page B4-782	CPUID
ID_DFR0	*Debug Feature Register 0, ID_DFR0* on page B4-781	CPUID
ID_ISAR0	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 0, ID_ISAR0* on page B4-787	CPUID
ID_ISAR1	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 1, ID_ISAR1* on page B4-788	CPUID

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table H-2 Memory-mapped system register index (continued)

Register	See	Notes
ID_ISAR2	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 2, ID_ISAR2* on page B4-789	CPUID
ID_ISAR3	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 3, ID_ISAR3* on page B4-790	CPUID
ID_ISAR4	*Instruction Set Attribute Register 4, ID_ISAR4* on page B4-792	CPUID
ID_MMFR0	*Memory Model Feature Register 0, ID_MMFR0* on page B4-783	CPUID
ID_MMFR1	*Memory Model Feature Register 1, ID_MMFR1* on page B4-783	CPUID
ID_MMFR2	*Memory Model Feature Register 2, ID_MMFR2* on page B4-784	CPUID
ID_MMFR3	*Memory Model Feature Register 2, ID_MMFR2* on page B4-784	CPUID
ID_PFR0	*Processor Feature Register 0, ID_PFR0* on page B4-780	CPUID
ID_PFR1	*Processor Feature Register 1, ID_PFR1* on page B4-780	CPUID
MMFAR	*MemManage Fault Address Register, MMFAR* on page B3-733	-
MMFSR	*MemManage Status Register, MMFSR* on page B3-728	-
MPU_CTRL	*MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-767	-
MPU_RASR	*MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-771	-
MPU_RBAR	*MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-770	-
MPU_RNR	*MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-769	-
MPU_TYPE	*MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE* on page B3-766	-
MVFR0	*Media and FP Feature Register 0, MVFR0* on page B4-794	FP extension
MVFR1	*Media and FP Feature Register 1, MVFR1* on page B4-796	FP extension
NVIC_IABRn	*Interrupt Active Bit Registers, NVIC_IABR0 - NVIC_IABR15* on page B3-759	-
NVIC_ICERn	*Interrupt Clear-Enable Registers, NVIC_ICER0 - NVIC_ICER15* on page B3-756	
NVIC_ICPRn	*Interrupt Clear-Pending Registers, NVIC_ICPR0 - NVIC_ICPR15* on page B3-758	
NVIC_IPRn	*Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVC_IPR123* on page B3-760	
NVIC_ISERn	*Interrupt Set-Enable Registers, NVIC_ISER0 - NVIC_ISER15* on page B3-755	
NVIC_ISPRn	*Interrupt Set-Pending Registers, NVIC_ISPR0 - NVIC_ISPR15* on page B3-757	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table H-2 Memory-mapped system register index (continued)

Register	See	Notes
SCR	*System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-718	
SHCSR	*System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page B3-725	
SHPR1	*System Handler Priority Register 1, SHPR1* on page B3-723	
SHPR2	*System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-723	
SHPR3	*System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-724	
STIR	*Software Triggered Interrupt Register, STIR* on page B3-742	
SYST_CALIB	*SysTick Calibration value Register, SYST_CALIB* on page B3-748	
SYST_CSR	*SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR* on page B3-746	
SYST_CVR	*SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-748	
SYST_RVR	*SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-747	
UFSR	*UsageFault Status Register, UFSR* on page B3-731	
VTOR	*Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-716	

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

H.4 Memory-mapped debug registers

Table H-3 provides an index to the main descriptions of the memory mapped debug registers defined in the ARMv7-M Debug Extension. The registers are listed in the order they are described in this manual. In addition to these registers, the memory-mapped debug registers can include general infrastructure and CoreSight registers. For information about these see:

- *The ARMv7-M ROM Table* on page C1-816
- Appendix A *ARMv7-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs*
- *CoreSight® Architecture Specification*.

Table H-3 Memory-mapped debug register index

Register[a]	Description, see
DCRDR	*Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-836
DCRSR	*Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-834
DEMCR	*Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR* on page C1-838
DFSR	*Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-828
DHCSR	*Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-830
DWT_COMPx	*Comparator registers, DWT_COMPn* on page C1-891
DWT_CPICNT	*CPI Count register, DWT_CPICNT* on page C1-885
DWT_CTRL	*Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-879
DWT_CYCCNT	*Cycle Count register, DWT_CYCCNT* on page C1-884
DWT_EXCCNT	*Exception Overhead Count register, DWT_EXCCNT* on page C1-886
DWT_FOLDCNT	*Folded-instruction Count register, DWT_FOLDCNT* on page C1-889
DWT_FUNCTIONx	*Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONn* on page C1-893
DWT_LSUCNT	*LSU Count register, DWT_LSUCNT* on page C1-888
DWT_MASKx	*Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKn* on page C1-892
DWT_PCSR	*Program Counter Sample register, DWT_PCSR* on page C1-890
DWT_SLEEPCNT	*Sleep Count register, DWT_SLEEPCNT* on page C1-887
ETM registers	For ETM related registers, see *Embedded Trace Macrocell Architecture Specification*.
FP_COMPn	*FlashPatch Comparator register, FP_COMPn* on page C1-909
FP_CTRL	*FlashPatch Control Register, FP_CTRL* on page C1-906

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Table H-3 Memory-mapped debug register index (continued)

Register[a]	Description, see
FP_REMAP	*FlashPatch Remap register, FP_REMAP* on page C1-908
ITM_STIMn	*Stimulus Port registers, ITM_STIM0 - ITM_STIM255* on page C1-849
ITM_TCR	*Trace Control Register, ITM_TCR* on page C1-852
ITM_TERn	*Trace Enable Registers, ITM_TER0 - ITM_TER7* on page C1-850
ITM_TPR	*Trace Privilege Register, ITM_TPR* on page C1-852
TPIU_ACPR	*Asynchronous Clock Prescaler Register, TPIU_ACPR* on page C1-900
TPIU_CSPSR	*Current Parallel Port Size Register, TPIU_CSPSR* on page C1-899
TPIU_SPPR	*Selected Pin Protocol Register, TPIU_SPPR* on page C1-901
TPIU_SSPSR	*Supported Parallel Port Sizes Register, TPIU_SSPSR* on page C1-898
TPIU_TYPE	*TPIU Type register, TPIU_TYPE* on page C1-902

a. In addition to the registers listed, debug support includes bits in the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control and State Register, ICSR* on page B3-713.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Glossary

AAPCS Procedure Call Standard for the ARM Architecture.

Addressing mode
A method for generating the memory address used by a load or store instruction.

Aligned Refers to data items stored in such a way that their address is divisible by the highest power of 2 that divides their size. Aligned halfwords, words and doublewords therefore have addresses that are divisible by 2, 4 and 8 respectively.

An aligned access is one where the address of the access is aligned to the size of an element of the access

APSR *See* Application Program Status Register.

Application Program Status Register (APSR)
The register containing those bits that deliver status information about the results of instructions, the N, Z, C, and V bits of the xPSR. In an implementation that includes the DSP extension, the APSR includes the GE bits that provide status information from DSP operations.

See also Execution Program Status Register (EPSR), Interrupt Program Status Register (IPSR), Program Status Registers (xPSR).

ARM core registers
The collective name for the 32-bit general-purpose registers R0-12, the SP (R13), the LR (R14), and the PC (R15).

See also General-purpose register.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Atomicity

Is a term that describes either single-copy atomicity or multi-copy atomicity. The forms of atomicity used in the ARM architecture are defined in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-101.

See also Multi-copy Atomicity, Single-copy atomicity.

Banked register

Is a register that has multiple instances, with the instance that is in use depending on the processor mode, security state, or other processor state.

Base register

Is a register specified by a load/store instruction that is used as the base value for the address calculation performed by the instruction. Depending on the instruction and its addressing mode, an offset can be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the address that is sent to memory.

Base register write-back

Describes writing back a modified value to the base register used in an address calculation.

Big-endian memory

Means that:

- a byte or halfword at a word-aligned address is the most significant byte or halfword in the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword-aligned address is the most significant byte in the halfword at that address.

Blocking

Describes an operation that does not permit following instructions to be executed before the operation is completed.

A non-blocking operation can permit following instructions to be executed before the operation is completed, and in the event of encountering an exception do not signal an exception to the processor. This enables implementations to retire following instructions while the non-blocking operation is executing, without the need to retain precise processor state.

Branch prediction

Is where a processor chooses a future execution path to prefetch along (see Prefetching). For example, after a branch instruction, the processor can choose to prefetch either the instruction following the branch or the instruction at the branch target.

Breakpoint

Is a debug event triggered by the execution of a particular instruction, specified in terms of the address of the instruction and/or the state of the processor when the instruction is executed.

Byte Is an 8-bit data item.

Callee-save registers

Are registers that a called procedure must preserve. To preserve a callee-save register, the called procedure would normally either not use the register at all, or store the register to the stack during procedure entry and re-load it from the stack during procedure exit.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Caller-save registers
Are registers that a called procedure need not preserve. If the calling procedure requires their values to be preserved, it must store and reload them itself.

Conditional execution
Conditional execution means the execution of an instruction is conditional on the value of a condition code flag. If the required condition is not met the instruction does nothing.

Configuration
Settings made on reset, or immediately after reset, and normally expected to remain static throughout program execution.

Context switch
Is the saving and restoring of computational state when switching between different threads or processes. In this manual, the term context switch is used to describe any situations where the context is switched by an operating system and might or might not include changes to the address space.

Data Watchpoint and Trace (DWT)
The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit is a component of ARMv7-M debug that optionally provides a number of trace, sampling, and profiling functions.

DCB *See* Debug Control Block.

Debug Control Block (DCB)
A region in the System Control Space that is assigned to registers that support debug features.

See also System Control Space (SCS).

Digital signal processing (DSP)
Refers to a variety of algorithms that are used to process signals that have been sampled and converted to digital form. Saturated arithmetic is often used in such algorithms.

Direct Memory Access
Is an operation that accesses main memory directly, without the processor performing any accesses to the data concerned.

Do-not-modify fields (DNM)
Means the value must not be altered by software. DNM fields read as UNKNOWN values, and can only be written with the same value read from the same field on the same processor.

Doubleword
Is a 64-bit data item. Doublewords are normally at least word-aligned in ARM systems.

Doubleword-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 8.

DSP *See* Digital signal processing

DWT *See* Data Watchpoint and Trace.

Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM)
A component of the ARM CoreSight Debug and Trace solution. An ETM provides non-invasive trace of processor operation.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Endianness
Is an aspect of the system memory mapping. See big-endian and little-endian.

EPSR *See* Execution Program Status Register.

ETM *See* Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM).

Exception
Handles an event. For example, an exception could handle an external interrupt or an undefined instruction.

Execution Program Status Register (EPSR)
A register that contains the execution state bits and is part of the xPSR.

See also Application Program Status Register (APSR), Interrupt Program Status Register (IPSR), Program Status Registers (xPSR).

Execution stream
The stream of instructions that would have been executed by sequential execution of the program.

Explicit access
A read from memory, or a write to memory, generated by a load or store instruction executed in the CPU.

Fault An exception due to some form of system error.

General-purpose register
One of the 32-bit general-purpose integer registers, R0 to R12, In some documentation, the SP (R13), LR (R14), and PC (R15) are also described as general purpose registers.

Halfword
Is a 16-bit data item. Halfwords are normally halfword-aligned in ARM systems.

Halfword-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 2.

High registers
Are ARM core registers R8 to R12, that cannot be accessed by some Thumb instructions.

Immediate values
Are values that are encoded directly in the instruction and used as numeric data when the instruction is executed. Many ARM and Thumb instructions permit small numeric values to be encoded as immediate values in the instruction that operates on them. In the ARM architecture, immediate fields are unsigned unless otherwise stated in the instruction description.

IMP Is an abbreviation used in diagrams to indicate that the bit or bits concerned have IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED behavior.

IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
Means that the behavior is not architecturally defined, but should be defined and documented by individual implementations.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Index register
Is a register specified in some load and store instructions. The value of this register is used as an offset to be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the address that is sent to memory. Some addressing modes optionally permit the index register value to be shifted before the addition or subtraction.

Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM)
A component of the ARM CoreSight Debug and Trace solution. An ITM provides a memory-mapped register interface that applications can use to write logging or event words to a trace sink.

Interrupt Program Status Register (IPSR)
The register that provides status information on whether an application thread or exception handler is currently executing on the processor. If an exception handler is executing, the register provides information on the exception type. The register is part of the xPSR.

See also Application Program Status Register (APSR), Execution Program Status Register (EPSR), Program Status Registers (xPSR).

Interworking
Is a method of working that permits branches between ARM and Thumb code in architecture variants that support both execution states.

IPSR *See* Interrupt Program Status Register.

If-Then block (IT block)
An IT block is a block of up to four instructions following an *If-Then* (`IT`) instruction. Each instruction in the block is conditional. The conditions for the instructions are either all the same, or some can be the inverse of others. See *IT* on page A7-277 for more information.

ITM *See* Instrumentation Trace Macrocell (ITM).

Little-endian memory
Means that:

- a byte or halfword at a word-aligned address is the least significant byte or halfword in the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword-aligned address is the least significant byte in the halfword at that address.

Load/Store architecture
Is an architecture where data-processing operations only operate on register contents, not directly on memory contents.

Long branch
Is the use of a load instruction to branch to anywhere in the 4GB address space.

Memory barrier
See *Memory barriers* on page A3-116.

Memory coherency
Is the problem of ensuring that when a memory location is read, either by a data read or an instruction fetch, the value actually obtained is always the value that was most recently written to the location.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Memory hint
A memory hint instruction allows you to provide advance information to memory systems about future memory accesses, without actually loading or storing any data to or from the register file. `PLD` and `PLI` are the only memory hint instructions defined in ARMv7-M.

Memory-mapped I/O
Uses special memory addresses that supply I/O functions when they are loaded from or stored to.

Memory Protection Unit (MPU)
Is a hardware unit whose registers provide simple control of a limited number of protection regions in memory.

MPU *See* Memory Protection Unit.

NRZ Non-Return-to-Zero - physical layer signalling scheme used on asynchronous communication ports.

Multi-copy atomicity
Is the form of atomicity described in *Multi-copy atomicity* on page A3-102.

See also Atomicity, Single-copy atomicity.

Offset addressing
Means that the memory address is formed by adding or subtracting an offset to or from the base register value. In the ARM architecture, offset fields are unsigned unless otherwise stated in the instruction description.

Physical address
Identifies a main memory location.

Post-indexed addressing
Means that the memory address is the base register value, but an offset is added to or subtracted from the base register value and the result is written back to the base register.

Prefetching
Is the process of fetching instructions from memory before the instructions that precede them have finished executing. Prefetching an instruction does not mean that the instruction has to be executed.

Pre-indexed addressing
Means that the memory address is formed in the same way as for offset addressing, but the memory address is also written back to the base register.

Privileged access
Memory systems typically differentiate between privileged and unprivileged accesses, and support more restrictive permissions for unprivileged accesses. Some instructions can be used only by privileged software.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Program Status Registers (xPSR)
xPSR is the term used to describe the combination of the APSR, EPSR and IPSR into a single 32-bit Program Status Register. For more information see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-624.

See also Application Program Status Register (APSR), Execution Program Status Register (EPSR), Interrupt Program Status Register (IPSR).

Protection region
Is a memory region whose position, size, and other properties are defined by Memory Protection Unit registers.

Protection Unit
See Memory Protection Unit.

Pseudo-instruction
UAL assembler syntax that assembles to an instruction encoding that is expected to disassemble to a different assembler syntax, and is described in this manual under that other syntax. For example, `MOV <Rd>,<Rm>, LSL #<n>` is a pseudo-instruction that is expected to disassemble as `LSL <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>`

PSR *See* Program Status Registers (xPSR).

RAO *See* Read-As-One (RAO).

RAZ *See* Read-As-Zero (RAZ).

RAO/SBOP
Read-As-One, Should-Be-One-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software can rely on the field reading as 1, or all 1s for a bitfield, but must use an SBOP policy to write to the field.

RAZ/SBZP
Read-As-Zero, Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software can rely on the field reading as zero, but must use an SBZP policy to write to the field.

RAZ/WI Read-As-Zero, Writes Ignored.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software can rely on the bit reading as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and on writes being ignored.

Read-As-One (RAO)
In any implementation, the bit must read as 1, or all 1s for a bit field.

Read-As-Zero (RAZ)
In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Read, Modify, Write (RMW)
In a read, modify, write instruction sequence, a value is read to a general-purpose register, the relevant fields updated in that register, and the register value written back.

Reserved
Unless otherwise stated:
- instructions that are reserved or that access reserved registers have UNPREDICTABLE behavior
- bit positions described as Reserved are UNK/SBZP.

Return Link
A value relating to the return address.

RISC Reduced Instruction Set Computer.

RMW *See* Read-Modify-Write fields.

RO Read only register or register field. RO bits are ignored on write accesses.

Rounding error
Is defined to be the value of the rounded result of an arithmetic operation minus the exact result of the operation.

Rounding modes
Specify how the exact result of a floating-point operation is rounded to a value that is representable in the destination format.

Round to Nearest (RN) mode
Means that the rounded result is the nearest representable number to the unrounded result.

Round towards Plus Infinity (RP) mode
Means that the rounded result is the nearest representable number that is greater than or equal to the exact result.

Round towards Minus Infinity (RM) mode
Means that the rounded result is the nearest representable number that is less than or equal to the exact result.

Round towards Zero (RZ) mode
Means that results are rounded to the nearest representable number that is no greater in magnitude than the unrounded result.

Saturated arithmetic
Is integer arithmetic in which a result that would be greater than the largest representable number is set to the largest representable number, and a result that would be less than the smallest representable number is set to the smallest representable number. Signed saturated arithmetic is often used in DSP algorithms. It contrasts with the normal signed integer arithmetic used in ARM processors, in which overflowing results wrap around from $+2^{31}–1$ to $–2^{31}$ or vice versa.

SBO *See* Should-Be-One (SBO).

SBOP *See* Should-Be-One-or-Preserved (SBOP).

SBZ *See* Should-Be-Zero (SBZ).

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

SBZP *See* Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved (SBZP).

SCB *See* System Control Block (SCB).

SCS *See* System Control Space (SCS).

Security hole
Is a mechanism that bypasses system protection.

Serial Wire Output (SWO)
An asynchronous TPIU port supporting one or both of the NRZ and Manchester encodings.

Serial Wire Viewer (SWV)
The combination of an SWO and at least one of a DWT unit or an ITM, providing data tracing capability.

Self-modifying code
Is code that writes one or more instructions to memory and then executes them. This type of code cannot be relied on without the use of barrier instructions to ensure synchronization.

Should-Be-One (SBO)
Must be written as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, by software. Values other than 1 produce UNPREDICTABLE results.

Should-Be-One-or-Preserved (SBOP)
Must be written as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, by software if the value is being written without having been previously read, or if the register has not been initialized. Where the register was previously read on the same processor since the processor was last reset, the value in the field should be preserved by writing the same value that was previously read.

Hardware must ignore writes to these fields.

If a value is written to the field that is neither 1 (or all 1s for a bit field), nor a value previously read for the same field on the same processor, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Should-Be-Zero (SBZ)
Must be written as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, by software. Values other than 0 produce UNPREDICTABLE results.

Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved (SBZP)
Must be written as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, by software if the value is being written without having been previously read, or if the register has not been initialized. Where the register was previously read on the same processor since the processor was last reset, the value in the field should be preserved by writing the same value that was previously read.

Hardware must ignore writes to these fields.

If a value is written to the field that is neither 0 (or all 0s for a bit field), nor a value previously read for the same field on the same processor, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Signed data types
Represent an integer in the range -2^{N-1} to $+2^{N-1}-1$, using two's complement format.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Signed immediate and offset fields
Are encoded in two's complement notation unless otherwise stated.

SIMD *See* Single-Instruction, Multiple-Data.

Simple sequential execution
The behavior of an implementation that fetches, decodes and completely executes each instruction before proceeding to the next instruction. Such an implementation performs no speculative accesses to memory, including to instruction memory. The implementation does not pipeline any phase of execution. In practice, this is the theoretical execution model that the architecture is based on, and ARM does not expect this model to correspond to a realistic implementation of the architecture.

Single-copy atomicity
Is the form of atomicity described in *Single-copy atomicity* on page A3-101.

See also Atomicity, Multi-copy atomicity.

Single-Instruction, Multiple-Data (SIMD)
Is a mechanism where a single instruction performs the same operation in parallel on multiple sets of data.

In the ARM architecture, SIMD refers to the group of instructions that perform SIMD operations.

Status registers
See Program Status Registers (xPSR).

SWO *See* Serial Wire Output (SWO).

SWV *See* Serial Wire Viewer (SWV).

System Control Block (SCB)
An address region in the System Control Space, used for key feature control and configuration associated with the exception model.

See also System Control Space (SCS).

System Control Space (SCS)
A 4KB region of the memory map reserved for system control and configuration registers.

See also Debug Control Block (DCB), System Control Space (SCS).

Thumb instruction
Is one or two halfwords that specify an operation for a processor to perform. Thumb instructions must be halfword-aligned.

TPIU *See* Trace Port Interface Unit (TPIU).

Trace Port Interface Unit (TPIU)
A component of the ARM CoreSight Debug and Trace solution. A TPIU provides an external interface for one or more trace sources in the processor implementation.

UAL *See* Unified Assembler Language.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

Unaligned

An unaligned access is an access where the address of the access is not aligned to the size of an element of the access.

Unaligned memory accesses

Are memory accesses that are not, or might not be, appropriately halfword-aligned, word-aligned, or doubleword-aligned.

Unallocated

Except where otherwise stated, an instruction encoding is unallocated if the architecture does not assign a specific function to the entire bit pattern of the instruction, but instead describes it as UNDEFINED, UNPREDICTABLE, or an unallocated hint instruction.

A bit in a register is unallocated if the architecture does not assign a function to that bit.

UNDEFINED

Indicates an instruction that generates an Undefined Instruction exception.

Unified Assembler Language

The assembler language introduced with Thumb-2 technology and used in this document. See *Unified Assembler Language* on page A4-126 for details.

Unindexed addressing

Means addressing in which the base register value is used directly as the address to send to memory, without adding or subtracting an offset. In most types of load/store instruction, unindexed addressing is performed by using offset addressing with an immediate offset of 0. The `LDC`, `LDC2`, `STC`, and `STC2` instructions have an explicit unindexed addressing mode that permits the offset field in the instruction to be used to specify additional coprocessor options.

UNKNOWN

An UNKNOWN value does not contain valid data, and can vary from moment to moment, instruction to instruction, and implementation to implementation. An UNKNOWN value must not be a security hole. UNKNOWN values must not be documented or promoted as having a defined value or effect.

UNK/SBOP

UNKNOWN on reads, Should-Be-One-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software must not rely on the field reading as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, and must use an SBOP policy to write to the field.

UNK/SBZP

UNKNOWN on reads, Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software must not rely on the field reading as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and must use an SBZP policy to write to the field.

UNK Is an abbreviation indicating that software must treat a field as containing an UNKNOWN value.

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field. Software must not rely on the field reading as zero.

UNPREDICTABLE
Means the behavior cannot be relied upon. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not represent security holes. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not halt or hang the processor, or any parts of the system. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not be documented or promoted as having a defined effect.

An instruction that is UNPREDICTABLE can be implemented as UNDEFINED.

Unsigned data types
Represent a non-negative integer in the range 0 to $+2^N-1$, using normal binary format.

Watchpoint
Is a debug event triggered by an access to memory, specified in terms of the address of the location in memory being accessed.

Word Is a 32-bit data item. Words are normally word-aligned in ARM systems.

WO Write only register or register field. WO bits are UNKNOWN on read accesses.

Word-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 4.

WYSIWYG
What You See Is What You Get, an acronym for describing predictable behavior of the output generated. Display to printed form and software source to executable code are examples of common use.

xPSR *See* Program Status Registers (xPSR).

Copyright © 2006-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential, Unrestricted Access